

VOLUME XXXI

JANUARY, 1922

NUMBER 126

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY

JEROME W. HOWE

MAJOR OF CAVALRY

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Jerome W. Howe, Major of Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Foreign postage 50 cents, Canadian postage 25 cents, additional.

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1922

VOL. XXXI, No. 126

	Page	
CAVALRY CHARGE AT COLLEZY.....	5	
THE SECOND CAVALRY IN THE MEUSE-ARGONNE.....	10	
Captain Ernest N. Harmon, Cavalry.		
THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, UNITED STATES ARMY (continued)...	19	
LED HORSES FOLLOW TOO CLOSE BEHIND (translation).....	30	
THE ARAB HORSE IN CAMPAIGN.....	31	
Captain John N. Merrill, Cavalry.		
EXTRACTS FROM A CAVALRYMAN'S DIARY.....	34	
Translated from <i>Journal d'un Officier de Cavalerie</i> by Charles Ouy-Vernazobres.		
ARAB CONTRIBUTION TO CAVALRY.....	38	
W. R. Brown.		
CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR.....	40	
General N. N. Golovine. Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff.		
THE TWELFTH CAVALRY ON THE ROAD.....	60	
Lieutenant-Colonel Nathan C. Shiverick, Cavalry, R. C.		
GALLOPING HORSES	65	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:		
THE CAVALRY JOURNAL IN NEW QUARTERS—WHY YOU FAILED TO RECEIVE YOUR CAVALRY JOURNAL—MR. ROBERT C. HILDALE—THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE ASSOCIATION—CAVALRY RESERVE CORPS ACTIVITY—WATCH THE MACHINE-GUN SQUADRONS—CIVILIAN APPRECIATION		68
TOPICS OF THE DAY:		
LORD HAIG AT CANTERBURY—TRIBUTE TO THE UNKNOWN SOLDIER—THE ENDURANCE RIDE—THE ARMY AT THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW—CAVALRY CEREMONIALS AT VALLADOLID—THE MORGAN BREED IMPROVED—TRIBUTE TO HORSES AND MULES		72
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	88	
POLO	94	
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	99	
REGIMENTAL NOTES	100	
THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT.....	110	
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	113	

COPYRIGHT, 1922, BY
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

PRESS OF JUDD & DETWEILER, INC.
WASHINGTON, D. C.

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

The aim and purpose of this Association shall be to unite all persons directly or indirectly interested in the cavalry arm of the military service, for the professional improvement of its members and the advancement of the mounted service generally.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Colonel WILLIAM C. RIVERS, Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel JULIUS T. CONRAD, Cavalry.

Colonel GEORGE VIDMEER, Cavalry.

Colonel GEORGE E. MITCHELL, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel GEORGE T. BOWMAN, Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

All commissioned officers in good standing, or former commissioned officers of honorable record of the regular or volunteer military or naval service, including Reserve Corps, and of the National Guard are eligible for regular or associate membership in the Association.

Application for membership should be addressed to the U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status, and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$3.50 (\$1.00 initiation fee and \$2.50 first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL). Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian postage 25 cents and foreign postage 50 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXI

JANUARY, 1922

No. 126

Cavalry Charge at Collezy

ON MARCH 21, 1918, Ludendorff launched what he himself called "the biggest task in history." This was St. Michael's Day, as the Germans called it, in expectation of an overwhelming victory. Sixty-four divisions hurled themselves upon the armies of Byng and Gough. Before this Battle of Picardy was ended the Germans employed no less than eighty-nine divisions in the mighty effort to break the western front effectively and roll up the British Army.

The attack moved fast. British units were overrun and engulfed. On the second day Gough, whose army held the line south from Cambrai, had used up all his reserves, and French reinforcements were only just beginning to come up.

By the 23d the Germans were across the Somme at Ham. Gough's army was beginning to dissolve. In the southern part of its sector (Ham, Brouchy, Cugny) there was only a confused mass of men, fighting in groups, in handfuls, struggling against the oncoming German tide. The gap was opening. The British and French armies were in imminent danger of being forced apart. French reinforcements were beginning to intervene in small numbers, but the Allies continued to give ground before the overwhelming German columns. On March 25 the Germans occupied Noyon. On this day, on which the supreme disaster threatened, the conference was held, in the little town of Doullens, between Haig and Petain, President Poincaré, Clemenceau, and Lord Milner, at which General Foch was charged "with coördinating the action of the Allied armies on the western front."

A glimpse of these dreadful days is given by Commandant de Cossé Brissac, who was with the headquarters of one of the French cavalry divisions coming up with all possible speed. He writes:

"23 March.—A singular rumor arrives in the afternoon. Projectiles falling in Paris at the *gare de l'Est* have caused fatalities. Their source is not known. It is supposed that they are bombs from

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

aircraft which, maneuvering at a very high altitude, have succeeded in evading the vigilance of the aerial defenses of Paris. Public opinion is much stirred by the news.

"General de La Tour tells us that these mysterious projectiles which fell in Paris this morning are fired by a piece of long-range artillery from a distance of more than 100 kilometers. This is astonishing. Arguments based on ballistics, the resistance of the air, and initial velocity, which tend to prove the impossibility of such a cannon, are advanced. The general does not admit their validity. We defer to his opinion.

"24 March.— This is a dreadful day. Through the uncertain reports one feels an intense inquietude. The mysterious projectiles which continue to fall on Paris unnerve the public. We experience the repercussion of this impression of general anxiety.

"25 March.— The reports are becoming precise in a regrettable fashion. Considerable masses of infantry and artillery have broken the defense system to the west of Saint-Quentin.

The English troops are retiring rapidly, the Germans have crossed the Crozat Canal."*

This is written from Saint-Just-en-Chaussée, more than 30 miles back from the village of Collezey, where the gallant troopers of the British cavalry have just been sabering the skirmishers of the advancing German masses.

From a participant of that action comes the following concise narrative, which illustrates in what brave fashion the cavalry was "doing its bit" during those fearful days:

ACTION OF 3D CAVALRY DIVISION AT COLLEZEY

At 8:30 a. m., 24th March, orders were received to push forward in the direction of Cugny in support of disorganized infantry. On reaching Villeselve we found the infantry line had broken. Cavalry was pushed forward and the line was reestablished. We were ordered to withdraw to support the 9th French Division, but the infantry line again broke on the withdrawal of the cavalry. General Harman issued orders to return to restore the situation. The 7th and Canadian brigades were sent mounted around the southern side of Villeselve and established a line from Beaumont, which was the left of the French position, to the road junction one-half mile northwest of Beaulieu. The 6th Brigade, under Major Williams, was sent through Collezey with instructions to charge through the German line, then swing right handed in a northeast direction along their line, using the sword only.

The detachment moved along the main road to Villeselve, taking the sunken track north into Collezey. On approaching Collezey it came under machine-gun fire from the direction of Golancourt, but got under cover of a big farm at the southeast exit of the village.

* The Crozat Canal passes through Ham.

CAVALRY CHARGE AT COLLEZEY

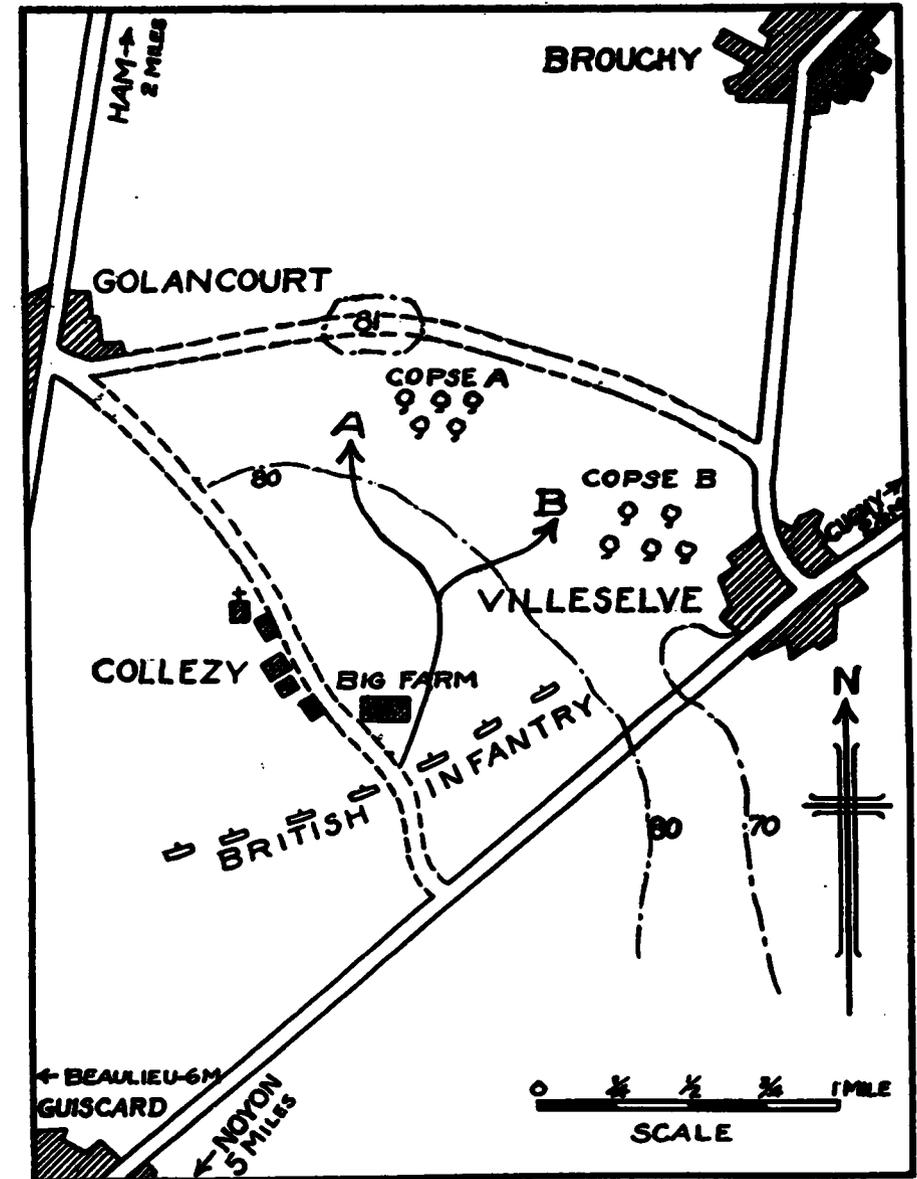


DIAGRAM SHOWING CHARGE OF SIXTH BRIGADE SQUADRON, NEAR COLLEZEY, ON MARCH 24, 1918. A—Direction of 10th and Royal's attack. B—Direction of 3d D. G.'s attack.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The detachment was formed into three troops by regiments, the 3d Dragoon Guards, under Lieutenant Vincent, forming the first wave; the 10th Hussars, under Major Williams, the second wave, and the Royals, under Captain Turner, the third. The attack was carried out in infantry attack formation, the first two waves in line extended, the third in sections, but covering the flanks of the two leading waves.

The 3d Dragoon Guards moved in the direction of Copse B, encountering some German infantry, who were either killed or captured. Some of the enemy ran into the copse, where they were followed on foot and many shot in the back at point-blank range as they ran away. Twelve prisoners were handed over to the infantry by the 3d Dragoon Guards.

Major Williams led the 10th Hussars and Royals on the west side of Copse A, where the greater part of the hostile infantry were posted. All three regiments were under machine-gun fire for about 1,000 yards (the last 200 yards was over plow), but when within 200 yards of the enemy, the latter, hearing our men cheering, surrendered freely. The 10th Hussars rode straight through the enemy. The Royals followed and mopped up small parties who had run together after the 10th had passed through them.

After the *mêlée*, "Rally" was sounded, prisoners collected, wounded picked up, and the squadron returned to the main Berlancourt-Guiscard-Villeselve Road. Ninety-four prisoners were brought in by 10th Hussars and Royals, making a total of 106 in all. One machine-gun was brought back intact and two others put out of action.

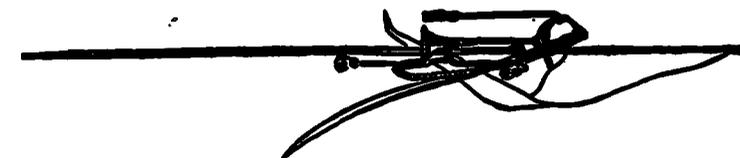
Besides the 106 prisoners taken, between 70 and 100 of the enemy were sabred. The losses of the detachment were 73 out of 150, but the maneuver gave the infantry renewed confidence, and they pushed forward to a line running from the outskirts of Golancourt almost to Eaucourt, including Hill 81. The reestablishment enabled the remnant of two battalions which had been fighting near Cugny to retire on Villeselve, at which point they were reassembled and sent back into the line.

French troops came up and the mounted detachment of the 3d Cavalry Division withdrew to a support line across the main road, three-quarters of a mile southwest of Villeselve. Orders were then received that, the French having decided to take up a new line near Guiscard, the cavalry was to cover the retirement of the infantry to that point and then withdraw to Muirancourt. This was done successfully.

This charge at Collezy, with its successful outcome, is a striking illustration of the use of cavalry in support of broken and demoralized infantry. Cavalry has many times been thrown into a fight to restore the fortunes of the day, but in the majority of such instances in modern warfare has fought dismounted. Terrain and other circumstances may, of course, make such form of action

advisable; but may not the very fact that the troops in need of support are themselves dismounted oftentimes influence the decision of the cavalry commander? It is only a bold and thoroughly trained commander who is ready to seize the opportunity offered, as in this instance, of restoring, by a mounted charge, in a few minutes of time, a perilous situation. So this action at Collezy is significant.

As to the heavy proportion of losses, cavalry must be ready to sacrifice to obtain the great results which its boldest actions may realize. In this connection, the losses sustained by the cavalry in the last year of the American Civil War should be borne in mind. General Sheridan reported: "In all the operations the percentage of cavalry casualties was as great as that of infantry, and the question which had existed, 'Who ever saw a dead cavalryman?' was set at rest."



THE CAVALRY arm retains all its importance as an army screening and reconnoitering agency, necessitating army cavalry divisions, which include horse artillery and machine-guns. Mobility is essential. Cavalry duties with an army corps or division consist of local screening and protection, unless these units are acting alone. Assignment of cavalry to army corps and divisions is made as needed and seldom exceeds a brigade. The present organization allots two cavalry divisions, of about 7,000 men each, to an army.—Principles Underlying the Organization of Combat Units—*The General Service Schools—1921.*

The Second Cavalry in the Meuse-Argonne

BY

Captain ERNEST N. HARMON, Cavalry

THE TWO DAYS following the St. Mihiel drive were spent at Menil-la-Tour, where the squadron underwent a general policing of both horses and men. On September 17 orders were received to march to the vicinity of Les Ialettes en Argonne. The march was scheduled to begin daily at 9 p. m. and to continue until 5 a. m. Special precautions were to be taken to avoid hostile aerial observation. The march covered a distance of 125 kilometers and was to be completed in five nights. The squadron arrived at Rarecourt en Argonne on the 22d and went into camp within the woods near by. Troop B, which had been detached from the squadron during the St. Mihiel attack joined on the march. The weather was rainy and cold during the march, which made conditions very unpleasant for the men, as no fires could be built during the day, nor could the men leave the woods to dry their clothes when the sun came out.

The strength of the squadron on September 26, on entering the Argonne attack, was equal to the effective number of our horses, as all men not mounted on horses that could at least keep up with the column were sent to the headquarters of the regiment. Probably a quarter of our horses would have been placed on sick report in peace time under garrison conditions, but we were anxious to enter the attack with as many men as possible.

The squadron, consisting of 12 officers and 302 enlisted men, saddled at 2 a. m. September 26, and moved toward Clermont en Argonne. The sky was frequently illuminated by the flashes of our artillery bombardment. The noise grew deafening as we approached nearer. The whole aspect of the heavens was like that of a great electrical storm. Now it was pitch blackness; in an instant it became so light that one could see the tense faces of the troopers and the nervous attitude of our horses.

We were ordered to arrive at Aubreville at 6 a. m. and to follow the reserve infantry brigade of the 35th Division at 1,000 meters until we crossed the front line trenches and reached Cote 290. We were to remain under cover at the latter place until further orders. As the head of our column entered Aubreville, it came under artillery fire, directed at our batteries located on the edge of the town. Two men of Troop B were wounded. The squadron passed through the town and marched diagonally across "No-Man's-Land" toward Cote 290, situated two kilometers northeast from Neuville. The passage by the horses through the trenches and wire was very slow and difficult.

THE SECOND CAVALRY IN THE MEUSE-ARGONNE

We jumped the horses over narrow trenches and by the use of our helmets prepared the broader ones so the horses could go down in and come up on the other side. Passageways had to be cut through the belts of wire. Fortunately, the enemy's artillery was moving to the rear at this time, and with the exception of an occasional shell we crossed without trouble from the enemy. The enemy harassed our position at Cote 290 all during the night, but we sustained no serious casualties.

At 4:30 a. m. September 27, the squadron moved forward to Cheppy. We wormed our way through entanglements and trenches and now began to see the effects of the attack. Dead were lying about in groups, and at a cross-roads a few hundred yards south of Cheppy were the mangled bodies of eight Americans, a corporal and his squad, killed by a single shell hitting the cross-road. The sight was a silent lesson to our men of the danger of standing on cross-roads, where the enemy knew the range to every inch of the ground.

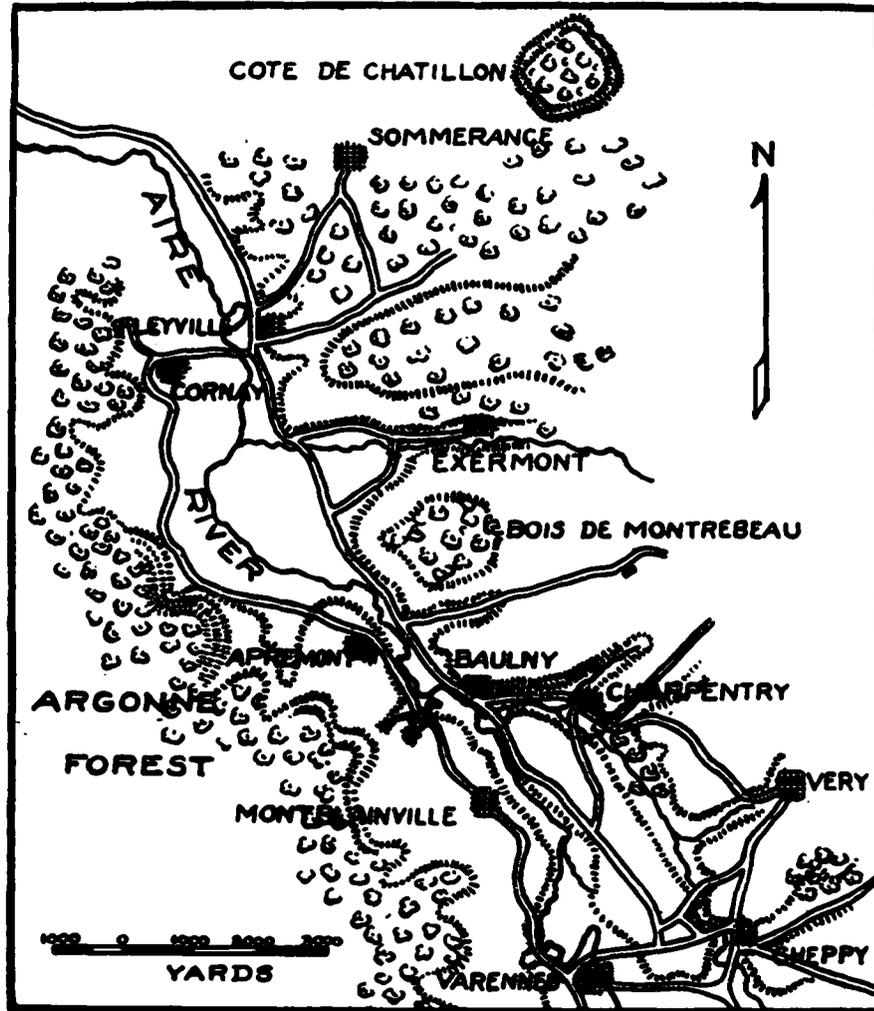
As we entered Cheppy, the enemy began to shell the town, and the squadron took cover on a reverse slope south of the town. On the evening of the 27th patrols of an officer and eight men were sent from each troop to the front lines. Two patrols took the right flank and two the left flank of the division. The patrols were to meet at the center of the division front line. Their mission was to ascertain the accurate location of the units of the front line and to name the units as they found them, for during the attack many units had become mixed together in line.

The patrols approached to points within 200 yards, in most cases, of the line under the cover of darkness and proceeded the rest of the way on foot. Considerable gas and H. E. was sent over by the enemy, which made the mission of the patrols difficult. For the next three nights these liaison officers' patrols were sent out, while there was continual daylight patrolling. Due to the technical information required, officers' patrols were necessary and the amount of patrolling called for, both day and night, was very fatiguing to the officers. Cavalry troops in the field should have at least five officers with each troop, as the reconnaissance work expected of cavalry and the technical information required necessitate patrols led by officers. Our squadron furnished practically all of the combat liaison for the 35th Division; for, in addition to the liaison patrols, after the second day of attack we furnished strong combat patrols on each flank of the division, as well as on the flanks of the two attacking columns in the center.

The squadron established its headquarters in a ravine just north of the Cheppy-Montfaucon road. Partial cover for the horses was found under the apple trees in the ravine, and some filthy German dugouts afforded cover for the men. Our patrols had many interesting experiences. Scarcely a patrol returned without some casualty from shell fire. The patrols were required to go out at all times, and the German artillery sniped at them with their

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

77'a. However, our men scorned the danger and rode about on their missions boldly, and even the doughboys hugging the ground admitted that our men were either ignorant of their danger or had lots of nerve.



Cavalry that keeps moving fast from place to place can proceed with its missions without serious danger from artillery fire. It is only when cavalrymen move slowly and with too much caution that they are in great danger from anything. The only severe casualties we had in any one unit was when

THE SECOND CAVALRY IN THE MEUSE-ARGONNE

that unit, either from orders or through an error of its leader, was caught tied down to the ground in one locality.

On September 29 we received a general order for an attack all along the line. Our mission in this attack, which was to begin at 5:30 a. m., was to cover the flanks of the division and prevent small bodies of the enemy from getting through between the flanks of our division and the divisions on our right and left; also to keep liaison with those divisions. To accomplish this mission, a troop was assigned to cover each flank of the division, with the remaining two troops as a reserve in rear of the line.

The attack was to start from Baulny Ridge, and our troops were to be in position near Charpentry at 4:30 a. m. The ground was traversed with belts of barbed wire, some high and other nearly invisible, being about ten inches high. The ground was rolling, a series of parallel ridges, and to move forward we must go over the tops and down the valleys. The artillery of the enemy had perfect observation and at times seemed to blow the tops of the ridges off the map. The narrow valley between Charpentry and Cheppy had been heavily shelled with gas all night preceding the attack. The concentration of the gas was not sufficient at 4:30 a. m. to affect the horses, but was heavy enough to require the wearing of the gas masks by the men. Just below Baulny many of our horses got into the low wire in the darkness and several were badly cut up.

A few incidents of this day's fighting will give the reader an idea of the character of the fighting and of the practically impossible conditions that we, as cavalry, were required to work under. The attack began at 5:30 a. m. Troop B covered the right, Troop F the left, Troop H the center, and Troop D was held as reserve near Charpentry.

Troop D was discovered at daylight by the enemy airplanes. No cover was available. All the surrounding terrain was taken up by the divisional artillery and infantry reserves. Enemy artillery immediately opened fire on the troop. The troop opened in a checker-board formation, but finally withdrew down the valley toward Cheppy, as its presence merely drew the enemy's artillery fire on our infantry reserves in the vicinity, and it could accomplish nothing where it was located.

Troop F moved out at 5:30 a. m. in line of section columns with 75 yard intervals. It passed over a ridge and descended into the Aire River valley. At once the German artillery, from a ridge of hills about 3,000 meters to the west, opened fire on the troop. There was no cover available; the German observation balloons were plainly visible down the valley, and the troop was within effective artillery range. To proceed down the valley was sure annihilation; to return back over the ridge was nearly as bad. The only course open was to cross the river toward the hostile batteries and get on the reverse slope of the high ground rising from the river bottom.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The enemy were bracketing in range. The river was narrow, deep and with almost perpendicular banks. There was a narrow bridge about 200 yards downstream and the troop was ordered to cross at a gallop. Although the Germans shifted their fire on the bridge at once, yet so swift was the movement of the troop that all crossed with the loss of only one man and three horses hit. The troopers dismounted and led their horses up the sides of the steep slope bordering the river. An enemy observation balloon kept their artillery informed of our movement and a barrage was laid in front of our position. However, the slope afforded perfect protection, under cover of which the troop was defiladed from the enemy's shell-fire.

Realizing that a troop was too large a force to maneuver under the conditions, and that the two American divisions on either bank of the river were being fought to a standstill, the commander directed that the troop be taken back to the squadron commander as soon as the barrage lifted, while with 20 men he moved north, under the protection of the slope, in a reconnaissance toward Apremont. The patrol rode to within 500 yards of Apremont, when it was fired on by a machine-gun in the town. The town was in possession of the enemy, although at that moment the 28th Division was attacking it from the plateau above the river bottom. Three prisoners were captured by the patrol at this time. Messages were sent back, giving the progress of the 28th Division and the information that the river bottom was clear of the enemy.

One could look across the river valley onto the plateau on the farther side and could see the attacking line of the 35th Division going into battle. It was an inspiring sight. The men were running forward in successive waves about 500 yards apart. A line of small tanks, with wide intervals, were on line with the attacking wave. The German artillery were pounding the plateau, and the air was filled with the smoke of the bursting H. E. and dust. Now a tank would be hit; now a shell seemed to swallow a line of doughboys, and all the while one could hear the incessant "tack-tack" of machine-guns. Just above where our patrol was covered the 28th Division were advancing on Apremont. By raising one's head above the bank one could see down the attacking line as it moved forward. The German batteries were pounding unmercifully the plain over which they were advancing.

Across the river, under the steep hill upon which rested the town of Baulny Troop H could be seen, dismounted, hugging the reverse slope for cover. There was nothing they could do. The main attack was only a few hundred yards in front of them, and their presence in the open simply drew more artillery fire on our infantry. Surely cavalry was out of place in a battle where the line moves forward only a kilometer in a whole day, while the enemy has the high ground and his aërial observation is perfect. The patrol moved south from Apremont and joined the squadron at Charpentry, being

THE SECOND CAVALRY IN THE MEUSE-ARGONNE

again the target of artillery, by the fire of which three men were badly wounded. Only by rapid gaits and maneuvering were our cavalry patrols able to live at all under the fire they went through.

On the right flank Troop B kept liaison with the 91st Division. This troop also got caught under a barrage and was saved serious casualties by a quick movement under cover. Several messages were sent in of importance. Among them was the accurate location of a German battery that had been inflicting losses on the right flank of the 35th Division. On one occasion a strong combat patrol succeeded in outflanking a machine-gun nest that was holding up the extreme right of the line. It drove the enemy out by dismounted rifle fire, having reached the flanking position mounted.

At nightfall the troops returned to Cheppy. Many important messages were delivered and practically all the liaison to the flanks was performed by the cavalry patrols. Many of our horses were hit and in cases the escapes of the troopers were miraculous. In fact, the men felt safer mounted than when on the ground and their experiences seemed to justify this idea. Our morale was not of the best. Our infantry reserves received many casualties from shell fire directed at our patrols and we were not a welcome addition to their attack on this account. In the evening four officers' patrols were sent out, as usual. Our horses showed signs of the lack of forage and of the hard work. The ration at this time was one-half of the regular allowance of oats and one-third that of hay.

The attack was renewed the next day, the squadron having the same mission as on the previous day. Troop D was detached from the squadron about noon this day and was sent to the 5th Corps, to act as advance military police and traffic control in the vicinity of Montfaucon.

Before leaving the sector the captain of Troop D led a patrol to the center of the 35th Division line and returned with information of our artillery fire and the lack of liaison between units. He found a portion of the line in which men of four regiments were mixed together, with no officer in command. The captain took charge until an officer from brigade headquarters was sent to relieve him. The main body of the squadron was kept under cover this day, having learned that patrols were of more value at this stage of the fighting. A patrol from Troop F, led by a lieutenant, was badly shot up in Apremont, nearly every man, including the officer, being hit. Practically the entire liaison to the flanks and within the division combat line was furnished by our patrols this day. The squadron retired to a position near Charpentry about 3 p. m.

That evening the 35th Division fell back and dug in on Baulny Ridge. Due to severe losses during the day's attack, especially in officers, the line had become confused. Several of the officers of the squadron assisted the division staff officers in restoring cohesion in the line. The 1st Division relieved the

35th Division late that evening. The squadron was attached to the 1st Division and was ordered to remain at Cheppy, ready to move at a half hour's notice. The 1st Division had excellent organization and no liaison was required of us at first. The division headquarters stated that they had hopes of breaking the line, and in such an event wanted us to be in readiness to go through and keep contact, as we had done at St. Mihiel.

The weather was cold and rainy; the service had been nerve-racking, under the constant shell fire and night patrolling. For a few days after the 1st Division took over we had a lull in our activities. Our wagons came up from the rear with needed supplies, and the horses were given especial attention as to shoeing, etc. Horses that were wounded or run down were evacuated at this time. There was no opportunity for grazing. The saddling up and moving out in the darkness caused many saddle sores, on account of poor adjustment of equipment and the emaciated condition of the horses. As the horses were evacuated the troopers were sent back to regimental headquarters, 20 kilometers in rear. No replacements for horses could be had and our strength was diminishing from lack of mounts.

On October 4 we received orders to send mounted detachments to establish liaison between the P. C.'s of the 1st and 32d Divisions. Small patrols were ordered to report to the commanders of the infantry brigades for use in establishing liaison between brigades and advanced elements on the flanks. It was evident that the division commander realized the impossibility of using cavalry at this stage and found use for us as mounted messengers only in small numbers.

From October 4th to the 9th the squadron remained at Cheppy, sending out the required patrols and detachments. These patrols were led by officers. The men and horses were changed frequently, thus giving every one a rest. The patrols at the brigade P. C.'s were constantly under fire as they carried messages to the regiments on line and to the rear. The fact that we were used in this duty shows that, with all our methods of liaison, the mounted messenger is still the reliable means of communication when you have men that are not afraid to ride through the fire. Our men upheld the traditions of the cavalry in this respect. On October 9 the division continued the attack. The duty of our squadron was as follows: "The C. O. Cavalry Squadron will send suitable mounted patrols, each commanded by an officer, to report to the C. O.'s of the infantry brigades for liaison work to the front rear and laterally."

On the 10th of October the squadron moved out of Cheppy and advanced to Montrebeau Woods, just in rear of Exermont. From the latter position, in addition to the officers' patrols already engaged since the 4th, three additional strong patrols, each led by a captain, were sent out. The patrol from Troop B maintained liaison with the 28th Division, on our left, during the

day. The captain of Troop H led a mixed patrol of 50 men from B and H troops, and reported to the P. C. of the 2d Infantry Brigade. The brigade commander said that there was little he could use cavalry for at this time.

The patrol was finally ordered to select a position of cover for its horses near the Cote de Chatillon, and to proceed dismounted, and to hold a position in advance of our infantry line, sending patrols to reconnoiter and keep contact with the enemy during the night. It was expected that the enemy might fall back during the night, leaving only a small force on the front line to cover the withdrawal. If this was done, it was very logical for cavalry patrols to keep contact with any such movement, since airplanes could not detect a night movement. Such movements by the enemy were made during the Argonne attack at different times, but on this particular occasion the enemy did not retire, but instead reinforced this part of his front line.

During the night a patrol of four men, led by a lieutenant, reconnoitered the vicinity of Sommerance. The patrol was fired on and lost one man, captured. This man broke away later and got back to our infantry lines, giving information of the enemy in that locality. The Germans shelled all areas just in rear of the front lines all during the night. The main patrol, led by the captain of Troop H, escaped annihilation by a miracle. Their position was suddenly concentrated on by H. E. shell and gas, with the result that practically two-thirds of the horses were either killed, wounded, or gassed, and there were also many casualties among the men. The position occupied was on the actual front line held by the infantry. During the entire barrage, with no cover available, the cavalymen not being equipped with intrenching tools, the traditional discipline and courage of the regulars came to its own, as the outfit stuck to its mission without a murmur. The next day the captain left an officer and eight men with the brigade P. C. and returned with the remainder of the patrol to Montrebeau Woods.

On the evening of the 10th the captain of Troop F reported to the P. C. of the 1st Infantry Brigade with a patrol of 20 men. He received orders to take the patrol and reconnoiter the condition of our front line between Fleyville and Sommerance. One battalion of the 28th Division had swung across the Aire River and covered a part of our division sector, and it was reported that there existed a gap in echelon between this battalion and the left flank of the 1st Brigade. The captain was directed that in case such a gap existed he was to fill the gap and hold the line until morning, using such additional forces from the cavalry squadron as he might find necessary.

The patrol arrived at Fleyville at dusk. The enemy were shelling the town with gas. Fleyville was held by our infantry support line. Not caring to expose his patrol to the machine-gun fire and shelling coming from the ridge north of the town, the captain placed the patrol in an apple orchard near Fleyville and, with one N. C. O. and three men, proceeded dismounted to

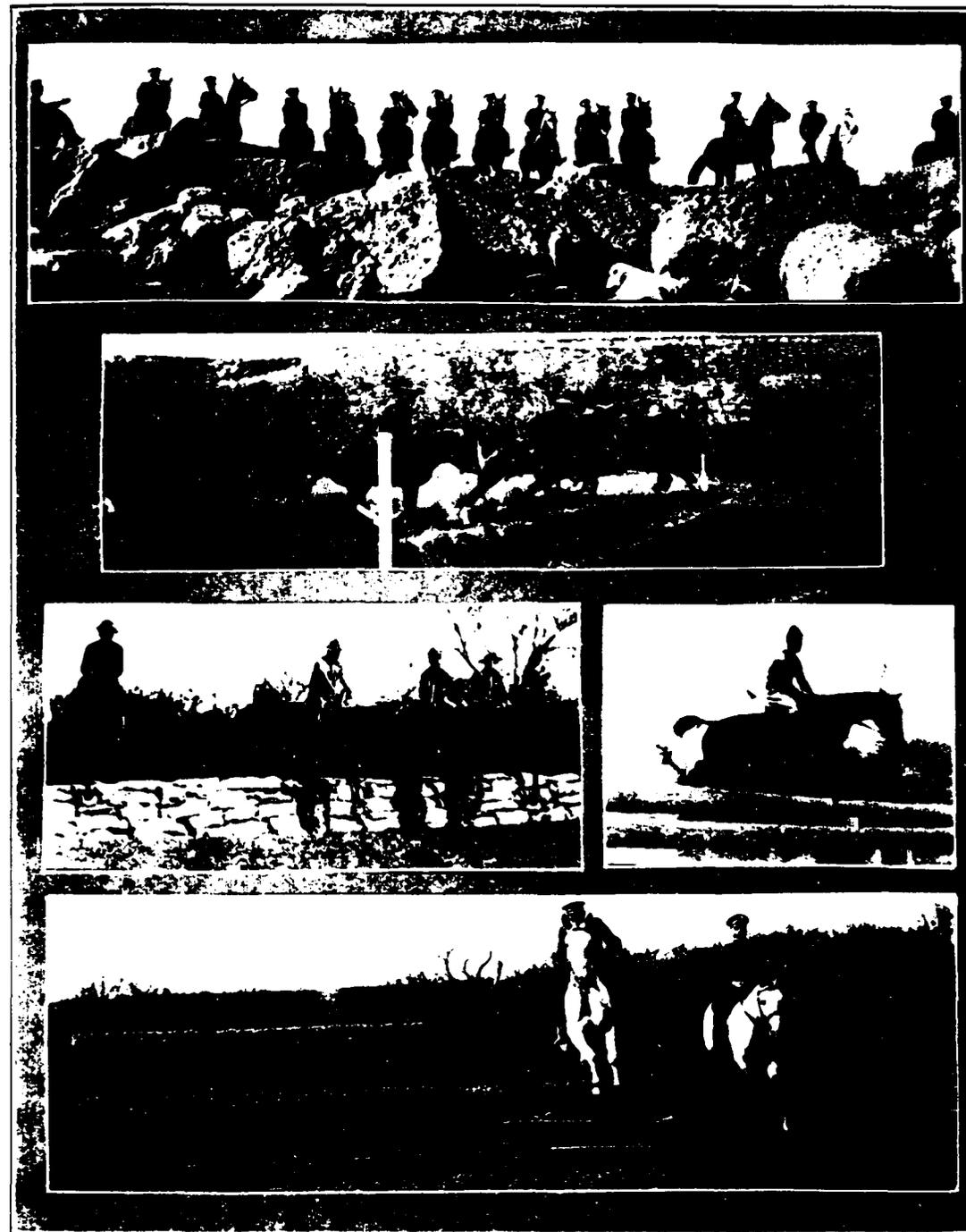
THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

reconnoiter the line. Our lines were found to be intact. Liaison had just been secured by the left battalion of the 16th Infantry. The patrol entered Sommerance, held by the enemy, and were driven out without loss. The captain passed down the infantry line and reported to the battalion commander information obtained; then, gathering up the patrol at Fleyville, reported back to the brigade commander at 2 a. m. During the entire evening the enemy laid down a severe, harassing fire all along the line.

The 42d Division relieved the First on the 11th, and all during this day and the following night Montrebeau Woods, where we were bivouacked, received harassing fire. The squadron moved about continually within the woods to escape casualties. The usual patrols were sent to the 42d Division P. C.'s. The 42d Division had hopes like the First, that the line would break, and retained us for a possible use in such an event. At this time we had less than 150 horses in the squadron. On the evening of October 16-17 the squadron was relieved, and it marched twenty kilometers to the rear, to Camp Malloy, near Rarecourt. After a brief rest of two days the squadron was divided, Troop F going to Avocourt to perform military police duty for the 5th Corps, Troop H and Troop B to military police duty with the 1st Corps, in the vicinity of St. Menehould and Fleury.

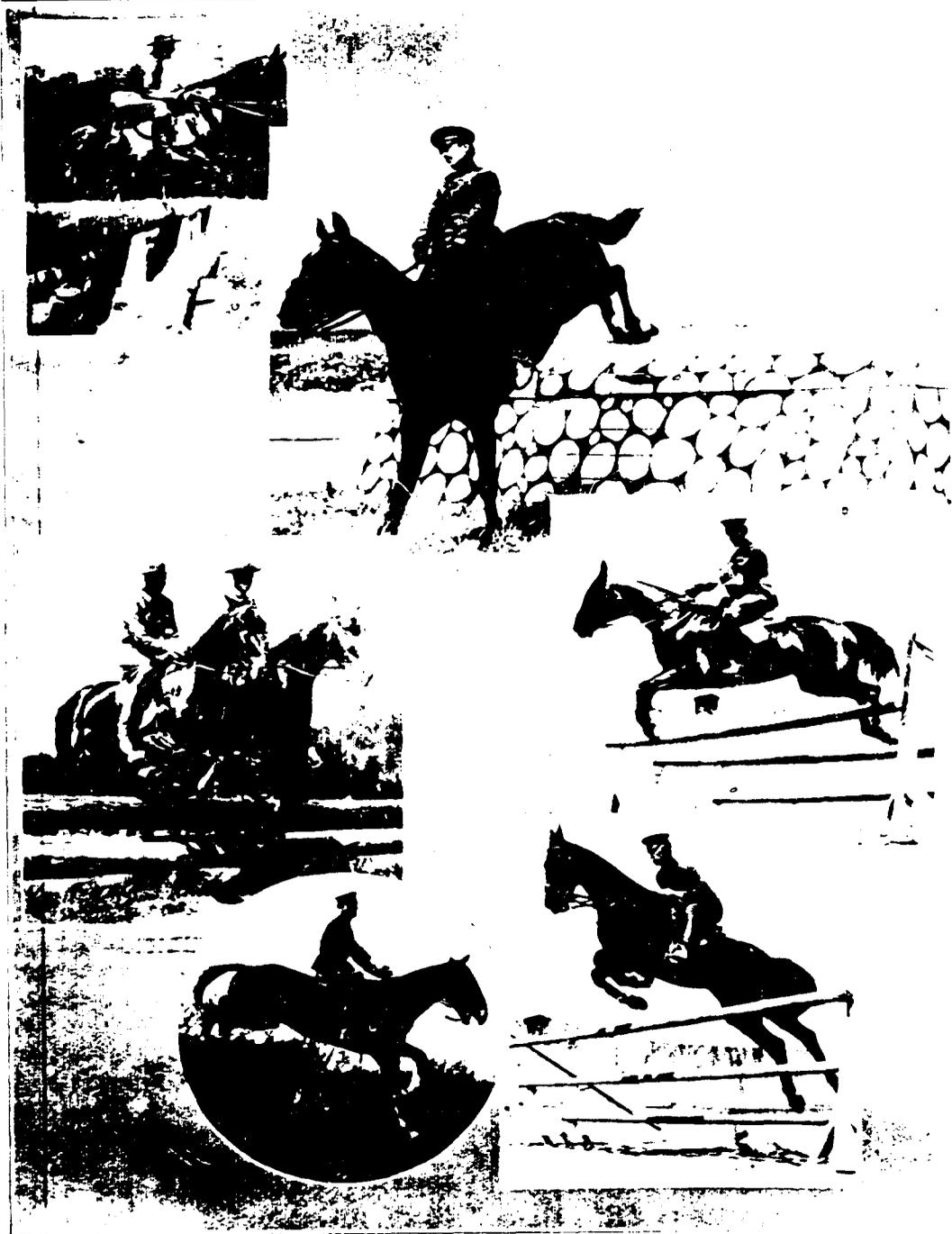
On November 1st a lieutenant and fifteen men from Troop F reported to the P. C. of the 1st Division at Beaumont. This patrol did excellent work in keeping contact with the German retreat from the 1st to the 11th of November. The patrol reached Sedan ahead of any allied troops and were on the go day and night. When the attack was over, on the 11th, ten of the fifteen men in the patrol had to walk back, as their horses were completely done for. They returned with seven horses, the remainder having been casualties, mainly from exhaustion, but in a good cause.

Here was a wonderful opportunity for cavalry. The corps commander told the lieutenant he wished he had a division of cavalry to send through on the morning of the 1st of November. It would have been a great opportunity for our squadron, a greater chance than at St. Mihiel; but when the chance came it found us with the squadron separated and only a few horses left. We sent all we had, however, were in at the finish, and spared neither men nor horses to give what the cavalry is supposed to give when called upon.



OUTSIDE RIDING—CAVALRY SCHOOL, FORT RILEY

By courtesy of THE RASP.



JUMPING—CAVALRY SCHOOL, FORT RILEY

The First Regiment of Cavalry, United States Army

(Continued from the October Number)

1865-1895

INDIAN CAMPAIGNS

UPON THE TERMINATION of the War of the Rebellion, the First Cavalry was ordered to Louisiana, arriving at New Orleans May 31 and remaining in that city or its immediate vicinity until December 29, when it embarked for California via the Isthmus of Panama. It took post at the Presidio of San Francisco January 22, Companies A, G, and K going February 5 to Drum Barracks, where Companies C, D, and E followed them February 17, Company L going to Sacramento. In June of the same year regimental headquarters went to Fort Vancouver, W. T., and the several companies had been distributed through Oregon, Washington Territory, Idaho, California, Nevada, and Arizona, no two being at the same station.

Owing to the vast extent of country guarded by the regiment, its service for many years following was very arduous. Scouting for Indians and escort duty of various kinds were incessant. Hardly a regimental return fails to record some expedition or report some Indian fight.

1866

Headwaters Malheur River, Ore., July 18-20-22, Company I; eleven Indians killed and many wounded; loss, one man killed. Near Camp Watson, Ore., September 2, Company I; one Indian killed and many women, children, and animals captured. Expedition from Owhyee River in September, Company M; many Indians killed; loss, one wounded. Expedition from Fort Bidwell, Calif., October 22-29, Company A; fourteen Indians killed, three women, four children, and entire camp captured; loss, one wounded. Expedition from Fort McDowell, A. T., September 22-October 3, Company E and detachment of C; fifteen Indians killed and ten captured. Scout from Camp Watson, Ore., October 8-24, Company I; three warriors killed and eight, with all the women, children, stock and provisions, captured. Sierra Anchos, November 17, Company E; six warriors killed and five captured. Scout from Camp Watson, Ore., November 16-24, lieutenant and 10 men of Company I; three Indians killed. Crook's expedition against Owhyee River Indians, battle of December 26, Company F; thirty warriors killed; loss of company, one killed and one wounded. Scout from Camp Wallen, A. T., December 9-15,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

part of Company G; three Apaches killed. Scout from Camp Watson, Ore., December 1-7, twenty men of Company I; fourteen Indians killed and five, with 28 head of stock, captured.

1867

Scout from Fort McDowell, January 7-9, and again January 27-31, Company E. Forks of Malheur River, Ore., January 9, Company F; thirty Indians and 43 head of stock captured. Stein's Mountain, I. T., January 29, Company M; band of 90 warriors attacked; 60 killed and 27 captured. Escort consisting of one officer and 21 men of Company E attacked by Indians in Arizona, February 23; loss, one man wounded. Scout from Camp Independence, Calif., March 7-13, twelve men of Company D; twelve warriors killed or wounded. Dunder and Blitzen Creek, Ore., horses and pack-mules of Company H stampeded by Indians; the company was put afoot. Scout from Camp Watson, Ore., in May, eleven men of Company I; one Indian killed and three captured. Scout from Camp Wallen, A. T., June 9-24, Company G; three Indians killed. Malheur River, Ore., July 7 and 19, Company I; four warriors killed and 22 captured. Silver River, Ore., September 6 and 16, Company A; twenty-four Indians killed and 19 captured; loss, two men wounded. Crook's expedition against hostiles of Oregon and northern California, August 23-October 5, Companies F, H, and M; Company H in fight at "Infernal Caverns," near Pitt River, September 26 to 28; Indians completely routed; loss, Lieutenant Madigan and four men killed and four men wounded. Scout from Camp Wallen, A. T., in December, Company G; one Indian killed and four captured.

1868

Dunder and Blitzen Creek, Ore., March 14, Company H; band of Indians exterminated; Lieutenant Parnell and one man wounded. Malheur River, Ore., April 5, Company F; thirty-two Indians killed and two captured. Skirmish with Indians in Arizona, May 1; one man of Company C wounded. Scout from Camp Lyon, I. T., May 26-31, eight men of Company M; thirty-four Indians killed. Scout from Camp Harney, Ore.; fight on May 31, in which five Indians were killed and the remainder surrendered; loss, one man wounded. Near Camp Reno, A. T., June 16, four men of Company E killed while escorting mail. Morgan's Ranch, A. T., July 21, one man of Company K killed. Scout from Fort Reno, A. T., in July, Company E; one Indian killed; loss, one man wounded.

1869

Scout from Camp Lowell, January 13, Company G; one Indian killed and one wounded. Expedition against Arivaypa Apaches, February 2; detachments of Companies G and K; eight Indians killed and eight captured. Expedition against Apaches in March, Company G; three Indian camps of 105 huts

20

FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. A.

destroyed. Fight at Mount Turnbull, A. T., April 29, Companies G and K; twenty-eight Indians killed and eight captured. Fight with Indians in Arizona, May 11; seven men of Company G; one man wounded. Scout from Camp Grant, May 22, Company K; four Indians killed. Fights on Rio Pinto, June 2 and 4, Company E; twenty-two Indians killed and four captured. Scout from Camp Bowie, June 30, Company G; four Indians captured. Expedition to White Mountains of Arizona, July and August; Company L and detachment of K; fifteen Indians killed and eight captured. Pursuit of marauders of Cochise's band, October 8, Company G; twelve Indians killed and stolen stock recovered. Fight with Cochise's band, October 31, Companies C, G, and L; two Indians killed. Scout from Camp McDowell, A. T., December 9-11; twenty men of Company E; entire band of eleven Mojave Apaches killed.

1870-1872

Skirmish with Cochise's band, January 27, 1870, Company G; thirteen Indians killed and two captured. Attack on rancheria in Tonto Valley, A. T., May 25, Company E; twenty-one Indians killed and twelve captured. Scout from Camp Grant, June 1-9, Company K; thirty-seven Indians killed. Skirmish in the Penal Mountains, A. T., August 1, 25 men of Company K; six Indians killed; loss, one man killed. Penal Mountains, October 29, Company C; four Indians killed; loss, two men wounded.

Penal Mountains, January 1, 1871, Company G; nine Indians killed. Scout from Camp Apache, A. T., February 16-27, Companies L and M; rancheria of San Carlos, Apaches attacked, capturing horses and destroying food and camp equipage. Scout from Fort Whipple, A. T., September 30, Company A; seventeen warriors killed.

Fight at Bad Rock Mountains, December 11, 1872, detachments from Companies L and M; fourteen Indians killed and many wounded. Attack on Apache rancheria, December 13, 1872, detachments of Companies L and M; eleven Indians killed and six captured. Scouts from Camp Verde, A. T., December 23, 1872, January 4, 1873, February 1-16 and 18, 1873, March 7, 1873, Company I; eight Indians killed, three squaws and two children captured. Engagement with Apaches, May 6, 1873, Company A; four Indians killed.

Regimental headquarters were transferred from Fort Vancouver to Camp Warner, Ore., in May, 1870, and thence to Benecia Barracks, in October of the same year. Just two months later, December 15, 1870, Colonel Blake was retired from active service on his own application, and Colonel A. C. Gillem, of the 11th Infantry, was transferred to the First Cavalry in his stead.

THE MODOC WAR—1872-3.

Company B left Fort Klamath, Ore., November 28, 1872, for the purpose of arresting "Captain Jack" and the leaders of his band of Modocs, and at

21

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

daylight on the 29th surprised the Indians in their camp near Lost River, Ore. The Indians refused to surrender and an engagement followed, in which eight Indians were killed and many wounded, and the camp, squaws, and property were captured. The company lost two men killed and six wounded, two of them mortally. The company then went into camp at Crowley's Ranch, on Lost River, opposite the Indian camp.

Company G, from Fort Bidwell, took station December 13 at Land's Ranch, Tule Lake, near the Indian stronghold. Lieutenant-Colonel Wheaton, 21st Infantry, was placed in command of the assembled forces, which included a number of volunteers. The Indians attacked the camp at Land's Ranch December 21 and were repulsed. Company G incurred a loss of two men killed in this attack. Company B now joined Company G and the two companies marched against the Indians, January 16, 1873, in conjunction with Wheaton's column, which included Company F, a detachment of Company H, three companies of the 21st Infantry, and the volunteers. The regular troops, all told, numbered about 125 men. The volunteers were of little account.

Companies B and G, under the command of Captain Reuben F. Bernard, moved to the attack of the Modoc stronghold in the most inaccessible part of the formidable Lava Beds, and in the fog advanced too close before they discovered their position. In order not to precipitate an engagement before Wheaton's column, coming from another direction, could get up, Captain Bernard withdrew his forces, and in so doing drew upon his little command a violent attack of the savages. The companies repulsed the attack with a loss of three wounded.

An attack was made by both divisions of the command the following day, the fight raging fiercely in the Lava Beds, where the Indians fell back from rock to rock, themselves invisible. After nightfall, as the two fractions of the command failed to join, the troops fell back. In this fight the regiment lost two men killed and two officers, Captain Perry and Lieutenant Kyle, and eight men wounded, one mortally.

Company K, from Fort Halleck, Nev., joined the battalion February 18. The regiment was now represented in this campaign by Companies B, F, G, H, and K, all under Captain Biddle, who was soon succeeded by Captain Bernard. Colonel Gillem, 1st Cavalry, assumed command of the expedition. The news of the disaster in the Lava Beds, in which the troops had lost 43 officers and men, spread terror throughout the country. Brigadier General E. R. S. Canby was sent to the seat of hostilities and an armistice was concluded, while Government commissioners endeavored to bring the Indians to a more peaceable frame of mind, without result. The wily savages disarmed the suspicions of the white leaders and in a conference held between the Indian stronghold and the military camp they managed to take the negotiators by surprise and foully

FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. A.

attacked them, killing General Canby and Doctor Thomas. The troops came to the rescue at once and drove the Indians back into their stronghold, which they were restrained with great difficulty by their officers from assaulting without further delay. This treachery of the Indians transpired April 11, 1873.

During the night of April 14 the companies of the 1st Cavalry moved with the rest of the command to invest the Modoc stronghold, and in the "Second Battle of the Lava Beds," April 15, 16, and 17, drove the Indians out of their position and into the rocks and mountains. The regiment lost two men killed and two wounded.

April 26, Captain Evan Thomas, 4th Artillery, was sent with a reconnoitering party to locate the defeated Indians. This detachment was surprised and, becoming panic-stricken, was cut to pieces. Major John Green, 1st Cavalry, took all the available men of his camp, including Companies B, F, and G, and went to the scene of the massacre and brought off a number of dead and wounded.

Companies B and G were part of a detachment which was attacked by the Indians, May 10, at Sorass Lake, Calif. The attack was in the nature of a surprise, at daybreak. Apparently the command had failed to take proper measures for security. A volley was suddenly fired into the camp from a near-by rocky ridge, which caused much confusion. Men rolled over behind saddles and bundles of blankets, fastening belts and pulling on boots under a hail of bullets and gravel scattered by the bullets. The officers, some little distance in the rear, having to put on boots and coats, could not immediately join the men and assume command. There was danger of a panic. But this was happily averted by the action of Sergeant Thomas Kelly, of Company G, who sprang up and called to the men to charge. The troopers responded with a vim. Fifty men joined in the charge, which swept the savages off the ridge. The loss to the troops was five men killed and twelve wounded. The troops took up the pursuit and chased the Indians for some distance through the lava beds.

On May 17, Companies B, G, and K, with a battery of the 4th Artillery, serving as cavalry, all under Major Green, came upon a band of Modocs, which they drove five miles. The troops continued to follow the trail, and on May 22 70 Indians—men, women, and children—surrendered. "Boston Charlie" was captured May 29, and on the 31st "Sconchin," "Scarfacd Charlie," and 27 other Indians surrendered. Companies F and H were sent from Applegate's Ranch May 31 to follow up those of the Modocs who had eluded Green's command, and found them June 1st, when the whole party surrendered. With the capture of "Captain Jack," the Modoc War ended, and by the end of June the companies which had been engaged in it returned to their proper stations.

The companies left in Arizona were moved north, and by the end of Oc-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

tober, 1873, headquarters with Companies A and D were at Benecia Barracks; B at Fort Klamath; C at Camp McDermitt, Nev.; E at Fort Lapwai, I. T.; F, L, and M at Fort Walla Walla, W. T.; G, at Camp Bidwell, Calif.; H and K at Camp Harney, Ore., and I at Camp Halleck, Nev.

Colonel Gillem died at his residence, in Nashville, Tenn., December 2, 1875, and was succeeded by Colonel Cuvier Grover, promoted from the 3d Cavalry.

NEZ PERCÉ CAMPAIGN, 1877

On June 15, 1877, Companies F and H, under Captain Perry, were ordered to proceed to Camas Prairie to the assistance of the settlers of Mount Idaho, I. T., who were threatened by the Nez Percé Indians under Chief Joseph. Learning that the Indians were crossing Salmon River and could be taken at a disadvantage, the march was given that direction and Chief Joseph's camp was found and taken by surprise, but the Indians quickly rallied and repulsed the troops with severe loss, Lieutenant E. W. Theller, 21st Infantry (attached), and 33 men being killed and two wounded.

All the companies of the regiment, except M, at Colville, and A, at Camp Harney, watching the Piutes, were now ordered into the field against the Nez Percés. Companies E and L joined General Howard's command June 21, and on July 1 surprised and attacked the camp of "Looking Glass," on the Clearwater, I. T. The village was entirely destroyed, several Indians killed, and about a thousand ponies captured. On July 2 the same command attempted to form a junction with Company F, which was on its way from Lapwai. On the 3d the Indians ambushed the advance guard, consisting of Lieutenant S. M. Rains, ten men of the battalion, and two civilian scouts, killing them all, and were then found to be in such force and so strongly posted that it was considered imprudent to attack them. The junction with Company F was effected, however, on July 4, and the same afternoon the Indians attacked, the fight lasting until sunset. The battalion (E, F, and L) joined General Howard at Grangerville, July 8. Company H had joined July 2, and the battalion was commanded by Captain David Perry.

On the 11th of July General Howard crossed the Clearwater with his whole command and moved down that stream with Company H in the advance. The Indian camp was discovered and at once attacked, the fight lasting two days and ending with the retreat of the Indians. Company B joined in time to take part in the fight on the 12th. The regiment lost three men killed and four wounded.

The battalion made a reconnoissance July 18, on the Lo-Lo trail, and the Indian scouts accompanying it were ambushed and met with considerable loss. One Nez Percé was killed.

Major Sanford's battalion, consisting of Companies C, D, I, and K, joined General Howard on the Clearwater, July 28, and the expedition across the

FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. A.

Lo-Lo trail began on the 30th. Companies B, C, I, and K, under Major Sanford, accompanied it, and Companies D, E, G, and L, with other troops under Major Green, constituted the "reserve column," which remained at Camas Prairie until August 5, when it moved near to Mount Idaho and established a permanent camp, called Camp Howard. Companies F and H were stationed at Fort Lapwai.

General Howard's trying and "stern" march across the Lo-Lo trail and the final surrender of Chief Joseph to General Miles at Bear Paw Mountains are matters of history. In the Indian attack at Camas Creek, August 20, Companies B and L were engaged, losing one man killed and one wounded. At Judith Basin the battalion was detached from General Howard's command and directed to return, and all the companies had reached their stations by the end of November.

Company K and a detachment of C, attached to General Sturgis' command, took part in the engagement with the Nez Percés at Canyon Creek, M. T., September 13, 1877.

THE BANNOCK WAR, 1878

At the outbreak of the Bannock War, in May, 1878, Company G was the first body of troops to reach the scene of hostilities, and Captain Bernard reported that the Indians numbered from 300 to 500. They were moving toward Stein's Mountain, Ore. The whole of the 1st Cavalry was at once ordered into the field, and Colonel Grover was sent to Fort Boise to take charge of operations there. Companies D, I, and K were with him.

Companies F and L joined Company G on the Owyhee, June 17, and the three companies reached Camp Harney on the 21st, where they were joined by Company A. These four companies were designated the "left column" by General Howard.

On the morning of June 23 the left column struck the main camp of the hostiles on Silver Creek and drove the Indians out of it and onto a cut-bank, made by the creek, which had been prepared for defense. The action lasted into the night, and in the morning it was found that the Indians were gone. Many Indians were killed and the camp was destroyed. The battalion lost two killed and three wounded. Company K joined the battalion June 27, and on the 28th the cavalry cut loose from the foot troops and pushed forward on the trail of the Indians. The fertile John Day Valley was saved in great part by this vigorous pursuit, and on July 5 General Howard overtook the command, arriving with it at Pilot Rock on the 7th. Here it was joined by Companies E and H. The Indian camp was located, and at sunrise on July 8th Captain Bernard moved his battalion to the attack.

The Indians, about 300 in number, occupied the crest of the high and steep hills near Birch Creek and were at once attacked, Captain Bernard giving

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the first example of fighting cavalry on foot without separating the men from the horses. All the companies except A, with the pack-train, were deployed and used in the engagement, and the Indians were driven from three successive positions, and finally four or five miles farther into the mountains. Four men were wounded, one mortally, and probably twenty horses were killed. The enemy's loss could not be told; their women, children, and best horses were sent off, seemingly toward the Grande Ronde, before the action began.

Lieutenant C. E. S. Wood, A. D. C., says: "The entire fight was closely watched by the general commanding, who desires to express his opinion that no troops ever behaved better or in a more soldierly manner than did the officers and men engaged in this encounter." The command camped for the night among the rough canyons adjacent to the battlefield.

Captain Bernard was now directed to take his command, except Company K, to Fort Walla Walla to refit. Company K was sent to join the infantry column, and with it moved to the Umatilla Agency, near which the hostiles were reported to be. Here the Indians made an attack July 13. Companies A, E, F, G, H, and I, now under Lieutenant Colonel J. W. Forsyth, 1st Cavalry, left Fort Walla Walla, 2 p. m., July 13, headed for Lewiston, I. T.; but when a few miles out the command was overtaken by a courier with news that Captain Evan Miles, with most of the 21st Infantry and Company K, 1st Cavalry, were hard pressed in a fight at Umatilla Agency. Turning about, Forsyth marched the remainder of the day and all that night, but before reaching Miles the latter had driven the Indians into the mountains. He was ably assisted by Company K, which, under Lieutenant Wainwright, made a splendid charge, for which a brevet was awarded that officer. Seven of the enemy's dead were later found on the field. Their retreat was to the south, through middle Oregon, Forsyth overtaking their rear guard at the canyon of North Fork of the John Day River, where on the 20th the Indians ambushed the advance guard, with a loss to the troops of one killed and two wounded. The Indians had a strong position, but they soon retreated south toward Malheur Agency. They were thoroughly demoralized, and their trail through this difficult mountainous country, much of it all but impassable by reason of fallen timber, was marked by abandoned camp paraphernalia and dead ponies, and the troops even picked up a month-old papoose which some squaw had abandoned. After due consideration, it was decided the regimental adjutant was the proper custodian for the little copper-colored "prisoner," and that officer, needless to say, had plenty of callers that evening, who gave him an abundance of "chaff" and advice on how to bring up a baby on a diet of hard bread and bacon.

The regiment's losses in animals were hardly less than those of the Indians, and to prevent horses from falling into the hands of the savages they were shot as fast as they gave out. There was rarely any forage available

FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. A.

other than grazing. One afternoon it was reported that the Indians were just ahead. A rapid gait was taken, with a resulting loss of 33 animals for that day. At "Burnt Meadows" the battalion was joined by Companies D and I, under Major Sanford, and on the 27th it went into camp at Malheur Agency to await supplies. The hostiles had now split up into many small parties, which were followed up and nearly all ultimately captured.

During the months of September and October the companies were sent to their permanent stations, and the return for November 30 shows Companies A and E at Camp Harney, Ore.; B, D, F, K, and M at Fort Walla Walla, W. T.; C at Camp Bidwell, Calif.; G at Fort Boise, I. T.; H at Fort Colville, W. T.; I at Camp Halleck, Nev., and L at Fort Klamath, Ore.

THE SHEEPEATER CAMPAIGN, 1879

In 1879 occurred what is known as the "Sheepeater" Indian campaign against renegade Indians in the excessively mountainous and then unexplored region of middle Idaho, south of the Salmon River. The participants were Captain Bernard and Lieutenant Pitcher, with Company G from Fort Boise; Lieutenants Farrow, 21st Infantry, and W. C. Brown, 1st Cavalry, with some 50 men of the 2d Infantry. There were two engagements, viz., July 20, in which the infantry was defeated and had two men wounded, and again August 20, when the hostiles attacked Bernard's rear guard and pack-train, but were soon driven off with a loss to the troops of one infantryman fatally and another slightly wounded. The hostiles, including their families, numbering about 50, finally surrendered to the scouts. (See Report Sec. of War, 1879, Volume I, page 163.)

In the year 1881, Companies C, G, I, and M were sent to Arizona, and on October 2 Company G, with other troops, was in action near Cedar Springs with Apaches. The hostiles fought with great boldness and desperation and the fight lasted until 9.00 p. m., when the Indians escaped. Company G had two men wounded and twelve horses killed.

On the 4th of October Companies G and I had a running fight near South Pass of the Dragoon Mountains, in which the hostiles were followed into Sonora, Mexico.

In October, 1881, the "companies" began to be designated "troops" on the regimental return.

Troop G returned to Fort McDermott, November 9; Troop I to Camp Halleck, December 27; Troop M to the Presidio of San Francisco, January 20, 1882, and Troop C to Fort Bidwell, April 16.

In June, 1884, the regiment was transferred to the Department of Dakota, after a tour of nearly thirty years on the Pacific coast, during the greater part of which time its stations were remote from civilization and its duties of a most arduous and thankless character.

Headquarters and Troops D, G, I, K, and M went to Fort Custer; A, C, and F went to Fort Maginnis; E to Fort Ellis; H and L to Fort Assiniboine; and B to Fort Keogh.

Colonel Grover died at Atlantic City, N. J., June 5, 1885, and was succeeded by Colonel N. A. M. Dudley, promoted from the 9th Cavalry.

Conflict with the "Crows" came in the fall of 1887, and on the morning of November 4 Colonel Dudley left Fort Custer with Troops A, B, D, E, G, and K and Company B, 3d Infantry, with a section of Hotchkiss guns, to arrest "Sword Bearer" and the Indians who had fired into the agency buildings on the night of September 30.

On the 5th a demand was made upon the Indians for the surrender of these men, and they were given an hour and a half to comply with the demand. At the end of that time the battalion of the First Cavalry, with Moylan's troop of the 7th Cavalry on the right, moved out in front of camp. At the same time a great commotion was observed in the Indian camp and "Sword Bearer" and another chief dashed out, leading from 120 to 150 warriors equipped for battle. The Indians charged, but were repulsed and fell back into the timber along the river, where they had dug many rifle pits, from which they now kept up a constant fire. This fire was returned, and "Sword Bearer" was seen to fall, when all fighting quickly ceased. All the Indians whose surrender had been demanded and who had not been killed were at once brought in and delivered to the department commander, who sent them to Fort Snelling. The cavalry battalion returned to Fort Custer on the 13th.

Colonel Dudley was retired from active service August 20, 1889, and was succeeded by Colonel J. S. Brisbin, promoted from the 9th Cavalry. On the 31st of December of that year Headquarters and Troops B, D, E, G, and M were at Fort Custer; A and L at Fort Maginnis; C, F, and H at Fort Assiniboine; I at Fort Leavenworth, and K at Camp Sheridan, Wyoming.

In April, 1890, the Cheyennes assumed a threatening attitude and their agent called for protection upon the commanding officer of Fort Custer, who sent Major Carroll with Troops B, D, and M to the Tongue River Agency, where they established Camp Crook. In September a white boy was murdered by "Head Chief" and "Young Mule," and every attempt to arrest the murderers failed. On the 11th they sent word that they would attack the agency, and on the 12th made their appearance on a hill commanding the agency buildings, where they opened fire upon them. They were soon dislodged and killed.

The regiment took part in the operations against the hostile Sioux in the winter of 1890-91, but was not brought into actual contact with them.

In December, 1890, word having been received that a troop of cavalry was surrounded by hostile Indians at or near Cave Hills, Mont., Troop A made one of the most remarkable marches on record in going to its relief. It marched

186 miles, 95 of which were made in 25 hours and 170 in 53½ hours. The report which caused such tremendous exertion proved to be without foundation.

On the 22d of April, 1891, Colonel Brisbin was transferred to the 8th Cavalry and Colonel A. K. Arnold, who had been the lieutenant-colonel, now became the colonel of the First. In May, 1891, Troop A was ordered from Fort Custer to Fort Myer, Va., for station.

In 1892 the regiment was transferred to the Department of Arizona, relieving the 10th Cavalry, Headquarters and Troops C, E, F, H, and K going to Fort Grant, A. T.; B and I to Fort Bayard, N. M.; D to Fort Apache, A. T., and G to San Carlos. Troop A was at Fort Myer, Va., and was not moved. After its arrival in Arizona the regiment was not engaged in any serious Indian difficulties, although the several troops were kept in practice in field-work by that ever-active and elusive "Kid," who has been responsible for more movements of troops than any Indian ever known.

During 1892, 1893, 1894, and 1895 the troops of the regiment were engaged in numerous scouts after Indian renegades, murderers, other marauding Indians, and Mexican horse thieves, fighting forest fires, patrolling and guarding the Mexican border.

Troop E, in December, 1892, took station at San Carlos, A. T., relieving Troop G, which returned to Fort Grant for station. Troop E was relieved in turn November, 1893, by Troop C, from Grant, which remained there until October, 1894, when it proceeded to Grant for station. Troops from Fort Grant garrisoned San Carlos during 1894 and 1895 by monthly details of troops. Troop A arrived at Fort Stanton, N. M., from Fort Myer, Va., in October, 1894.

Troop L was skeletonized in March, 1895, the last of the Indian enlisted men having been discharged and officers and records of the troop transferred from Fort Custer, Mont., to Fort Grant, A. T.



When Led Horses Follow Too Close Behind

Incident of 1914 Related by Captain von Cramm, of the 16th Uhlan Regiment

(Translated by Colonel J. S. Herron, Cavalry)

I WAS GIVEN a patrol and ordered to reconnoiter the route of the advance through Conde en Brie to Breuil, while a second patrol of the 4th squadron was to work forward on Montigny.

We could ride together as far as Conde, but as we neared the place we were fired upon. I sent back a message, but I believed that it was only with a weak force that we had to deal; then took the horses of both patrols aside into a gravel-pit, and advanced with eleven dismounted troopers on the village. All was quiet; no shots fell. "I believe that the village is now free," said I to the other patrol leader; whereupon he decided to ride forward and, with his patrol, again mounted up. We now go cautiously at a walk into the village, the Uhlans of the 4th squadron mounted, I with three Uhlans dismounted alongside of them. Still nothing stirred. I look through the glasses and the troopers halt, there raging toward us comes a grass fire. Two machine-guns and thirty to forty Frenchmen open up a rapid fire at 300 meters from us. The mounted troopers gallop back; we four jump into the ditch alongside the road. We dash again, however, on a run back to our horses. It babbled and crackled all around us on the road as if some one was throwing a handful of peas around our legs.

A hundred steps more and, out of breath, we reach our horses. Instead of eight, however, there are only two there. The horse holders had foolishly followed us up the road instead of remaining in the gravel pit. While leading them they had come into the line of fire of the French, and had now lost control of them, especially since two of them were wounded. To make matters worse, the patrol galloping to the rear charged in among them, and now the whole detachment stampeded away. It was noteworthy that not one of us was hit.

The Arab Horse in Campaign

BY

Captain JOHN N. MERRILL, Cavalry

MY OBSERVATIONS of the Arab extend over a period of nearly seven years, during which time I rode Arabs exclusively over all sorts of country and under all conditions of weather—rain, heat, and winter's cold—and are based as well upon extensive experience in buying many hundreds of horses. I mention this only to show that what I write is based on actual, personal observation.

The horse of which I write is the Persian Arab, which is, it is true, not as pure as the desert stock, but is nevertheless an Arab horse in size, gentleness, beauty, and endurance.

All we were able to feed our horses was barley and wheat straw, and for a very short time each spring a little green fodder. Hay, as we know it, was unobtainable. In garrison the horses received one and a half mans of grain and two mans of straw, a man being equal to about six and one-third pounds. On the march we literally lived off the country and fed what we could get. As grazing was impossible, except for a short period in the spring as above stated, it often happened that the animals got but a scant man of grain a day and no straw at all, or the straw might be available and no barley. In spite of this haphazard feeding, the Arabs keep well, hardy, and in good condition.

I wish to mention some instances of endurance on the part of Persian Arabs that are, to my mind, worth recording as illustrations of their stamina under adverse conditions.

In August, 1916, an officer and seven men were suddenly ordered to proceed from Kerman, in southwestern Persia, to Saidabad, approximately 140 miles to the south of Kerman. The detachment, carrying lightly packed saddles, left Kerman at 9 p. m. on the 19th of August, and at 11.30 p. m. stopped for the night at Saadatabad, after having made 3 farsaks over gravelly desert plateau at an elevation of about 7,000 feet. (The farsak, or ancient Greek parasang, is about 3.75 English miles.) Camp was made in an open field and horses and men all felt the chill of the night. One-third man of grain per horse, with no straw, was fed.

At 7:30 a. m. the detail proceeded on the 20th to the edge of a mountain range, the trail during the day being across open, somewhat stony desert; distance, 8 farsaks. After 3 farsaks a halt had been made for lunch. The foot of the mountains were reached at sunset. Halt was made until 9 p. m. the same night, when the officer in charge, who had up to this time been proceeding

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

at a rather leisurely pace, decided that information he had received made it imperative that he push on to Saidabad as fast as bad road conditions would allow.

At 9 p. m., on an inky black night, through a narrow mountain pass, with the trail full of rough stones and with many sharp ascents and descents, the small party of cavalry proceeded to the little village of Bardsir, just out of the pass to the south, arriving there at 3 a. m., having covered 5 farsaks, much of the way so bad that a pocket flash-lamp had to be used to avoid falling into ravines. Halt was made at Bardsir until 8.30 a. m. the same morning, when the detail went on over rolling country to Bid Kkab, arriving there at 2 a. m. of the 21st, all of the night journey again being through a mountain pass; distance traveled, 16 farsaks.

The detachment rested until 9 a. m. of the same morning, when the march was resumed until 3 farsaks had been covered, when a short halt was made for lunch, after which 5 farsaks were traversed over open country to the destination, at Saidabad, which was reached at 6.30 p. m. The horses arrived tired, but in good condition, with the exception of one small animal that had sprained a tendon the previous night in the pass. The total distance covered was 40 farsaks, or 140 English miles.

Except at Bardsir, straw was not to be had, barley only being fed at the other halts. From 9 p. m. the night of the 20th, wherever the road (or rather trail) permitted, the gaits were walk, trot, and gallop. During the daytime halts were made every two hours, horses unsaddled, backs briskly hand-rubbed, packs and cinchas adjusted, and then on again. Water-holes were few and far between. *There was not a single sore back* upon the arrival of the horses at Saidabad. None of the gaits were held for over ten minutes and several times the horses were led, for a change, but there was comparatively little leading done. The men stood the trip as well as the horses and the entire detachment made the last 20 miles into Saidabad at a very fast gait, galloping several times, as no attempt was made the last day to spare the horses.

In September, 1912, Eyphrem Khan, the Armenian leader of an expeditionary force against the Salar-ed-dowleh, told the writer that several times the Salar had escaped him by fleeing alone on the back of an Arab mare. Eyphrem stated as a fact that the Salar-ed-dowleh had made 30 farsaks a day (112 miles) for several days, on the same horse.

A Turcoman Arab, a large horse for the country, was ridden from Teheran to Shiraz during the fall and winter of 1913, over many mountain passes, being fed scanty rations of both grain and straw. An average of 20 miles a day was made for the entire trip. Two days' rest was made at Kum, 90 miles south of Teheran, and a week later a halt of a week was made at Ispahan, in central Persia. A halt was also made at Abadeh of one day, about a hundred miles south of Ispahan, and a half day at Persepolis, some 40 miles out of

THE ARAB HORSE IN CAMPAIGN

Shiraz. The total distance is about 600 miles. In 1914 the same horse was ridden during November from Shiraz back to Ispahan, about 300 miles, in exactly eight days. The return trip was made carrying full pack. On the trip south the animal was a stallion and made the return as a gelding.

In the spring of 1916 an Arab was ridden from Ispahan to Ahwaz, from central Persia to the border of Turkey, over some of the worst mountain trails in the world; distance, about 300 miles; time, 19 days; feed very scanty indeed, consisting entirely of barley, as straw was unobtainable. The horse came in at the end of the trip in perfect condition and was sold for a very good price. Over the roughest of trails the animal did not develop any signs of lameness. Perhaps some idea may be had of the route if one can imagine crossing the country occupied by the Swiss Alps. Altitudes of 10,000 feet were frequently met, and in one instance to rise 3,000 feet consumed five hours of hard traveling. Descents were extremely difficult and abrupt. The weather was cold and snow was on all of the passes.

In 1913 a hastily gathered force of some 150 cavalry, irregulars, made a march of 90 miles, from Shiraz to Kazeroon, in southern Persia, between sunset of one day and about 9 a. m. of the second day following, the horses all being Persian Arabs, mostly from the Kashgai tribe of nomads. One very difficult mountain pass was crossed on the way and almost all of the route was over bad roads.

The above instances are partly from memory and partly taken from a diary, but are substantially correct as to time and distances traveled.

What I am anxious to bring out is that the Arab is capable of sustained endurance under the worst conditions of feed, road, weather, care, and with the minimum of poor food will keep up his speed for day after day. Coupled with great courage and a fine spirit, the Arab also has gentleness, and although my regiment had only stallions we had practically no trouble with them in ranks, and stalls were never used in the cavalry stables. Each animal was secured with a leather strap around the left hind pastern, the strap being attached to a short chain and picket pin. Very often the stable men failed to attach the straps and chains, and comparatively seldom did we have trouble with the horses on that account.

With all justice to the thoroughbred, I think that a *part Arab horse* would be an extremely valuable animal for our cavalry. Arab sires would be excellent for furnishing a new strain. In closing I wish to quote Major Guy Vernazobres, of the French cavalry. He states in his *Diary of a Cavalry Officer* that during the World War a very small percentage of the thoroughbred animals lasted more than two months in the campaign and, if I remember correctly, only one in his squadron survived the campaign. He says that the thoroughbred was a disappointment, and that the horses requisitioned from the countryside were more satisfactory as regards endurance.

Extracts from a Cavalryman's Diary

THE JOURNAL of a French cavalry officer, Charles Ouy Vernazobres, to which Captain Merrill makes reference, is a little volume which should commend itself to every cavalryman. It is replete with instructive observations on the use of cavalry during the opening campaign on the western front, and is, moreover, written in such admirable style that it holds the reader's interest from cover to cover.

The observations to which Captain Merrill refers are included in seven or eight pages written toward the end of the year 1914, while the trying experiences of the cavalry campaign must have been fresh and vivid in the author's mind. They are so illuminating that it is thought that extracts from those pages should find repetition here:

"The campaign was made at a walk, to the exclusion of all other gaits. Extremely protracted marches were the result, these being made longer by the practice of never going into cantonment before nightfall. The horses were under saddle on the average eighteen hours a day.

"In August and in the first part of September the temperature was very high, the roads very dusty. Although we were operating in a country rich in streams and springs, we were forbidden to water the horses to avoid lengthening the divisions interminably. It was often necessary to take steps against the efforts of some good cavalrymen to relieve their thirsty steeds. It was so tempting, this clear water, and the poor animals stretched with such insistence their dust-whitened noses toward it!

"Marches were started at dawn; arrival at cantonment was after the fall of night. How could the horses, then, be given even the most trifling care? The men, overfatigued, fell asleep where they dismounted."

The author mentions the lack of sufficient forage, the frequent necessity of making dry bivouacs.

"During August the distance covered was about 1,200 kilometers. We did 800 kilometers during September. And it is necessary to add to these figures distances traveled by patrols, etc. During October, while the marches were not so long, on the other hand the horses had become much emaciated and out of condition. The rains had come and the temperature had fallen, while the trench service kept troops away from their horses for days together. Horses were merely fed. They were in the open constantly and often spent the night in the open.

"One hundred and ninety-six horses remained in the regiment that had made the entire campaign without a day on sick report." [Here the author notes the ages of these 196. Suffice it to repeat

EXTRACTS FROM A CAVALRYMAN'S DIARY

here, that 11 were 5-year-olds and none younger. The majority were aged 6 to 9, inclusive. Only six were over 14 years old.]

"Four horses were pure blooded (English). One hundred and ninety-one were half-bloods. Ten horses were without breeding." These figures do not total correctly, but *ca ne fait rien*.

"The average type of the horses that resisted is a well-boned, common country type, a good rustler. The race-horses of the non-commissioned officers that had a local repute did not stand the gaff. It seems that the Normans, with small bones and stretched-out frames, resisted badly, either because of their immaturity, because they were habituated to tender care, or because their breeding was still too new, not yet sufficiently fixed."

The author notes that among the requisitioned horses that made the entire campaign were some of large frame, "that one would be surprised to find resisting so well, until one considers that the heavily caparisoned cavaliers of the Middle Ages made interminable marches at a walk."

"The thoroughbreds have been a surprise. In one squadron, out of six thoroughbreds, only one made the entire campaign and he was lame several days. In another, out of seven, only two remained.

"The German instructions of September 26, 1914, embodied the following:

"In the cavalry the custom of sparing the horses too much has caused bitter disappointments. Hereafter, horses should be accustomed to bivouac in the open and to be contented with campaign forage allowance. They should from now on be kept out of doors continually, to accustom them to work in the open. It is not necessary to have the horses trained in rapid gaits. It is of incomparably greater importance to habituate them to long movements at quiet gaits from one point to another."

"The American horses which live on the plains, our little horses raised on the sands of Landes, the Cossack horses trained on the steppes, are well known for their enduring qualities. It is in point to repeat from a humorous Englishman: 'Horses are the reverse of pictures. One must not judge them on their pretty appearance.'"



Arab Contribution to Cavalry

BY

W. R. BROWN

IN VIEW of the recent win by a pure-blooded Arab, *Crabbet*, of the United States Mounted Service Cup for 1921, picture of whom is here given, it may be of interest to cavalry officers to summarize the reasons why confidence can be placed in this blood to improve existing strains for the purpose of creating a desirable cavalry type, and why the Arab has given a good account of himself when matched against various other types.

On account of his scarcity, the popular conception of the Arab is more often wrong than right. Like all other breeds, individuals, even among pure Arabs, vary widely in excellence, and the wide diffusion of Coast Arabs, Gulf Arabs, Syrians, Persians, Turkomans, Barbs, and other offshoots of the true desert Arabian have misled casual observers as to just what the true type is.

The original and true Arabian, from whom all these offshoots sprang, is the horse of the nomadic tribes that wander over the high, dry plateaus of central Arabia and is largely a product of environment. Turkey, Russia, Austro-Hungary, Italy, France, Spain, and other European nations have for centuries considered it essential to return from time to time to Arabia to secure stock for the production of cavalry mounts, and history is full of such importations. Stallions have been almost always the only animals secured, as the sale of mares was forbidden by the Koran; and mares being the basis of further production, with a general scarcity always existent, the tribes were ever exceedingly loath to part with their heritage. For this reason few authentic studs have been created in Europe.

The plateaus of Arabia furnished a lime soil and water, sufficient altitude, a succulent alfalfa, and a sufficient change of climate. The nomadic life of the Arabs furnished a constant change of pasture, continuous and everlasting exercise, and careful personal attention.

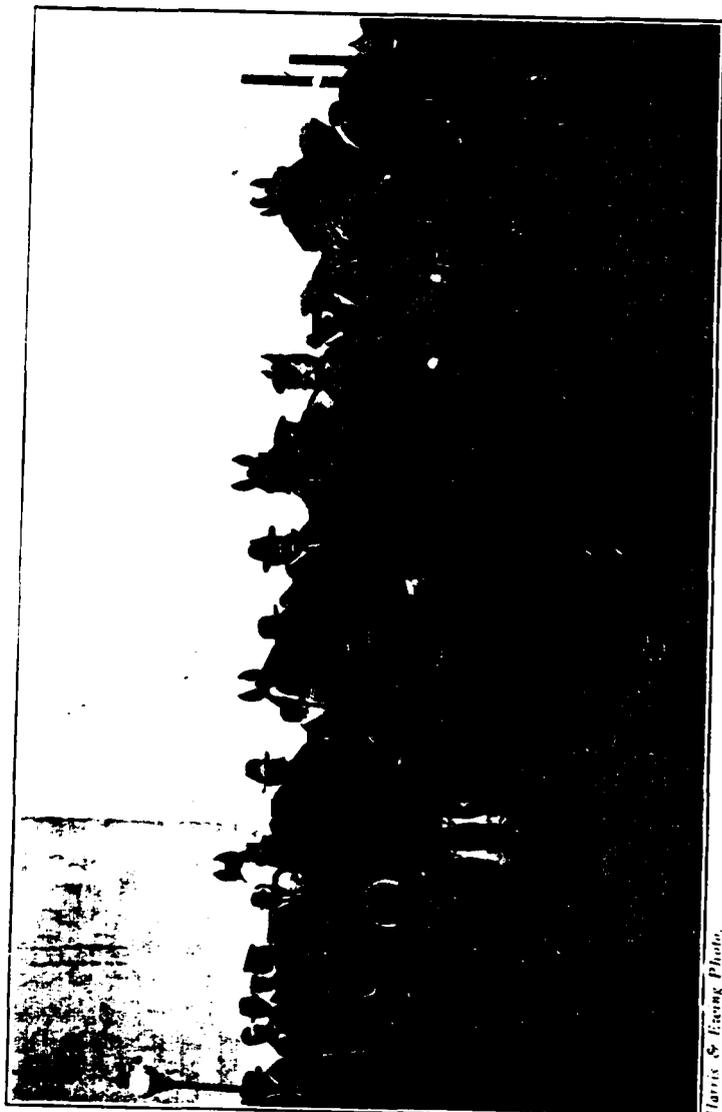
The horse was the essential vehicle of war and peace, the main dependence of life and limb; so that his intensive cultivation was natural and effective and great pains were taken to secure and propagate the best. The winning post was present every day in their lives. Pedigrees were carefully kept centuries before they were known in England, and the breeder's delight in pure blood was cultivated and closely followed.

Any careful study of equine history will disclose the fact that from the days of the Sumerians, in the dawn of historical times, down to the present day, the Arab's warm blood, in some of its many forms, has been mixed in



CRABBET

Thoroughbred Arab—Winner of the Endurance Test Ride, 1921



Harris & Ewing Photo.

**OFFICIAL APPRECIATION BY THE SECRETARY OF WAR OF THE GRIT AND STAMINA
REQUIRED TO SUCCESSFULLY NEGOTIATE THE 1921 ENDURANCE TEST**

The picture shows the prize winners in the Test on the day of award of prizes at Washington, D. C., October 15, 1921. The Secretary of War and Major General J. G. Harbord are shown in the foreground.

By courtesy of THE REMOUNT.

ARAB CONTRIBUTION TO CAVALRY

varying ratios with the colder blood of other northern types to form the many breeds that have waxed and waned during the centuries. In fact, the success and ability of breeds to sustain themselves have followed closely the amount and the purity of the Arabian infusion at the start.

It is not without reason that the blood of the Darley Arabian is slowly but surely supplanting that of the Godolphin Barb or the Byerly Turk upon the English race-track today. It is hardly too much to say that it is a practical impossibility, in the light of history, to establish or expect to establish a lasting new breed without a liberal infusion of Arabian blood. Many writers on the horse, partisan and ephemeral and full of infinite knowledge of transitory details, remain satisfied with their day and generation and cannot see the great blood influences that have demonstrated themselves in many lands and generations. In fact, an almost conclusive test of philosophical study and thought upon the horse and his influence in war and upon society is disclosed either in an indifference to or an appreciation of the Arab type.

What, then, is the type? What is known as a big little horse, from 14-2 to 15-1 hands in height, although this height can be increased by early feeding and selection; of running and jumping conformation; an intelligent head, graceful neck, well set into strong shoulders; withers set well back, short back, wide loins, high-set croup, deep and well-sprung ribs, extra bone and tendon in legs, and a general symmetry throughout that harmonizes one part with another without undue emphasis on any part. Developed as a general service animal, no sacrifice of fundamental qualities has been asked or made. Specifically he is differentiated from other breeds by a smaller and leaner muzzle, a dish face, an eye more nearly in the center of the head, an extra brain capacity, one less vertebra in the back, an extra high set of tail; ribs that spring out sideways, as seen from front or rear; a large, loose windpipe, an oversize knee and hock, one of the densest bones known, large tendons, and the best of feet.

After ten years' experience I have never come across any kind of wind trouble, and understand Arabians are free from it. I have fed less than half the amount required by other breeds and my horses have kept fat and well. I have met with almost universal intelligence, gentleness and good nature among stallions as well as mares, and have subjected them to the most severe and grinding tests without loss of spirit or courage. They have been remarkably free from minor faults and blemishes and have reproduced both abundantly and true to type. Are these not qualities much needed in the cavalry and the remount?

Because statement backed up by performance is more convincing, a summary of the performance of Arabs in the last three years in the endurance tests may be of interest. These tests, it will be remembered, were of 300 miles each, at the rate of 60 miles a day for five days, over ordinary roads between

points, and each horse carried rider and equipment the first year of 200 pounds and the second and third of 245 pounds. A total of 58 horses started. Of these, 31 per cent were one-half or more Arab blood; 24 horses finished, of which 50 per cent were of Arab blood. Of the prize-winners, 55 per cent were of Arab blood. A full-blooded Arab won first, twice out of three tests, being both times one of the smallest horses in the race and carrying the greatest impost as to weight. A half-bred Arab that finished second in the other race had the only perfect condition score.

Again, six Arabs have contested in two races and two Arabs have contested in all three races, as well as a severe fourth previous test, and have come out fresh and uninjured. With the exception of one Morgan, a most remarkable individual, no horse but an Arab has ever come back for more than one race. In these tests the Arabs as a class carried much the greatest weight for their size, in three instances about one-third of their own weight. How far could the larger horses have gone with a relative impost of 350 pounds or more? The Arabs subsisted, as the statistics show, on far less rations to perform the same work. But the ratio of available Arabs for selection for a test is so small in proportion to the available supply of other breeds in America as to be almost negligible and place on them an enormous handicap at the start. There is no doubt, as testified to by one of the judges, that suitable and representative horses were selected from other breeds to contest, that they were given careful training, and that they were ably ridden.

This and other similar tests which have been won by horses of Arab blood—such as the 143-mile race between Budapest and Vienna in 1908, with 79 contestants, won by a small Magyar mare from Hungary; the cruel race between Berlin and Vienna in 1903; the endurance rides in France in the years preceding the World War, all won by Anglo-Arabs; the 1913 Morgan Horse Test and others—go to show a remarkable endurance of fatigue, recuperative qualities, and weight-carrying ability far beyond apparent size.

Cavalry officers should not forget the preference given to Arab-mounted troops by Lord Roberts in the Soudan, the change made by Kitchener of his cavalry to small Syrian Arabs in his expedition to Khartum and his recommendations subsequently to the English, the high esteem shown by the French to Barb and Anglo-Arab cavalry in all their wars, and the disastrous experience of the English against the Boers, when the Boers, mounted on small Arab-bred horses, for two years ran circles around the English until the English secured range horses from America. They should give heed to the recent reports of French, English, and German cavalry officers on the creditable performances of the smaller horses in the World War pointing strongly to a reduction in size.

Little breed comparison is possible from Allenby's reports, as, due to the long-continued devastation wrought by the Turks and Russians, no Eastern

horses of any number or quality had been left in Palestine. His troops did excellent work on so-called Whalers, a mixed breed of relatively small horses coming from Australia. Their marching day was often 24 hours and they killed many horses. The few trained Spahis furnished him by the French were reported to stand up well, but were slower, which was but natural, from their size.

Should the requirements of modern cavalry develop along the line of more equipment and less mobility, which I trust it will not, and a larger horse than the Arab is desired, Arab blood, combined with the thoroughbred or other larger type, will carry to the cross those qualities for which the Arab is justly famous. If the combination is had with the thoroughbred whose blood lines trace now exclusively to the Arab, a good nick will be the result, as abundantly demonstrated by the French Remount Anglo-Arab, and no loss of registration will be experienced. The Anglo-Arab stallion can be gone ahead with in the stud to create a splendid cavalry type. Many of the most beautiful stallions seen today in the remounts of France are of this Anglo-Arab type, with a slight infusion of *demi-sang*, and their popularity with the breeders is on the increase at the expense of the pure-blooded English or Arab thoroughbred. As a creator of type of prepotency in the stud and a revivifier of worn-out breeds, the Arab blood has no superior, and as Colonel Cousté, long in charge of the French Remount, testifies, the Arab has the power of improving more different kinds of mares than any other breed.

Considering the natural conditions, I fail to see any reason why certain parts of our country are not only equal, but even superior, to natural conditions in Europe and Arabia for the breeding of horses. We have in a number of places a close conjunction of lime grass, altitude, and the best of water and climatic conditions. The French, in spite of some handicaps in these matters, have overcome them by the distribution and selection of type, by intensive and corrective feeding, and by the exercise of discrimination in stimulating the art of breeding. Personally, I would suggest and strongly advocate the inclusion in our Remount budget of a fund to send abroad each year a commission of qualified Army officers and breeders, to study the systems employed, equipped with power and funds to purchase such desirable individual horses as, in their judgment, should be imported for the improvement of the American Remount.

Cavalry on the Flank and in the Rear

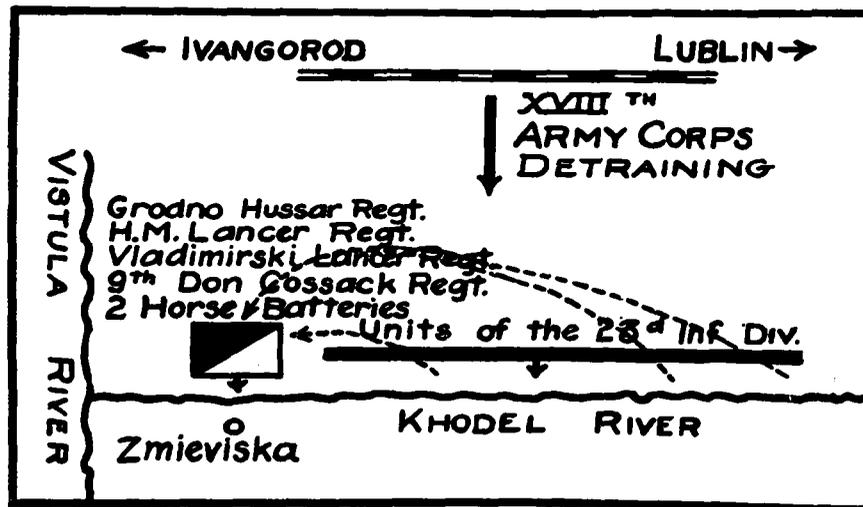
BY

GENERAL N. N. GOLOVINE

Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff

AT NIGHT units of the 23d Division of our XVIIIth Army Corps came up. They began to relieve our squadrons which had been holding up, on the line of the river Khodel,* the enemy's pressure, which was increasing more and more.

In the same night our cavalry, being relieved by the infantry, was ordered to assemble on the right flank, at the bridges near the village Zmieviska, and



SKETCH No. 1

Cavalry Concentration on the Flank

to co-operate with the infantry in holding the Khodel line until the remaining units of the XVIIIth Army Corps, which were being detrained at that time, should come up. (See sketch No. 1.)

It was still dark when, with four squadrons of the Grodno Hussars, the Lancer regiment, and the 3d Horse Guard Battery, I set out for the bridges,

*For the cavalry action at the Khodel River, see the CAVALRY JOURNAL for July, 1921.

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

taking the road through the woods. Two remaining Hussar squadrons, which had not as yet been relieved by infantry, I ordered to join the regiment later on. Besides our brigade, the following cavalry units were also ordered up to the bridges: the Vladimirski Lancer Regiment, the 9th Don Cossack Regiment, and the 23d Horse Artillery Battery.

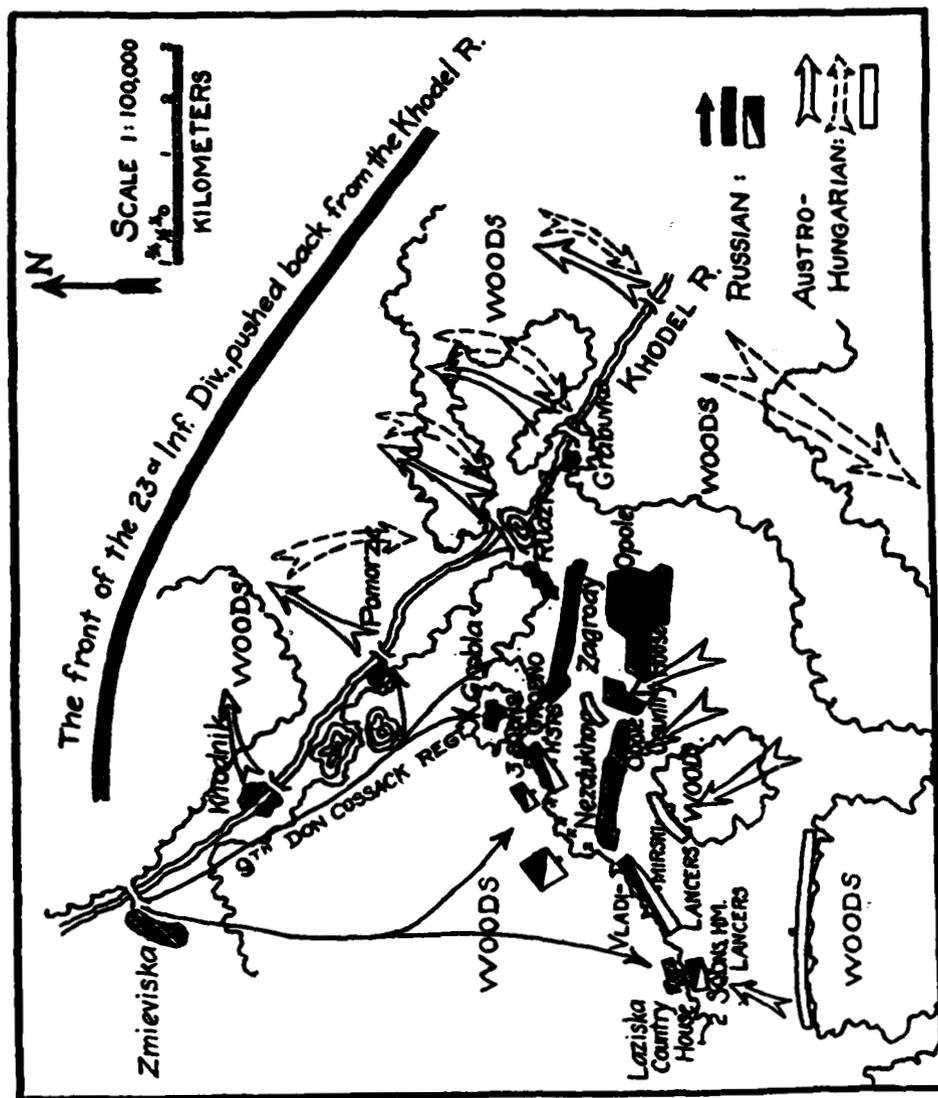
At dawn of day we were still in the wood. The weather, after a rainy night, promised to be fair. The rays of the rising sun, penetrating through the foliage, were reflected by the spear-heads of the lances. The men and the horses were tired, because throughout all the preceding days we had been engaged in fights and had only a few hours' rest in the last night; and even that rest was not a complete one, as one-half of the horses were not unsaddled and the hussars rested in full readiness for fight. The rays of the sun came out and the gloomy faces of the men became cheerful. It even seemed that the horses began to snort gayly. The lances grazed against the branches of the trees, heavy with raindrops, and glittering sparkles fell on those riding behind; the soldiers were laughing and joking. Such is the influence of nature on every living being.

What a cheering effect has this laughter, coming from the heart and childishly gay! The faith in those men, so calmly and confidently following their commander into a complete incertitude, becomes stronger.

Rifle-shots were heard on the opposite side of the river. A short time afterward the reports became less distinct. The action was of the advance squadrons of the Don Cossacks. They were driving the enemy away from the bridges toward which we were going. From the ease with which the enemy was driven away, it was evident that they paid little attention to their left flank. Fate was favorable to us. Here was an opportunity to act against the flank and rear of the enemy infantry, deployed on the line of the river Khodel.

Our brigade commander decided that our brigade, together with the Vladimirski Lancers and Don Cossacks, which had been put temporarily under his control, should immediately cross to the opposite side of the river Khodel. The 9th Don Cossack Regiment was ordered to press energetically the enemy units retreating from the bridges, and to move farther along the river with the object of taking possession of the other bridges. (See sketch No. 2.) In this manner the Don Cossacks would protect the left of the remaining cavalry regiments, enabling them to penetrate farther in the rear. The latter were ordered to proceed through the wood in a general direction toward the village Nezdukhov. To protect our maneuver on the right, two H. M. Lancer squadrons were sent to take up a position near the edge of the wood, at the country-house Laziska.

The bridges across the river Khodel had been destroyed, so we began to ford. While we were crossing the river, one of my squadrons which had been



Sketch No. 2
Cavalry Action on the Flank and in the Rear

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

left behind joined us. The squadron commander reported to me that he could not follow the road we had taken, as he had come under the enemy's rifle fire and had to take another road farther from the river; he had also seen our infantry falling back.

This report was not altogether clear. However, it was later discovered that in the course of three hours after the bridges this squadron had been holding had been taken over by our infantry on the left, the infantry was forced back from the river. Probably the rifle reports, deadened by the wood, had not given us a correct idea of the intensiveness of the fight on our infantry's front. I reproved the squadron commander for not having tried to clear up the situation. This could have been done by sending an officer and a few hussars, whose horses were least fatigued, with a mission to get in touch with the nearest infantry chiefs to ask them what was going on. But that squadron commander belonged to the type of cavalymen who believed that the art of cavalry consists in riding well and in keeping a good line in closed formations. Unfortunately, in time of peace they were often supported in this attitude by chiefs who themselves were of the opinion that the cavalry is prepared when its riding is good and it makes a good show on the parade ground. The flaw in such preparedness became at once evident in time of war.

Let us bear this in mind for the future. In the meantime it is worth while to remember this: "The reason that the military art is so difficult lies in the fact that the true value of men and ideas can be definitively conceived only in time of war. Hence the great number of apparently unnecessary complications which accompany every step of military operations and make the practice so different from the theoretical conception.

The report of my squadron commander could not influence the decision we had taken. On the contrary, it looked as if the situation had become even more favorable for action against the enemy's flank, because they, moving farther ahead, were exposing not only their flank, but also their rear.

There could be only one decision: To go forward without delay, to get out of the woods near the village Nezdukhov, and to come down on the enemy's left rear. That was accomplished.

Now, in order to make clear the situation which our further operations developed, it is necessary to say that there was no regular liaison between our infantry and ourselves. By sending dispatch riders and establishing a line of communication posts, no quick results could be obtained. In such periods a liaison by wire is indispensable. It is self-evident that the value of every attack on the flank consists in the immediate exploitation on a large scale of the moral effect caused by such attack. Such exploitation requires a full co-operation between the units advancing on the front and the units operating against the flank. The latter very often are not as numerous as the outflanked

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

enemy imagines they are. As soon as the first surprise is over, the enemy, if they are not tied to their front by an energetic attack of our troops, will find it easy to place our outflanking unit in a critical situation. The outflanking one is outflanked himself.

In that situation lies the psychologic explanation of many riddles presented by the World War over which the historians will ponder, trying to find a reasonable solution. Here is a typical situation: The flank and rear are exposed; any minute the enemy may take advantage of that fact and the position will become helpless; but, for some unknown reason, the enemy moves forward slowly and cautiously and the critical moment is happily over. Why? Simply because the enemy commander, fearing for his flanks, did not dare risk to penetrate deeper. I can vouch for an instance which seems incredible: A cavalry brigade with a battery of horse artillery succeeded in coming out on the flank of an enemy supply column. The brigade commander, instead of moving in the direction of the rear echelon of the supply column, to cut off its retreat, headed in the opposite direction and engaged the convoy protecting the head of the column. As a result, only a part of the column was captured; the remaining wagons got away. Why did it happen? The brigade commander had previously given many examples of his conspicuous personal bravery, so that a lack of courage on his part in that particular instance is out of the question. Neither could he be accused of failure to comprehend an elementary situation; he coped many times with more complicated problems. The cause was exclusively psychologic: The brigade got far away from its main body, and the apprehension that it might be cut off weighed upon the brigade commander.

In the case we are now considering, our attack on the enemy's flank near the village of Nezdukhov, the establishment at once of a technical liaison with the headquarters of the 23d Infantry Division would have helped us greatly, not only from the practical, but also from the moral point of view. It is necessary in times of peace, when training troops, to insist that infantry which is counting on the co-operation of its flank cavalry establish lines of liaison to suitable points in the direction of the maneuvering cavalry, at which points the cavalry, using its own means of liaison, can get in touch with them.

Our main body was in the wood, on the left bank of the river. I was with General M. at the vanguard. In about an hour we reached the edge of the wood. A panorama of an open, hilly country, with villages scattered here and there, lay in front of us. Next to us, about three-quarters of a mile away, was the village Nezdukhov. Farther away we could see the country-house Opole and the outskirts of the village of the same name, which was hidden in a valley.

At that time a dispatch rider arrived from the Don Cossacks with a report that the Don Cossacks had driven the enemy by a surprise attack from the village Pomorze and had captured an ambulance of an Austrian division;

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

furthermore, that the Don Cossacks, continuing to press the enemy, retreating in disorder, were advancing farther on the villages Grobla and Zagrody.

It was quite clear that we had penetrated in the rear of the Austrian infantry's left flank, which had crossed the river Khodel.

General M. ordered our two horse batteries to go into position near the edge of the wood and open fire on the village Nezdukhov and the country-house Opole. We could see distinctly through field-glasses what an alarm our fire caused among the enemy. Men, singly and in groups, were running out of houses and taking refuge in the folds of the ground. But shortly afterwards our advancing units were met by a well-directed rifle fire from the outskirts of the villages. Nevertheless, six dismounted squadrons of the Vladimírski Lancers and three squadrons of the Grodno Hussars drove away the enemy from the village Nezdukhov. I think that our opening of the artillery fire was premature.

After some time had elapsed from the beginning of our fire we noticed that near the horizon, on the hilly ground beyond the wood to the east of the village Opole, big forces of enemy infantry were moving in a southern direction; artillery and supply columns were moving together with the infantry; but all this was going on beyond artillery range. Still it was quite obvious that our attack on the enemy's flank and rear had a decisive effect.

General M., an energetic man, got very excited. Indeed, it was disappointing to watch that retreat and not be able to exert further pressure on the enemy, on account of the check to our deployed front by enemy forces that were getting stronger and stronger. General M. and I were riding up and down the front. Coming up to the firing line, he wanted by all means to rush forward. We were like a wild animal running about in its cage. In those moments I could realize clearly how important are the qualities that should be combined in a cavalry leader. Impetuous energy and icy coolness should be united in his nature. Thanks to our rushing about along our front, we got out of touch with our units. Just imagine the dispatch riders also running about on the battlefield in search of General M.; the dispatch riders on tired horses, getting into the sphere of heavy firing. How many chances are there that they will reach the leader, or, at any rate, reach him while their reports will have a practical value?

The control of the fight's progress was lost, and the leader began to act on the strength of his personal impressions only, derived from what was going on in the section of the front immediately before his eyes.

In the meantime the following was taking place beyond our vision: The 9th Don Cossack Regiment, having occupied the village Grobla and taken more prisoners, was advancing successfully. Thus the Austrians, who had forced our infantry from the river and had crossed it, got themselves into a bag. In view of the impossibility of pushing straight ahead, a decision offered

itself to shift the pivot of our attack to the left, nearer to the Cossacks, and, protecting ourselves on the right, to continue advancing decisively with the object of taking possession of the bridges at the villages Vola Rudzka and Grabuvka. To carry this decision into effect without any delay, we had at our disposal six squadrons in the reserve (four squadrons of H. M. Lancers and two of the Grodno Hussars).

During a cavalry attack on the flank and rear, there always comes a moment when the leader should be able to limit his task. From the tactical point of view it finds its expression in the change of the direction of the advance and in bringing that direction closer to our troops fighting on the enemy's front. For that, of course, no recipes can be given. It depends on the talent of the leader, on his instinct, inasmuch as, after the enemy has become quite demoralized and starts a general retreat, he will have to divert the direction of his action in order to take up quickly a parallel pursuit.

In a word, in cavalry actions against the enemy's flank not only impetuosity, but also maneuvering, is required.

In order that the cavalry leader's skill may be effective, the following conditions are necessary:

1. He should conserve fully his faculty for considering calmly the whole situation;
2. He must establish a liaison with his units which works surely and quickly.

The above conditions are necessary for the conduct of every battle; but in a fight on the enemy's flank and in their rear, the importance of those conditions is paramount. Therefore, in the course of a flanking maneuver a cavalry leader should be able to find for himself, in the very beginning, a suitable command point and should avoid any further shifting.

It was after 5 o'clock in the afternoon. The enemy, having recovered from their first surprise, began to press heavily on our right flank (the Vladimirski Lancers). At the same time strong infantry forces began to appear in front of the group of H. M. Lancers protecting our right. General M. ordered the whole cavalry to move back to the bridges near the village Zmieviska. Meanwhile, on our left, the Cossacks continued to move forward successfully, threatening to cut off entirely the retreat of the Austrian infantry units on that flank. The control of the battle, as already said, was no longer in our hands.

The next morning we learned that more than a thousand prisoners, together with several guns and a brigade commander, were taken by our 23d Infantry Division. Had we supported our Cossacks and had we not withdrawn, we could have netted not a part of a brigade, but the whole Austrian division.

The episode related above is one of the numerous examples of cavalry actions on the flank and in the rear during the World War. Regardless of the

blunders which were made (they are always made), the results were considerable. Should one ponder over it, taking into consideration the material side of the war events only, he would be compelled to conclude that in reality the menace was a trifling one—24 tired squadrons and 12 guns, with a very limited supply of munitions. The true picture of the situation was this: Our small force wedged itself in between two much stronger masses. They could have crushed us easily. But the fact is that in war the decisive rôle does not belong to the material factors alone. The enemy, stronger than we, but considering themselves weaker, become the weaker in fact.

The following question is of interest: Could not a battalion of infantry accomplish the same thing which was accomplished by 24 squadrons in the episode just related?

To that question I would reply categorically, it could not. A battalion of infantry could yield the same number of rifles, but it could give neither the same quickness nor breadth of maneuvering. It can be taken for granted that, should a commander of some battalion undertake such a risky operation, he would not be able to escape from the bag into which he had ventured.

In connection with the operations of cavalry in the flank and rear, it is important to touch upon the question of supporting the cavalry action by infantry units. I laid emphasis upon the importance of that support in the article entitled "Cavalry on the Front." With regard to the action on the flank and in the rear, the situation is a different one. In such cases all depends on the quickness of maneuvering. The infantry would hamper the cavalry and, what is still worse, the latter can put the infantry into a difficult position. Such distressing things used to happen during the World War. The main fact is, as it was repeatedly pointed out, that during the attacks on the flank or rear, success is achieved not by the real power of the attacking side, but through the effect on the enemy's imagination.

The following use can be made of infantry units attached to cavalry in the course of the latter's flanking operations:

1. The infantry can take up a position on the cavalry's inner flank (nearest to our troops). In the action described above, infantry units could be directed to follow the Cossack Regiment;
2. Infantry can form a *repli* in the cavalry's rear. In the action described above, infantry units could be charged with protecting the bridges across the river Khodel near the village Zmieviska. It was necessary in this instance to hold up, for that purpose, the Narvski Hussar Regiment, coming up to reinforce us.

As to the use of infantry units, attached to the cavalry, on the latter's outer flank, it cannot be admitted, as a general rule; upon that point we insist.

Let us consider now the use by the cavalry during its operations on the flank, of different kinds of technical means.

Tanks could not keep up with us and would only hinder our maneuver. Armored cars might be of great service on our cavalry's front, as well as on our outer flank; they furnish us an excellent *point d'appui*. There were no macadam roads in the sector where the operation was taking place, and the common roads got soft after the rain; the bridges across the river Kholod were destroyed. These conditions, armored cars being lacking, did not slow down the maneuver. But it must be said that the cavalry, attacking the flank and rear, should in general endeavor to use armored cars. Armored airplanes will be of great use also.

Quick establishment of stable technical liaison should occupy the first place among the resources which the *technics* put at the disposal of the cavalry. Full advantage, as said above, can be taken of the attacks on flank and rear only on condition that there be co-operation with the front. This holds true not only with regard to the tactical envelopments, but also with regard to the deep raids in the rear. During the Russo-Japanese War, in 1905, General Mistchenko made such a raid in the rear of the Japanese (near Inkow). No big results were achieved by that raid because it was an isolated operation. The Japanese stopped the development of the raid by troops which they moved for that purpose without any difficulty from the front. As to the damages that were done to the railways by our cavalry, they were quickly repaired. Without the establishment of technical liaison between the troops fighting on the front and the cavalry operating on the flank and in the rear, it is impossible to attain the necessary co-ordination.

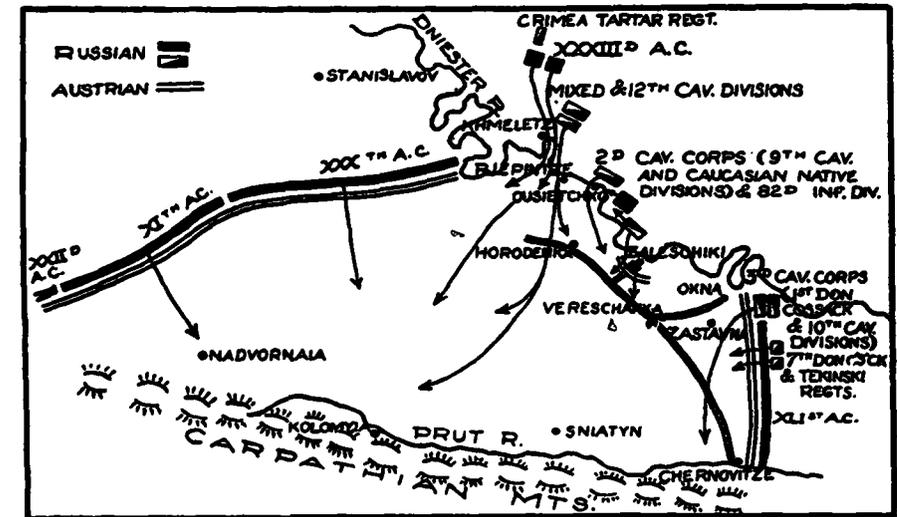
Let us suppose that the XVIIIth Army Corps had brought forward a branch of its liaison by wire up to the village Zmieviska; the cavalry, moving farther ahead from that point, would have to extend that liaison by establishing a telephone line. The control of the fighting in which the scattered units (the 9th Cossack Regiment, the Lancer squadrons, etc.) were engaged also required wire, wire and wire. Cavalry, while operating on the front, becomes also engaged on a broad line, and in that case as well technical liaison is required. But fighting on the flank requires a more skillful, elastic maneuvering; reports, informing the leader about the situation, must reach him quicker; the regroupings in such fights will be of a more radical nature, and the leader's orders should reach the troops quicker. Motorcycles and—in the future—wireless telegraphy will be of great service.

And still the principal technical means for attacking the flank and rear is the cavalryman armed with a rifle, assisted by guns of a range as long as possible and by machine-guns.

Now let us take up an example of cavalry action on the flank on a larger scale. In the following operation I had to take part, not as an executor merely, but in the capacity of the Director of Military Operations of the 9th Army.

In April, 1915, the 9th Army was ordered to take the offensive. The front occupied by that army was extremely long—about 165 miles. (See sketch No. 3.) The right flank (the XXII^d and the XIth Army Corps) was on the Carpathian Mountains and in their foreland. To attempt to break the enemy's front in that section was very difficult, from the tactical point of view. The center (the XXXth Army Corps), with its right flank adjoining the foreland of the Carpathians, farther away turned slightly to the north, formed an arc to the south of the city of Stanislavov and came up to the river Dniester.

In March we had made here an attempt to break the enemy's front, but without success. After that the enemy had fortified their position more



SKETCH No. 3
Cavalry Action on the Flank of the Russian 9th Army in May, 1915

strongly and placed more wire in front of it. Our left flank followed the left bank of the river Dniester and, having crossed the Dniester, took a sharp turn to the south and ended at the Rumanian frontier. Behind the Dniester was placed the cavalry, supported by infantry divisions. On the section of the right bank of the Dniester stood two divisions of the XLIst Army Corps, which divisions had been formed recently from the *opolchenie* (territorial) units. We also had made an attempt to force the Dniester near the town Zaleschiki, but it had led to sanguinary fights only. Having crossed the Dniester near Zaleschiki, we had not been able to develop our action. It had resulted in our getting bottled up, and the tactical situation of our troops near

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Indians, on the opposite side had become very difficult. In the action of our left flank, situated on the right bank of the River the tactical conditions were to our advantage, but our units standing there were uncommitted and incapable, not only of an offensive, but even of a stubborn defense. In addition, they were armed at that time with obsolete non-quick-firing rifles of the 1877 model (the Russian model). It is true that these troops were opposed by enemy units of the same quality, the Landwehr units of Pappo, but the

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

Maneuvering would help the units of the 2d Cavalry Corps alongside of it to cross the River near the village (Cherokhi). The amount of the quantity of troops that became involved in the work of General M. Cavalry and the action of the XXXIII Army Corps we had to put that cavalry corps under the command of the XXXIII Army Corps commander. If we add to that cavalry group an squadron of the Russian Tatar Regiment (cavalry of the XXXIII Army Corps) we will see that the total of cavalry units destined for

itself to shift the pivot of our attack to the left, nearer to the Cossacks, and, protecting ourselves on the right, to continue advancing decisively with the object of taking possession of the bridges at the villages Vola Rudzka and Grabuvka. To carry this decision into effect without any delay, we had at our disposal six squadrons in the reserve (four squadrons of H. M. Lancers and two of the Grodno Hussars).

During a cavalry attack on the flank and rear, there always comes a moment when the leader should be able to limit his task. From the tactical point of view it finds its expression in the change of the direction of the advance and in bringing that direction closer to our troops fighting on the enemy's front. For that, of course, no recipes can be given. It depends on the talent of the leader, on his instinct, inasmuch as, after the enemy has become quite demoralized and starts a general retreat, he will have to divert the direction of his action in order to take up quickly a parallel pursuit.

In a word, in cavalry actions against the enemy's flank not only impetuosity, but also maneuvering, is required.

In order that the cavalry leader's skill may be effective, the following conditions are necessary:

1. He should conserve fully his faculty for considering calmly the whole situation;
2. He must establish a liaison with his units which works surely and quickly.

The above conditions are necessary for the conduct of every battle; but in a fight on the enemy's flank and in their rear, the importance of those conditions is paramount. Therefore, in the course of a flanking maneuver a cavalry leader should be able to find for himself, in the very beginning, a suitable command point and should avoid any further shifting.

It was after 5 o'clock in the afternoon. The enemy, having recovered from their first surprise, began to press heavily on our right flank (the Vladimírski Lancers). At the same time strong infantry forces began to appear in front of the group of H. M. Lancers protecting our right. General M. ordered the whole cavalry to move back to the bridges near the village Zmieviska. Meanwhile, on our left, the Cossacks continued to move forward successfully, threatening to cut off entirely the retreat of the Austrian infantry units on that flank. The control of the battle, as already said, was no longer in our hands.

The next morning we learned that more than a thousand prisoners, together with several guns and a brigade commander, were taken by our 23d Infantry Division. Had we supported our Cossacks and had we not withdrawn, we could have netted not a part of a brigade, but the whole Austrian division.

The episode related above is one of the numerous examples of cavalry actions on the flank and in the rear during the World War. Regardless of the

blunders which were made (they are always made), the results were considerable. Should one ponder over it, taking into consideration the material side of the war events only, he would be compelled to conclude that in reality the menace was a trifling one—24 tired squadrons and 12 guns, with a very limited supply of munitions. The true picture of the situation was this: Our small force wedged itself in between two much stronger masses. They could have crushed us easily. But the fact is that in war the decisive rôle does not belong to the material factors alone. The enemy, stronger than we, but considering themselves weaker, become the weaker in fact.

The following question is of interest: Could not a battalion of infantry accomplish the same thing which was accomplished by 24 squadrons in the episode just related?

To that question I would reply categorically, it could not. A battalion of infantry could yield the same number of rifles, but it could give neither the same quickness nor breadth of maneuvering. It can be taken for granted that, should a commander of some battalion undertake such a risky operation, he would not be able to escape from the bag into which he had ventured.

In connection with the operations of cavalry in the flank and rear, it is important to touch upon the question of supporting the cavalry action by infantry units. I laid emphasis upon the importance of that support in the article entitled "Cavalry on the Front." With regard to the action on the flank and in the rear, the situation is a different one. In such cases all depends on the quickness of maneuvering. The infantry would hamper the cavalry and, what is still worse, the latter can put the infantry into a difficult position. Such distressing things used to happen during the World War. The main fact is, as it was repeatedly pointed out, that during the attacks on the flank or rear, success is achieved not by the real power of the attacking side, but through the effect on the enemy's imagination.

The following use can be made of infantry units attached to cavalry in the course of the latter's flanking operations:

1. The infantry can take up a position on the cavalry's inner flank (nearest to our troops). In the action described above, infantry units could be directed to follow the Cossack Regiment;
2. Infantry can form a *repli* in the cavalry's rear. In the action described above, infantry units could be charged with protecting the bridges across the river Khodel near the village Zmieviska. It was necessary in this instance to hold up, for that purpose, the Narvski Hussar Regiment, coming up to reinforce us.

As to the use of infantry units, attached to the cavalry, on the latter's outer flank, it cannot be admitted, as a general rule; upon that point we insist.

Let us consider now the use by the cavalry during its operations on the flank, of different kinds of technical means.

Tanks could not keep up with us and would only hinder our maneuver. Armored cars might be of great service on our cavalry's front, as well as on our outer flank; they furnish us an excellent *point d'appui*. There were no macadam roads in the sector where the operation was taking place, and the common roads got soft after the rain; the bridges across the river Khodel were destroyed. These conditions, armored cars being lacking, did not slow down the maneuver. But it must be said that the cavalry, attacking the flank and rear, should in general endeavor to use armored cars. Armored airplanes will be of great use also.

Quick establishment of stable technical liaison should occupy the first place among the resources which the *technics* put at the disposal of the cavalry. Full advantage, as said above, can be taken of the attacks on flank and rear only on condition that there be co-operation with the front. This holds true not only with regard to the tactical envelopments, but also with regard to the deep raids in the rear. During the Russo-Japanese War, in 1905, General Mistchenko made such a raid in the rear of the Japanese (near Inkow). No big results were achieved by that raid because it was an isolated operation. The Japanese stopped the development of the raid by troops which they moved for that purpose without any difficulty from the front. As to the damages that were done to the railways by our cavalry, they were quickly repaired. Without the establishment of technical liaison between the troops fighting on the front and the cavalry operating on the flank and in the rear, it is impossible to attain the necessary co-ordination.

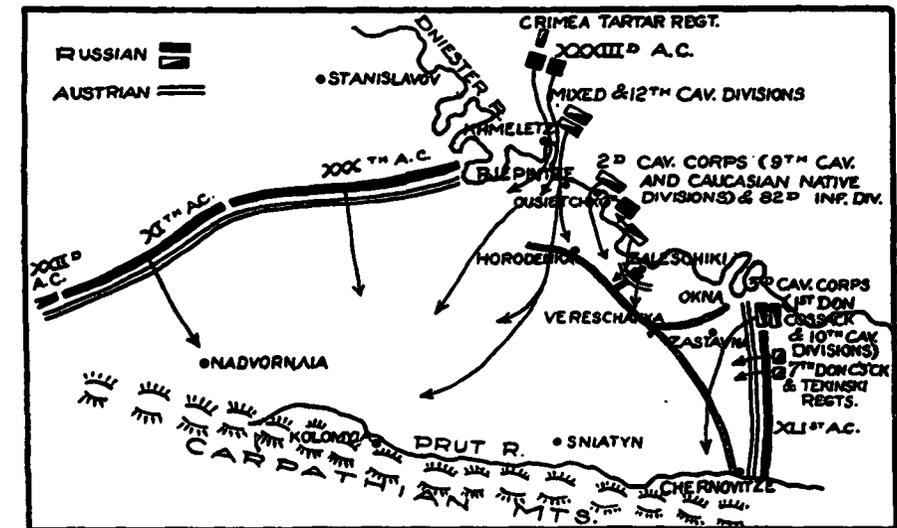
Let us suppose that the XVIIIth Army Corps had brought forward a branch of its liaison by wire up to the village Zmieviska; the cavalry, moving farther ahead from that point, would have to extend that liaison by establishing a telephone line. The control of the fighting in which the scattered units (the 9th Cossack Regiment, the Lancer squadrons, etc.) were engaged also required wire, wire and wire. Cavalry, while operating on the front, becomes also engaged on a broad line, and in that case as well technical liaison is required. But fighting on the flank requires a more skillful, elastic maneuvering; reports, informing the leader about the situation, must reach him quicker; the regroupings in such fights will be of a more radical nature, and the leader's orders should reach the troops quicker. Motorcycles and—in the future—wireless telegraphy will be of great service.

And still the principal technical means for attacking the flank and rear is the cavalryman armed with a rifle, assisted by guns of a range as long as possible and by machine-guns.

Now let us take up an example of cavalry action on the flank on a larger scale. In the following operation I had to take part, not as an executor merely, but in the capacity of the Director of Military Operations of the 9th Army.

In April, 1915, the 9th Army was ordered to take the offensive. The front occupied by that army was extremely long—about 165 miles. (See sketch No. 3.) The right flank (the XXII^d and the XIth Army Corps) was on the Carpathian Mountains and in their foreland. To attempt to break the enemy's front in that section was very difficult, from the tactical point of view. The center (the XXXth Army Corps), with its right flank adjoining the foreland of the Carpathians, farther away turned slightly to the north, formed an arc to the south of the city of Stanislavov and came up to the river Dniester.

In March we had made here an attempt to break the enemy's front, but without success. After that the enemy had fortified their position more



SKETCH No. 3
Cavalry Action on the Flank of the Russian 9th Army in May, 1915

strongly and placed more wire in front of it. Our left flank followed the left bank of the river Dniester and, having crossed the Dniester, took a sharp turn to the south and ended at the Rumanian frontier. Behind the Dniester was placed the cavalry, supported by infantry divisions. On the section of the right bank of the Dniester stood two divisions of the XL1st Army Corps, which divisions had been formed recently from the *opolchenie* (territorial) units. We also had made an attempt to force the Dniester near the town Zaleschiki, but it had led to sanguinary fights only. Having crossed the Dniester near Zaleschiki, we had not been able to develop our action. It had resulted in our getting bottled up, and the tactical situation of our troops near

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Zaleschiki, on the opposite side, had become very difficult. On the section of our left flank, situated on the right bank of the Dniester, the tactical conditions were to our advantage; but our units standing there were unseasoned and incapable, not only of an offensive, but even of a stubborn defense. In addition, they were armed at that time with obsolete, non-quick-firing rifles of the 1877 model (the Berdan model). It is true that those troops were opposed by enemy units of the same quality, the Landsturm units of Poppe; but the latter were reinforced by a good division of Hungarian infantry.

The Russian 9th Army was to be reinforced by units of the XXXIII Army Corps, just arrived from Manchuria (two divisions of the Zaamour frontier guards). The approach of these units toward our left flank, on the right bank of the Dniester, would attract the enemy's attention and disclose our intentions at once. We would cause the enemy to start shifting troops to their right flank, which, in view of the difficulty of transporting our own troops laterally, would be very much against our wishes. On that account our plan of action was based on the following fundamental lines:

The XXXIII Army Corps, after its arrival, was to be concentrated in the district of Bouchach. Thanks to such concentration, we would not show our cards until the last moment, inasmuch as, in view of our previous attempts to break the enemy's positions to the south of Stanislavov, the enemy would be led to explain that concentration by our desire to repeat the attack in the same direction.

Our blow was to be dealt across the Dniester, in the region of the villages Khmelevo and Rjepin'ze, so as to come out afterward against the flank and into the rear of the enemy's positions to the south of Stanislavov. A careful study and photography of the enemy fortified lines confirmed that the enemy were not expecting our blow from that direction. As to ourselves, such a direction of the main blow allowed us to make full use of our numerous cavalry, now reinforced by the arrival of the 3d Cavalry Corps.

While the XXXIII Army Corps was concentrating, reconnoitering the river with the object of crossing it and making preparations to cross it, our cavalry was regrouping in order to take up at once an advantageous starting position.

To that end two cavalry divisions, the Mixed and the 12th, both under the command of General M., were put at the disposal of the XXXIII Army Corps commander. The task assigned to that mixed cavalry corps consisted in taking immediate advantage of the break of the enemy front, to be effected in the general direction of Horodenka-Kolomyia. The cavalry was first of all to assist the further advance of the XXXIII Army Corps by acting against the rear of those enemy units which should endeavor to stick to the previously fortified positions in the rear with the purpose of holding up our infantry's advance. At the same time General M.'s cavalry, moving forward toward

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

Horodenka, would help the units of the 2d Cavalry Corps alongside of it to cross the Dniester near the village Ousietchko. On account of the necessity of keeping close liaison between the work of General M.'s cavalry and the action of the XXXIII Army Corps, we had to put that cavalry corps under the command of the XXXIII Army Corps commander. If we add to that cavalry group six squadrons of the Crimea Tartar Regiment (cavalry of the XXXIII Army Corps), we will see that the total of cavalry units destined for action in the direction of Kolomyia reached 52 squadrons.

The 2d Cavalry Corps was left under the direct command of the army commander. To keep liaison with the latter, a telegraph line to the corps headquarters, equipped with the Hughes apparatus, was established by the order and with the means of the army headquarters. To increase the cavalry corps' means for establishing liaison between its units and with its neighbors, a telegraph company was attached. In addition, a large signal station was put at its disposal.

The 2d Cavalry Corps was given the following order: To cross the Dniester with its main body in the neighborhood of Ousietchko, and to move forward against the rear of the Austrian units defending the Dniester to the east of Ousietchko, with the object of opening the way to the remaining units of the corps advancing from Zaleschiki; afterward to advance quickly in the general direction of Sniatyn, in order to seize the bridges across the Prut. Should the 3d Cavalry Corps not succeed in moving forward by the time the troops from Zaleschiki advanced, the 2d Cavalry Corps was to exert the strongest pressure in the direction of Zastavna, against the rear of the Austrians holding up the advance of the 3d Cavalry Corps. The 2d Cavalry Corps was made up of the 9th Cavalry Division, 24 squadrons, and the National Caucasian Division, 24 squadrons; besides, the 82d Infantry Division, of which one brigade was occupying the bridge head at Zaleschiki, was under the command of the 2d Cavalry Corps commander.

On our left flank, on the right bank of the Dniester, was concentrated the 3d Cavalry Corps, under General Count Keller, which cavalry corps was made up of the 10th Cavalry Division and the 1st Don Cossack Division (48 squadrons). To that corps, which was also left under the direct control of the army headquarters, was assigned the task of breaking the enemy position near the village Okna and, by quickly advancing toward Chernovitz, to operate against the rear of the Austrians falling back behind the river Prut.

As stated above, the XLI Army Corps was not fit for independent action. On that flank the center of gravity of the forthcoming operations was therefore shifted to the 3d Cavalry Corps, and the XLI Army Corps slated to be put under the command of Count Keller. We thought that our *opolchenie* troops could be used only if taken in tow by our cavalry. With a view of establishing technical liaison between the 3d Cavalry Corps and the army head-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

quarters and between the units of the corps itself, the same measures were taken as with regard to the 2d Cavalry Corps.

From the above it is clear that the fundamental idea of our plan consisted in bringing the cavalry into action simultaneously on a wide front. I am calling the attention of the reader to that fact for the reason that many attempts to bring cavalry masses into action usually failed because, their driving power being overestimated, they had been let out on too narrow a front; in consequence their action, squeezed by infantry reinforcements coming up, quickly died away.

In our case the situation favored a development on a wide front. A glance at the attached sketch (No. 3) will show how a break, effected by the XXXIII^d Army Corps and widened by the cavalry divisions attached to that corps, in the direction of Horodenka, opened the way to the 2d Cavalry Corps, and how the action of the 2d Cavalry Corps in the direction of Vereschanka opened the way to the 3d Cavalry Corps.

To the latter fell the most difficult task. That corps had to force itself through the positions interwoven with barbed wire, relying upon its own forces; Count Keller could not count on the support of the XLth Army Corps infantry, and, besides, he had no heavy artillery at his disposal. However, it might be expected that his situation would become easier, should the enemy be forced to direct against the XXXIII^d Army, crossing the river, their Gonved Division, which served as support to the Austrian Landsturm; it was not likely that the latter, being inferior infantry, would hold their positions, even reinforced by barbed wire.

Count Keller, commander of the 3d Cavalry Corps, was a distinguished cavalry leader. His men had full confidence in him and were very much devoted to him. He was a man of conspicuous personal bravery and capable at the same time of making decisions on a broad strategical scale. No better man could be found for the planned operation.

Count Keller was also a leader who, receiving an order to make a decisive attack, would carry it out with the power of all his forces. Not all leaders were like him. Some were decisive only in their reports, and what they reported on paper did not correspond with the strain they had endured and tenacity they had shown in reality. I do not wish here to make a general charge of incompetency against our chiefs of middle grades. The reason why such conditions obtained lay in the fact that the senior chiefs sometimes put forth demands which were beyond their subordinate forces, and the subordinates, in order not to sacrifice their troops in a task which could not be accomplished, did not report the full truth. Their insincerity under the above conditions came as a rectification of the situation, as is always the case in actuality.

With all that in view, before demanding of the cavalry to break the enemy fortified lines by its own forces, I had a long conversation with Count Keller

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

over the telephone, and we agreed that an order to start the attack should not be sent out to him before I should be quite certain that the Austrian infantry had become much weaker on the section opposite the 3d Cavalry Corps. As to Count Keller, he believed in our success and wished to make the attack; it was, therefore, necessary to be very careful in wording the order.

A few days before the operation air reconnaissance began to report definitely the transportation of enemy troops from the neighborhood of Okna and Zastavna toward the town of Horodenka. It established a great number of railway cars at the stations near those villages, and a heavy traffic. Information gathered from prisoners confirmed the regrouping of enemy forces, undertaken on the ground that the Austrian command could not count upon getting reinforcements from outside. The above information was communicated by me to Count Keller with an instruction that he should begin his action simultaneously with the XXXIII^d Army Corps, in order to stop a further movement of enemy troops against the XXXIII^d Army Corps, because the latter, as stated above, was also to carry out a difficult operation—the crossing of the Dniester. Thus we decided not to wait for the arrival in the enemy's rear of the 2d Cavalry Corps. Moreover, that corps was sending in reports that the enemy was concentrating troops against the Zaleschiki bridge-head, apparently bringing them up from all over their right flank, on the right bank of the Dniester.

On the fixed day, at dawn, the XXXIII^d Army Corps began crossing the Dniester—one division at the village Khmelevo, the other at the village Rjepintze. The enemy did not expect that we would cross the river, and the two divisions quickly overcame the resistance they met with. By noon the Mixed and the 12th Cavalry Divisions were already on the other side of the Dniester. The Mixed Division charged the enemy north of Horodenka. More than 15 squadrons attacked mounted; the remaining squadrons co-operated dismounted.

The following episode took place during that fight. One of the Zaamour cavalry regiments charged mounted parts of the German Fusz Battalion (apparently of the 6th Cavalry Division). The Germans retreated in disorder. But the galloping "lava" of the Zaamour regiment unexpectedly came up against a ditch; their small Manchurian ponies could not jump it; the horsemen lingered in front of the ditch. The Germans stopped and opened a terrific rifle fire. I saw that field afterwards; it was scattered with corpses of white horses. But fortunately a squadron of H. M. Lancers, advancing on the flank, dashed forward, went over the ditch, and forced the Germans to continue their retreat.

The fight near Horodenka was started by the Mixed Cavalry Division on the initiative of one of the Zaamour regimental commanders, who made an attack against the flank of the enemy's infantry. The chief of the division

at once brought into action his remaining regiments—the Grodno Hussars, H. M. Lancers, and the other Zaamour cavalry regiment. He did not aim at keeping his regiments in a mass and boldly deployed them on a wide front. To our regret, the 12th Cavalry Division was late; the charge of the Mixed Cavalry Division was not developed, and Horodenka was not taken at one swoop. Although the enemy evacuated it at night, the spoils escaped and, what is more important, the enemy got a respite.

While all this action was going on, the units of the 2d Cavalry Corps started crossing the river near Ousietchko. At that point, together with the cavalry, units of the 82d Infantry Division were crossing the river. It is to be regretted that the 2d Cavalry Corps commander did not show the energy which a cavalry leader is expected to show at such a moment. The whole operation was being conducted at too slow a pace. In that connection a certain incident had left its influence on the morale. At dawn the Austrians themselves had taken the offensive against the Zaleschiki bridge-head and had occupied it, capturing about one thousand men of the 82d Division's brigade defending the bridge-head.

On the front of the 3d Cavalry Corps the events, as might be expected, took a very different course. Count Keller ordered the 1st Don Cossack Division to attack the enemy's fortified position at dawn, dismounted. It was still dark when the Cossacks succeeded in getting to the wire entanglements; but, the number of field guns at our disposal being small, no passages in sufficient number had been made, and the Cossacks took a prone position in front of the wire. The situation was indeed a critical one. At that moment the commander of one of the Don Cossack regiments, Colonel Popoff, who was lying with his Cossacks in front of the wire, stood up and shouted: "Knights of St. George, follow me!" and began to sabre the wire which had not been cut. The Cossacks dashed after their commander. The enemy gave in and, covering themselves with a desultory firing, started clearing the trenches. The front line squadrons of the Cossacks rushed into them. Meanwhile the squadrons of the reserve mounted and, coming up on horseback to the wire entanglements, advanced through the passages cut in the wires and, after crossing the ground dug up with trenches, took up the pursuit of the fleeing and panic-stricken enemy. Immediately after the 1st Don Cossack Division attacked, Count Keller deployed also the 10th Cavalry Division. The enemy retreated on the whole line, and on the front of the *opolchenie* troops the pursuit of the enemy was taken up by the 7th Don Cossack and the Tekinski Mounted Regiment. More than five thousand prisoners, ten guns, and many machine-guns fell to Count Keller's cavalry as a reward for its bold action. But the strategical results were even more important. Following the catastrophe caused by our drive, the enemy's right flank fell back, without stopping, behind the river Prut.

Thus, on the very first day, three cavalry corps obtained freedom of action. I am not going to occupy the reader's attention by a narrative of further details. On the entire wide front a wave of our 160 squadrons rolled from the Dniester to the Prut, overflowing from the flanks and rear those enemy units which tried to put up a resistance on the previously fortified positions. Such attempts were quickly put to an end, and in the course of a few days the enemy were cleared from the whole region between the Dniester and the Prut. The success of our cavalry had also an effect upon the sections of the enemy's fortified front opposite the XXXth and XIth Army Corps. The enemy evacuated their positions and, leaving prisoners in our hands, retreated into the mountains. The whole operation yielded us more than 25,000 prisoners.

Now, let us consider how the action of the enemy's cavalry against our flank and rear can best be met.

At first the following answer suggests itself: It is best to oppose such action with infantry. In fact, was it not stated above that the real power of the cavalry, acting against the flank, is much less than its imagined power? But, as a matter of fact, cavalry's attack against the flank is always accompanied by a disruption of the organization of the battle. A confusion in the control is inevitable. Moreover, an important part is played in a battle by the psychology of the masses. And, in that respect, no demands similar to those made on individuals holding superior posts can be made on the masses. Furthermore, if we add that the armies fighting in modern wars are not professional armies, trained during many years; if we also add that every mass lives by imagination, it will become clear that the appearance of cavalry on the flank, still more in the rear, causes confusion and disorganization and lessens the fitness of troops for battle.

Once it happened to me to witness the impression made by the news of the appearance of enemy cavalry in the rear. The Guard Cavalry Brigade came up to the river San. That day we had rest and were marching in our infantry's zone. Upon our arrival we found the Semenovski Regiment of the Guard crossing the river. That was one of the infantry regiments of the Old Guard of which the Russian Army had right to be proud. The training and the living conditions of the Guard were in much more favorable circumstances than with our infantry of the line. The men were carefully chosen. The drilling was perfect, and I can say with confidence that no regiment of our Allies came in that respect nearer to the standard of a professional army than the Semenovski Regiment of the Guard. I am dwelling upon this at some length in order to make it clear that one cannot expect of the infantry regiments of future armies such self-control as the Semenovski Regiment possessed. During the war that regiment distinguished itself as one of the best regiments of the Russian Army, and after the revolution it was one of the last regiments to fall to pieces.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The bridge across the San had been burned by the retreating Austrians. Our engineers were quickly building a new bridge. As it was not finished, the Semenovski Regiment was crossing it, marching in long files of men over boards thrown upon it. We had been ordered to cross a ford, fairly deep, near the bridge.

A vanguard was covering the crossing. Any activity on the part of the enemy could hardly be expected, because the Austrians, having suffered a complete defeat along the entire front, were speedily retreating with the sole purpose of breaking away from us as soon as possible.

Having forded the river, the Hussars and the Lancers dismounted, loosened the saddle girths, and started feeding their horses. I rode up to the place where the bridge was being restored and looked at the picture while the crossing of the Semenovski was proceeding.

Suddenly I heard a shout from the opposite side, from a wood. That shout grew and finally I could understand distinctly the words, "Enemy cavalry, enemy cavalry!" The men walking on the boards rushed forward; a few boards, together with the men, fell into the river. On our bank a terrific bustle ensued. Even shots were fired. It was a real panic. An order to mount was immediately given to our regiments. We got out of the village, in order not to be hampered in our deployment.

It was quite incomprehensible, where the enemy infantry could come from. The only possible direction was—from the heaven.

Soon the confusion and bustle were over. During the desultory firing one man was killed, one was wounded. No cavalry could be found. There was some talk about a man from the supply column having seen an enemy patrol in the wood. Perhaps it was true; if so, it can easily be imagined how that patrol, lost or forgotten, bashfully hid in the wood, trembling for its life.

Having seen that picture with my own eyes, I could understand the mental state of the enemy, suddenly confronted on their flank or in their rear by our cavalry.

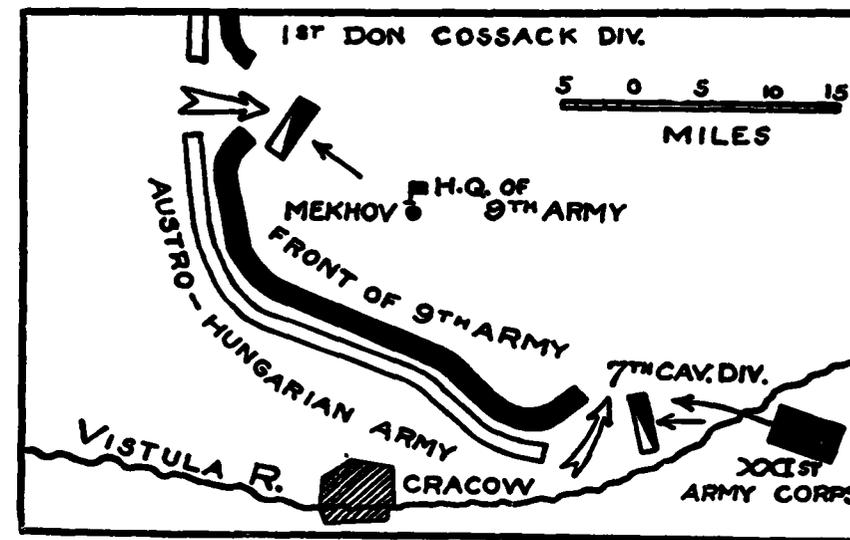
Measures of two kinds are necessary in such circumstances:

The first consists in preventing any further widening of the breach; the gap must be screened as soon as possible. To that end, of course, units should be used that are near at hand. However, should the breach become a wide one, that arm must be called upon which can soonest reach the threatened sector—that is, the cavalry.

In the end of November, 1914, the Russian 9th Army was fighting near Cracow (see sketch No. 4). I had just been appointed Director of Military Operations of that army. The situation was difficult. We were attacked on our left as well as on our right flank; we were jammed by two Austro-Hungarian armies as by a pair of pincers. At first, the enemy succeeded in breaking our battle liaison with the 4th Army, next to us. We sent there imme-

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

diately the 1st Don Cossack Division. The Cossacks, dismounted, lances in their hands, charged the enemy units, dug in on our flank, and gained time, so that reinforcements, hastily drawn from everywhere, could come up. Soon afterwards our left flank was enveloped. We had no more reserves. There was no cavalry on that flank, our only cavalry division at that time, the 1st Don Cossack Division, having been engaged already on our right flank. The envelopment of the flank, should it develop further, threatened us with encircling. It was on this occasion that I perceived clearly the fact, of which I have spoken above—enveloping and encircling do not always develop as



SKETCH No. 4
Attacks of the 9th Army Against the Enemy Enveloping its Flanks,
November, 1914

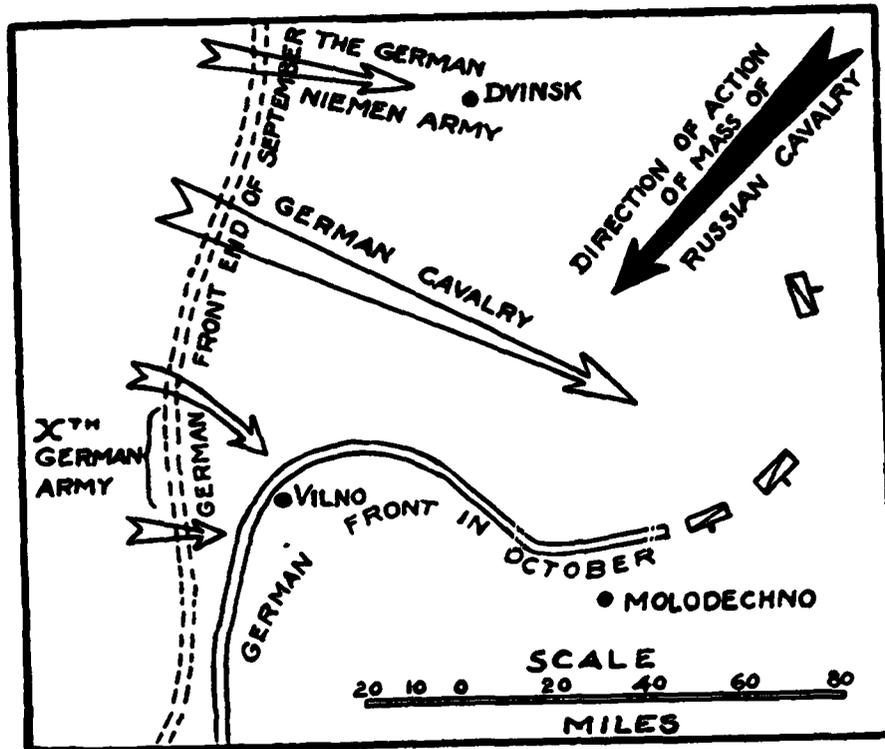
quickly as might be expected, because the one who envelops the flank is himself afraid of getting into a bag. This significant fact was our salvation in this case. By order of Army Group Headquarters, the XX1st Army Corps and the 7th Cavalry Division, both stationed on the other side of the Vistula, were put at our disposal. Of course, the cavalry division was the first to reinforce us.

The very fact of the arrival of the 7th Cavalry Division at our flank saved us. Arriving opposite the flank of the enveloping Austrian units, it stopped the development of their flanking movement. Upon the arrival, in the next days,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of the XXIst Army Corps we were enabled to take the offensive ourselves and gain a local success on our left flank.

Measures of the second kind consist not only in warding off the enemy, enveloping our flank, but also in taking advantage of the fact mentioned above, namely, that the one who is enveloping can be easily outflanked himself. Such a solution of the problem is of more interest to us, because it leads



SKETCH No. 5

Liquidation of the German Cavalry's Enveloping Attack on Russian Right Flank near Vilno, September, 1915

not only to a passive parrying of the blow aimed at us, but also to the destruction of a part of the enemy's force.

In October, 1915, the Germans combined their offensive on our north-western front, against Vilno, with a deep cavalry raid against our rear. The enemy cavalry consisted of several cavalry divisions: it broke through our cavalry protecting the flank of our armies fighting near Vilno and swept energetically toward our rear. As it was supported on its inner flank by the Ger-

CAVALRY ON THE FLANK AND IN THE REAR

man infantry, which was squeezing more and more the rears of our armies, the confusion in our rears became very great. Naturally, one of the first measures of our command was to prevent a further squeezing of the formed semicircle. With that object in view, all the infantry and cavalry units near at hand were used. But the liquidation of the German cavalry's envelopment could be accomplished by our cavalry alone. The main masses of the latter were directed to the northeast, in the German cavalry's rear (see sketch No. 5). The lack of decisiveness on the part of one of the cavalry corps commanders enabled the Germans to escape, although with great losses, from the neck of the bottle, which was being corked up by us.

The most advantageous direction for counteracting an enveloping movement is the action against the outer flank of the enveloping enemy. Therefore, the unit placed in echelon for the flank's protection must not keep close to the flank. The cavalry, as an arm having more freedom in maneuvering, can keep farther away from the flank under its protection and can quicker gain a position menacing the outer flank of the enveloping enemy.

From the above, two deductions can be made:

First. The flank is protected best by the cavalry.

Second. The leader of the cavalry unit placed on the flank should, above all, keep away boldly from the flank he protects; that leader should remember that the best protection of the flank consists in bold maneuvering against the rear of the enveloping enemy unit, and that the gravest error a cavalry leader can make in such circumstances is a timid pinning of himself to the flank of his own troops.



The Twelfth Cavalry on the Road

BY

NATHAN C. SHIVERICK, Lieutenant-Colonel, Cavalry, R. C.

RECENTLY COLONEL SEDGWICK RICE, of the 12th U. S. Cavalry, led his regiment on a march from Camp Robert E. L. Michie, Del Rio, Texas, to its new station, at Fort Brown, Brownsville, Texas, and it was my good fortune to be along the entire distance, approximately 425 miles. I believe many facts of this march would be of interest to the Cavalry Service.

The 12th, like all cavalry regiments, had suffered a great reduction in its enlisted personnel, incidental to discharges by favor in the early summer, transfers resulting from the reduction of the number of cavalry regiments, and transfers made necessary by the adoption of a new organization for cavalry. Just before starting on the march, one entire squadron en route from Panama to join the regiment was transferred elsewhere. While en route to Brownsville a transfer to the 12th of a very limited number of officers and enlisted men was to be effected and they were to form the nucleus of a new squadron.

On the 6th of October we started on the march, the command consisting of 19 officers, two warrant officers, and 243 enlisted men of cavalry, two officers and six men of the Medical Corps being attached. There were two civilian packers. The animals consisted of 455 horses and 203 mules. Transportation consisted of seven floating picket lines with spring wagons, 18 light wagons (convertible trailers), 30 heavy wagons, and one Dodge touring car.

The colonel was determined to retain as much of his mount as possible, notwithstanding the burden it seemed to place on the command in the movement of so many surplus animals. However, the floating picket lines functioned so smoothly that the spare animals added but little difficulty. The method of employing these lines was as follows: The forward end was fastened to a singletree, which was hitched in the usual manner, without breeching, to an anchor horse or mule, and this animal was led by a mounted man. The rear end of the line was secured to the pole of a spring wagon, which was drawn by two horses; this wagon, of course, carried a driver and a load. The horses were attached to the line in pairs, one of each pair on opposite sides of the line, by short rope shanks, which were spliced into the line and snapped into the halters. Two outriders were on the flank of each side of the line, and they moved up and down the line wherever their presence seemed necessary. These floating lines would actually accommodate fifty animals each and negotiate sharp "S" turns with apparent ease. The outriders on the inside

THE TWELFTH CAVALRY ON THE ROAD

flank would station themselves in turn at the bends in the road and keep the animals in the road, while the outriders on the outer flank would keep them up to their gait.

The rate of march was fast, averaging more than 5½ miles per hour for the entire distance, including halts and stops for water. Colonel Rice proceeded on the belief that sore backs are generally caused by weary riders on tired horses. We made regular hourly halts, during which inspections for distressed animals were made. Practically the same animals were ridden throughout the entire march. At Fort Ringgold, McAllen, and Brownsville, all animals were inspected by the garrison veterinarians, and were found to be in excellent condition, with the exception of a very few minor injuries.

The trip was made without a sore back, which would appear as a strong justification of the colonel's belief in marching rapidly. The enlisted men, as well as the officers, enjoyed the rapid marching. I never saw a man fall out on the entire march, and while there probably were such instances they must have been exceptionally rare. The spirit of the command was excellent. I do not believe that any regiment ever belonged more to its colonel than in this outfit, or had a colonel who belonged more to his regiment. "Achievement" seemed to be the motto.

Camp Michie, a mere border camp, was made a happier place to live in by the interest and work of the 12th. From the salvage they built not only a most comfortable and suitable club-house for officers, but also one for non-coms., and by a judicious use of stable litter made into compost heaps, established lovely green lawns—a joyous and welcome contrast to the usual barren dustiness of border stations. The regret shown by the good townfolk of Del Rio at the departure of the 12th was eloquent evidence to me of the cordial relations which existed between them.

The column was always in camp before noon, and generally we reached camp about 10:30 in the morning. The road was not dangerous for either horses or riders at any place, and in consequence the command was never dismounted to lead. The time which might have been spent in leading was saved, therefore, and a correspondingly longer time was gained in camp for the care of animals and for the rest and recreation of both men and animals. The roads varied from excellent to miserable. Usually culverts were in bad condition and required considerable work in repair before heavy wagons could venture safely over them. To accomplish such repairs, a wagon had been fitted up with tools and material, and in a minor way took the place of a bridge train.

It would seem that some day the War Department might enter into some arrangement with the border counties to have them maintain in good repair a first-class road from Brownsville to San Diego, to be built by the Government. Such a road would be of inestimable value in case of serious trouble

in Mexico. If ever such a road is built, let us hope that it will be good and broad, with one side metalled, for wheeled transportation, and one side comparatively soft, for mounted animals.

With respect to marching, it is such a serious part of cavalry business that it seems regrettable there is not more of it done in our service. From a study of the campaigns in Syria and Palestine, it appears that the ability of the British cavalry forces to make long marches, attended by very serious restrictions as to water and forage, made it possible for them to contribute so handsomely to the achievement of gaining a great territory for the British Empire. Of course, marching alone did not win battles, but it made it possible for soldiers and horses to earn opportunities for successful combat. During one phase in the preparations for a general engagement an entire cavalry division was sent out every fortnight on a march lasting 36 hours, during which time a distance of 70 miles was often covered and without water for their animals. When the engagement did come off, these troops were marching and fighting for periods of 36 to 48 hours without water for their animals.

Moreover, much of the severe fighting was over unknown ground, in a locality where native guides could not be employed, due to their uncertain loyalty. These animals had to be kept going through this phase of the engagement in order that they might partake, farther along, in hard pursuit marches to cut off the enemy following a successful "break" through his lines. The handling and care of animals for such arduous service can be learned only through practice of marching, which alone can develop sound "marching judgment."

Life on the march is about as close as we can come to campaign service in peace-time training, with the exception of the few maneuvers which come so seldom. Marching gives the private soldier a daily change of scene and incident and a relief from the irksome routine of garrison life. It gives the non-com. an ideal chance to learn the capabilities of the men of his squad, and to really know their mounts. It gives troop officers the best opportunities to learn their men, to size up their mount, to study shortcomings in their training, and affords them a wonderful chance to demonstrate their own fitness to train, care for, and to lead their commands. For the colonel, it means a time to learn the personal equation of his officers, his non-coms., and his privates; to study the efficiency of his transportation; to learn the mount of his regiment; to determine the needs in future training, and to demonstrate his worth as a regimental leader. It would seem that any officer who would willingly dead-beat a march by seeking some trivial excuse to precede his command by train or automobile is hardly to be considered a cavalryman at heart.

With respect to this march of the 12th, mention should be made of the use of the band, which always played the column out of and into camp. This was possible, without causing delay, because of the convertible trailer wagon,

which had been fitted up with separate compartments for each instrument. This wagon was drawn by four horses and was always with the column. The band could either draw or return instruments in less than four minutes. In the morning, the wagon would leave camp with the light train, and then at about a mile from camp it would fall out. Later, when the column reached the wagon, the band would be fallen out to return instruments. At the last halt each day the band-wagon would come up and instruments would be drawn. The music always started every one out in the morning in good spirits, and at the close of a march it brought every one into camp in a cheerful frame of mind. In addition, the band gave much entertainment to the people of villages near which camp was located, not only by playing as the column marched through the villages, but by the concerts which preceded retreat.

The Thomas cooker had been issued to several organizations, including headquarters mess, to be tested out on the march. I observed this equipment very carefully, and undoubtedly it is far and away the best cooking device ever developed for field use. The Thomas cookers used on this trip were made in the blacksmith and the plumbing shops in Del Rio, with makeshift tools and materials. When they can be manufactured in a proper plant, by skilled mechanics, supplied with proper tools and materials, their further improvement will be proportional.*

In the matter of the field transportation, the personal care and thought given by the colonel to this vitally important part of a cavalry outfit was manifested by its excellent condition and performance throughout the march. The light train always preceded the command into camp, thus avoiding any delays in getting up picket lines and establishing camp. The type of collars furnished with the harnesses for the light wagons were more suited to the necks and shoulders of draft animals than to the horses used; but, in spite of this, the teamsters, by exercise of judgment and care, brought their animals through in good condition. The heavy train was supplied with mules of excellent type, and they made their daily marches without distress and always at a proportionately rapid rate. The usual interest and pride displayed by officers and enlisted men in the transportation, the mules, wagons, and harness, clearly demonstrated the appreciation of all grades of the vast importance of field transportation to a cavalry command in case of campaign service.

* Here the writer made a few remarks about the test of compressed forage, too incomplete in their nature to be embodied with this article. His reticence may be attributed to a desire that his known interest in compressed forage should not detract attention from his comments on the other features of this march. Colonel Rice has made an official report upon the forage, in which he recommends, without qualification, its proper use by the service as a field ration for animals. The test was unusual, as the hay allowance was cut to 10 pounds by orders of Corps Area Headquarters, and the compressed forage was reduced to 7½ pounds allowance per animal.—EDITOR.

The pack-train was at a disadvantage in having only two experienced packers, the packmaster and the cargador. All other professional packers had been discharged just before the march, in conformity with orders from above. Packers were recruited from enlisted men, and while their hands were unaccustomed to handling ropes and their muscles not hardened to packers' work, they progressed rapidly and made a very creditable showing. For the first ten days of the march they did severe duty, handling three times loads of hay. These loads, while not too heavy, were bulky and difficult packs to keep tight and in proper place, thus requiring frequent adjustment of the loads.

This whole march was a wonderful holiday for me, and it was a real privilege to be intimately associated with such a fine lot of fellows, to whom every incident was a pleasure and who loved their jobs. Cheerfulness was always present, whether at the end of a thirty-mile march or during the preparation for a "badger fight." During the entire time I never heard from any one any criticism of headquarters or of each other and I never heard an unfavorable comment on any duty required of any one. Incidentally, a most thrilling and successful "badger fight" was pulled off at Fort Ringgold. I wish all Reserve officers might have similar opportunities to make such marches and acquire experience and instruction in so happy a way. I am certain it would promote a keener interest and stimulate the work of organizing the Reserve.



THE TERMS independent cavalry, advance cavalry, advance guard cavalry, etc., will no longer be used. The missions assigned will indicate the character of the service.—*Instruction Circular No. 2, General Service Schools, August 5, 1921.*

Galloping Horses

THE QUESTION has been frequently asked, how far a horse can travel at the extended gallop (16 miles per hour), many officers being of the opinion that horses could not make 16 miles in an hour without being ruined, if they made it at all.

The following is a report of a test ride made on short notice to try out the matter:

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL,
FORT RILEY, KANS., November 7, 1921.

On November 6, 1921, two horses were selected to ride about 16 miles in about one hour. Colonel Romeyn, riding at about 200 pounds, rode the chestnut, 9 years old, half-bred horse *Dangerfield*. Major Barry, riding at about 150 pounds, rode the bay, 8 years old, half-bred horse *Bluemont*. Neither horse had any special preparation. The ride was over the measured course on the Island. Lieutenant Pollard, V. C., examined the horses before the start, five minutes after the finish, and one hour after the finish. His findings may be of interest. The ride started at 9:00 a. m.

"DANGERFIELD"

Time.	Pulse.	Resp.	Temp.	Mucous membrane.	Remarks.
9:00 a. m.	36	16	98.2	Almost normal, slightly yellow.	Carried about 200 lbs. ;
10:05 a. m.	72	66	104.1	Congested slightly.	went 16 miles in 55
11:00 a. m.	40	30	101.2	Approximately normal.	minutes. Main dis-
					tress in heart action.
					Normal, morning of
					7th.

"BLUEMONT"

Time.	Pulse.	Resp.	Temp.	Mucous membrane.	Remarks.
9:00 a. m.	36	18	99	Slightly yellowish red.....	Carried about 150 lbs. ;
10:05 a. m.	66	37	102.6	Medium congestion.	went 16 miles in 1
11:00 a. m.	36	28	100.4	Slight congestion.	hour 5 seconds. Main
					distress in leg wear-
					ness. Normal, morn-
					ing of November 7th.

It is our opinion that, had occasion demanded, these horses could have been ridden from 18 to 20 miles in one hour.

(Signed)

J. A. BARRY,
Major Cavalry.
I. R. POLLARD,
First Lieutenant, V. C.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

This ride was arranged by Major Barry, Director, Department of Horsemanship, on very short notice. *Bluemont* and *Dangerfield* were known to be two of the best gallopers at the school, and Colonel Romeyn (to whom *Dangerfield* is assigned for school duties) is one of the heaviest of the officers on duty at the school. Incidentally, it may be mentioned that Colonel Romeyn is an instructor in tactics, not in the Department of Horsemanship.

On November 5 Major Barry called Colonel Romeyn on the telephone and asked him if he would like to take a ride of about 16 miles in one hour the following morning. He also asked if *Dangerfield* was fit for the test. Colonel Romeyn replied that he would be glad to take the ride, and that *Dangerfield* was in first-class shape. This was the first intimation that Colonel Romeyn had of the ride, although he and Major Barry had often talked of the possibilities in this line, Colonel Romeyn claiming to have ridden 16 miles in one hour (on a horse named *Duke*, belonging to Colonel Short) in Texas in 1900 without injuring the horse.

Bluemont and *Dangerfield* are both about 16.1 and weigh about 1,150 pounds. *Bluemont* had been used daily by Major Barry in "school" work only and had had no long gallops for several months.

Dangerfield had been ridden daily by Colonel Romeyn for several months, about one hour *per diem*, but that hour being mostly at the gallop, covering from six to twelve miles, across country, in the hour, and with a great deal of jumping. He was very hard in consequence.

The two horses were warmed up in the riding hall at walk, trot, and canter for about ten minutes. Then they were examined by Lieutenant Polard. After the examination they were ridden at the walk for about five minutes, waiting for the exact hour of 9:00 a. m. The two officers started in opposite directions around the track, Colonel Romeyn carrying a stop-watch and both officers ordinary watches. *Dangerfield* made the first mile in 4 minutes 10 seconds and *Bluemont* about 10 seconds slower. Both officers then increased the gait, Colonel Romeyn to about 18 miles and Major Barry to about 17 miles.

Colonel Romeyn continued the 18-mile gallop for about 6 miles, and then decreased it to about 17 miles, which gait was held to the finish. Major Barry dismounted during the last half of the fourth mile and ran alongside of *Bluemont* for $\frac{1}{8}$ of a mile, with the idea of helping out *Bluemont's* wind. This cost him some time, and he had to ride the last mile at about 20 miles per hour to get in on time. After eleven miles on the right hand, Major Barry changed hand and rode the rest of the distance on the left hand. Colonel Romeyn rode the entire distance on the left hand, but changed leads several times, riding about six miles on right lead. Both officers wore spurs (blunt) and carried whips, but used neither, both horses responding to voice and leg when it was thought that they needed urging.

GALLOPING HORSES

Dangerfield showed very little weariness, and immediately after being examined was mounted and put into a canter for a few yards without effort on the part of the rider. *Bluemont* was in very good condition, but the strain of galloping had opened an old cut on one pastern.

After examination, both horses were bandaged and blanketed and walked for half an hour to cool them out slowly. After being thoroughly cooled and examined for the third time, they were watered and given a hot mash.

Dangerfield was ridden several miles the following day by Colonel Romeyn, and put over two three-foot jumps close together, and showed no stiffness or weariness. *Bluemont* was not ridden on account of his pastern wound, but was normal in every respect.

Neither officer felt any weariness from the ride. Colonel Romeyn played four sets of tennis that afternoon.

The course is on what is known as "The Island," a path through a piece of wooded lowlands near the Kansas River. This path is somewhat winding and, due to fallen trees, contains several rather sharp turns. The footing is mostly firm earth (packed), but included in the mile probably altogether a quarter mile of sand about six inches deep, and three or four patches of mud several inches deep and about ten yards each in length.

Saddles used were training saddles (Saumur). Bridles were double snaffle.

During the month of October and up to the time of the ride, *Dangerfield* had been on full forage (grain over the allowance being furnished by Colonel Romeyn at his own expense). *Bluemont*, doing less work, had been on nine pounds.

It is believed that any good well-bred horse in good condition should be able to duplicate this performance. If a smooth galloper, it should not worry or tire a rider who has kept himself in riding condition. The result of the test is considered valuable, as showing what a mounted messenger *can* do, if necessary, on a good horse.



Editorial Comment

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL IN NEW QUARTERS

IN ORDER to secure more desirable quarters in the nearer vicinity of the War Department offices, the CAVALRY JOURNAL office has been recently moved again. Our new address is 1624 H Street N. W., and we are just about half-way between the State, War, and Navy Building and the Army and Navy Club. We are sharing our new office with the U. S. Field Artillery Association, which is one symptom of the amity existing between the two mounted combat branches.

WHY YOU FAILED TO RECEIVE YOUR "CAVALRY JOURNAL"

HERE ARE some suggested answers:

1. You have changed station or address one or more times and have failed to notify us. Hereafter the CAVALRY JOURNAL will endeavor to keep the mailing list up to date, so far as regular officers are concerned, independently of notifications from the latter, which notifications are too infrequently received. It is a good plan, however, to notify the JOURNAL office of your changes of address.
2. You may have let your subscription expire some months ago. In several instances, after a former subscriber has failed to respond to a succession of notices of expiration and his name has accordingly been removed from the mailing list, he has written in, "Why don't I receive my JOURNAL?"
3. Your JOURNAL may have been appropriated by a careless mail-orderly, or your brother officer across the hall, who wasn't particular to notice the address on the wrapper.
4. You may have forgotten that the CAVALRY JOURNAL is published quarterly, and in the interval since the last number was received you may have formed an impression that you have missed a number.
5. Finally, your JOURNAL may have miscarried in the mails.

Every effort is made to insure delivery of the JOURNAL to subscribers, and upon advice of non-receipt a second copy is mailed while the edition remains in stock.

MR. ROBERT C. HILLDALE

THE EDITOR here acknowledges the unstinting assistance and support of Mr. Robert C. Hilldale, who has served the U. S. Cavalry Association in the capacity of Managing Editor since the resumption of publication of the JOURNAL in 1920. In October last he vacated that office to resume the private practice of law in the firm of Stovall and Hilldale, of Washington, D. C.

EDITORIAL COMMENT

THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE ASSOCIATION

JANUARY 17 the Annual Meeting of the U. S. Cavalry Association will be held in the Army and Navy Club, Washington, D. C. It is hoped that it will be attended by practically all of the members on duty or living in and about Washington. A gratifyingly large number of proxies have been received, which assure the proper transaction of business and indicate a lively interest in the affairs of the Association on the part of its members.

The principal business of the meeting, beyond the election of officers, will be action upon the proposed amendment to the Constitution. The 1911 Constitution has been rendered obsolete in many particulars by the changes being effected in the System of National Defense, so a revision has become necessary. The draft which was furnished a few months ago to all members has met with general approval. Some criticisms have been received, all of which will be considered by the Executive Council. The principal fault in the draft submitted lies probably in the active membership clause, which was not so worded as to include many officers of the regular service who have transferred to other branches of the service, but are still keenly interested in cavalry. This fault, together with others, both as to matter and form, will probably be corrected in the final action taken at the Annual Meeting.

CAVALRY RESERVE CORPS ACTIVITY

It is interesting to note that the 61st Cavalry Division, with headquarters at Governor's Island, New York, has formed a Cavalry Reserve Association of the Second Corps Area, with headquarters at the Cornell Club, 30 West 44th Street, New York City. Article V designates the CAVALRY JOURNAL as the official organ of the Association. The CAVALRY JOURNAL accepts the honor and the obligation.

This is real occasion! Few evidences have been noted that indicate more indisputably that the Reserve Corps—and particularly the Cavalry Reserve Corps—is a real live entity to be reckoned with; not merely an aggregation of individuals more or less interested in cavalry—perhaps in the past tense, and connected with the War Department by means of a multigraphed letter a year; but a *Corps*, with a spirit and a consciousness of corporate existence and a purpose. The purpose of the Association is stated as follows:

1. To aid and assist in the preparation of personnel for efficient active service.
2. To foster and perpetuate the splendid spirit of service and high ideals of patriotism so finely developed in the war with Germany.

Welcome to the Second Corps Cavalry Reserve Association!

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Attention is invited here to a few books that are specially recommended for a cavalryman's library:

The Desert Mounted Corps, by Colonel Preston.

The Strategy of the Western Front, by Colonel Sargent.

The Art of Reconnaissance, by Major-General Sir David Henderson.

These are up to date and up to the minute.

Take note also that Colonel Gray has consented to release the remainder of the stock of his Cavalry Tactics as Illustrated by the War of the Rebellion at a greatly reduced price.

The American Geographical Society has published as Number 3 of its Research Series a work by Professor Douglas W. Johnson, formerly Major, Division of Military Intelligence, entitled Battlefields of the World War—Western and Southern Fronts—A Study in Military Geography. This remarkable volume is a classic, no less. It embodies a thoroughgoing study of the relation of the terrain to the military operation, and is couched in such admirable rhetoric and is so beautifully illustrated with maps, diagrams, and photographs that it well deserves a place in the library of every military student.

WATCH THE MACHINE-GUN SQUADRONS

THERE IS one objection that might be offered to the concentration of the cavalry's machine-guns into machine-gun squadrons, separate from the cavalry regiments. This is the chance that officers on duty for long periods with separate regiments may lose sight of the fact that the machine-gun is an important cavalry weapon and lose interest in it and its tactical employment. The Jackass Battery does not now accompany the regiment to drill, where its work is visible every day to every member of the regiment. But it is undergoing good, hard intensive training elsewhere. So don't fail to keep it in remembrance.

There is no shadow of a doubt that if our cavalry is to render good service in the future the maximum fire power consistent with rapid maneuvering must be developed. It is interesting to note foreign tendencies in this respect. The French and Belgian Cavalry, in particular, have appeared under a strange aspect since the war. Almost inseparable from horse and saber before 1914, the course of the war on the Western Front has imbued them with such an all-pervasive vision of trench warfare that they have since been developing their training along lines which seem to be quite as extreme in the opposite direction. The drill regulations now in force in the French Cavalry make laborious provision for the employment of cavalry *as infantry*. In the Belgian maneuvers of last year the cavalry dismounted some miles away from the fight to go forward as foot-troops.

It is believed that our own comparatively steady adherence to a true cavalry, laying earnest stress upon its mounted work not merely as a parade function, but as an essential element of its fighting power, yet developing an ever-increasing fire power, is amply justified by the clearer view which the passing months are affording of the operations of the war on all its fronts. And there are evi-

EDITORIAL COMMENT

dences that the French are themselves questioning the wisdom of their present course. Captain Daubert's interesting discussion in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for September-October, 1921, on the question of cavalry or mounted infantry leaves no doubt in the mind of the thoughtful reader that mounted infantry can never replace cavalry, thoroughly mobile and available for either mounted or dismounted action as circumstances may direct. But cavalry must not lag behind the other arms in its appreciation of the necessity for a tremendous development of fire power. Watch the machine-gun squadrons.

CIVILIAN APPRECIATION

Rider and Driver reflects the thought of a certain responsible civilian group who are not content to sit idly by and see the cavalry mutilated. In a number issued during the late summer there appeared an editorial bearing the caption: *The Cavalry must not be Reduced Irreparably*, in which attention is called to the patent fact that cavalry cannot be made again in a hurry, and that it will be a great mistake to let the competition of some of the army's newer elements result in the crippling of this branch. "Civilians," it concludes, "should shoulder the responsibility and go into the question regardless of everything and everybody except the best interests of the country."

This comment does credit to *Rider and Driver*. A recent editorial in *The Providence Journal* entitled "The Nineteenth Hussars," while it includes some statements to which one well versed in cavalry history can scarcely subscribe, gives publicity to the fact that cavalry played an important part throughout the World War, was in some instances indispensable, and will be needed in the future as in the past. It is pleasant to find these evidences of sound information and reasonableness in civilian quarters.

Will Irwin, in *The Next War*, calls attention by graphic means to the fact that government expenditures in the fiscal year 1919-20 included 220 millions for primary government functions, 65 millions for public works, 59 millions for research, education, etc., as contrasted with 2,890 millions for pensions and expenditures arising out of past wars and 1,348 millions for the army and navy.

The pension list, etc., is clearly chargeable in part to unpreparedness in the past, and part of the last-mentioned figure is not properly chargeable to national defense. But the point that is interesting to examine is the separation of defense from primary functions of government. Military defense is one of the oldest functions of government. It will always be one of the most fundamental functions of government until government be supplanted by communism and sovietism. Even in that ignominious case, let it be noted that the R. S. F. S. R. disposes of over half a million troops today. It is a curious quirk of sophistry, met with not infrequently, to put primary functions and public works and public education into one beatific band apart, and enshroud public defense in a criminal cloak of misanthropy, suspected and impugned. Whereas the public defense is a primary function of government, *conditio sine qua non*.

Topics of the Day

LORD HAIG AT CANTERBURY

THE MEMORIAL CROSS to the men of Canterbury, of all branches of His Majesty's Service, who fell in the war, was unveiled October 10 by Field-Marshal Lord Haig, and dedicated by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

The monument stands in the Market Place, close to Christ Church Gate, which gives access to the precincts of the Cathedral. No more historic site could be chosen for it in the Cathedral City, for in the Market Place is the junction of the two ancient roads, by one of which St. Augustine entered Canterbury and by the other the pilgrims came to the Shrine of St. Thomas.

Lord Haig said he viewed the disbanding of cavalry regiments with professional regret, even while he did not pretend to criticize the financial reasons which have led to their dispersal. He certainly was not among those who hold that cavalry was a dead arm, or that the place of flesh and blood in man and horse could ever be wholly taken by petrol and machinery. He did not think he was alone in that opinion, either here or abroad. Assuredly the time had not yet come when they could afford to dispense with cavalry. When the lessons of the great war were properly understood they would be found, he was confident, to teach no one thing more emphatically than this—that cavalry was still an essential arm, even in a European war, and more especially to an imperial army such as ours.

Let them not think that he disparaged or undervalued the new weapons. Tanks, aeroplanes, and heavy guns and other death-dealing devices that modern science had produced were all alike indispensable, but just as they are all in the end dependent on the man, so they had not yet served to eliminate the horse, which, in the hands of a trained cavalryman, was a part of the man himself. On the other hand, the development of mechanical transport of all kinds, both for the purposes of actual fighting and for supply, might well open up new opportunities of usefulness for cavalry by giving them the necessary weight to overcome local and extemporized resistance and by enabling cavalry to continue its effort over greater distances and for longer periods.

In the late war at least one occasion could be quoted where the absence of cavalry proved of decisive importance. What might have been the result if on March 27 or 28, 1918, Ludendorff had been able to let loose an adequate force of trained cavalry against the line of British and French troops east and southeast of Amiens, already strained almost to the breaking point? It was a possibility that no one could have contemplated at the time without the greatest anxiety. But Ludendorff had turned his cavalry into infantry, and

TOPICS OF THE DAY

he had no mounted troops with which to seize an opportunity which only mounted troops could turn to account.

On our own side we had then no more than three divisions of cavalry in an army of some 60 divisions, but all through the battle those three cavalry divisions did work that was invaluable, not because it required greater bravery and skill—for the bravery and skill of the infantry and other arms were unsurpassable—but because it was work that only cavalry could do. So urgent did the need for mounted troops become on the Third Corps front—down on the right of our line, where our junction with the French was threatened—that some of the cavalry units that had been broken up during the winter, when our cavalry establishment was reduced from five divisions to three, were hastily remounted on whatever horses could be got together and sent out again as cavalry to do successfully work they could not hope to do on foot. And when our turn came to advance, the cavalry again found their chance, and only lack of numbers prevented them from doing more than they did.—*Reported in "London Times."*

TRIBUTE TO THE UNKNOWN SOLDIER

THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION paid tribute to the valor and sacrifice of the American soldier dead of the World War. As an emblem of this tribute, the Executive Council, headed by the president, Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, placed a wreath upon the bier of the Unknown Soldier as it rested in state in the rotunda of the Capitol. The ceremony attending this placing of the wreath could not have been more simple nor more fitting. No words were spoken. The group of cavalry officers stood at salute.

THE MEN SELECTED as body-bearers, representing the Infantry, Cavalry, Coast Artillery, Field Artillery, and Engineers of the Army, at the funeral of the "Unknown Dead," combine long service with brilliant deeds and are the pick of the branches of the service which each represents.

Restrictions were placed on the selection of these men. First, it was imperative that they have a good record in the World War and have actually engaged in battle. Second, they must be within one inch of six feet, their weight must be close to the average for their height, and the soldier must be a warrant officer or non-commissioned officer, presenting a very good appearance.

THE CAVALRY'S REPRESENTATIVE

First Sergeant Harry Taylor, Headquarters Troop, First Cavalry Brigade, was chosen to represent the mounted arm. He has been in the cavalry since 1900 and has seen service in the Philippine Islands and in France. During the World War he was a member of the Headquarters Troop of the 91st Division, and was cited in General Orders for his good work. He took part in the battles of St. Mihiel, the Meuse-Argonne, and along the Scheldt, in Belgium.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

OF A LARGE NUMBER of commemorative verses submitted upon the occasion of the burial of the Unknown Soldier at Arlington, November 11, 1921, and offered for publication by the War Department, a few possess real merit, and the following is selected as one of the most graceful and eloquent:

UNKNOWN

By Frederic T. Cardoze

No floral tribute, wreath or cross,
No cold and graven shaft of stone,
Need grace the final resting place
Of him who passes as Unknown.
A thousand feet might pass him by
With none to claim the loyal slain.
And yet an e'er-enduring God
Has marked his grave upon the plain.

The golden sun and silver star
Each in its turn shall guard his bier,
And heaven's rain shall be the tears
That fall in sorrow, year on year.
The rumbling thunder of the storm
Shall be the echo of the charge.
The somber grandeur of the clouds
The spirit of the smoke barrage.

Between the twilight and the dawn,
Unheard, yet with celestial tongue,
The name that has been lost in war
Upon the sighing wind is sung.
Unknown? Not so, for angel hands
Shall point in glory from the skies
Toward the humble sepulcher,
And Fame shall say, "Here Valor lies!"

THE ENDURANCE RIDE

THE THIRD ANNUAL 300-mile endurance contest, conducted under the supervision of a number of organizations interested in the development of the best type of horse for combined speed and endurance, was finished at the foot of the Washington Monument, in Washington, D. C., October 14, 1921, having started five days earlier, at Red Bank, N. J. The winner of the race, though the second to arrive at the destination, was *Crabbet*, pure-bred Arab, owned by W. R. Brown, of Berlin, N. H., president of the Arabian Horse Club of America and the prime mover in the establishment of this endurance contest.

Out of a total of 17 entries, 6 horses finished, the others having been taken from the race by reason of lameness, accident, or fatigue. The other winners, in order of their rating on the basis of condition and speed, were as follows: *Vagrant*, a thoroughbred, entered by the Remount Service of the Army;

TOPICS OF THE DAY

Rustem Bey, an Arab-standard-bred cross, owned by Mr. Brown; *Castor*, a pure-bred Morgan, entered by the United States Department of Agriculture; *Pathfinder*, a thoroughbred, entered by the Remount Service; and *Cragsmore*, a thoroughbred-standard-bred cross, owned by Mr. Brown.

This endurance test for the United States Mounted Service Cup was under the direction and management of a committee of sponsors made up of one representative each from the Arabian Horse Club of America, the Morgan Horse Club, the National Steeplechase and Hunt Association, the American Hackney Horse Society, the Thoroughbred Endurance Test Club, the National Saddle Horse Club, the American Remount Association, the Horse Association of America, the Bureau of Animal Industry of the U. S. Department of Agriculture, other interested organizations, and the two donors of the prizes.

The object of this test, which is approved by the War Department, the Chief of the Remount Service, and the Chief of the Bureau of Animal Industry, is designed to stimulate interest in good saddle horses, possessed of stamina and hardiness and suitable for use in the mounted service of the United States. The test is planned for the horse and not for the rider, and the human factor has been eliminated so far as possible without detracting from the public interest. Entries are solicited equally from the military service and civilian life.

The distance covered is approximately 300 miles, 60 miles a day for 5 days, regardless of weather. The speed at which the distance is covered counts 40 points and the condition of the horse 60 points. The perfect score for speed is given on a record of 45 hours for the trip, or 9 hours for each 60 miles. The longest time a contestant can take is 60 hours, or 12 hours of traveling each day. Every horse carries 245 pounds, which is considered to be the average for a cavalry horse. Each rider feeds and cares for his own mount.

The following table shows the ages, weights, the ratings on condition and speed, and the total score of the six horses that finished the race:

	Age.	Weight.	Condition.	Speed.	Total.
<i>Crabbet</i> (Arabian)	11	925	55	29 7/45	84 7/45
<i>Vagrant</i> (thoroughbred)	6	1,000	52	31 7/9	83 7/9
<i>Rustem Bey</i> (Arab-standard-bred).....	10	1,005	45	30 8/9	75 8/9
<i>Castor</i> (Morgan)	11	800	50	22 2/9	72 2/9
<i>Pathfinder</i> (thoroughbred)	5	910	30	32 2/3	62 2/3
<i>Cragsmore</i> (thoroughbred-standard-bred).....	7	1,100	28	33 7/45	61 7/45

Among the 11 horses that dropped out of the race on the way were six thoroughbreds and three Anglo-Arabs, the latter imported from France only last spring. Those who have taken part in the races since the inauguration of the contest say that the road conditions this year were the hardest of the three, largely on account of hard and slippery going over second half of the way.

The judges were Major Henry Leonard, of Colorado Springs, Colo.; Harry McNair, of Chicago, and Garner West, of Garnersville, N. Y. The prizes, donated by Mr. W. R. Brown, of Berlin, N. H., and Mr. A. W. Harris, of Chi-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

TOPICS OF THE DAY

cago, were a first prize of \$600 and a silver loving cup, and five others, ranging from \$400 to \$100. Ribbons were also awarded, and the Arabian Horse Club of America gave a medal to the winner of first place.

The Morgan horse, *Castor*, bred and raised at the United States Morgan Horse Farm at Middlebury, Vt., has taken part in all three races, and those who have been studying the results of these races say that he came through in better condition this time than on either of the previous occasions, in spite of his age and thinness of flesh. He has been used for all sorts of work, including farm work, mount for a forest ranger, and helping to draw the carriage of the Secretary of Agriculture in Washington.

Most of the horses found the going from Havre de Grace, Md., to Baltimore too hard. *Weldship*, an old steeplechaser, who has frequently performed on Maryland tracks, bred and owned by Edward M. Weld, of Warrenton, Va., and ridden by Major Stanley Koch, of Washington, was the first to go out on this next to the last lap.

Weldship, with *Oriel*, ridden by Lieutenant Thomas H. McCreery, were running ahead, with a time of 27 hours and 6 minutes for the 180 miles of the route covered, when the horses left Havre de Grace, and they set the pace. *Weldship*, exhausted and rapidly growing lame, was withdrawn from the race by his rider, who refused to push his mount beyond what he judged to be the limit of his endurance.

Cosmic, ridden by Major L. A. Beard, was the second to succumb and was withdrawn at the noon halt, sore in all feet.

Toute Belle, W. R. Brown's game little imported horse, was the third to go. This horse, too, developed sudden lameness. *Kemah Prince* threw a curb on this day and went out. *Oriel* went out that night, the splint he had thrown in training becoming active again. The stretch from Havre de Grace to Baltimore was the shortest run of any day's travel in the race. The distance is only 54 miles, but the last fourteen miles of the day's course were over a hard, slippery macadam road, and after reaching the stables at Pimlico race-track the majority of the horses showed the effects of the day's grueling travel.

Major Charles L. Scott, Q. M. C., writes of the day's march.

"Coming into our night stop this day, we traveled over fourteen miles of solid asphalt road as slick as ice. *Pathfinder* was still feeling good, shying at motor cars, electric cars, dogs, etc. He shied and slipped on this fourteen miles, not once, but hundreds of times—not in a vicious, excitable manner, but as any well-bred horse that is feeling well and fit will do at sights to which he is not accustomed. In many instances his hind legs would slide clean up under him in going down grades, and he would balance the 245 pounds on his two front legs, spread wide apart. Again his front legs would shoot out from under him and he would only regain his footing by balancing the enormous weight carried by him on one hind leg.

"This day, to my mount, was unquestionably the hardest of the entire test."

The fifth day the remaining six horses all finished.

There have been many criticisms of the unusually severe conditions of this last endurance ride and the method of selection of horses of the various breeds, most of these criticisms being succinctly stated by Major Scott in an excellent account of the test in the November, 1921, *Remount*.

In connection with the endurance test, there is published elsewhere in this number of the JOURNAL an interesting account, contributed by Captain John Merrill, of the wonderful endurance displayed by Persian Arabs, an account of the Arab horse by Mr. W. R. Brown, and extracts from the diary of a French cavalry officer. Altogether, some illuminating data from various sources and points of view are offered for the consideration of the readers of the JOURNAL, for whom this matter must present exceptional interest.

Finally, to give expression to our Remount Service and to convey to the cavalry service their objects and efforts, the following extract from an article by Lieutenant Thomas H. McCreery, Q. M. C., published in the *Remount* some months ago, is added:

"The question has been asked, Why is the thoroughbred horse selected in preference to other breeds? I will answer that he is the only horse that the Remount Service can procure in any number that possesses the speed, courage, type, and endurance of a good cavalry horse, although there are a few Arab saddle-bred, hackney and standard-bred stallions in the Service. These horses are used in localities in which they are more desired than the thoroughbred, and at all times are given a thorough chance to produce a suitable horse. The Arab horse has been tried and has proved that he can produce an excellent cavalry horse when crossed on suitable mares, but the class of Arab required for this work is not numerous in this country; so it would be impossible to obtain any great number of them.

"In order to demonstrate that the Remount Service is progressing along the correct lines in the selection of the thoroughbred horse, two Remount officers rode horses that were bred along these lines in the 1920 endurance test. They finished first and third in the test and the wonderful amount of courage and endurance shown by these half-bred horses was a surprise to the horse world, but not a surprise to officers who have had command of troops that have been on forced marches and had some good half-bred horses in their commands.

"In a recent endurance test, held in France, the first ten horses placed were thoroughbreds. At the National Horse Show, Madison Square Garden, on November 17, 1920, the best type cavalry remount shown in a class of twenty-seven horses was a thoroughbred four-year-old named *Allahmande*, by *Duke of Ormonde*, out of *Garden of Allah*. This horse was proclaimed by the judges as a perfect type of cavalry horse up to carrying two hundred and fifty pounds. He stands 15.3 hands high and weighs about eleven hundred and fifty pounds. Not only did this thoroughbred horse win the Remount Class, but he also won the Light Weight Officers' Charger Class and the Bowman Challenge Cup for the best charger at the show.*

* *Allahmande's* photograph is shown herewith, and an account of his successes at the last Horse Show is given in the following article.

"The Remount Service is not making a haphazard experiment in breeding to the kind of mare and selecting the kind of stallion it does, as the officers in charge of the breeding operations have had a wide scope of practical experience in this work and have investigated the results of experiments along these lines, which have been carried out both in this country and in Europe; nor is the idea a new one. We are only starting to do what the French, English, Italian, and Japanese have been doing for twenty years, although we are doing it with a true American spirit—that is, doing it well and doing it big."

THE ARMY AT THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

By a Participant

THE THIRTY-SIXTH annual horse show of the National Horse Show Association of America was marked by an innovation which, while it destroys an historic memory and prevents us from referring to the show as "The Garden," is, in other ways, a distinct advantage.

This year the show was held in the Armory of Squadron A, New York National Guard, situated at the corner of 94th Street and Madison Avenue. Aside from the aforesaid loss of tradition, the change is a distinct advantage. The stabling at the armory is better and more airy, its nearness to the park makes the proper exercise of animals possible, and the show ring is larger.

Through the generous financial assistance of the management, Army teams from West Point, Fort Riley, the Remount Service, and Fort Myer were able to participate.

The treatment of the members of the teams in New York was most hospitable; they were shown every courtesy, showered with invitations, and given every attention, while the best possible arrangements were made for the horses. In this latter connection the courtesy shown by General Bullard and Colonel Griffith, V. C., were much appreciated. The details for the receiving and shipping of the horses were beautifully managed by Captain Peter Meade, Quartermaster Corps.

On Sunday, November 13, all the participants were entertained at a huge breakfast, given by Mr. John McE. Bowman, at the Biltmore. On Friday Mr. Bowman also gave a dance, to which all officers were invited, while Mr. Pierre Lorillard, not content with having entertained every officer all the week, had them all to a luncheon on the last day.

The ring opened daily for exercise at 7:30 a. m., with the first class called at 9:00 a. m. There was a recess of an hour and a half at noon and another of two hours from 6 to 8 p. m., while the last class usually finished about midnight. It is clear from this schedule that one who does the show properly has a fairly busy time; but, on the other hand, he is well repaid by seeing the best show-horses of every class in America perform.

This opportunity of seeing the best types of horses, well turned out and well ridden, offers, perhaps, the greatest benefit derived by officers attending the show. It helps remove the obsession that a horse must be good because he is ours; it shows that perfect performance and manners over big fences is possible, and hence produces in us a desire for greater excellence; it develops in the mind's eye a picture of perfect type and quality, which must be of benefit to officers of the mounted service, so much of whose life is devoted to the selection, training, and use of horses.

THE MILITARY CLASSES

Class 194—Artillery Team with Gun:

This class differed from Class 195, in that 40 per cent was given to conformation and type, 30 per cent to harness and equipment, and 30 per cent to performance.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. Lewis S. Morris.

Won by Battery D, 3d Field Artillery,* Fort Myer, Sergeant Graw, Ch. Section.

Second, Battery E, 3d Field Artillery, Fort Myer, Corporal Rie, Ch. Section.

Class 195—Artillery Team with Gun:

This was an elimination contest throughout the show, two teams competing daily, general appearance counting 25 per cent and performance as a team 75 per cent.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. J. Ford Johnson, Jr.

Won by Battery D, 3d Field Artillery, Fort Myer, Sergeant Graw, Ch. Section.

Second, New York National Guard.

Battery E, 3d Field Artillery, was eliminated by the winner.

Class 196—Artillery Horse in Hand:

Mare or gelding five to eight years old; weight, 1,200 to 1,400 pounds. Conformation and suitability.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. Henry E. Hoy.

Won by *Patsy*, Battery D, 3d Field Artillery, Fort Myer.

Second, *Babe*, Battery D, 3d Field Artillery, Fort Myer.

Battery D also won third with *Dick*, while Battery E got fourth with *Joe*.

* Formerly the 19th Field Artillery.

Class 197—Troopers' Mounts:

This was a suitability and conformation class, with no jumping; the riders were enlisted men in uniform. As the prize list did not specify to the contrary, some private mounts were entered, but not judged, on a wise decision by the judges.

Money prize and ribbons.

Won by *Kay*, Troop K, New York State Troopers.

Second, *Brett*, U. S. M. A., West Point.

Class 198—U. S. Troopers' Mounts, Jockey Club Plate:

Horses suitable for U. S. cavalry mounts, 15-2 to 16-1 hands, four years old and up; up to 250 pounds. Open to all undocked horses in the show; post entries.

Conformation and manners.

This is the hardest charger class in the show, as it is entered by the best civilian horses.

Plate (\$100.00) by the Jockey Club.

Won by *Allahmande* (second time), Major G. S. Patton, Jr., 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer.

Second and third, civilian horses.

Class 199—Cavalry Remount:

Same conditions as Jockey Club Plate, except not open to civilians.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. A. Charles Schwartz.

Won by *Allahmande*, Major G. S. Patton, Jr., 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer.

Second, *Submersible*, Major John Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Third, *Mine Sweeper*, Major Stanley Koch, Remount Service, Washington.

Class 200—Polo Mounts (Light Weight):

Horses owned by United States or Regular Army officers, up to 165 pounds.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. R. E. Strawbridge.

Won by *Countess II*, Lieutenant-Colonel L. Brown, West Point.

Second, *Sweetmeat*, Major Wilson, West Point.

Third, *Peggy*, Major G. S. Patton, Jr., 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer.

The West Point ponies were beautiful animals and would have shown well in any class. They have both played in the Junior Championship.

Class 201—Polo Mounts (Heavy Weight):

Horses owned by United States or by Regular Army officers, up to 200 pounds.

Cup by Mr. W. A. Harriman.

Won by *Garlington*, Major Wilson, West Point.

Second, *Marvel*, Lieutenant-Colonel L. Brown, West Point.

Third, *Dudd*, Captain Waters, 3d Field Artillery, Fort Myer.

Again the West Point ponies were in a class by themselves.

Class 202—Officers' Chargers (Light Weight):

Judged on conformation, manners at walk, trot, and gallop, jumping over two four-foot jumps, schooling. Horses up to 180 pounds.

Cup by Mr. Edward M. Weld.

Won by *Allahmande* (second time), Major Patton, Fort Myer, Va.

Second, *Mine Sweeper*, Major Koch, Remount Service.

Third, *Vermint*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

This was a very handsome class, the poorest horses of which would have been winners five years ago. The manners and jumping were excellent, but the schooling, with few exceptions, was poor. It seems that more credit should be given schooling, as, while of no value in itself, it shows and develops control, and is the one feature in which the Army is superior to the civilian. Moreover, it would encourage officers, who, while they have not been so fortunate as to procure a horse of perfect conformation, have nevertheless worked hard on him.

Class 203—Officers' Chargers (Heavy Weight):

Same conditions as Class 202, except up to 220 pounds.

Cup (\$100.00) by Colonel Frank B. Keech.

Won by *Gaylark*, General Harbord; Lieutenant McCreery up.

Second, *Tarry Not*, Colonel W. W. Whitside; Major Scott up.

Third, *Tom Velie*, Lieutenant-Colonel L. Brown, West Point.

As is usual with the heavy charger class, there were fewer entries, only fourteen. The appearance of the horses was fine and the performance, except as to schooling, excellent.

Class 204—Full Field Equipment, F. Skiddy Von Stade cup:

Judged on manners, conformation and performance over two four-foot jumps. Full field equipment worn.

Cup (\$100.00) by Mr. F. Skiddy Von Stade.

Won by *Allahmande*, Major Patton, 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer, Va.

Second, *Tom Velie*, Lieutenant-Colonel L. Brown, West Point.

Third, *Tarry Not*, Colonel Whitside; Major Scott up.

Class 205—Bowman Challenge Cup, Full Field Equipment:

Open to officers of the United States in active service, to be shown in uniform, with full field equipment, either cavalry or field artillery.

For stallion, mare, or gelding, four years old and over; horses to be owned by the Government or by officers of the Regular Army; horses to be judged on manners, conformation, and performance and to jump without refusal two four-foot jumps.

If the cup is won three times by officers of the same regiment, it becomes the property of the regiment. The winner of the cup each year may hold the cup for the ensuing year. A piece of plate to winner each year.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Cup (\$1,500.00) by Mr. John McE. Bowman.

Won in 1920 and 1921 by *Allahmande*, Major G. S. Patton, Jr., 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer, Va.

Second, *Tarry Not*, Colonel Whitside; Major Scott up.

No third place.

Classes 204 and 205, with full field equipment, are very popular and very pretty classes.

Class 206—The Overseas Cup:

Horses up to 200 pounds, the property of the United States or of Regular Army officers; to be judged on manners, conformation, and performance as saddle horses, at walk, trot, and canter, and on performance over eight four-foot jumps.

Cup (\$200.00) and cash (\$200.00) to winner, \$100.00 to second, \$50.00 to third, \$25.00 to fourth; presented by Messrs. R. H. Williams, Jr., Victor C. Mather, S. Bryce Wing, John D. Wing, R. Penn Smith, and Pierre Lorillard, Jr.

Won by *Submersible*, Major John Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Second, *Gaylark*, General Harbord; Lieutenant McCreery up.

Third, *Tarry Not*, Colonel Whitside; Major Scott up.

This is one of the finest classes in the show and the performance was splendid.

Class 207—Charger Championship:

Open to winners of first and second places in Classes 202 to 206, inclusive.

Cup by Mr. F. Ambrose Clark.

Won by *Allahmande*, Major G. S. Patton, Jr., 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer, Va.

Second, *Submersible*, Major John Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

No third given.

JUMPING COMPETITION—OFFICERS ONLY

First jump: White gate, four feet three inches.

Second jump: Stone wall, four feet.

Third jump: Post and rail, in and out, four feet high, thirty feet apart; twice around.

Class 208—Cup by Mr. William H. Moore:

Won by *Moses*, Major John Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Second, *Nigra*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Third, *Deceive*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

This was the first jumping in the show coming on Monday, and either the horses were not used to the course or the men were too tense; at any rate, there were the poorest performances seen by Army horses for some time, with

TOPICS OF THE DAY

the notable exception of the performance of Major Barry on *Moses*; this performance was perfect in every respect.

Class 209—Cup by Mr. J. E. Davis:

Won by *Deceive*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Second, *Pleasanton*, Major Schwenck, West Point.

Third, *Nigra*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

The performance in this class was greatly improved, six horses going clean.

Class 210—Two Cups to Winning Team:

Team Jumping two abreast, regular course.

Won by *Moses-Deceive*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Second, *Jack Snipe-Rabbit Red*, Cavalry School.

Third, *Tarry Not-Miss Ochanter*, Remount Service.

Class 211—Beresford Challenge Cup:

Open to officers of the Regular Army or militia. Only officers' or Government horses can compete. Cup to be won twice by the same officer before it becomes his property.

Cup by Colonel Lord Decies.

Won by *Leonard Wood*, Major Wilson, West Point.

Second, *Deceive*, Major Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

No third given.

The jumping in this class was also excellent; the winner went clean.

Class 212—Grafton Broad Jump—Officers Only:

Jumping to start at 12 feet, with two-foot-six take off; extended two feet at a time. Each horse had three trials at every width.

Cup by Mr. Robert A. Fairbanks.

Won by *Tourraine*, Major Koch, Remount Service.

Second, *Port Light*, Major Koch, Remount Service.

The performance of *Tourraine* was remarkable, as he only had to take a second trial once. Width jumped, 21 feet 6 inches.

Class 213—Squadron A Challenge Cup:

For mares or geldings four years old and over, property of United States or of an officer of the Regular Army or militia or of any foreign government or officer; to carry 175 pounds; rider to be an officer in uniform. Saddle and bridle in accordance with regulation of his country. In two parts.

Part one: Twenty miles over roads in Central Park, including twice over a series of jumps not exceeding four feet. For each minute or fraction thereof exceeding two hours required to cover the course, two points will be deducted. Points up to twenty may be deducted by judges for condition of horse at completion of course. Possible high score, 40 points.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Second part: On following day. Over course of four jumps not over four feet, and one broad jump. Mounts must stand for mounting and dismounting; turn on forehand; trot, canter, and gallop; change lead in straight line; halt from walk, trot, and canter, and back. Performance over jumps to count 25; schooling, 15; conformation, 20. Possible high score, 60. Total possible, 100.

Cup by Squadron A,* New York National Guard.

Cup must be won twice by same officer to become his property.

Individual cup to winner.

Won by *Submersible*, Major John Barry, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Second, *Chiswell*, Captain Schaefer, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

No third given.

Besides the military classes as listed above, the Army did well in the following civilian classes:

Class 1—Thoroughbred Stallion:

Suitable to improve the breed of horses in general.

Second, *Sands of Time*, Remount Service.

Class 2—Thoroughbred Stallion:

Suitable to produce race-horses.

Second, *Sands of Time*, Remount Service.

Class 140—Thoroughbred Saddle Horse:

Second, *Mine Sweeper*, Major Koch, Remount Service.

Class 182—Pairs of Hunters or Jumpers Over Jumps Two Abreast:

Won by *Moses-Deceive*, Cavalry School, Fort Riley.

Third, *Kinglike-Morgan*, 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer, Va.

Class 184—Best Three Hunters or Jumpers Owned by One Exhibitor:

Performance over regular course only to count.

Won by *Moses-Nigra-Deceive*, Cavalry School.

Third, *Tarry Not-Buddy-Miss Ochanter*, Remount Service.

Class 186—Grafton Broad Jump—Open to All:

Won by *Tourraine*, Major Koch, Remount Service.

To sum up, it was the opinion of many experienced horsemen that the Army showing was excellent in all respects and a great credit to the service.

One outstanding feature of the Army entries was the remarkably excellent and consistent performance of the Cavalry School team. They won the first

* Recently reorganized as 51st Machine-Gun Squadron, New York National Guard.



ALLAHMANDE

Owned by Major George S. Patton, Jr., Cavalry

By the Duke of Ormond out of the Garden of Allah. He is a chestnut gelding, five years old, 15 3/4 hands high. Weighs 1,220 pounds. In nine shows he has won thirty-eight ribbons as follows: twenty-seven Blues, of which three were Championships, including National Charger Champion; seven Reds and four-thirds. He has also won eighteen Cups and two Championship Metals. He has never refused a jump in a show ring.



HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN OF SPAIN LEADING HER OWN CAVALRY REGIMENT
On the Occasion of the Ceremonies at the Cavalry Academy at Valladolid, Spain

TOPICS OF THE DAY

two or three places in almost every jumping contest, and did it on average horses by use of consummate horsemanship. Certainly the style of their performance is excellent proof of their ability to instruct our young officers.

The most consistent winner of the show, as far as the Army was concerned, was *Allahmande*, with 100 per cent of firsts, getting the blue in all six classes which he entered.

CAVALRY CEREMONIALS AT VALLADOLID

ON MAY 4 AND 5, 1921, the city of Valladolid, Spain, was the scene of a military pageant, participated in by all arms of the service, that for brilliancy, color, and enthusiasm has not been surpassed in the annals of modern Spain. On May 4 the King and Queen officiated at the ceremonies incident to the laying of the first stone for the new Cavalry Academy. On the following day the Queen presented the present academy with a standard which had been previously consecrated by the church.

In a short address to the student body the Queen announced that "This standard, blessed by the church and symbol of their beloved Spain, would be the recipient of the oaths of allegiance of all future generations of officers," and, as a mother and honorary colonel of cavalry, exhorted them to "keep untarnished the glorious history of Spanish chivalry."

The Queen in person, at the head of the regiment named in her honor, led the review that followed. As she passed the reviewing officer, King Alphonso XIII, she saluted, turned out of column, and took her place on his left for the remainder of the ceremony. The students of the cavalry school, representative groups from all the cavalry regiments except those engaged in the African campaign, and from the other arms took part in the review. The many standards and variously colored uniforms against the picturesque background of old Valladolid made a picture never to be forgotten; and when the Queen appeared at the head of this glittering column, mounted on a beautiful horse and dressed in the uniform of a colonel of cavalry, the enthusiasm of the crowds knew no bounds. The popularity of the King of Spain with his people is well known, but on this occasion the Queen received at least an equal share of the popular admiration. The moral effect of this two days' ceremony was not confined to the cavalry service or to Valladolid, but was noticeable throughout Spain. The fact that so many of the expeditions against the Moors had started out from Valladolid lent an historical glamor to the present occasion.

On the evening of the 5th a reception was held in the theater of Calderon de la Barca. At the termination of this reception the King made a short address, in which reference was made to the past achievements of Spanish cavalry, and in which he warned his hearers against accepting as a criterion

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of cavalry employment in modern warfare the enforced inactivity of the arm in certain theaters of the World War. He admonished the cavalymen present to maintain always the high ideals which had achieved success and glory for their arm in the past as the best assurance of a brilliant and imperishable future.

MORGAN BREED IMPROVED

A STATUE in memory of Justin Morgan, of Vermont, who died in 1821, was unveiled at the U. S. Morgan Farm at Middlebury, Vt., on October 5. The memorial, in the form of a typical Morgan stallion, was presented to the U. S. Department of Agriculture by the Morgan Horse Club.

There has been a steady increase in the weights and heights of the horses maintained in the stud at the United States Morgan Horse Farm at Middlebury, Vt. In 1911 the average height of mature stallions was 14.3 hands and of mature mares 14.2½ hands. By 1916 these figures had been raised to 15.0 and 14.3, respectively, and by this year to 15.1½ and 14.3½. The average weight of mature stallions in 1911 was 1,025 pounds; in 1916, 1,040 pounds, and in 1921 it had been increased to 1,200. During the same period the weights of mares went from 1,025 to 1,049 to 1,063.

At the same time, however, the other qualities received just as much consideration as size. A frequent objection raised against the Morgan has been that it is too small; but the steady improvement in scale and weight is making the modern Morgan a handy and desirable horse for use on farms, as pleasure saddle horses, for police mounts, and for cavalry purposes. It has good speed and exceptional endurance.

The Government farm at Middlebury was established to insure the preservation of this famous American breed, and the stock at the farm is a fountain-head where good blood will always be available.

TRIBUTE TO HORSES AND MULES

A BRONZE MEMORIAL TABLET to commemorate the horses and mules which died during the great European war of 1914-18 was erected in the State, War and Navy Department Building, Washington, D. C., by the American Red Star Animal Relief. The unveiling of this tablet, October 15, 1921, was the occasion of appropriate ceremonies, and acceptance was acknowledged on behalf of the Government by General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, in the following words:

"War has been from the beginning.

"Through the ages of conflict and strife the horse has been the constant companion and steadfast friend of the soldier, sharing his sufferings and dangers, his toil and hardship, and consecrating the battlefields with his blood. The mule likewise has been the army's devoted friend, patiently bearing his burden that the army might be supplied.

TOPICS OF THE DAY

"Our British allies have paid high tribute to the splendid service rendered by the American horse and the American mule during the World War. Both were as indispensable to the successful prosecution of the war and to final victory as were shot and shell.

"Many mechanical devices were adopted as a partial solution of the problems of transportation involved, but in the last analysis it was found that the requisite mobility for success depended upon the horse and the mule. They therefore remain, today as always, essential factors of successful warfare.

"While more than 68,000 of them serving with our armies in the World War passed to the great beyond in silent agony, and while many of them now sleep on the gentle slopes made beautiful by the poppy's bloom, no white crosses, row on row, mark their last resting places.

"It is fitting and proper that praise and honor should be lavished on the armies of the victorious nations, yet in doing so we should not forget to render the meed of praise due the hundreds of thousands of horses and mules that died nobly in the cause of humanity.

"It is therefore with great pleasure and with deep appreciation that I now, in the name of the Government of the United States, accept this beautiful tablet presented by the Red Star Animal Relief in commemoration of the horses and mules that died in the World War.

"This imperishable bronze will ever bear silent witness of the great debt we owe our equine friends and will inspire in the hearts of the present and future generations a determination to see that they receive the fair treatment and consideration which is their due."

IN CONNECTION with the Spanish disaster of the past summer in Melilla, the heroic action of the Alcantara Cavalry should be noted. It is reported that this cavalry unit charged the Moors repeatedly until only a few of its officers were left and the horses were so exhausted that they were unable to gallop; but they saved the Spanish column at Arruit.

THE AVERAGE price for riding horses purchased by the Quartermaster Corps during the past fiscal year is \$213.40.

REPRINTS are available of the Tables of Organization—Cavalry—Reduced Peace Strength.

New Books Reviewed

The Book Department of the U. S. Cavalry Association can furnish any of the new books reviewed or referred to in this department, and will give prompt attention to any orders submitted by the readers of the Journal.

THE STRATEGY OF THE WESTERN FRONT. By Herbert H. Sargent, late Lieutenant-Colonel, U. S. Army, retired. A. C. McClurg & Co., Chicago. Pp. 261, with maps. (Price, \$2.50.)

The recent death of Colonel Sargent, who will be regretted by many in the service, makes it pertinent to note again the excellent book which he was happily able to see published before his decease. For the military man who does not find it profitable or pleasant to wade through a library of war literature, *The Strategy of the Western Front* affords a well studied and comprehensive conception of the whole war in its major aspects. The title is almost misleading. It warrants the expectation of pages of trench warfare and "offensives." On the contrary, there is little of burdensome and easily forgotten detail given here. The Western Front is shown in its relations to all the other fronts, and the war is viewed in its entirety. The author's duty on our own General Staff during the war, combined with his lifelong study of strategy, fitted him admirably for the task of explaining the strategy of the World War to American soldiers.

CHEMICAL WARFARE. By Amos A. Fries, Brigadier-General, Chemical Warfare Service, U. S. Army, Chief of Chemical Warfare Service, and Clarence J. West, Major, Chemical Warfare Service Reserve Corps, U. S. Army, National Research Council. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York. (Price, \$3.50.)

This book, one of the authors of which is the officer who was charged with the organizing in the field, in time of actual operations, of a form of warfare entirely new to us, is interesting not only to the military man, but to every one who thinks at all about our national preparedness.

In addition to being a history of efforts and accomplishments in chemical warfare, it presents clearly the fact that gas as an implement of warfare is indisputably here to stay. There is presented a history of the development of the various types of gas masks and gases, and the reader cannot help but realize the great difficulties that had to be overcome and the painstaking exactitude of detail that was required to meet conditions of warfare that were still shrouded in mystery.

This book shows clearly, and in a manner that cannot be evaded, that if this country is to be prepared for modern war we must maintain in time of peace a service trained in the highly technical form of gas warfare, and that can, when the emergency comes, organize the huge chemical resources of our country for defense and offense.

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

THE DESERT MOUNTED CORPS. By R. M. Preston. Houghton & Mifflin Co. (Price, \$4.50.)

The Desert Mounted Corps, by Colonel Preston, Chief of Staff to General Chauvel, who commanded the corps, is enjoying a wide popularity in military circles. It combines happily the quality of authentic and clearly interpreted military history with that of pleasing narrative. For the cavalryman, this record of the cavalry operations in Palestine and Syria is bound to be one of the most profitable and interesting books of the late war.

Attention is again invited to **AS TO MILITARY TRAINING**, by Major J. F. Wall, cavalry. (George Banta Publishing Co., Menasha, Wis., 1921. Price, \$2.50.) Though largely a compilation, this volume shows careful selection and arrangement of material. Among its contents will be found very useful chapters on Our Military Policy, First Aid, Security, Information, Patrols and Marches, Camp Sanitation, Military Sketching, Field Fortifications, Notes of Combat, Field Artillery and Equitation. The extensive notes on horsemanship include polo and make this manual particularly valuable to the mounted branches.

RIGHT ROYAL. By John Masefield. Macmillan Co., New York. (Price, \$1.75.)

Here's a steeplechase within reach of your hand! Leap to the saddle of an imaginary thoroughbred and ride the Compton Course with *Sir Lopez*, *Soyland*, *Lucky Shot*, *Right Royal*, and the rest of the field. Splash through the "turn in a bogland of rushes," where "the mud made them slither" and "the man on *Exception* fell clear, with *Monkery's* shoes half an inch from his ear." Glance over, in your mad career, at *Right Royal* taking one of the jumps.

"The hurdle came closer, he rushed through its top
Like a comet in heaven that nothing can stop."

The field are all ahead, for *Right Royal* fell early in the course; but the spirit of horse and rider are strong, and—that's why there is a story to tell.

John Masefield tells it in ringing lines of fluent verse that carry the reader's imagination along with the speed of the race and make his fingers itch for the feel of the bridle rein. Something after the style of Browning's tale of the courier ride from Ghent to Aix; only this is an hour's thrill. There is an unmistakable racing flavor from cover to cover, and on those covers, by the way, the reader finds a chart of the course.

RECORDS OF THE WORLD WAR: FIELD ORDERS, 1918, 5TH DIVISION. 1921. 175 pp. Cloth. (Price, 50c.)

RECORDS OF THE WORLD WAR: FIELD ORDERS, 2D ARMY CORPS. 1921. 40 pp. 1 diagram, 2 maps. Cloth. (Price, 50c.)

These are two volumes from the Superintendent of Public Documents, Government Printing Office, in a series which will successively reproduce the actual records upon which a study of the history of our participation in the World War may properly be based. This method of publication, reproducing the documents of a kindred sort concerning each organization, as fast as they can be edited, is intended to make the records available much sooner than was possible in the compilation of the Rebellion Records, the first volume of which was not issued until 1880.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

RED, WHITE, AND BLUE MANUALS. Volume 1. By Lieutenant-Colonel P. S. Bond, Lieutenant-Colonel O. O. Ellis, Major Enoch B. Gary, and Captain T. L. McMurray. 328 pages and 273 illustrations. The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, Md. (Price, \$2.50.)

The authors of the "Plattsburg Manual" are publishing this summer, volume 1 of the Red, White, and Blue Citizens' Training Camp Manuals. This book will be to candidates attending citizens' military training camps what the "Plattsburg Manual" was to the men who attended the training camps in 1916-'17-'19.

Volume 1, "Red" book, is for the beginner. It is written in simple language. It tells what to take to camp and what to do upon arrival. It is designed to aid candidates in getting the most out of camp. The authors are officers of the Regular Army who have been military instructors in academies, at training camps at Plattsburg and elsewhere, and have become specialists in the training of young men.

The present book is very simple, as the Red Course, the official name for the first camp in this Government series of three camps, is the one giving basic military instruction in the school of the soldier. Other volumes, it is planned, will follow on the White Camp, for developing non-commissioned officers, and also on the Blue Camp, for those seeking to qualify themselves for a commission in the Officers' Reserve Corps. The present volume is particularly valuable in giving many simple rules concerning hygiene, physical training, care of the health and body, and informing the "rookie" as to matters of details, comparatively simple in themselves, which worry the uninitiated as to just what he should do, what he should bring with him, and how he should behave.

The purpose of the volume is to be of assistance to young men without previous military experience, not only in preparation for attendance at camps, but also for study and reference during and after the camp, the arrangement of the book indicating that it follows closely the program of training laid out by the War Department.

ME,—AN' WAR GOIN' ON. By John Palmer Cumming. The Cornhill Publishing Co., Boston. (Price, \$1.50.)

This appealing little volume of war verse is dedicated to the Pals of Yesterday. There is something of the flavor of *The Rhymes of a Red Cross Man* in the episodes in verse that fill many of its pages and in its apt vernacular; yet there is a finesse and delicate artistry—a pathos in humor—that does not characterize the rhymes of Service. Among those who cherish their memories of service in France, these soldier musings will find a warm appreciation.

IN OCCUPIED BELGIUM. By Robert Withington. The Cornhill Publishing Co., Boston. (Price, \$1.50.)

This is a well illustrated collection of vignettes in prose—word sketches made by a man who gave his effort and a large portion of his heart to the Belgians while they were heroically enduring the rude German yoke. It is not a journal; so the reader is spared a laborious perusal of daily matters of fact; the chapters are just striking or illustrative bits that reveal the war-time Belgium of the author's acquaintance.

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

IODINE AND GASOLINE: A History of the 117th Sanitary Train.

Occasionally nowadays a book is written that is worth reading. One such book is "Iodine and Gasoline," the contents of which are fully as clever as its name. This book is a description of the service during the World War of the 117th Sanitary Train, which train was a part of the 42d, or Rainbow Division. It was written after the Armistice and before the return of the division to America. It has a composite authorship. Eighteen enlisted men of the train were selected and detailed to write the story of the organization. The necessary authority and money were supplied by Lieutenant-Colonel Wilbur S. Conkling, the commanding officer of the train.

The purpose of the book is to refresh the memory of the members of the train in after years; but that purpose has been exceeded, because any one desirous of finding out what was done by a division sanitary train during the World War will get a great deal of information from a reading of the book. And not only is the book valuable as a means whereby to draw a conclusion as to what should be the duty of a sanitary train in the future, but it is a very interesting story of the 42d Division as a whole. We shall have many books written upon the war which has just ended; but it is doubtful if we will have many that will be of more value to those of our officers whose duty it is to prepare our Army for the future from a study of the past than this brief description of the life of the 117th Sanitary Train. It is to be regretted that the authors and Lieutenant-Colonel Conkling were so modest as not to provide the means whereby this book could be secured, not only by military students, but by the reading public. However, the War College Library has been supplied with a few copies through the kindness of Lieutenant-Colonel Conkling, and consequently our military authority and money were supplied by Lieutenant-Colonel Wilbur S. Conkling, volume.
X. Y. Z.

BATTLEFIELDS OF THE WORLD WAR—WESTERN AND SOUTHERN FRONTS: A Study in Military Geography. By Douglas Wilson Johnson, Professor of Physiography in Columbia University. With a foreword by General Tasker H. Bliss. Oxford University Press, New York. (Price, \$7.00.)

This book will be valuable to the military student for its admirable exposition of the influence of topography on modern warfare. Eight battlefields are studied, and to each two chapters are devoted—the first, illustrated by maps, perspective diagrams and photographs, being a study of the topographic features of the battlefield; the second describing the principal phases of the military operations conducted on that field. Professor Johnson was sent to Europe by the State Department for the purpose of making special studies of the frontiers and battle fronts, in anticipation of the needs of the peace negotiations which would follow the termination of hostilities. He visited all the fronts while operations were actually in progress and consulted with many military authorities of different armies, and the results of his studies form a noteworthy contribution to military science.

AMERICA IN THE WORLD WAR. By Colonel P. S. Bond and Colonel C. O. Sherrill. Geo. Banta Publishing Co.

A summary in brief of the World War. Its principal value lies in its compilations of statistics for quick reference. It includes a chronology of the principal events of the war and plates illustrating the divisional insignia of the American Army.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

THE MANAGEMENT OF MEN. By Colonel Edward L. Munson, General Staff. Henry Holt & Co., New York. Octavo, 775 pages, 53 diagrams. (Price, \$6.00.)

This is a book dedicated "to the younger officers of the service and all future leaders of men." The author organized and administered the morale organization of the Army, and has written a book expressive not only of the general principles of human nature governing the control of human behavior, but which is based on a rich experience in the reactions of the soldier man as he exists in the service.

The author approaches his subject as one which is purely practical and has direct effect on military man-power. It is well recognized that the results obtained from a command, in war or peace, depend not only on numbers of units to be used, but upon the energy which each such unit applies to its task. A reinforcement of "will to accomplish" is the same in its results as a reinforcement in numbers. Morale is the driving force of military man-power and efficiency.

The author submits the proposition that the energizing of personnel toward its task is too important to be left to chance or individual intuition, and demonstrates how an apparently obscure subject really falls into a few simple subdivisions, capable of being readily grasped by the officer and directly applied to the immediate affairs of every-day life in the service. While the realm of psychology is necessarily entered into, the subject is treated in a practical and simple way, which gives the inexperienced officer a direct insight into the qualities of human nature with which, as a commander, he has to deal. For young officers, it suggests direct ways of reaching an understanding and leadership over their men which can otherwise only be obtained through years of experience. More: it enumerates the methods of successful leaders and shows why they were successful. It demonstrates how theory and practice go hand in hand in leadership.

The book represents the first effort in any language to go exhaustively into the mental state of the soldier man as affecting his productivity, and to show how mental state can be systematically altered to increase output. If thoughts are controlled, the acts that flow from them take care of themselves in the way desired.

The book is divided into twenty chapters, each of which discusses some special influence upon man-power in the military service. Older officers will find in it an explanation of their successes; younger officers a direct guide to results that ordinarily come only after many years of experience.

MANUAL OF MILITARY TRAINING. Volume 1. By Colonel James A. Moes and Major John W. Lang. Geo. Banta Publishing Co. (Price, \$2.50.)

This compilation is a worthy successor of the many older Moes Manuals and is a timely accompaniment to the newly developing national-defense plans. With thousands of young men undergoing military training in colleges and citizens' training camps, a compendium of elementary military instruction is a real need. The Moes publications are so well and favorably known throughout the service that it is quite unnecessary to call attention to the excellence of this latest compilation, except to remark that it (volume 1) covers very completely all phases of elementary dismounted military instruction and is elaborately illustrated. The chapters on the automatic rifle, the sand-table as an aid to military instruction, and first aid are strikingly attractive. Of course,

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

the Infantry Drill Regulations are thoroughly covered, and in "Rifle Marksmanship" is embodied the principal essentials of the War Department publication of that title. Volume I is a complete library of basic military instruction. It does not deal with mounted work or the special training of the technical branches. Volume II, in preparation, is planned to cover the Reserve Officers' Training Corps Advance Course (Infantry); and the Blue Course, Citizens' Military Training Camps.

PERIODICALS

The Cavalry Journal (British), October, 1921.

In this number Lieutenant-Colonel Rex Osborne, D. S. O., M. C., 20th Hussars, takes up the continuation of the account of the operations of the "Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force." This narrative of the battle and capture of Beersheba, the operations northeast of the city, the attack on the Sharia-Kauwukah-Hareira works, and the memorable charge at El Mughar, will bring joy to the heart of any cavalryman. A very clear illustration of the necessity for the saber in mounted operations is contained in the recommendations of the Commanding General of the Australian Division.

Other continued articles are: "The Co-operation of Armored Cars with Cavalry," by Major A. V. Clifton, O. B. E., Durham Light Infantry, and "The Machine-Gun Corps (Cavalry) in France, 1916-1918," by Captain T. Preston, M. C., Yorkshire Hussars.

"The Door Ajar," by Colonel Ewing Patterson, D. S. O., is a short narrative of a local cavalry operation on the western front in the closing phase of the World War.

The articles on "Helmets" and "The Cavalry Cocked Hat" are both interesting from a rather abstract standpoint of cavalry history.

Revue de Cavalerie, October-September, 1921.

The leading article is entitled "Cavalry or Mounted Infantry," by Captain Daubert, who points out the true rôles of cavalry and demonstrates how these rôles have not changed, and how they cannot be played by any other arm. He admits, of course, that the cavalry of today is quite transformed from the French cavalry of pre-war days, but staunchly contends that it is as necessary today as in any war of the past.

In an article entitled "From Poitiers to Our Own Day," Commandant Chevallier reviews the history of French cavalry and shows how each innovation of arms has in turn threatened to make cavalry ineffectual, but how over each in turn the cavalry made head and was triumphant. It is a splendid pageant spread before the reader.

Other articles in this number include a study of the evolution of the organization of the German cavalry; a history of the German cavalry operations during the Rumanian Campaign, by Commandant de Mesmay; a cavalry episode in French Flanders October 15, 1914, by Colonel de Tarragon; a review of the rules of polo for the instruction of beginners; a discussion of draft horses and mules, by General de Champvallier, and a review, by Colonel Loir, of the Polish cavalry operations of the summer of 1920.

Revue Militaire Générale, August, September, October, 1921.

There is little appearing in these three numbers that will be of special interest to cavalymen except, possibly, "Information and Liaison," by Commandant de Cossé Brissac, in the August number.

Polo

POLO IN THE AMERICAN FORCES IN GERMANY, 1921

Major John K. Herr, Cavalry

We have at Coblenz a great opportunity to contribute to the upbuilding of army polo. The Commanding General has been one of the pioneers of army polo, and his enthusiasm and interest in the game are as keen as ever. He is always in the line-up for practices. With a Chief of Staff who is a cavalryman and keen for polo also, it may be imagined that there is no chance the game may languish.

The climate is unusually favorable, play beginning in April and continuing until the end of October. There are three practice fields, two of which are boarded and one of which is really of high class, with solid, springy turf, fine for galloping. We have water piped alongside, so that the turf is kept in good condition by frequent sprinkling.

The presence of our British cousins at Cologne, with a considerable number of good polo players, furnishes needed competition for proper development. The 14th Hussars has a really excellent team, captained by Major F. B. Hurndall, who is handicapped at eight goals in England. There are other good teams also among the British forces, and we have been able to exchange a number of visits, permitting all teams of both forces to meet in play. The two fields at Cologne are very level and fast, but so firm as to be a bit slippery, necessitating calks for ponies, which is not necessary on our softer turf.

The French are also beginning to take quite an active interest in polo. Upon request of the colonel commanding a cavalry regiment at Trier, General Allen sent two officers one day per week for several weeks to coach them in polo. Subsequently they visited Coblenz with a string of ponies and received further instruction. During August General Blacque-Belair, the noted authority on equitation, whose name is known to all American cavalry officers, sent a number of officers and non-commissioned officers to Coblenz to receive instruction in polo. Every effort was made to give them intensive instruction, and they became quite enthusiastic over the game. They are apt pupils, and I feel sure the development of polo in the French army will be rapid. There are a great many very splendid types of polo mounts among the troop horses of the French cavalry regiments.

In organizing polo play for the present season the Commanding General instructed me to make no effort to build up one strong team, but rather to keep the strong players and best ponies distributed, in order to improve the general excellence of polo. With this policy in view, we began the season with five teams—the 8th Infantry (which, I may digress to remark, had to be largely rebuilt, owing to the fact that several of their best polo players transferred to the cavalry during the interim between polo seasons), the Cavalry, Field Artillery, Headquarters, and Freebooters. These teams remained more or less intact through the year, only such changes being made as were necessary.

There is no doubt that the policy adopted was successful in speeding up polo and in developing a considerable number of very good young poloists. I feel confident that we can turn out next spring a team with 20 goals (National handicap). This may sound optimistic, but I consider the estimate conservative.

Following is a brief résumé of outside games played by our various teams:

On May 11 the 6th Field Artillery team, captained by Major Higley, won from the British Royal Field Artillery with a score of 6-3. On the same day a team, consisting of Mr. Henderson, No. 1; Major Andrews, No. 2; Colonel Jeffries, No. 3; Major Herr, No. 4, won from the Durham Light Infantry by the score of 4-2. On May 20, at Coblenz, the 14th Hussars, captained by Major Hurndall, won from a team consisting of No. 1, Major

POLO

Andrews; No. 2, Captain Tate; No. 3, Major Herr; No. 4, Major Higley, by a score of 3-1. In Coblenz, on June 4, the Headquarters A. F. G. team, consisting of No. 1, Major Andrews; No. 2, General Allen; No. 3, Major Herr; No. 4, Captain Sumner, won from the British Headquarters team by a score of 5-4. On the same day a mixed team from Cologne won from the 6th Field Artillery by a score of 4-1. On June 24, at Cologne, the British Headquarters won from a pick-up team with a score of 11-0. On the same day the Cavalry team, A. F. G., won from a British team by a score of 8-3. The latter part of June the 14th Hussars, captained by Major Hurndall, won from a team consisting of No. 1, Major Andrews; No. 2, Captain Tate; No. 3, Major Herr; No. 4, Major Higley, by a score of 8-5. On July 23 the 14th Hussars won from a team consisting of Lieutenant Donaldson, Captain Tate, Lieutenant Baker, and Major Higley by a score of 11-4.

The results of the Handicap Tournament held in Coblenz in July were reported in the October, 1921, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

In the August Tournament of the British Army at Cologne, the U. S. Cavalry won from British Royal Field Artillery—11 to 3.

A. F. G. Freebooters won from British Hawks—7 to 4.

A. F. G. Headquarters won from Internationals—4 to 1.

British Eagles won from British Owls—5 to 4.

U. S. Cavalry won from British Eagles—4 to 1.

A. F. G. Freebooters won from A. F. G. Headquarters—5 to 2.

U. S. Cavalry won from A. F. G. Freebooters—5 to 2.

U. S. Cavalry thus won the cups in the final game.

The Cavalry team, winners of the British Tournament, consisted of Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson, Captain D. S. Rumbough, Captain J. S. Tate, and Lieutenant J. K. Baker.

In August the same cavalry team was sent to Antwerp and entered a Handicap Tournament against several high-class teams, one of which was captained by Earl Hopping. The Cavalry team was rather badly beaten, being somewhat outclassed by these fast teams. It was not practicable to send the best team in the A. F. G. to this tournament, on account of pressure of official duties. On October 3 two teams, Artillery and Freebooters, were beaten in the Cologne Tournament, the score being 3-2 in each game.

The last tournament of the season for cups donated by the Y. M. C. A. (which organization has been very helpful to polo) was very interesting and featured by fast play and hard and accurate hitting. Games were as follows:

FIRST EVENT FOR COBLENZ CUPS

Saturday, October 15, 1921

14TH HUSSARS (BRITISH) vs. 1st BRIGADE, A. F. G.

Handicap.		Handicap.	
No. 1. Lieutenant V. H. Jones.....	1	No. 1. Lieut. P. B. Malone.....	1
No. 2. Captain J. A. T. Miller.....	4	No. 2. Lieutenant G. M. Williamson..	1
No. 3. Major F. B. Hurndall.....	8	No. 3. Captain W. T. McMillin.....	0
No. 4. Captain J. de Wend Fenton....	6	No. 4. R. T. Meskill.....	1
	19		3

SUMMARY

14th Hussars:		1st Brigade, A. F. G.:	
Goals earned.....	11	Goals earned.....	1
By handicap.....	0	By handicap.....	9
Total score.....	11	Total score.....	10

NOTE.—All games of six periods, handicaps computed by taking two-thirds of total handicaps for each team, fractions disregarded; no team to give more than 9 goals.

Major H. D. Higley, referee.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

SECOND EVENT FOR COBLENZ CUPS Saturday, October 15, 1921 FREEBOOTERS vs. CAVALRY SPURS

Handicap.	Handicap.
No. 1. Mr. Henderson..... 3	No. 1. Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson... 4
No. 2. Colonel J. L. Jeffries..... 5	No. 2. Major Ralph Talbot..... 2
No. 3. Major John K. Herr..... 7	No. 3. Captain R. L. Creed..... 3
No. 4. Major J. W. Downer..... 3	No. 4. Lieutenant J. K. Baker..... 4
Goals 18	Goals 13
Two-thirds of 18—12.	Two-thirds of 13—8.

SUMMARY	
Freebooters:	Cavalry Spurs:
Goals earned..... 7	Goals earned..... 2
By handicap..... 0	By handicap..... 4
Total score..... 7	Total score..... 6

NOTE—General Allen was a member of Freebooters team, but was called away by urgent official business the day prior to the first game, Mr. Henderson being substituted. Major F. M. Andrews, referee.

THIRD EVENT FOR COBLENZ CUPS Monday, October 17, 1921 PURPLES vs. CAVALRY SABERS

Handicap.	Handicap.
No. 1. Mrs. F. M. Andrews..... 0	No. 1. Captain W. H. Reinburg..... 0
No. 2. Captain D. S. Rumbough..... 4	No. 2. Lieutenant M. A. Devine..... 1
No. 3. Major F. M. Andrews..... 3	No. 3. Captain H. T. Allen, Jr..... 2
No. 4. Major H. J. Weeks..... 4	No. 4. Lieutenant W. A. Holbrook.... 2
Goals 11	Goals 5
Two-thirds of 11—7.	Two-thirds of 5—3.

SUMMARY	
Purples:	Cavalry Sabers:
Goals earned..... 8	Goals earned..... 2
By handicap..... 0	By handicap..... 4
Total score..... 8	Total score..... 6

Major Ralph Talbot, referee.

FOURTH EVENT FOR COBLENZ CUPS Monday, October 17, 1921 ARTILLERY vs. FREEBOOTERS

Handicap.	Handicap.
No. 1. Captain J. H. Keating..... 2	No. 1. Mr. Henderson..... 3
No. 2. Lieutenant J. B. Carroll..... 1	No. 2. Colonel J. L. Jeffries..... 5
No. 3. Major H. D. Higley..... 7	No. 3. Major John K. Herr..... 7
No. 4. Captain W. H. Bledsoe..... 1	No. 4. Major J. W. Downer..... 3
Goals 11	Goals 18
Two-thirds of 11—7.	Two-thirds of 18—12.

POLO

SUMMARY

Artillery:	Freebooters:
Goals earned..... 2	Goals earned..... 10
By handicap..... 5	By handicap..... 0
Total score..... 7	Total score..... 10

Lieutenant J. K. Baker, referee.

FIFTH EVENT FOR COBLENZ CUPS Wednesday, October 19, 1921 14TH HUSSARS vs. PURPLES

Handicap.	Handicap.
No. 1. Captain Hamer..... 4	No. 1. Mrs. F. M. Andrews..... 0
No. 2. Captain J. A. T. Miller..... 4	No. 2. Captain D. Rumbough..... 4
No. 3. Major F. B. Hurndall..... 8	No. 3. Major F. M. Andrews..... 3
No. 4. Captain J. de Wend Fenton.... 6	No. 4. Major H. J. Weeks..... 4
Goals 22	Goals 11
Two-thirds of 22—14.	Two-thirds of 11—7.

SUMMARY	
14th Hussars:	Purples:
Goals earned..... 9	Goals earned..... 0
By handicap..... 0	By handicap..... 7
Total score..... 9	Total score..... 7

FINAL MATCH FOR COBLENZ CUPS Friday, October 21, 1921 FREEBOOTERS vs. 14TH HUSSARS

Handicap.	Handicap.
No. 1. Mr. D. L. Henderson..... 3	No. 1. Captain Hamer..... 4
No. 2. Colonel J. L. Jeffries..... 5	No. 2. Captain J. A. T. Miller..... 4
No. 3. Major John K. Herr..... 7	No. 3. Major F. B. Hurndall..... 8
No. 4. Major J. W. Downer..... 3	No. 4. Captain J. de Wend Fenton... 6
Goals 18	Goals 22
Two-thirds of 18—12.	Two-thirds of 22—14.

SUMMARY	
Freebooters:	14th Hussars:
Goals earned..... 2	Goals earned..... 3
By handicap..... 2	By handicap..... 0
Total score..... 4	Total score..... 3

NOTE—Major H. D. Higley, substituted in last period for Major Herr, injured in a collision.

Major H. D. Higley and Major H. J. Weeks, referees.

FIRST CAVALRY

The polo team has played a heavy schedule of games recently. In connection with the recent horse show, in which the Tenth Cavalry participated, two games were played with the Huachuca Team, both of which resulted in decided victory for the 1st Cavalry. The first was the more closely contested of the two and was won by a score of 9 to 2.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The second game was all that the score of 10 to 1 would indicate. However, both games were interesting, and if the 10th Cavalry ponies had been of better quality it is probable that the scores would have been closer.

On November 20 the team went to El Paso to play in the Division Polo Tournament, and though the team has not yet returned, the reports of the two games played give the following score:

First Cavalry vs. 7th Cavalry—10 to 2; won by 7th Cavalry.

First Cavalry vs. 8th Cavalry—7 to 0; won by 8th Cavalry.

The team has been considerably handicapped in all the games by an injury received by Major Clifford at Fort Huachuca.

SIXTH CAVALRY

Polo enthusiasm at this post, through the encouragement of the commanding officer, Colonel Wallach, is, to say the least, very gratifying. Every officer at the post is an active member, and there are, perhaps, not over five officers, including the chaplain, who do not actually attempt to play. This results in a very keen rivalry between the four teams of the post, each team carrying from two to three substitutes. These four teams, which consist of the 1st Squadron, the 2d Squadron, the Headquarters team, and the 4th T. C. Squadron, which now includes the Field Artillery representation, are playing off the second of what proves to be an exciting tournament for silver cups offered by the Chattanooga enthusiasts. On two days a week the four teams go at it from bell to bell, and on Sundays two teams of selected players appear to entertain very completely a crowd of Chattanooga fans numbering from three to four thousand.

Polo activities are handicapped somewhat by lack of first-class ponies, but a concentrated attention on the part of the officers working out "prospects" at spare times is having its good effect.

Fort Myer and the War Department teams are the nearest two outside teams that we believe we can defeat without a great deal of trouble. In Major Tompkins, the post executive officer, who is probably our best polo player, we have a very inspiring personality, who pushes all activities with much pep, and in Major E. Graham, a once premier polo player, we have a wise and instructive coach. We feel that we are very fortunate and we believe that the general interest manifested in all duties and the high esprit is due to a large extent to the incentive offered in polo.

SEVENTH CAVALRY

Result of 1st Cavalry Division Polo Tournament: Seventh Cavalry beat 82d Field Artillery in the finals, with a score of 11-4.

TWELFTH CAVALRY

The use of a fast and level field has been secured from Mr. Denuet, of Brownsville. Practice is held four times a week. From ten to twelve officers turn out for practice, which shows the enthusiastic support the regiment is giving this sport. In addition to the regular ponies, each officer is working a horse from his own stables.

The field at Fort Ringgold is getting its share of attention. Troops E and F have excellent equipment, but it will be about the middle of January before the ponies are in condition for tournament work. Polo is being played by the enlisted men, and the non-commissioned officers boast of a team that will be hard to beat when they are challenged next spring.

Plans are being made for the organization of a team at McAllen, which will in a short time be ready to meet the teams of the near-by camps.

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

Fort Riley, Kansas

Two teams from Fort Riley represented the post in the polo tournament at Wichita, Kansas, the last week of September.

The Cavalry School Team included Lieutenant-Colonel Lininger, Major West, Major Swift, and Major Erwin; the Fort Riley Team, Majors Holderness, Thompson, J. B. Taylor, V. V., and Baird. The Cavalry School Team won the tournament and were again winners in a return tournament at Fort Riley in October.

The Cavalry School Team played an exhibition game with the Fort Leavenworth Team at Kansas City during the Convention of the American Legion.

The team which represented the school at the National Horse Show returned to the post on November 22. Out of 16 events entered the team won 6 blues, 8 reds, 4 yellows, and 4 whites. A smoker was given the team by the officers of the post on Friday evening, November 25, at the Cavalry School Club.

The graduating exercises for the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class took place December 14 and 15. On the 14th the class gave an exhibition pistol and saber drill, mounted, and an exhibition in jumping and equitation in Magazine Canyon. December 15 the class gave an exhibition ride in the West Riding Hall, after which there was an address by the commandant and the presentation of diplomas. The class consists of 17 National Guardsmen and three reserve officers.

The following school troops have arrived or been organized at the post during the past two months:

- (a) Machine-Gun Troop No. 1—one officer and 20 enlisted men.
- (b) Company "A," 9th Engineers, mounted—two officers and 92 enlisted men. This organization marched overland from Camp Travis, Texas.
- (c) The 16th Observation Squadron was organized at Fort Riley on December 7, 1921. Present, one officer and five enlisted men. It is expected that additional personnel will report as soon as necessary hangars, etc., are available.

The Hunt Club has started weekly drag hunts, which are being well attended. A number of foxes have been purchased by the club, and it is hoped in the near future to have some very exciting hunts. The pack is also being used in the cross-country instruction for some of the student classes.

The Gun Club has not been very active lately on account of the splendid duck shooting on near-by rivers and ponds.

Master-Sergeant Dimond, who was a member of the victorious American Fencing Team, has been appointed a warrant officer and ordered to West Point for duty as an instructor in swordsmanship.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona

Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

A tactical inspection of the regiment was made by staff officers of Headquarters Eighth Corps Area and the condition of the regiment pronounced ready for field service. Drills and schools have continued in spite of the difficulties arising from the greatly reduced strength.

A Regimental Horse Show was given November 19. In addition to the usual classes there was an endurance ride, classes in equitation for officers and for ladies. A class for civilians was provided, but no entries were received. The jumping classes had a large number of entries. Trophies, cash prizes, and ribbons were awarded.

The E. and V. School problem has received an original and very satisfactory solution in this regiment. Inequalities of duty, due to some men attending schools, have been avoided by requiring every officer and man to enroll in one of the several camp schools. At present, in addition to the Officers' and Non-commissioned Officers' School, there are schools for telephone, telegraphy, radio operators, clerks, cooks, saddlers, packers—in fact, every specialist needed in the regiment.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel John S. Winn, Commanding

Since the resumption of recruiting, in September, recruiting stations have been established in Kansas City and Wichita. An officer of the regiment, with a small detachment, is on duty in each of these cities. Through the courtesy of the commanding officer, 110th Engineers, Missouri National Guard, the recruiting party at Kansas City is quartered in the armory of that regiment. The National Guard officers at Wichita were equally as courteous and have assigned the recruiting party on duty in that city to quarters in their armory. Up to November 30, seventy-four recruits had been enlisted for the 2d Cavalry, in addition to a number for other branches of the service stationed at the Cavalry School. These men are very much better material than the recruits received last year.

To facilitate the training of the recruits in mounted work, two riding halls, 100 by 200 feet, have been built by the regiment.

The course of training for recruits prescribed in Cavalry Memorandum No. 3, War Department, March 12, 1921, is being followed. This has proved to be a very satisfactory course and the recruits are making rapid progress.

Troop E has been designated as a demonstration troop for duty under the direction of the Department of Cavalry Weapons, the Cavalry School. This troop has an enlisted strength of sixty at present, and it is hoped that the full authorized strength will be secured before spring.

Troop G has been ordered to relieve the 1st Squadron at Camp Funston. The change will be made about December 15, when the 1st Squadron will return to Fort Riley for duty.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Myer, Virginia

Headquarters and Second Squadron, Colonel William C. Rivers, Commanding

The Cavalry troops, including Headquarters Troop, were kept busy the two weeks preceding the Conference, escorting, upon their arrival at Washington, the distinguished individuals who arrived in connection with the meeting of the International Limitation of Arms Conference. General Foch, Admiral Lord Beatty, Mr. Balfour, General Diaz, and many others were met at the station, escorted to their hotels, and the following day escorted to call upon the President at the White House.

The band, mounted, and the squadron received the remains of the Unknown Soldier from the Navy November 9 and escorted them to the Capitol. On November 11 all the troops at Fort Myer took part in the escort of the remains of the Unknown Soldier from the Capitol to Arlington Cemetery. Many complimentary remarks were made on the very smart appearance of the command.

The fall Polo Tournament between two War Department teams, two from Fort Myer, one from Camp Humphrey, and one from Camp Grant, was very successful. All games were played in Washington and were witnessed by large crowds. The War Department first team won.

A team was sent to the National Horse Show at New York City, where a creditable showing was made in the military classes and several prizes and ribbons won. *Allah-wande*, Major George S. Patton, Jr., made a brilliant record, winning another leg on the Bowman Challenge Cup and all classes in which entered.

FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

The regiment moved from Fort Brown to Fort McIntosh, leaving Brown November 1 and arriving at McIntosh on the 12th. The march was entirely successful from every point of view. There was but one really hot day, the weather being pleasant the rest of the time. The horses stood up exceptionally well in spite of the fact that they were on reduced forage. There were no sore backs. Camp was made before noon daily, and after the horses were cared for the men spent the rest of the day hunting. There were always parties out for rabbits or birds. The camp-sites were good, with the possible exception of the one at Zapata, where the wind blew sand and dust over, through, and under the camp. The regiment made a fine showing leaving Fort Brown. The band played us out of the post with Aloha Oe, which expressed our sentiments.

There is a nine-hole golf course at McIntosh, and a number of the officers and ladies have taken up "mountain billiards" in a really serious manner, and even the children of the post are speaking in terms of niblicks, bunkers, stymies, etc.

Prior to the change of station three polo teams were maintained, the teams practicing three times a week. Since the change of station polo has been suspended, but activities along this line will be resumed shortly. Lieutenant Jones has been detailed in charge of polo.

The regimental football team defeated the American Legion Team, of Laredo, Texas, at the Thanksgiving Day classic. Score, 13-7. In baseball the 4th Cavalry walloped the 12th Cavalry at Fort Ringgold, when the 4th was at Ringgold en route to Fort McIntosh. The American Legion beat the 4th Cavalry at Laredo, but the 4th took it out on the Milmos later by beating them.

On November 30, 1921, General Hines, Colonel Cromer, and Captain Bolte visited the post and conducted the annual tactical inspection. After the inspection a dinner-dance

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

was held at the officers' club in honor of the General and his aides, which was enjoyed by all. The General demonstrated that years sit lightly on his shoulders.

Upon arrival at Fort McIntosh the 4th Cavalry found the 16th Cavalry awaiting them; the 16th is to be the inactive associate of the 4th, and the work of amalgamation is about complete.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. D. Forsyth, Commanding

On September 1 the regiment was reorganized under the new Tables of Organization, the personnel of inactive troops being absorbed by active troops, as follows: Troops D by A, H by B, I by C, K by G, L by E, M by F. The Machine-Gun Troop was designated as Troop C, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, and ordered to proceed by marching to Douglas, Arizona, for station.

September 10 orders were received for the regiment to change station from Camp Marfa to Fort Clark, Del Rio, and Eagle Pass. September 20 the First Squadron left Camp Marfa and marched to Del Rio, arriving October 2. Squadron Headquarters and Troops A and B took station there, relieving the 12th Cavalry. October 3, Troop C left Del Rio and marched to Eagle Pass, arriving October 4, taking station, relieving the 46th Infantry. On October 3 the remainder of the regiment left Camp Marfa and marched to Fort Clark, arriving October 17, taking station, relieving the 13th Cavalry.

Major-General Hines, commanding the 8th Corps Area, conducted the annual tactical inspection of the regiment, commencing with Troop C, at Eagle Pass, on October 31. November 1 and 2 the troops at Del Rio were inspected, and on the 3d and 4th the remainder of the regiment, at Fort Clark, was inspected.

The garrison training season commenced November 1. Unit schools for officers and non-commissioned officers have started and great interest is manifested by all in the first subject, the new Cavalry Drill Regulations.

Now that the regiment is once more settled at a permanent post, every effort is being made to develop polo in the regiment, and all are enthusiastic over the prospect of developing excellent first and second teams and greatly improving the play of others. The first team has gone to Fort Sam Houston for the tournament.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert R. Wallach, Commanding*

It was the unique privilege of the 6th Cavalry to be host early in September to its sister regiment, the 6th Infantry, during the thousand-mile "hike" of that command from Camp Jackson, South Carolina, to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri. A number of the cavalry officers rode out on the Ringgold road to greet the "doughs" upon their arrival, and all admired the excellent appearance of Colonel Hunter's men. Their animals were in especially fine shape.

Equitation is foremost at present among Oglethorpe activities. Cross-country rides, under the leadership of Major E. P. Graham for the officers, and an equitation class, under Captain W. V. Ochs for the ladies, are held three times a week. On Thanksgiving Day a field day was conducted, with the following winners:

Best Turned-out Four-line Team, Private Whiting, Service Troop; Children's Shetland Pony Classes, Miss Natalie Tompkins, Master Bobbie Wallach, Master Marshall Wallach, Master Foster Graham, and Master Jimmie Washburn, respectively; Enlisted Men's Jump-

* Colonel Robert J. Fleming has recently been assigned.—*Editor.*

REGIMENTAL NOTES

ing Contest, First Sergeant Schneider, Troop A, on *Silverfall*; Artillery Teams, 2d Section, 4th Troop, Battery Sergeant Kallin; Officers' and Ladies' Jumping, First Lieutenant Raybold, on *Sorrel*; Ladies' Novice Class, Mrs. Arthur Truxes, on *Home Brew*; Ladies' Class for the Garnett Andrews Cup, Mrs. Truxes, on *Home Brew*; Open Jumping, Captain Ochs, on *Snooks*; Pajama, Shoe, and Umbrella Race, dismounted, Sergeant Smith, Troop G.

A basket-ball tournament for enlisted men's teams, representing each organization of the post, has been begun and a season of rare sport is promised. Bowling teams are also being organized.

Socially the feature has been the polo ball, given in November by the 6th Cavalry Polo Association. A large number of Chattanoogaans, including Mayor and Mrs. Chambliss, attended. The officers were in polo costume and the post gymnasium was artistically decorated with equipment of the game, together with national and allied flags, palms, and bunting of the various team colors.

With the arrival here of the 4th Training Battery, Captain S. F. Clark commanding, training-center activities are now in full sway.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

About the twenty-fifth of September this regiment received 23 four-year-old colts of excellent breeding from the Remount Depot, at Camp Travis, Texas. The horses originally came from Front Royal. Although these colts had never been trained, they have developed rapidly and show every evidence of becoming first-class officers' mounts. Since their arrival they have been trained in an officers' class under the supervision of Colonel Short.

On September 20, 1921, the 1st Squadron, with a detachment of the Service Troop, left Fort Bliss to march to Marfa, Texas, to relieve the 5th Cavalry.

The polo team continues to be successful. At the present writing the 1st Cavalry Division Polo Meet is in progress. The teams entered are: 1st Cavalry, 7th Cavalry, 8th Cavalry, the 82d Field Artillery, and the Headquarters 1st Cavalry Division Team. So far the 7th Cavalry has won over the 1st Cavalry by a score of 10-2, over the 8th Cavalry by a score of 5-4, and the Headquarters 1st Cavalry Division Team by a score of 5-3. The 82d Field Artillery Team has beaten the 8th Cavalry, the 1st Cavalry, and the 10th Cavalry, so that the championship lies between the 7th Cavalry and the 82d. Captain Craig was injured in one of the early games, but it is believed that he will be in top form for the final game. The team consists of Captains Wood, Gay, Craig, and Short. The only substitute to play so far has been Captain Carson.

The 1st Cavalry Division Horse Show was held December 3, 1921. General Hines, commander of the 8th Corps Area, was present. Every indication pointed to the 8th Cavalry as winner by a narrow majority up to the final event, when by excellent horsemanship we took all three places in the pair jumping, making the final score 52-49 in our favor. Third place was taken by the 82d Field Artillery. The excellent horsemanship displayed by all was only equaled by the good sportsmanship of our friendly enemies.

Marshal Foch paid the command at Fort Bliss a very short visit on December 6, 1921. Every one regretted that his stay was so short.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel James H. Reeves, Commanding

Six troops of the New Mexico National Guard Cavalry were attached to the regiment for a period of training from September 17 to September 30. A number of entertainments, in the form of dinners, field meets, boxing exhibitions, and gymnastic exercises, were given

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

for the National Guard by the officers and enlisted men of the regiment, and a strong feeling of friendship resulted.

Semi-monthly dances held by the enlisted men are well attended and have become a fixed social event among them. Weekly boxing exhibitions have been held, which have proven a very popular source of recreation as well as a helpful encouragement to the general athletic program.

The Regimental Polo Team met the team of the 1st Cavalry at Douglas, Arizona, on September 16 and 18, winning two games, the scores being 11-2 and 8-5.

The regiment has conducted a quiet but active recruiting campaign in El Paso and near-by towns with very good success.

The monthly regimental dinner was held on November 25 and was an enjoyable and profitable affair. A number of officers responded in a happy vein when called upon by the toastmaster of the evening.

Two troops of the regiment, under command of Major Duncan G. Richart, acted as escort to Marshal Foch on the occasion of his visit to the post on December 6.

The officers and ladies of the regiment gave a reception and dance in honor of Major-General Hines, commanding the Eighth Corps Area, and the visiting polo teams, on December 3.

NINTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

Colonel Edward Anderson, Commanding

On July 4th a violent typhoon struck the post, unroofing buildings and blowing down trees. Many bamboo houses in Margot and Murrayville, where the soldier families live, were demolished. It took the regiment several days to repair the damage and clear the wreckage. Notwithstanding the storm, all the troops had their special dinners, with various forms of entertainment, in the afternoon.

The regiment participated in field days on July 16 and 29, August 27, and September 24. Many interesting events were held and the athletes of the regiment again demonstrated their prowess.

July 28 was established as Regimental Day, the organization of the regiment having been authorized fifty-five years ago. The regiment was assembled, and addresses made by General Treat, post commander, and Colonel Anderson, regimental commander. Sergeant Fairfax Burnside, Troop A, read a paper on the Santiago Campaign. There were other addresses and many excellent musical selections.

The Regimental baseball team, having won the military championship of the Philippine Islands, made a trip to China in July and August. The series played with the 15th Infantry was lost. Twelve other games were played with strong teams, including the United States Marines and Japanese Diamond team, and all were victories for the Regimental team.

Polo at Camp Stotsenburg has been carried on throughout the rainy season in preparation for the coming tournament season. The game has received the earnest support of the post and regimental commanders. The 9th Cavalry teams will present strong line-ups and expect to retain the Island handicap championship.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel Edwin B. Winans, Commanding

December 1 found the 10th Cavalry completely organized and functioning under the new Reduced Peace Strength Tables of Organization, the new Cavalry Drill Regulations, and as part of the First Cavalry Division.

The enlisted men of the regiment made surplus by the reduced strength tables were

REGIMENTAL NOTES

organized into casual companies, and, it is understood, are to be transferred to the 25th Infantry, now stationed at Nogales, Arizona, but which, so rumor has it, is to go to Honolulu at an early date.

In October the regiment was given a tactical inspection by staff officers from Eighth Corps Area Headquarters. This inspection was very complete and thorough. It included regimental review, various drills by troop, squadron, and regiment; tactical problems by the squadrons and by the different sections of Headquarters Troop, and was followed by a field problem for the entire regiment during a night and part of the next day.

Following the inspection the regiment had the honor of entertaining General Dickman at a regimental dinner and dance. At the dinner General Dickman was good enough to tell us some very pleasant things about our record, our history, and our high standing as an organization.

In November we were given an administrative inspection by Major Chester P. Mills, First Cavalry Division Staff. At the same time we were visited by the First Cavalry Division Polo Team, headed by Major Adna R. Chaffee. Two games were played, and although we were defeated in both it was a pleasure.

At the First Cavalry Horse Show on November 19 Tenth Cavalry entries won five places out of nine possible, in the three events in which we entered, Headquarters Troop of the Tenth winning two of the five.

Hallowe'en was celebrated by a regimental dance, which took the form of a "Kids' Party," no one being allowed to dress or act as if more than sixteen years of age. The fact that this was the birthday of Colonel Winans added considerable enthusiasm and "pep."

Thanksgiving was the occasion for a regimental parade for the reading of the President's proclamation. This was followed by a football game, and this by troop dinners and dances.

On Armistice Day the regiment paraded and stood in silent prayer for two minutes in honor of the burial of the Unknown Dead.

The regimental polo team went to Fort Bliss, El Paso, Texas, for the Polo Tournament of the First Cavalry Division.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel John M. Jenkins, Commanding

The regiment was reorganized under the Reduced Peace Strength Tables on September 19, 1921. Troop L was organized as a special troop and designated as Troop "L," Training Center Squadron No. 9. The enlisted personnel of Troop "D" was transferred to Troop "F" at Camp Lawrence J. Hearn, Imperial Beach, California. The enlisted personnel of Troops "H," "I," "K," "M," and Machine-Gun were distributed among the various troops of the regiment at this station, and Troop "L," Training Center Squadron No. 9, prior to the departure of that organization to the Presidio of San Francisco, for station.

The 17th Cavalry arrived at Monterey from Schofield Barracks, Hawaiian Territory, on the transport *Buford* on September 25. The enlisted personnel was transferred in grade to the 11th Cavalry on September 26, 1921, and the 17th Cavalry placed on the inactive list.

Troop "M" arrived at this station September 30 from the Presidio of San Francisco, California. The change of station was accomplished by marching overland.

The arrival of the 17th Cavalry greatly overcrowded the accommodations at this post, but the situation has been relieved. The majority of the surplus officers have been assigned to various stations in the east, a number of captains making the trip to the east coast on the naval transport *Henderson*. Four hundred and thirty-two enlisted men were transferred to the 1st Cavalry Division at Douglas, Arizona.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The regiment was engaged from October 29 to November 1 fighting a dangerous forest fire in the Carmel Valley; the fire was in a mountainous section of the country, cut by numerous deep canyons; the work was hard and hazardous and was the object of commendation by the Corps Area commander. Headquarters Troop was engaged in fighting a forest fire between Monterey and Salinas from November 4 to November 6. This duty was also commended by the Corps Area commander.

On Armistice Day troops of the regiment participated in exercises at Carmel-by-the-Sea, Watsonville, and San José, in remembrance of those from this locality who gave their lives during the World War.

Field meets were held October 28 and December 5, and a successful race meet was held at the Del Monte race track December 3.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Mercedes, McAllen, Sam Fordyce, and Fort Ringgold, Texas

Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

The 12th Cavalry, less the 1st Squadron, left Del Rio, Texas, October 6, 1921, marching overland to Fort Brown, Brownsville, Texas, and garrisoning en route Fort Ringgold, Sam Fordyce, McAllen, and Mercedes. (The personnel of the 1st Squadron was transferred from Camp Gaillard, Canal Zone, to the 3d Cavalry at Fort Myer and Fort Ethan Allen.) An account of this march, written by Colonel Shiverick, is published in this number of the JOURNAL.

The 12th was given a warm welcome by the people of Brownsville. The Brownsville Golf and Country Club were hosts at a dance the night of October 31, complimentary to the 12th, which had arrived the previous day, and to the 4th, which was to depart the following morning.

Major-General John L. Hines, commanding general of the 8th Corps Area, accompanied by Colonel Leon B. Kromer and Captain Charles S. Kilburn, made a tactical inspection of the regiment from November 15 to 19, the official visit including Fort Brown, McAllen, and Fort Ringgold. At each station a review was followed by mounted and dismounted drills, equitation, and an inspection of barracks, kitchens, stables, and the post generally. A tactical problem followed the next morning.

The records of the 1st Squadron arrived November 10 from the Canal Zone, and the squadron was provisionally organized at Fort Brown, composed of officers and men formerly of the 4th, 12th, and 13th regiments, with Major Henry L. Flynn in command.

The 12th assisted the local post of the American Legion in its observance of Armistice Day.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

The reorganization under the Reduced Peace Strength Tables was barely accomplished when orders were received for move of a portion of the strength of the regiment to Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, to absorb the 15th Cavalry. Naturally, there was a great deal of disappointment and much regret that the regiment should lose the greater part of its old men, and especially its old non-commissioned officers.

On October 10 thirteen officers and 140 enlisted men entrained at Spofford, and two officers and eleven enlisted men joined from the 2d Squadron at Fort Ringgold upon the arrival of the Troop Train at San Antonio. This regiment arrived at Russell on the 13th of October, and was at once taken to quarters and barracks, where officers and men were warmly received and entertained by the officers and enlisted men of the 15th Cavalry.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

The reorganization was at once pushed to completion, and the 15th Cavalry became the "inactive associate" of the 13th.

During and following the reorganization ideal autumn weather lent itself to outdoor sports. Many hunts were given in the vicinity of the post with the regimental pack of hounds, and several coyotes were killed.

Special interest was shown in football, and a first-class regimental team was developed which played games with several teams in the vicinity. The football season closed with a stubbornly contested game with the 53d Infantry at this post on Thanksgiving Day, in which neither team was able to score.

On December 1 a gymkhanna was held. The entire garrison participated, and the 13th Cavalry entries won five of the seven events.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel Robert A. Brown, Commanding

The 1st Squadron and Troop L, Training Center Squadron No. 6, changed station by marching overland from Fort Des Moines, Iowa, to Fort Sheridan, Illinois, September 28 to October 16, 1921. The march was one of the most successful ever made by units of this regiment.

Through arrangements previously made with the mayor or the American Legion Post at the various stops, camp sites and water for the troops were obtained at no expense to the Government. In return for these considerations, exhibition drills, baseball games, band concerts, and dances were given by the troops. The commanding officer of the squadron, Major Levi G. Brown, reported that the relations between the troops and the civilian population were at all times most cordial.

The splitting up of the regiment by sending the 1st Squadron to Fort Sheridan handicapped the polo team to some extent through the loss of several players and ponies. However, work on new material is progressing satisfactorily and it is hoped that by next spring the team will be in better condition than ever.

On November 24 the polo team went to St. Louis for a tournament with the St. Louis Country Club. Three games were played, the 14th Cavalry winning one and losing two. The members of the team reported that St. Louis maintained its long-standing reputation for hospitality, and that arrangements are being made for a return tournament at Fort Des Moines in the spring.

Riding-hall work has again commenced. The schedule includes an equitation period for each troop, for the officers' training class, the non-commissioned officers' class, and equitation for the ladies of the post and of Des Moines.

The new concrete road from Des Moines to the post has been completed to within 300 yards of the post and will be opened to traffic shortly. This will bring the post to within a twelve-minute automobile run of Des Moines and will be a big boost for the post.

Recruits are being received at the rate of about fifty a month. At this rate the regiment should be filled up to authorized strength by the end of January.

SEVENTEENTH CAVALRY—Inactive

Presentation of the Holbrook Cup to Captain Thomas A. Dobyms, who tied with Captain Lucian K. Truscott for first place in the 17th Cavalry's annual classic for private mounts, took place aboard the U. S. A. T. *Buford* while the regiment was en route to Monterey, Calif. Colonel J. E. Cusack, commanding the 17th, presented the trophy.

Competition for the cup having been suspended during the war, officers of all branches of the service at Schofield Barracks displayed considerable interest in the outcome of the

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

test, which was held shortly before the regiment received its orders to leave the Hawaiian Department. Major-General Holbrook, present Chief of Cavalry, while commanding the regiment upon its organization, in 1916, presented the cup for annual competition by officers of the 17th Cavalry owning and riding their own mounts. The test consisted of a ten-mile cross-country ride containing two series of four jumps each, followed by two series of five jumps each and a fifteen-foot water jump.

Captain Truscott, having remained temporarily at Schofield Barracks, was unable to attend the presentation. Both names, however, will be engraved upon the cup, which remains the property of the regiment.

Several other cups won in athletic competition at Schofield Barracks were presented to members of the regiment by Colonel Cusack during a program of boxing and music by the regimental band.

HEADQUARTERS SEVENTEENTH CAVALRY,

AT SEA, ON BOARD U. S. A. T. "BUFORD," September 25, 1921.

General Orders No. 23.

1. The Regimental Commander takes great pleasure in publishing to the officers and enlisted men of the regiment the following letter and radiogram from the Commanding General, Hawaiian Department, Major-General C. P. Summerall:

HEADQUARTERS HAWAIIAN DEPARTMENT,
HONOLULU, H. T., September 16, 1921.

From: Commanding General, Hawaiian Department.

To: Commanding Officer, 17th Cavalry.

Subject: Services of regiment.

1. Upon the departure of the 17th Cavalry from the Hawaiian Department, I desire to communicate to you, and through you to the officers and soldiers of your command, an expression of my appreciation of the services that the regiment rendered in this department. The records show that since the arrival of the regiment it has been called upon to perform many arduous and difficult duties, and that considerable portion of the time it constituted the regular garrison of these islands. The personnel have at all times acquitted themselves with credit to the service, and they have earned and received the appreciation and the good will of the civil authorities and the inhabitants of the islands.

2. While it is a profound regret that the regiment must pass to the inactive list, its members may feel a just pride in the record that the regiment has made and in the high standards of soldierly deportment and service that it has consistently maintained.

3. My good wishes and abiding interest will accompany the members of the command in their future services and I bespeak for them the continued enjoyment of the success that they have maintained in this command.

(Sgd.)

C. P. SUMMERALL,
Major-General, Commanding.

HONOLULU.

COMMANDING OFFICER, 17TH CAVALRY, U. S. A. T. "BUFORD":

To Commanding Officer, officers, warrant officers, and soldiers 17th Cavalry, Aloha! Your loyalty and efficient performance of duty here assure your success in new assignments.

SUMMERALL.

2. The Regimental Commander is proud and feels it a great honor to convey to the regiment the very high encomiums expressed above. No higher tribute could be paid to a regiment.

3. The Commanding General, Hawaiian Division, Brigadier-General Joseph E. Kuhn, U. S. Army, in bidding farewell to the officers of the regiment on the eve of its departure from Schofield Barracks, H. T., paid it high tribute for its soldierly qualities, discipline, and high morale standing in the Hawaiian Division; its leadership, clean sportsmanship,

REGIMENTAL NOTES

social activities, onwardness, and all of the other attributes that enter into the composition of an efficient organization, and expressed keen regret in losing the regiment from his division.

I am proud to have been associated with the regiment for the last fourteen months and to be your last Regimental Commander on the active list. It will be an extreme pleasure to me to convey to the regiment's first Commanding Officer, then Colonel Willard A. Holbrook, now Major-General and Chief of Cavalry, the communications of Major-General C. P. Summerall published above. Wherever you may be, my best wishes go with you for your future success and happiness, and should the fortunes of peace or war recall the regiment to an active status during your active military careers, may you be among the first to rejoin and carry it onward and, true to its motto, "FORWARD."

JOSEPH E. CUSACK,
Colonel, Cavalry, Commanding.

FORT ETHAN ALLEN, VERMONT

Colonel George Williams, Commanding

Colonel Williams assumed command of Fort Ethan Allen on October 18 at the conclusion of reorganization, and had the pleasure of conforming his command to the Tables of Organization, which he helped prepare in the office of the Chief of Cavalry.

Since that time the "Old Third Horse" has gone into winter quarters. The indoor schedule of training has been relentlessly pursued and has progressed with surprising results. A class for officers is held each afternoon in hippology, equitation, and the training of polo mounts. All cavalry officers here are required to attend this course of instruction, which Colonel Williams personally conducts. The feature of the day, of course, is the ladies' riding class. The riding hall and gymnasium are constantly in use daily from 7.20 a. m. to 4.30 p. m., and frequently at night.

On the evening of December 14 a mounted exhibition drill was given in honor of the Burlington Chamber of Commerce, following which the officers and ladies of the post gave an informal reception in the auditorium of the Post Administration Building for the members and their families. The occasion, it is believed, made a great stride toward stimulating friendly relations between the civil and military representatives.

The garrison is taking full advantage of the winter sports afforded by the location of this post. The Parade Ground has been transformed into a skating rink. Bob-sleigh parties have proved popular, particularly on Sundays. In addition, such indoor sports as basket ball, movies, boxing, dancing, and bowling provide entertainment for the garrison during the evenings.

The command experienced little difficulty in recruiting up to the authorized reduced peace strength, and it was gratifying to note that a large majority of the recruits were ex-service men.

Troop L, Training Center Squadron No. 2, formerly Troop F, 3d Cavalry, commanded by Captain Harry Foster, 3d Cavalry, made an enviable record in his trip overland to Camp Dix, New Jersey. Captain Foster, with 31 men, left this station on November 7, and in 13 days covered 422 miles without a mishap. Captain Foster reported that although at night his men slept in the snow with but two blankets each, not a man was sick as a result of the long exposure to the elements.

The Reserve Officers Department

CORRESPONDENCE-SCHOOL COURSES

Correspondence courses for Reserve Corps and National Guard officers are in the course of preparation by the chiefs of Infantry, Field Artillery, Coast Artillery, and Cavalry, and will be ready for use in all corps areas by January 1, 1922.

For the first year's course, it has been decided to limit the required study of the sub-courses to 78 hours. This will enable all of the students to finish their year's work before the field maneuver season. No lessons are to be given in the correspondence courses during the months of July, August, and September of each year.

The object of these schools is military training and education by correspondence-school methods of the personnel of the Organized Reserves, National Guard, and civilians stationed or resident in the corps area who may volunteer for this duty.

The lessons themselves are being prepared in the offices of the chiefs of the branches interested, and are planned to cover the courses at the service schools. In each branch they cover the following: elementary tactics and technique of the basic course of the special or service schools, tactics and technique of the company, troop, and battery officers' courses of the special-service schools, and advanced tactics and technique embraced in the field officers' courses at the special-service schools.

Examinations in all subjects taught are to be held from time to time, and the students will be marked according to their proficiency. It is provided that examination papers will be returned to the students as soon as marked and graded, showing the marks given and any comments that the instructors desire to enter thereon. Any student making not less than 65 in any of the sub-courses and not less than 75 in the course itself will be regarded as being proficient in that course and will receive a certificate to that effect. As has been stated, these courses will be conducted under the direction of the several corps area commanders.

The cavalry subjects include map-reading, organization, care of animals, marching, liaison, and minor map problems. These last named consist of problems in security, reconnaissance, and combat.

The first month's work (13 hours) will probably be divided as follows:

Map-reading	7 hours
Organization	3 hours
Marching	1 hour
Liaison	1 hour
Minor map problems.....	1 hour

The greatest emphasis is laid upon map-reading, as facility in the use of maps is a most important qualification for a cavalry officer, who will often work with a small unit on missions of liaison and reconnaissance; also without a thorough knowledge of maps, and the ability to use them easily, the succeeding courses of problem work, necessarily based on maps, must become very difficult.

The text for these earliest courses will be:

Manual of Topography (Map-reading) and Manual of Topography (Conventional Signs).

Solution of Map Problems, 1921, by Lieutenant-Colonel Charles M. Bundel, F. A.

THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT

The first two were published in May, 1921, by the Engineer School, U. S. Army. The demand for these excellent manuals has been so great that the edition is exhausted, but it is expected that a new edition of these manuals will soon be available. The last-named text is published by the General Service Schools, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, and may be obtained for 20 cents.

Most of the texts will be in the form of stencils, which will be issued without expense to the officer student. The maps required are the Geological Survey Map of Leavenworth and Vicinity, 20 cents, and the Leavenworth three-inch map, 20 cents. No other materials are needed, except such as are readily obtainable at any stationery store.

For collateral reading, "Tactics and Technique of Cavalry, 1921," prepared at the General Service Schools—price, 50 cents—is recommended.

The CAVALRY JOURNAL will furnish any or all of the above texts and maps upon request.

The second month's work will continue the work progressively. The preparation of the cavalry course is receiving the earnest attention of the Office of the Chief of Cavalry, and it is intended that all the various phases of the instruction will, after the first month's elementary work, be embodied in a series of tactical problems which shall make the strongest possible appeal to the student's interest, insure his attention to all phases of the instruction so presented that he will appreciate their proper relative value, concentrate his effort, and render unnecessary a large equipment of text-books.

CHANGES IN ALLOTMENT OF CAVALRY RESERVE UNITS

Recent War Department instructions prohibit the assignment of Cavalry Reserve officers to units of other branches. The transfer of such Cavalry Reserve officers as may have served during the World War in other branches and desire assignments to their old units will be approved. The following changes in the allotment of cavalry units of the Organized Reserves have been made:

From the Second Corps Area to the Eighth Corps Area, the 156th Brigade, composed of the 311th and 312th regiments and the 156th Machine-Gun Squadron.

From the Fifth Corps Area to the First Corps Area, the 158th Brigade, composed of the 315th and 316th regiments and the 158th Machine-Gun Squadron.

From the Seventh Corps Area to the Ninth Corps Area, the 162d Brigade, composed of the 323d and 324th regiments and the 162d Machine-Gun Squadron.

THE 61st CAVALRY DIVISION

The Reserves are making steady progress in the Second Corps Area. Recruiting is being withheld until units as small as a troop have been definitely located, but the organization of the larger units and the assignment of officers thereto is proceeding rapidly.

The 61st Cavalry Division—Major Louis A. O'Donnell, cavalry, acting chief of staff; Major Frederick S. Snyder, cavalry, assistant chief of staff—is one of the units forming in this area.

THE CAVALRY RESERVE ASSOCIATION OF THE SECOND CORPS AREA

At a meeting of Regular and Reserve Cavalry officers at 30 West 44th Street, on the evening of November 7, the Cavalry Reserve Association of the Second Corps Area was formed.

Membership is divided into two classes:

1. Regular members—officers holding commissions in the Officers' Reserve Corps of the United States Army, Cavalry Section.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

2. Associate members—officers of the permanent establishment in active service or retired, any person formerly or now holding commissions in the United States Army or Naval Service, R. O. T. C. graduates of designated schools and colleges not yet commissioned in the Reserve Corps, and any other citizen of the United States interested in the purposes of this association.

The officers of the association are:

Chairman pro tem., Major Philip B. Paul, cavalry, O. R. C., 30 West 44th Street.

Recorder, Major Charles L. Stevenson, cavalry, U. S. A., 829 Municipal Building.

Assistant Recorder and Treasurer, Lieutenant Franklin W. Lee, cavalry, O. R. C., 143 East 39th Street.

The headquarters of the association will be at the club-house of the Cornell Club, 30 West 44th Street, New York City.

The CAVALRY JOURNAL is designated to be the official organ of the association.

SALES TO RESERVE OFFICERS

Numerous inquiries received by the Adjutant-General of the Army indicate that many reserve officers are not acquainted with the provisions of the War Department by which they may buy articles of equipment and clothing on the same basis and at the same prices at which these articles are sold to officers of the Regular Army.

The methods for obtaining goods were laid down in General Orders No. 7, War Department, 1921. These provide that the reserve officer, after proper identification, may buy any article that he would need any time that he was called to active duty. Aside from clothing and ammunition, but one of any article will be sold to the reserve officers, however, thus insuring that the purchases are for their own use.

Price lists may be obtained through the quartermaster at any corps area headquarters. Goods may be ordered by letter, addressed to the corps area commander, with the request that it be forwarded to the proper point of supply, with an indorsement identifying the reservist applying as a reserve officer of the Army. If a similar article has been purchased before, it will be necessary for the reserve officer to produce evidence that it was lost or stolen through no neglect of his own.

Identification cards for reserve officers have been prepared and will be distributed at an early date.

CAVALRY R. O. T. C. UNITS AT CAMP PERRY

Cavalry teams from both Oregon Agricultural College and University of Illinois R. O. T. C. units were entered in the Championship Regimental Team Match and the Inter-collegiate Match at the National Matches at Camp Perry, Ohio. These two were the only R. O. T. C. cavalry units participating in the matches. Oregon took sixth place in the R. O. T. C. match and University of Illinois Cavalry Team stood eleven. Both teams qualified every man as an instructor in rifle marksmanship.

The National Guard

COLORADO NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY GETS AMERICAN REMOUNT ASSOCIATION THOROUGHBRED

Members of the Colorado National Guard Cavalry are greatly elated over the information received from A. A. Cedarwald, secretary of the American Remount Association, that *King Pleasdt*, one of the finest thoroughbred stallions in their possession, will be assigned to Major C. F. Cusack, commanding officer of the 2d Squadron, 111th C. N. G. Cavalry, for service in Colorado.

It is quite evident that a Remount station will very shortly be organized in Colorado on the National Guard reservations at Rifle Range, Colorado, and Overland Park.

At the present time, through public subscription, mares suitable to produce cavalry horses are being obtained and will be placed in this Remount station, where they will be bred to Remount Association stallions. It is expected after three years and every succeeding year a number of fine cavalry mounts will be turned over to each of the troops in the squadron, and it is hoped that within the next five years that the Colorado National Guard Cavalry will be one of the finest mounted organizations in the United States.

Considerable interest has been shown in the saddle horse in Colorado during the past year. Three very successful National Guard Cavalry horse shows were given and the attendance ranged from 3,000 to 5,000 people. These shows were given at City Park and Fort Logan, in Colorado.

Considerable interest has been shown by the officers of this squadron by purchasing a number of very fine mares. These horses will be entered in the different classes in the Great Western Stock Show, which will be held in January. Among these horses are some very promising jumpers, and the result of the show is looked forward to with great interest.

The Colorado National Guard Polo Team has just completed a very successful season, having won 7 of the 10 games played, between such teams as the 15th U. S. Cavalry, Colorado Springs Whites, Denver Country Club, and Denver Whites.

It is hoped that within the next year a number of very promising stallions will be brought to Colorado. Riding is becoming very popular with both sexes, and with horse shows given by the National Guard and the Regular Army from time to time, it is hoped that shortly the saddle horse will again occupy the place he did some ten years ago.

TROOP F, 101st CAVALRY, NEW YORK NATIONAL GUARD, IN THE ROCHESTER HORSE SHOW

The Army Horse Show Team was defeated in military classes 119, 120, and 124 by Troop F, 101st New York National Guard, and Troop F also won three second, four third, and two fourth places in these classes. This organization is commanded by Captain K. C. Townson, to whom is due great credit not only for the excellent horses that he secured for his organization, but particularly for the horsemanship displayed by his enlisted men. This organization also gave exhibition drills of various kinds practically every day of the show at Rochester, and on all occasions, reports Major C. L. Scott, it was a great pleasure to note the excellent condition of the horses, equipment, and the horsemanship displayed by the enlisted men.

COURSE OF CAVALRY INSTRUCTION IN ILLINOIS

The Adjutant-General of the State of Illinois has published, as General Orders No. 28, the program for instruction for cavalry, Illinois National Guard, for the year ending December 31, 1922. This course, based on fifty weekly drills, or a total of 100 hours, is that recommended in Cavalry Memorandum No. 3, prepared by the Office of the Chief of Cavalry. Lieutenant-Colonel F. M. Jones, Cavalry, D. O. L., is the Regular Army officer on duty with the cavalry in this State.

BARTLEY BROS. & HALL, Inc.

IMPORTERS OF
English and French Military Saddles



Sole Agents for
**EGLENTINE BITS,
STIRRUPS, and
SPURS**

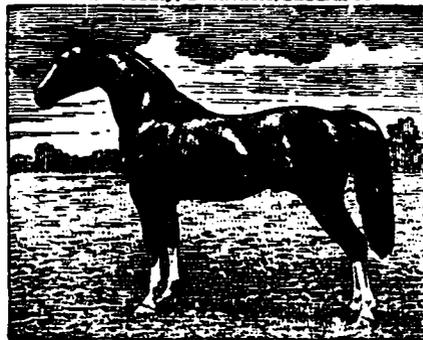
120 Chambers Street

NEW YORK CITY

50 Warren Street

Thoroughbred Arabian Saddle Horses

Suitable for Riding, Driving, Cavalry
With Beauty, Gentleness, Endurance



Year	Entries	Distance in Miles	Test	Pounds Carried	Time Hrs. Min.	Prizes
1913	4	154	Contiguous	180	30 40	1st. 3d. 4th
1914	4	40	"	200	3 38	Private
1918	2	162	"	230	31 5	Private
1919	5	306	Five Days	200	51 26	1st. 3d. 4th
1920	5	306	"	245	52 41	2nd. 5th
1921	17	310	"	245	49 4	1st. 3d. 6th

Registered Gen. S. B.; Am. S. B.; Arab S. B.
At Stud Exportable duty free For Sale
MAYNESBORO ARABIAN STUD
Berlin, N. H., U. S. A.

Seize this Opportunity

to Add to Your Professional Library

Cavalry Tactics

as Illustrated
by the War of the Rebellion

Part I

By COLONEL ALONZO GRAY

AT REDUCED PRICE **50c**
Paper bound

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H Street N. W. Washington, D. C.

Tables of Organization, Reduced Peace
Strength, Cavalry (Regular Army)..... **25c**

VOLUME XXXI

APRIL, 1922

NUMBER 127

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY
JEROME W. HOWE
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1922, BY
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional.

Book Department, U. S. Cavalry Association

BOOKS THAT YOU WANT

Our book department exists for the benefit of military students and readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Its motto is SERVICE, promptly rendered. We can furnish the book or periodical you want, whether military or non-military, foreign or domestic. Here are some of the books recommended:

AS TO MILITARY TRAINING, arranged by Major John F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry.

An up-to-date manual especially adapted to the needs of the Mounted Service. 267 pages, illustrations, and maps, \$2.50—special prices on lots.

"A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."

W. A. HOLBROOK,
Major-General, U. S. Army, Chief of Cavalry.

"Your book is really a vade-mecum for any officer, but particularly for the youngster. With your book in his saddle pockets—and it is not too large to be carried in one's saddle pockets at all times—the young officer will not need any other of the numerous manuals, regulations, and text-books with which the service is now so well supplied. The only thing I miss in your book is the funeral service and the Lord's Prayer. I am glad you have that page, or rather two pages, of saddler's tools. I wish I had had such a thing when I joined as a second lieutenant. I think the first duty my old Irish captain gave me was to take an inventory of the saddler's tools—I might as well have been ordered to take an inventory of the bones of an ichthyosaurus. I don't believe I ever did know what any kind of a "tickler" or a "stuffer" looked like till I saw their pictures in your book. Your book will certainly help make the way of the young officer easier—he can learn all the things from it that he had to learn by hard licks and his own experience when I was a youngster nearly forty years ago. I hope your book will be well received in the service."

MATTHEW F. STEELE,
Colonel, U. S. A., Retired.

The contents include: Organization and Insignia, Salutes and Honors, Manual of the Saber, Individual Cavalry Pack, Tactical Problems, Equitation, Stable Management, Team Work in Polo, Polo Rules, The Articles of War, and many other subjects.

THE DESERT MOUNTED CORPS, by Lieut.-Col. the Hon. R. M. P. Preston, D. S. O. With Introduction by Lieut.-Gen. Sir H. G. Chauvel, K. C. B., K. C. M. G. Price, \$4.50.

In the period from the 19th to the 30th of September the Desert Mounted Corps marched over 200 miles and took more than 60,000 prisoners, 140 guns and 500 machine guns in the advance to Damascus alone, while during the further advance to Aleppo the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions covered another 367 miles and took over 23,000 prisoners and 20 guns, bringing up the guns—from six to seven times its own strength.

SONGS OF HORSES, an Anthology, by Robert Frothingham. Boards, \$1.65.

"Swinging rhymes and stirring adventures over many lands abound. There are war horses, race horses, pet horses, and the authors range from Shakespeare and the book of Job to S. E. Kiser. 'Songs of Horses' stands out as one of the most colorful of anthologies."—New York Post.

CAVALRY CHARGE

After the tanks and gun machines
And the heavy artillery's through;
After the barrage and after the gas
And after the hullabaloo;
After the minor and lesser arms
Of the service have had their fling—
It's boot and saddle and sword and spur,
And the cavalry charge's the thing!
Cavalry—all in a sudden rush,
A clang and a mighty shout;
The foemen struck with a frightened hush,
And then with a panic rout!

FOLGER McKINSEY, in "Songs of Horses."

FROM THE GENERAL SERVICE SCHOOLS

GENERAL TACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF LARGER UNITS

A continuous army situation has been pictured in this book, covering an advance of several days, and culminating in an attack by the whole army. In addition, an infantry division in a march and attack is considered from the viewpoint of tactical co-operation and team-play. This publication has been authorized as a text-book for The General Service Schools. Price, \$1.00.

TACTICAL PRINCIPLES AND DECISIONS, 2 VOLS.

The eleven hundred pages of text in the two volumes of this book embrace the recognized principles of warfare, including stabilized situations, and endeavor to illustrate their application to the infantry division and the cavalry division, operating independently or as a part of a larger force. Great effort has been made to illustrate the tactical lessons

AS TO POLO, by W. Cameron Forbes.
The Standard Book of the Game, Fourth Edition. \$3.00.

THE STRATEGY ON THE WESTERN FRONT, by Col. H. H. Sargent. \$2.50.

A masterpiece written by a military strategist of acknowledged reputation. While its title refers to one front, it is actually a survey of the strategy of the whole war on all fronts, a thoughtful survey presented in such clear, concise fashion as to make the World War intelligible.

BREAKING AND RIDING, by Fillis.
The standard book on equitation. \$7.50.

derived from the World War, and to point out the functions and employment of new weapons (tanks, gas, etc.) with combined arms. Price, paper cover, per set, \$4.00; green cloth binding, \$5.00.

COMBAT ORDERS

This is one of the most useful books received from The General Service Schools Press. It has been prepared as a result of experiences in the World War. The principles and teachings of The School of the Line are embodied in this book. This publication has been authorized as a text-book for The General Service Schools and is highly recommended for the library of every officer in the U. S. Army, Marine Corps, National Guard, and Reserve Corps. Price, 50 cents.

The latest authoritative Cavalry Text: **THE TACTICS AND TECHNIC OF CAVALRY**, prepared by The General Service Schools, 1921. Price, 50 cents.

FOR THE NATIONAL GUARD

The National Guard Handbook for Company Commanders

By JOHN ADAMS BECHTEL

(Formerly Major National Army)

A compilation of National Guard Regulations, National Defense Act, War Department Regulations, manuals, pamphlets, orders, circulars, Circular Letters of Militia Bureau, etc., properly classified, arranged, and indexed for ready reference.

A great time-and-labor saving handbook for use in the supply and administration of organizations of the National Guard.

Every Officer, First Sergeant, Supply Sergeant, Company Clerk, and Organization of the National Guard should have a copy. Single copies, \$2.00, postpaid.

HANDBOOK FOR

The National Guardsman in Ranks

By JOHN ADAMS BECHTEL

(Formerly Major National Army)

This is a Pocket Manual published especially to fulfill the Needs of the Enlisted Man of the National Guard. It contains, in convenient form, properly indexed for ready reference, the Basic Military and other information which should be in the possession of every National Guardsman.

The data was carefully selected and compiled from War Department Manuals, Regulations, Pamphlets, etc., too numerous and voluminous for issue to each individual enlisted man. Single copies, \$1.00, postpaid.

FOR THE RESERVE OFFICER

Reserve Officers' Examiner

Published by The U. S. Infantry Association

Price, \$2.00, postage paid.

A book designed to place in the hands of Officers of the Reserve Corps a complete set of questions and answers covering the five subjects included in the Basic Examination for promotion of all Officers.

Administration—Military Law—Military Courtesy, Customs of the Service—Field Service Regulations—Military Hygiene

This is the book you've been waiting for—the book that every Reserve Officer will eventually need.

Get your copy now, devote a little systematic study to its contents, and when the time comes you will be ready for your examination for promotion.

- | ORDER BLANK | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Desert Mounted Corps | <input type="checkbox"/> Combat Orders |
| <input type="checkbox"/> As to Polo | <input type="checkbox"/> Tactics and Technic of Cavalry |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Strategy on the Western Front | <input type="checkbox"/> The National Guard Handbook for Company Commanders |
| <input type="checkbox"/> As to Military Training | <input type="checkbox"/> The Handbook for the National Guardsman in Ranks |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Songs of Horses | <input type="checkbox"/> Reserve Officers' Examiner |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Breaking and Riding, Fillis | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> General Tactical Functions of Larger Units | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tactical Principles and Decisions | |

THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION,

1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C.:

Please forward to the address below the books checked on this blank.

Name

Address

..... 1922.

THE RASP

The members of this year's classes at The Cavalry School are preparing an annual of the same type as that published last year.

300 Pages—Profusely Illustrated—Price, \$5.00

It is contemplated in this year's "Rasp" to not only include articles and photographs affecting this year's class, but those which will be of interest to every cavalry officer—in other words, it is our desire to make this book a symbol of the cavalry arm.

We know that every cavalry officer is desirous of attending the school, and, therefore, of keeping in touch with it and of gaining a comprehensive idea of the aims and policies of The Cavalry School. To those who have graduated from the school the book will revive old and dear memories and show what the school is now teaching.

Unlike previous issues, we anticipate a demand for this publication throughout the army, and it is our earnest desire to place at least one copy in the library of every cavalry officer.

We expect to have the book out by June 10, 1922, when it will be mailed to you direct.

JOHN T. McLANE,
Major, Cavalry, Editor, 1922 "Rasp."

ORDER THROUGH

UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
1624 H STREET, WASHINGTON, D. C.



CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1922

VOL. XXXI, No. 127

	Page
A MESSAGE FROM THE CHIEF.....	121
Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, U. S. Army.	
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA.....	123
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry.	
CAVALRY AT BIALYSTOK.....	130
Colonel William H. Hay, Cavalry.	
JUDGING HORSES	132
Major Henry Leonard, U. S. M. C., Retired.	
TURNER ASHBY, BEAU SABREUR.....	138
Major William W. Edwards, Cavalry.	
THE PROFESSION OF ARMS.....	151
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry.	
SOME POLO SUGGESTIONS.....	161
First Lieutenant M. L. Stockton, Cavalry.	
WHAT THE WORLD WAR DID FOR CAVALRY.....	165
Major George S. Patton, Jr., Cavalry.	
THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, UNITED STATES ARMY (concluded)...	173
CAVALRY RECONNAISSANCE	184
General N. N. Golovine.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
ANNUAL MEETING OF THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION—NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE CORPS REPRESENTED ON THE EXECUTIVE COUNCIL—ARMY PAY LEGISLATION—THE HAPPY CAVALRYMAN—BACK NUMBERS OF THE JOURNAL WANTED. 195	
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
MARCHING REMOUNTS—CHIEF OF CAVALRY MAKING LONG TOUR OF INSPECTION—GENERAL LAGARENNE ON THE FUTURE OF EQUESTRIAN SPORTS—CAVALRY DISCUSSED BY ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION—CAVALRY PONTOON BRIDGE... 198	
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	203
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	205
POLO	208
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	210
REGIMENTAL NOTES	211
THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT.....	220
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	222

The Desert Mounted Corps

An account of the Cavalry Operations in Palestine and Syria, 1917-1918

By LIEUT.-COL. PRESTON

A Remarkable Book
It should be read by every one interested in cavalry

Order from

BOOK DEPARTMENT
U.S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
1624 H St. N. W. Washington, D. C.
Price, \$4.50, Net

BATTLEFIELDS of the WORLD WAR

Western and Southern Fronts
By MAJOR DOUGLAS JOHNSON

It presents in a series of paired chapters (1) the salient topographic features of the terrain and (2) the military operations on the various battlefields. There are 105 photographs, 60 hand-drawn maps and diagrams.

Accompanying the book is a case containing 11 plates, including topographic maps of the battlefields of Flanders, the Somme, the Marne, Verdun, and Lorraine; block diagrams, in color, of Lorraine, the Trentino, and the Isonzo; and panoramas taken in France, Italy, and the Balkans. An indispensable book to every student of military science, and to engineers, geographers, and historians.

Postpaid, \$7.20

Published for the American Geographical Society by

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
American Branch
35 WEST 32D STREET, NEW YORK

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Colonel WILLIAM C. RIVERS, Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel FRANCIS C. MARSHALL, Cavalry.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel JULIUS T. CONRAD (Cavalry), A. G. D.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBURG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel GEORGE VIDMER, Cavalry.

Colonel GEORGE E. MITCHELL, Cavalry.

Colonel STUART HEINTZELMAN (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXI

APRIL, 1922

No. 127

A Message from the Chief

BY

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry, U. S. Army

THE PRESENT moment is one of great concern to all members of the service. The reduction and reorganization consequent upon the passage of the army bill of last summer are barely accomplished when we are disturbed by the talk of further reduction. Concurrently the army pay is being reconsidered, reduction is being effected in the commissioned personnel, and other disquieting factors tend to distract the minds of service people from a cheerful, spirited prosecution of their tasks.

I would like to dispel the general and natural feeling of depression and inspire each member of the cavalry with a more cheerful hope for the future. Army legislation cannot, of course, be safely predicted; but members of the service should be assured at this time that the War Department is making a strong presentation of the case against further reduction, and there are grounds upon which to base the hope that Congress will be persuaded of the danger of crippling our present organization.

The cavalry has been particularly at the mercy of "economists" because one immediate result of the World War in France was to cause a certain amount of doubt in the minds of those familiar only with the operations there of the future value of cavalry. However, the cavalry history of the war has subsequently been gathered together and studied, and the lesson which that history teaches—that cavalry is as important and necessary today as ever—has gained wider and wider appreciation. At the same time the peculiar need of our country for cavalry has been emphasized. With a more favorable regard now manifested toward the cavalry branch, it is possible at least to hope that the cavalry will suffer no further reduction.

It is pertinent to remark, also, that notwithstanding the purport of a lot of unripe criticism and comment which has appeared in the public press, the



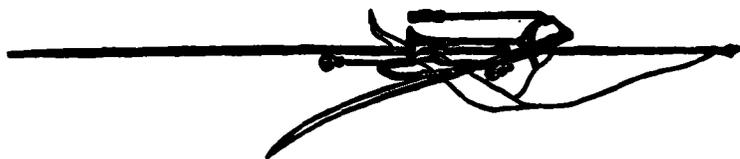
THE HAPPY CAVALRYMAN

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

preparation of the joint service pay bill has been receiving the most painstaking and thoughtful consideration of the War Department. The features of the bill which in the early stages of its preparation were most objectionable have been altered and bettered, and the pay bill which represents the completed work of the joint committee of Congress merits the approval of every member of the service.

It is not possible to transform a tremendous war machine into a satisfactory peace-time establishment without a period of comparative disruption and experimentation, and each member of the service must unselfishly resign himself to the necessities of the situation and help with constructive work, not hinder with plaintive criticism. But, from all the signs of the times, we have bumped over the worst of our difficulties, and may now hope for a period of more complete and satisfactory adjustment in which to carry on the work of perfecting our military organization and state of training.

This brings me to a point which I am particularly desirous of impressing upon members of the regular cavalry. With our organizations much reduced in number, it is evident that each platoon, each squad, each trooper, has a relatively greater importance than before; and, by the same token, each officer serving with troops lies under a greater responsibility that his unit is developed to the maximum efficiency. If we cannot have a large cavalry, then we will have what is better still—a strong cavalry. Russia's masses of cavalry made a poor showing in the first years of the World War because they were ineffectively commanded. We shall not fall into that error. Each one of our officers in command of troops must appreciate that his unit now represents an appreciable proportion of our total strength and, moreover, has a greater significance in the big scheme of national defense, and whether we charge him with preserving order on the border with his unit, or whether we expect him to use that unit to demonstrate cavalry doctrine to the National Guard and Organized Reserves, he must keep that unit at all times efficient and effective to the highest degree. All obstacles, and they are well known and appreciated, must be overcome. All lost motion and incertitude must be eradicated. Training and preparation must go forward with positive direction and unflagging determination and zeal, to the end that we may have the very best cavalry in our history.



The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry

(Observer with British Cavalry)

UPON HIS RETURN from duty with foreign armies, the writer of this article was quoted by various newspapers as expressing amazement at the little study which had been given in this country to the campaigns of General Allenby in Palestine and Syria. That is right. He was amazed, surprised—a surprise mingled with regret—because those campaigns constitute a storehouse literally filled with the finest exemplifications of military art. Conceptions of strategy, plans of operations, feats of arms, achievements of military intelligence, close functioning of intercommunication, difficult and sustained tasks of supply wonderfully performed—all these can there be found for our analysis and benefit.

Moreover, these contributions to military practice were mainly achieved by officers and men—English, Scotch, Welsh, Irish, Australians, and New Zealanders—who resemble our own personnel in characteristics. They lived and marched and fought over a terrain and in a climate of peculiar significance in their resemblance to regions of our own frontiers. Furthermore, in the combatant aggregate they were an army of approximately the same size as that which we generally find for our own establishment—and which we will find again when we awake from our dreams of millions. Thus a remarkable similarity of personnel, terrain, climate, and numbers stimulate and assist us in our application of the lessons of these campaigns to our own efforts—that is to say, if our main effort is to be devoted to the development of the present substance and not to the organization of the shadow.

Furthermore, these two campaigns of General Allenby furnish a striking example of the combined operations of all arms. Cavalry, infantry, artillery, the air service—all the supporting activities and the ships of the navy—were united in a smoothly working machine, from which one never heard the groans and whines of discord and jealousy. To an unusual extent it was a veteran force, hardened by Gallipoli or Macedonia or France since 1914 or early 1915. Command and staff alike had developed in the hard school of experience, and for their supreme control, guidance, and inspiration they had a Commander-in-Chief whose personality appeared to blend in ideal balance all the human factors which we associate with leadership in the art of war.

From our standpoint the cavalry operations in Palestine and Syria are of special interest because they prove so conclusively the soundness of our own American cavalry doctrine, developed on this continent by generations of our predecessors. Neglected, as a rule, by European military authorities in all of

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

their writings in the past, there is great satisfaction and a bit of pardonable humor in the situation, as we now realize that the greatest of cavalry campaigns in the greatest of wars, completely fought out by troops of European training, proved, after all, that the American cavalry doctrine had been sound and the others backward. Ours had certain defects, and now we know how to remedy them; but in principle our entire system has been most wonderfully vindicated. We know now that our careful training in fighting dismounted was along the right lines, and we know also that our adherence to the practice of mounted combat was entirely correct—only now we realize more clearly and with great confidence the wonderful possibilities of the latter.

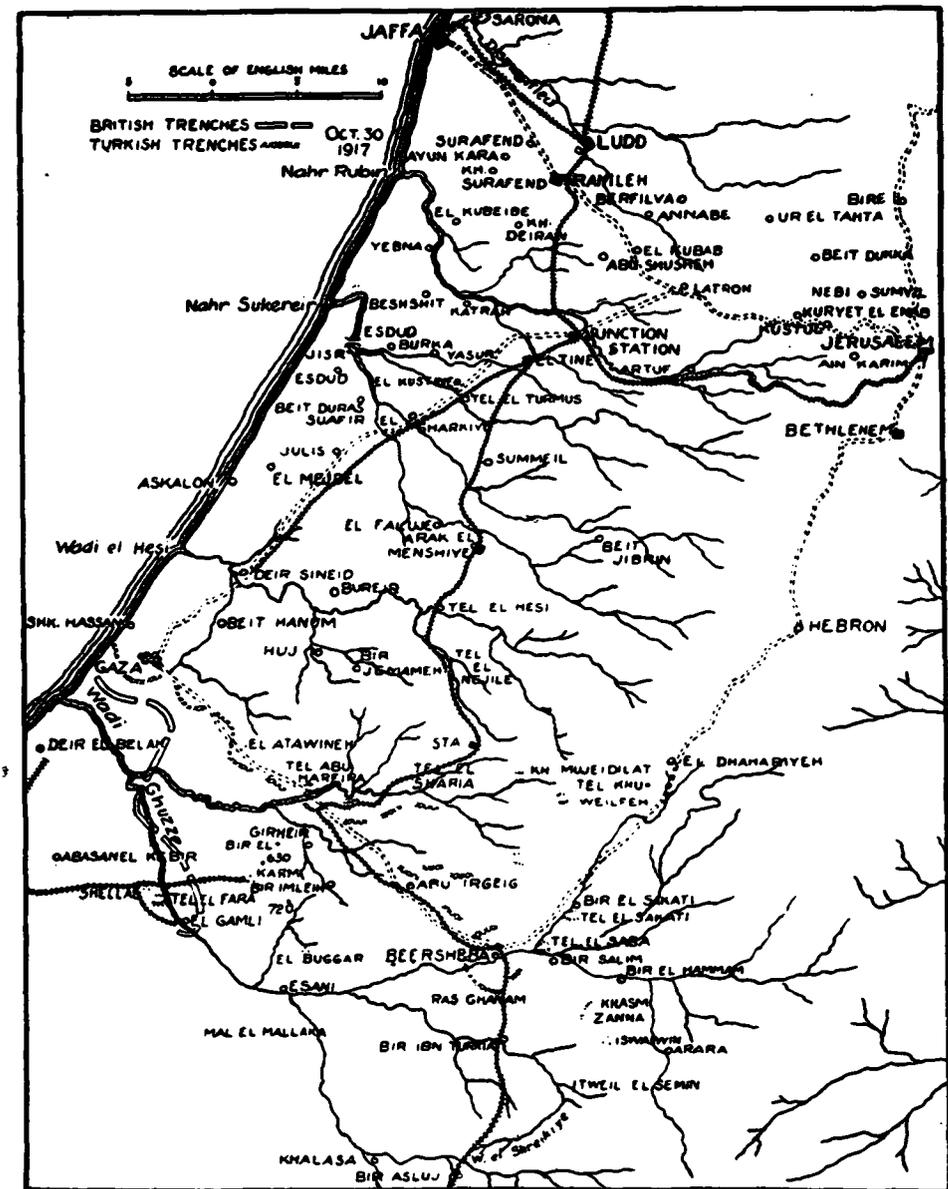
On the map of Palestine, reproduced herewith, we see as the area of our initial study the quadrangle formed by Gaza-Beersheba-Jerusalem-Jaffa. Add a margin extending twenty miles to the south, ten miles to the north, to the Mediterranean on the west, and to the Dead Sea on the east and you have approximately Palestine, not only historically, but also as the scene of the operations which are here considered. The area is about 10,000 square miles; somewhat larger in extent than our State of New Hampshire and about one-fourth larger than the total area of France occupied by the German forces.

The terrain south of the road Gaza-Beersheba and for ten miles north of it resembles to a remarkable extent the terrain of southern New Mexico, except that the roads of Palestine are infinitely worse than those of New Mexico; there is more sand and there is no mesquite; it is a shrubless, treeless, and practically waterless country. At the north line above mentioned a rolling country begins, resembling our Great Plains, and this continues on up to the road Jaffa-Jerusalem, where low limestone hills and mountains are found in a confused mass. Along the coast the plain continues. From Jerusalem to the south as far as Beersheba, a great irregular area of hills, about 35 miles wide east and west, parallels the Dead Sea.

All of the above area reminds one climatically of New Mexico and Arizona, except that the coast plain is perhaps more like southern California. In late November heavy rains begin, and the winter months are chilly and disagreeable in the hill country.

When General Allenby arrived, in June, 1917, he found the British Army intrenched immediately south of Gaza, to which point, under the command of General Sir Archibald Murray, it had fought and marched all the way from the Suez Canal during the latter part of 1916 and the first quarter of 1917. Preparatory to an advance in the autumn, reinforcements gradually arrived until the total force numbered about 81,300 infantry, 18,700 mounted troops, and 450 guns, which, together with the various supporting services, gave a ration strength of 367,000. The army was organized into the XXth Corps, combatant strength, 45,000; the XXIst Corps, 36,300, and the Cavalry Corps, 18,700. For local reasons, this latter corps was called the "Desert Mounted Corps."

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA



MAP OF PALESTINE

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

This Cavalry Corps was composed of three divisions, namely, the Australian, the Anzac, and the Yeomanry divisions, the latter being of English personnel, with one additional brigade of Yeomanry and one Camel Brigade. Each division consisted of three brigades, each brigade of three regiments, and each regiment of three squadrons. To each cavalry brigade was attached a battery of four guns—13-pounders.

As these units differ in size from those of our cavalry, it should be stated that during the Palestine Campaign the division had an average combatant strength of about 4,300 sabers; the brigade, 1,400; the regiment, 400; the squadron, 125, and the troop, 25 to 30, this latter unit being a lieutenant's command, corresponding to our platoon.

Of the 11 brigades in the Cavalry Corps, five were armed with rifle, bayonet, and saber. These were the English cavalry. The four Australian and the one New Zealand Brigade were armed with rifle and bayonet only. The Camel Brigade, part English, part Australian, was armed with rifle and bayonet. Only officers and a few N. C. O.'s were armed with the pistol, the British not having as yet seriously tested this weapon.

The officers of the Cavalry Corps were very similar in type to the officers of our cavalry. The Corps Commander, Lieutenant-General Chauvel, belonged to the permanent military establishment of Australia, had served in the South African War, and was thoroughly grounded in cavalry methods. Moreover, in temperament he was eminently fitted for this particular command, because he not only had the confidence of the cavalry, but was highly esteemed in the other branches. He was what we would call "square." The commander of the Anzac Division, Major-General Chaytor, belonged to the permanent establishment of New Zealand, had served in the South African War, and was universally rated as a division commander of exceptional ability. The commanders of the Australian and Yeomanry divisions were of the British Regular Army. Each had a wealth of military experience and excellent judgment; each displayed ability equaled by few division commanders throughout the war.

The brigadier-generals were of the British Regular Army, the Indian Army, the Australian, and the New Zealand establishments. They, like the major-generals, were of about the same average age as officers of our army of like grades. The corps and divisional chiefs of staff and the principal administrative staff officers were British regulars or were from the Australian and New Zealand establishments. The regimental officers were, to a great extent, from the regions of their regimental recruitment. It is not too much to say that the tirelessness, steadiness, thoroughness, gallantry, and keen cavalry spirit of the officers of the Cavalry Corps thoroughly aroused one's admiration and respect.

We see, then, that General Allenby's Army consisted of about 100,000 men (excluding artillery and supply personnel), and that 18,700 of these, or 18 per cent, were mounted. The Turkish force consisted of 51,500 men, 1,500 of whom, or about 3 per cent, were mounted; their artillery numbered 300 guns.

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

Referring to the map, the lines of the opposing armies are seen as they were during the late summer of 1917. The Turks occupied the 30-mile line, Gaza-Beersheba, heavily intrenched with wire and all modern obstacles. Those who saw the trenches in France will know the extent of those Turkish trenches. At Hareira the Turk slightly refused his left in a great system of redoubts. At Beersheba the Turk was intrenched, with wire, on the west of the town; on the east and southeast he was well intrenched at intervals, but without wire. He believed that no force could move far enough, quickly enough, to strike him there effectively.

The British trenches facing Gaza were in several lines deeply dug and extensively wired. From their left, on the sea, the XXIst Corps and the XXth Corps held the line to Shellal. The Cavalry Corps held the right, which extended to Gamli; one division in line with patrols in No-Man's-Land, one division immediately in support, and one division in reserve on the beach.

Deciding that a frontal attack would give results only at a prohibitive cost, the Commander-in-Chief decided he would pin down the Gaza garrison and its eastern elements by attacking them with the XXIst Corps, while he sent the XXth Corps to engage Beersheba on the west and the Cavalry Corps to turn the Beersheba intrenchments on the east.

It was necessary to choose between three alternatives: (a) capture Beersheba, at all costs, in one day; (b) capture Beersheba in two or three days; (c) capture Beersheba in five or six days.

It was decided that Beersheba must be captured, at all costs, in one day. There were three reasons: First, in the vicinity of Beersheba there was not water enough to water the cavalry, so if the town was not captured in one day the operations would thereafter be intermittent, while the cavalry marched back to water, 20 miles; second, consuming more than one day would give the enemy time to interpret the intention of the attack and move his reserves to properly counter; third, after Beersheba was captured, at least four or five days would be needed for the regrouping of units and the necessary staff work in order to proceed with the second stage. Could the Beersheba defenses be successfully assaulted and the garrison destroyed or captured, the left flank of the Turkish defense would be open and, by prompt action, his lines could be rolled up to the west, and there would be opportunity for further cavalry employment on a larger scale.

With the above decision in mind, General Allenby, looking to the east from his battle area in front of Gaza, turned his thoughts to the details of plan which would insure the delivery of a blow combining both overwhelming strength and complete surprise. He determined that the line Ma El Mallaka-El Buggar would mark the preparatory positions of the XXth Corps on October 30; that the cavalry would screen these positions and the general movement by occupying a line of observation, October 24, about as follows: Esani-east of El Buggar-Point 720-630-Bir in Bir El Girheir; that the Anzac Division and

Cavalry Corps Headquarters would be in position at Asluj by the evening of October 30, the Australian Division at Khalasa, and the Seventh Mounted Brigade at Esani on the same evening. The Yeomanry Division at the time above mentioned would be at Shellal ready for operations north of Girheir, and the Camel Brigade north of Shellal for duty with the XXth Corps.

By the above arrangement the Anzac Division, on the evening before the morning of attack, was 25 miles from its point of deployment, the Australian Division 35 miles, and the XXth Corps 10 miles. Thus sufficient strength was poised for effective surprise, as the Turkish troops to be attacked at Beersheba were estimated at about 3,500 men and 20 guns. But the application of strength and surprise would depend upon several lesser included elements, namely, the masking of intention, the availability of adequate transport, and the provision of sufficient supplies, especially of water. Each of these was very difficult.

To conceal his intention, the Commander-in-Chief caused the XXIst Corps, in front of Gaza, to commence a heavy bombardment of the city's defenses on October 27; the artifice of allowing the enemy to capture papers containing misleading information had been carried out some time previously, and a series of divisional reconnaissances toward Beersheba during the preceding month had, perhaps, lulled the enemy into a feeling that advances of considerable bodies of troops in this direction need not be taken seriously. When the actual movement began, troops marched by night, leaving their old camp sites intact.

The supply difficulties were formidable. The whole of the country to be traversed was sandy and became very much cut up with continual traffic. In many places there really was no road; one simply moved across the dreary waste by compass. There were few landmarks, one portion of the country looking quite like the other. The huge amount of traffic caused great clouds of dust, in the midst of which one might easily take the wrong direction, even when near moving troops or transport, as not all of these were following similar routes. Sign-boards were often knocked down and not set up again. However, the objectives were few and the directions confined to one quadrant, so the work proceeded without much lost motion. The "wadis," with their very crooked courses, sandy bottoms, and steep banks, were always troublesome obstacles. From rail-head at Gamli a great variety of transportation was pressed into service in order to establish a supply depot at a point two miles southeast of Esani, or about 11 miles from Gamli. A reserve of four days' rations for two mounted divisions was concentrated at Esani in two days by using 4,000 camels, each camel carrying between 250 and 300 pounds, according to his burden class, and 24 caterpillars, each carrying 10 tons of supplies. As the troops moved south to Khalasa and Asluj they were supplied from Esani by means of camel and wheeled trains. Altogether, some 30,000 camels were employed by both the cavalry and infantry. To avoid observation, all large movements of supplies and troops were made under cover of darkness, the supply trains mov-

ing forward to the troops one night and returning to the depot the following night.

During these days and nights when troopers and guns, wagons, tractors, and camels were stealthily moving across the desert and through the deep, dry beds of "wadis" (creeks), gathering at their rendezvous west and far south of Beersheba, the guns of the XXIst Corps, near the sea, increased the violence of their fire, and several British warships, assisted by one French man-of-war, joined in the bombardment. They lay about 2,000 yards offshore, south of Gaza, in an area which they had protected by nets and mines, thus giving security against submarines. A few gunboats and destroyers patrolled actively in the vicinity in order to give additional safety. The navy had a liaison officer on shore, who had established a "spotting signal station" in a series of dug-outs in the sand-dunes overlooking the beach. He had telephone connection with three naval observers, who had their own observation posts in the army trenches. Thus the bluejacket in his gun-turret aided his cavalry brethren in their effort, scores of miles away across the desert waste.

Every element of preparation functioned in a high degree of success, while the Turk, quite unaware of the real force of the impending attack, proceeded patiently with the ordinary routine of his trench life. In this connection it should be stated that the Turk proved himself a high-class fighting man—erratic, no doubt, but courageous to a high degree and, at times, very crafty. When one hears that the Turk was an opponent of no fighting consequence, one is merely listening to a person whose knowledge is superficial, who is not informed as to the facts of the World War.

With this general survey of the quality and numbers of the opponents, the features of their environment, their estimates of the situation, and their plans of action, we leave them in their respective locations on the afternoon of October 30, 1917.*

(To be continued)



* While the writer is drawing on his own material for these articles, it is suggested that readers who wish to study these campaigns in great detail take advantage of certain books that have been written by British authorities. These books are all reliable and can be obtained through the CAVALRY JOURNAL. They are as follows: "The Desert Mounted Corps," by Colonel Preston; "How Jerusalem was Won," by W. T. Massey; "Allenby's Final Triumph," by W. T. Massey, and "A Brief Record of the Advance of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force," an official compilation.—E. D.

Cavalry at Bialystok

BY

Colonel WILLIAM H. HAY, Cavalry

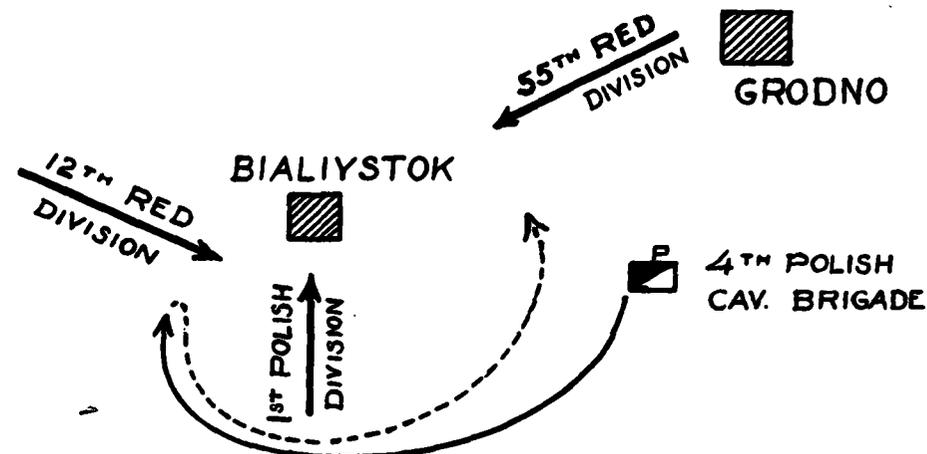
I THINK perhaps cavalrymen will be interested to have an account of a combat which occurred on the 26th of August, 1920, between two divisions of the Red (Russian) Army and one division with the cavalry brigade of the Polish Army. This combat affords a fine illustration of the proper use of cavalry. It illustrates also, in a very striking way, how much the usefulness of cavalry depends upon its mobility.

I arrived in Poland on an inspection trip from Coblenz the day after the commencement of the Polish counter-stroke which resulted in the complete defeat and demoralization of the Russian Army. While in Warsaw, on my return trip from south Poland, I met and had a long talk with Major Mockett, of the British General Staff, who was observer with the Polish armies and who personally witnessed the combat to which I refer above. Mockett was a cavalry officer himself, and in speaking of the character of the fighting which had taken place he referred to the combat in front of Bialystok as being one of the first occasions during the counter-offensive where serious fighting took place and as illustrating very well the proper use of cavalry. The account as he gave it to me was as follows:

The 1st Polish Division, reinforced by the 4th Polish Cavalry Brigade, about 1,500 sabers, had been directed to take the city of Bialystok, which was said to be strongly held. From the best information which the Polish commander had been able to obtain, he believed that any danger of a flank attack would threaten his right from the direction of Grodno, and he therefore stationed the cavalry brigade to protect that flank. The orders for the attack of Bialystok by the 1st Polish Division were given, the attack being made with two brigades in the front line and one brigade in reserve. After the deployment had been made and advance actually begun, information was received that the 12th Red Division was advancing from the northwest, evidently to attack his left flank. The original orders were at once changed, as follows: One infantry brigade to make a holding attack on Bialystok, the other two brigades to form to the left front and attack the 12th Red Division. At the same time orders were sent to the commanding general of the 4th Cavalry Brigade, giving him information of the situation and directing him to move rapidly to the left flank and attack the 12th Red Division in flank in conjunction with the two infantry brigades of the 1st Division. This attack was completely successful. The 12th Red Division, taken in flank by the cavalry brigade at the critical moment, was badly defeated and driven off in retreat.

CAVALRY AT BIALIYSTOK

Meantime, before the cessation of the action on the left flank, information was received that a Red division was moving from the direction of Grodno to attack the Polish right flank. The cavalry brigade was ordered to move rapidly from left to right, attack the Red division in flank and occupy their attention until the brigades of the 1st Polish Division could be reorganized and moved to the right to join in the attack on that flank. This movement also was successful and the Red division from Grodno was badly defeated and driven back toward Grodno. The city of Bialystok was then occupied without much resistance.



The severity of the fighting is indicated by the Polish losses, which amounted to about 400 killed and wounded. The losses of the Red divisions are not given. The cavalry attack was made with both rifle and saber, and the success of the actions on both flanks would not have been possible without the assistance of the cavalry. In fact, the defeat of the Polish infantry division would have been assured had it not been for the possession of a mobile reserve.

This appears to be an excellent illustration of the proper tactical use of cavalry in connection with the infantry attack.



Judging Horses

BY

Major HENRY LEONARD, U. S. M. C. (Retired), Member of
Remount Board

It is with considerable diffidence that I venture upon the discussion of a subject so fruitful of controversy. While it is appreciated that the matter of what constitutes equine perfection in any given class must rest somewhat within the opinion formed by the experience and personal preferences of him who is judging, yet there are certain patent characteristics which every horse must have in order to be adapted to the work for which he has been developed. There may be, and unquestionably there is, room for honest and thoughtful minds to disagree as to the height, for example, required of an animal wanted for a given task. On the other hand, it would seem that there should be a fair concurrence of opinion concerning the mechanical construction most contributing to the performance of a specific work. There are certainly some propositions which may be laid down, not dogmatically, but with a reasonable certainty of their acceptance by practical horsemen.

The confusion engendered in the minds of breeders by the selection of widely variant types as representing the best in their respective classes should be readily avoided. The awarding of prizes in the same class to horses of different types, I pass without comment, further than to say that where this transpires either of two conditions must exist, viz., the class is composed of poor individuals or the judge has no imprint upon his mind of the horse he is seeking to pass upon. A competent judge should be in a position to feel when he steps out of the show-ring that, whether or not he has satisfied exhibitors or audience, he has at least not instilled doubt in the minds of breeders as to the type of animal they should aim to produce. If he has clarified this subject in any measure, his work has been successful, without regard to whether his popularity has suffered or been enhanced by his decisions; and if he has muddled it, he has failed, without reference to any other consideration.

It is to be remembered that judging is a difficult and thankless task at best. The most that one can expect from exhibitors is a self-satisfied smile of approval from those whose horses are selected for awards, and sympathetic concern for one's ignorance from the men who fail to get a ribbon. The attendant general public is usually complacent, unless it has a strong favorite or the judging drags.

In classes where conformation and performance are factors, it is helpful to line up the entries and give them a preliminary survey for type and soundness;

JUDGING HORSES

while this should be rapid, it must be thorough. Nothing is more hurtful than the award of ribbons to unsound contestants. This examination enables one to lay the foundation for a process of elimination which can be completed when and as horses perform. There are usually contestants which have manifest inadequacies of form and structure or are unsound; these can be removed from the ring without further ado, so that time may be devoted to a more careful examination of those from which winners are to be selected, without having the eye clouded and the judgment befogged by observing horses which cannot possibly win.

In military and similar classes, where performance and schooling involve the execution of a number of movements, judges owe to management and audience promptness of decision; to contestants, a fair opportunity. The only method contributing effectually to the attainment of both of these is to have all entrants show schooling movements in succession. This can be done by fixing a point in the ring opposite which each contestant, upon arrival, shall execute a given evolution. This provides not only for rapid disposal of movements, but as well for comparison of their manner of execution. To have individuals execute all movements as a separate performance involves interminable delay and a repetition which produces boredom in the public and impatience in the management. Apropos of classes wherein conformation, performance, and manners, or any two of these, are factors, I cannot forbear to comment upon the custom of specifying percentages to be given to each constituent element. The strongest argument against the practice is the fact that judges do not and cannot comply with the provisions. It is wholly impracticable to affix to each error of performance and to each inadequacy of conformation a proportionate penalty. There are many shades of error and many degrees of physical imperfection, and to assess these mathematically would involve a measure of deliberation and a period of time incompatible with the attainment of a prompt and practical result. Judges should be selected because of their competency to act as such. Conditions should be drawn so as to indicate the elements to be considered in arriving at a determination. The matter should then be committed to the judges, leaving to them the measure of consideration to be given to the various factors which go to make up the best individuals.

Audiences, and indeed exhibitors, seem to find difficulty in comprehending just what constitutes performance. Some years ago I was judging a class of hunters at one of the larger shows. The other judge was an able horseman of long experience in the show-ring. A handsome gray gelding, ridden by his very popular owner, came in, rushed his jumps with mouth open and head in air. There was never a suggestion that this animal had the slightest conception of what he was jumping, nor did he show the least interest in determining whether he was to take off from a well bottom or a rock pile. He got over the jump, landed on his hind legs, and proceeded merrily on his way. This was

repeated substantially at each of eight jumps, all of which, however, he cleared by about six inches. He was followed by a typical bay hunter, which came up to his obstacles collectedly, looked at them, measured his stride, popped over in nice form, and went about his business. Unhappily, however, this horse touched behind on one of the jumps, as any good hunter will sometimes do. The man on the star-gazing gray came up to the judges after the class was over and voiced his dissatisfaction at being beaten by the bay. His complaint was that the bay horse had touched a jump, whereas his mount had made a clean performance, and that, the class being one in which performance only counted, the sole question for the judges was whether a contestant had or had not gotten over without touching. My colleague then proceeded to explain to him in the nicest possible way that a hunter's "performance" involved a number of elements, not inconsiderable among which was the manner in which he did his work; in short, that his horse was in a class for hunters and consequently was required to give a safe and satisfactory performance as such. Ultimately the reasoning carried conviction, but it is a process which judges not infrequently find it necessary to repeat under similar circumstances.

One cannot but feel that too little attention is in many instances given to determining whether a horse is sound. It is not an involved process, nor does it require an infinite period of time to ascertain whether an animal is "windy"; but it is not a wholly unheard-of thing to see a blue ribbon pinned on a show-ring hunter which could not gallop half a mile without acute distress. No judge has escaped or should escape full measure of responsibility for awarding a prize to a horse with "boggy" or "curby" hocks, because the veterinarian attached to the show says he "would not exactly call that a curb (or bog)." It is to be remembered that the veterinarian is a local practitioner, dependent for his practice upon owners of live stock in that community. It requires a man of strength of character to pronounce baldly upon an unsoundness of not too marked proportions in the face of a probable loss of the exhibitor's patronage. The judge is there to determine every question going to the fitness of any contesting horse to be a prize-winner; he is presumably a man of wide experience with horses; he may, and properly should, take counsel with the attending veterinarian on matters coming within the latter's sphere. In the final analysis, however, the responsibility for the decision is wholly his and he should fearlessly and unhesitatingly accept it. Obviously the above remarks do not relate to non-transmissible unsoundnesses in breeding classes, which do not preclude a horse from being "breeding sound."

Judges are always interested in a horse's way of going. The fact that a horse "wings" or "paddles" in hack or charger classes, particularly, is of obvious relevance to a determination of his suitability as such. In one of the endurance tests which I judged, a contesting horse traveled with his off hind foot in the median line, with the result that his rider was necessarily screwed about in the saddle in order to face squarely to the front. Posting to this

horse's trot was a mortification of the flesh. All such faults of gait have a direct significance in assessing an animal's value as a saddle horse (or in fact for other purposes) and consequently should have due consideration when judging him.

There is sometimes complaint of the lack of time available in which to judge a class with painstaking care. Many excellent horsemen dislike to judge because they are unwilling to arrive at sketchy conclusions, while realizing that the management must get on with the program. If every moment while a class is in the ring is utilized in examination of the contestants, it is surprising how much ground can be covered. Horse shows are social occasions for the audience. Judges, while in the ring, are under no obligation to make themselves entertaining to their colleagues, and the least that an exhibitor has a right to expect is that he receive the undivided attention of those who are there to pass upon the merits of his horse.

During many years' experience with horse shows, I have never had satisfactory evidence that a judge was knowingly and intentionally partial or disingenuous. Cases have, however, come within my notice where men have judged classes who were breed enthusiasts to such an extent that they could see good in no animal not derived from their favorite strain, or who were unalterably convinced that none but a registered entry should wear a ribbon. It would be supererogation to point out the patent unfitness of so unjudicial a temperament to pass upon any class otherwise constituted than solely of the breed favored by him.

It would appear that the army should draw a sharp line of demarkation between officers' chargers and troopers' mounts in the military classes. Chargers should be excluded in terms from competition as troop horses, not only as a measure of encouragement to the men, but rather because they are not of similar type.

An officer's charger is a showy horse, of size, having

- Good feet, wide at the heels;
- Springy pasterns, neither too straight nor too sloping;
- Short cannons, with good, flat bone;
- Wide, flat knees;
- Broad, deep, bony hocks, well let down;
- Well-developed fore-arms and gaskins, fore-arms long and straight;
- Good length from point of hip to hock;
- Well-rounded, muscular quarters;
- Tail set on well up;
- Muscled down well between the hind legs;
- Reasonable length from loin to dock;
- Broad, muscular loins;
- Short, level back, a bit higher at withers than at croup;
- Well-sprung ribs; body well knit and compact;
- Close coupling and well let down in flank;

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Adequate heart and loin girth;
Long, sloping shoulder running back to prominent withers, the latter running well back, so girth will come amply to rear of elbows;
Chest deep rather than broad;
A long rein and a front showing quality;
Good head, with prominent eyes, having ample breadth between them;
Wide intermaxillary space;
Refined throat latch;
Ears of moderate size;
A mellow skin and fine coat.

He should go straight, have some action, good manners, be well schooled, be able to jump four feet, and should, in a word, be a parade horse, having, however, the substance and mettle to go across country should occasion require. He should be a fine type of hunter, with schooling and action added. The horse that we are describing is a very high-class animal and it may be said by some that we are shooting at the sun. A man whose professional office is the saddle should certainly not seek to find accommodations in the cellar for the practice of his trade. There is to be detected a tendency on the part of some officers of the mounted service to ride horses which reflect no credit upon themselves or the arm to which they belong. Taking refuge behind the plea of poverty, they have willingly left to their brother officers the matter of representing the service creditably. As a matter of fact, many of the men who have exhibited the best horses at the shows have been able to do so only by the exercise of considerable self-denial in other directions. They have frequently been married men, with children and with no private fortune upon which to draw. On the other hand, bachelor officers in the same organization have shown a callous indifference to a most important element of their profession, by riding horses which would reflect no credit upon a post-boy, while incurring, without hesitancy, taxicab bills of a hundred dollars or more per month. Public opinion in the service should make it impossible for an officer to hold a commission in a mounted arm who has no more zest for his work than to be willing to potter around on a "crock." The Remount Service is rendering it increasingly easy to secure a good mount at a fair price. It should be a source of pride with every officer to be able and willing to select a good horse and school him into a finished product, suitable to be shown in hunter and charger classes. There are few men indeed who have fortunes so large as to be able to indulge every desire in life. Well-ordered living consists, *inter alia*, in selecting those things which one most wishes and making their attainment possible by sacrificing others. Every officer in the American service can readily afford two very high-class horses by carrying out such a plan.

A trooper's mount is a horse possessing such of the foregoing qualities as are requisite to fit him for daily military service in the field, having in view the

JUDGING HORSES

many and exacting demands which may properly be made upon him. Of this animal one does not expect the length of rein, general refinement and quality, action, or the same jumping ability which is demanded of the charger. He is a horse for service, possessing the qualities which are requisite to enable him to endure and win through in the field; he has the best of manners, is well schooled, and should go safely over moderate obstacles. The possession by any entered horse of more quality than the maximum price paid by the Government for troopers' mounts will procure in the open market automatically removes him from the class.

The "officers' cob," or field-service mount, is between the above two types. This horse should be approximately from 14-2 to 15 hands in height and should emphasize substance and ability to go a distance; he is a refined troop horse.

This is a type which has not been defined in the American service, but is well recognized in the British Army, having come into use as a result of experience in the field. His ability to do much work on little feed and to stand the hardships incident to campaigning is his reason for being. Speedy recognition of the fact that the charger and the field-service cob have entirely different spheres of usefulness will eliminate an exceedingly prolific source of discussion, viz., whether a large or a small horse is more suitable for an officer's mount.

I cannot forbear to comment, in conclusion, upon the excellence of the horses and the horsemanship exhibited by officers in recent years. Much of this is ascribable to the influence of the Remount Service, and even more arises from the fact that officers are coming into a much easier contact with the civilian community in general and civilian horsemen in particular. Many of them have learned not to be too didactic and dogmatic in the expression of their views; to adopt the best from others without hesitancy, while at the same time not making changes in their own methods for the sheer sake of change; and, greatest of all, they have become more gregarious and learned to "mix" with members of the non-military community without talking down to them.

STRICTLY HONEST

"I give you your price," remarked the stranger;
"Your honesty pays you, of course;
You've said, fair enough, he's blind in one eye;
Does anything else all the horse?"

"Wa-al, ya-as," drawled the farmer, gripping the bills,
"I'll be strickly honest with you;
I've told you that horse is blind in one eye—
He's blind in the other eye, too."

—George Whitefold D'eye.

Turner Ashby, Beau Sabreur

BY

Major WILLIAM WALTER EDWARDS, Cavalry

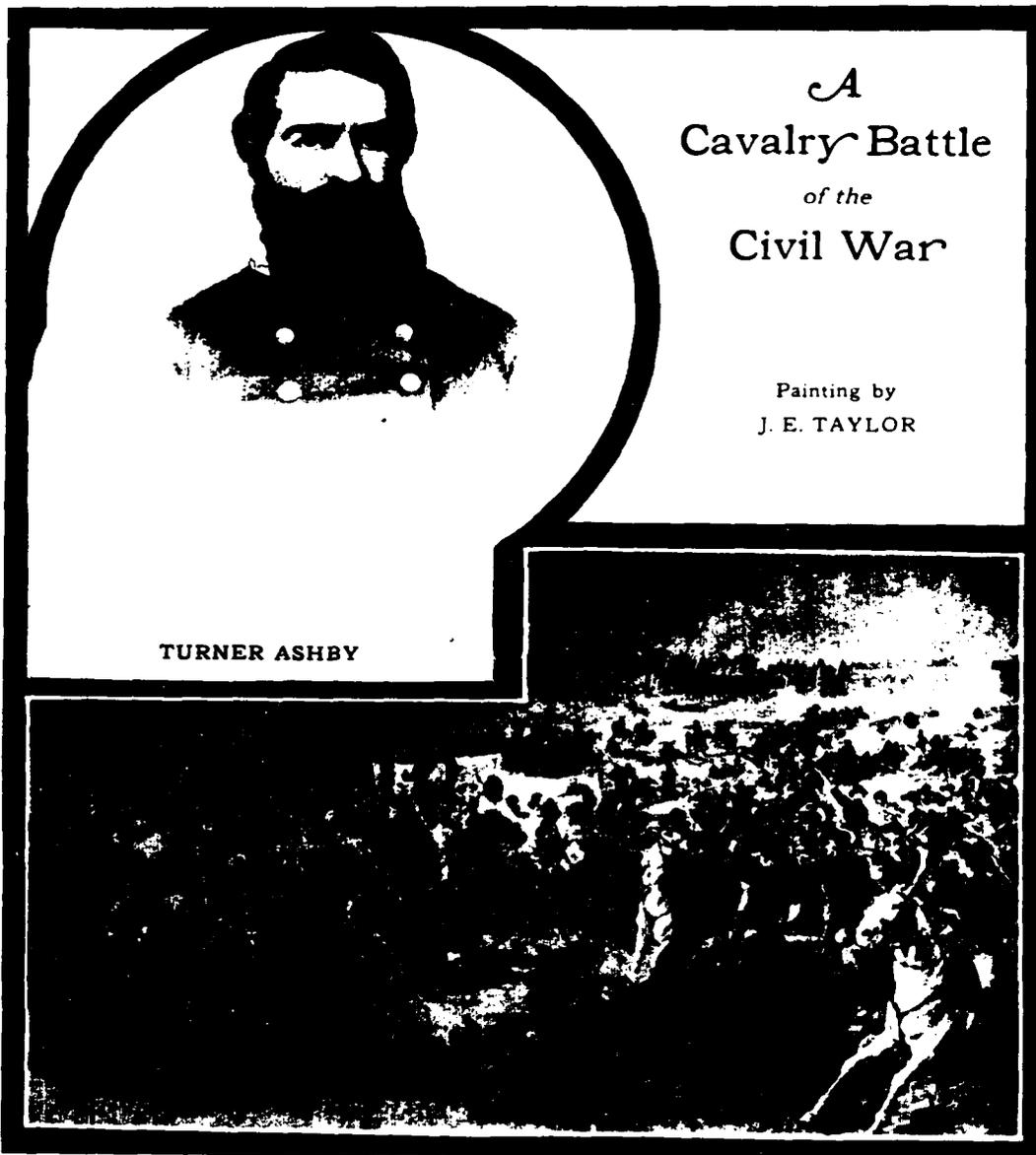
WHILE trench warfare has so completely upset the pot in which, in peace time, theories regarding other arms had been quietly brewing for some years, the most mobile branch of the service has been in reality the least influenced. Within a little over a twelve-month our revered cavalry leader, the Commander-in-Chief of the A. E. F., has himself given the opinion within these pages that a greater degree of success would have been attained by the Allied cavalry had it been trained according to American methods. These have been the outcome of our own experience and, because of our geographical good fortune, but slightly influenced by that of other nations. They are the product of our very independence. Let us open again the book of the Civil War, and there, in the foremost chapter, lies the exemplification in the imprint of the blows struck by Ashby, Stonewall Jackson's right arm, in the Valley of Virginia.

It was the inexorable fate of war that the bosom of Virginia should be often bared to the struggle. The Shenandoah Valley, or, as it is affectionately called there, the Valley of Virginia, so often described in history, poem, and romance as the theater of Stonewall Jackson's world-famous campaign, is bounded by the lofty peaks of the Blue Ridge, which skirt the southeast horizon for many hundreds of miles, and on the opposite side by a parallel range contiguous to the Alleghenies, known as the Great North Mountain. The width of the valley, measured between these two ranges, is comparatively narrow, being only from fifteen to thirty miles. The country is diversified by dales and hills which at times become in reality mountains, but slightly inferior in height to those which sweep majestically the longitudinal boundary lines. Such is the Massanuttin, as the Indians called the peaked mountain which begins about twenty miles south of Winchester, a town situated in the center of the valley, and extends southward for at least fifty miles.

The scenery comprised within this entire area is the most wonderfully picturesque one can possibly imagine. The hills and distant mountains invariably wear an air of romance and mystery. The soil is so fertile that the valley has been called the granary of Virginia, and, until Sheridan swept it clean, fed her armies. From the northern gateway, Harpers Ferry, a good turnpike road extended, during the Civil War, through Winchester to Staunton, with smaller towns lying in between. This road crossed a number of bridges over impetuous, treacherous mountain streams. The eastern and western exits were by mountain passes, or gaps, as the valley folk knew them, several of which on the eastern side afforded communication with both Richmond and Washington.



THE VALLEY OF THE SHENANDOAH



A
Cavalry Battle
of the
Civil War

Painting by
J. E. TAYLOR

TURNER ASHBY

TURNER ASHBY, BEAU SABREUR

In the southern apex, on the slopes of the Blue Ridge, was the childhood home of this captain of light horse, who was destined to make his name a household word wherever the Shenandoah brawled along and the responsive mountains echoed his fame, for it is within the confines of this fair valley that lies the animated story of all his military exploits.

It was while patrolling the Potomac with his company of mountain rangers that Ashby first heard of the Battle of Manassas. Upon receiving the news of this victory, which thrilled the South, he regretted his absence keenly, and that his thorough knowledge of the terrain, acquired in numerous ante-bellum fox-hunts, could not have been put into service. But events were thickening, and his earnest wish, borne in upon the flood-tide of war, was destined to be laid at his very feet. A short time subsequently, by token of a brush which Ashby's men had with some Kansas troops at that oft-disputed border citadel, Harpers Ferry, the Confederate Secretary of War, Mr. Benjamin, suspected a Federal invasion in force, a surmise which resulted in Stonewall Jackson being detached from Johnston's army at Manassas to command in the Valley of the Shenandoah.

Jackson set up his headquarters at Winchester, in the heart of the valley, where to his inexpressible satisfaction he was soon joined by his Stonewall brigade. At the historic town of Winchester, where Morgan in the Revolution had raised his company of riflemen, was organized, too, the Seventh Virginia Mounted Regiment, better known as Ashby's Cavalry. Turner Ashby had meanwhile relinquished the command of his mountain rangers to his younger brother, Richard, who soon met a tragic death while on picket duty along the familiar coverts bordering the Potomac. The elder Ashby happened to be on one of his usual scouts at the time with a small party of eight or ten men, and was told by a mountain girl that heavy firing had been heard near the river, in the direction whither his brother's troop had gone. Hastening to act upon this information, he discovered the enemy at Kelley's Island and, disdainful of his strong position and superior numbers, charged across the intervening stretch of water, which reached their horses' hocks, and, having routed him, recovered Richard's black steed and spurs, which told too plainly the sad story of his death. "A sacrifice made upon the altar of his country" was the sentence in a letter to his sister which described the event. "Poor Dick went into the war like myself," he added, "not to regard himself or our friends, but to serve our country in this time of peril."

The mountain hemlock and the sumac doffed their brilliant colors and the somber gray and white of a winter landscape overspread the valley—the winter of '61-'62. It was necessary for Jackson's army of raw recruits to undergo intensive training. Beyond the Potomac, McClellan was doing the same thing, while the people were clamoring for an immediate march upon Richmond. General Banks was comfortably encamped at Frederick City, Maryland. Between Jackson and Banks was Ashby's line of outposts, extending from Harpers

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Ferry to the passes of the Alleghenies, and little indeed transpired along this 140 miles of front which escaped his ken. His faithful black servant, George, who was almost able to divine his master's thoughts, was within call both night and day, to saddle at a moment's notice whichever one of his three blooded horses suited his whim. Matching the bottom of his mount against his own prodigious endurance, he would then take a swinging trot for hours together, averaging, before the end of his journey was reached, fully 80 to 90 miles of road. A few of his best scouts were always chosen to accompany him. Sometimes they captured Union prisoners; always they gathered stray bits of excellent military information which might otherwise have been entirely missed.

At supper, under the radiating beams of black George's smile, the staff officers were, perhaps, apprised for the first time of the whereabouts of their beloved chieftain by a chance remark containing news from Jackson's headquarters at Winchester or an incident narrated, in a graphic, modest way, which happened under his observation at some far-distant picket. During that memorable winter Ashby's cavalry cut the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad and destroyed a dam of the Chesapeake and Ohio Canal which could not be rebuilt before spring, and this materially crippled McClellan, who was preparing as best he could for his delayed march to Richmond, by severing one of his main arteries of supply.

Delaying only long enough to have their horses rough shod, or "roughed," so they might better be able to keep their feet on the glassy ground, they attacked the outlying Union garrison at Romney with such unlooked-for suddenness that all the tents were left standing, deserted by their former occupants, who made precipitate flight. Save those of the foe, no other tents were seen. Following the example of Ashby himself, who slept under an elkskin, a keepsake from his dead brother, his hardy men disposed themselves upon the ground around their smouldering camp fires, beneath the boughs of the mountain hemlock, which they had cut for fuel. All remained quiet along the Potomac until February, when a messenger on a swift horse bore the news from Ashby's alert pickets to Winchester that Banks' army was crossing at Harpers Ferry on a pontoon bridge.

Like a winged insect which, when the propitious season is nigh, emerges from its dormant chrysalis, so Ashby's outposts of the past few months took on new life, as they made rendezvous upon the main valley turnpike to resist the invasion of Mr. Banks, as the Southerners of the valley called the general at the head of the invading host, by reason of his having been Speaker of the House of Representatives. Although Banks reported to McClellan that the enemy were greatly demoralized, it took him nine days to push Ashby back to Winchester. The regiment of cavalry to which history has linked his name consisted of twelve companies, and never during any period of its existence was it thoroughly organized, for there was never time. In support of it was marshaled a little battery of horse artillery, the very first mustered into the

TURNER ASHBY, BEAU SABREUR

Confederate service. The battery comprised three guns of widely different manufacture, and the personnel originally numbered 33 men, commanded by Captain Preston Chew, a graduate of Jackson's cadet battalion of Lexington.

Making successive stands from one hilltop to the next, as the enemy slowly advanced, Ashby at last reached Winchester, which Jackson, following the advice of the last council of war he ever called, had evacuated. As the Union troops actually entered the town, they observed Ashby, the very impersonation of a rear-guard commander, sitting quietly upon his horse in one of the main streets. Upon their advent he gave a characteristic shout and galloped after his disappearing troopers.

After passing beyond Winchester, Shields, commanding Banks' advance, found himself effectually barred, and from mere surmise hastened to report that Jackson, leaving only a small residue of his forces under Ashby in observation, had departed from the valley. So bold were Ashby's scouts that they were accustomed to make nightly visits into the town of Winchester, where they were liberally supplied with information of the doings of the Union Army, and they thought no more of riding around the enemy's camp than around their fathers' farms. So completely did Ashby fulfill his mission of covering Jackson that Shields was in utter darkness of the fact that the Army of the Valley was actually in position and awaiting developments, within a forced day's march.

Banks, having now, as he thought, accomplished his purpose, prepared to withdraw from the valley, intending to join McClellan in his Peninsula Campaign upon Richmond, which, in response to an order issued by President Lincoln, was to be begun before Washington's Birthday.

Over a month had elapsed since he crossed the Potomac. In leisurely fashion, and being opposed each mile of the way by the tireless Ashby, his advanced troops under Shields had at length reached the small village of Kernstown, a couple of miles south of Winchester. On March 22 Shields' outposts were suddenly struck in whirlwind fashion by Ashby with 280 men and his diminutive, though pugnacious, battery of horse artillery. This attack only partially developed the strength of Shields' command, but disclosed the information, confirmed by the townspeople, that these troops were under orders to march back to Harpers Ferry early the next morning. This was exactly what Stonewall Jackson had been sent into the valley to prevent.

For the military ledger, time is a factor of no beggarly account, and the Confederate leader in the present crisis must have fully realized its value. The situation required decisive action, in which he was never lacking. With Ashby in his front, he promptly advanced and attacked Shields at Kernstown. On the Union right lay a wooded ridge, a bare March woodland intervening. Concealed behind it lay the town of Winchester, and farther beyond the forbidding battlements of the Great North Mountain. In moving his force against the wooded ridge, the possession of which would turn the enemy's right flank,

Jackson thereby exposed his own line of retreat southward along the valley pike. The task of protecting this road against the enemy's frequent counter-attacks fell to the lot of Ashby's cavalry. That bold cavalier was to be seen, when the action was at its height, dashing hither and thither on his graceful and conspicuous white charger, lightly overleaping ravines and "worm" fences, the seeming wearer of a magic coat of armor which protected him from the leaden hail. By audacious charges, his men not only held the foe in check, but actually gained ground, obtaining at each successive advance new and more desirable positions for the three precious pieces of artillery, which were like so many wasps buzzing around the ears of the antagonist host.

On the left of Jackson's line it was soon discovered that the number arrayed against them was overwhelming, and the Stonewall brigade was forced to retreat, the others soon following their example.

One mile in rear of the battlefield when the curtain of night had closed upon the scene of conflict, Ashby's troopers went into bivouac at a farm known as Barton's Mills, and held the enemy until 10 o'clock the next morning, thus giving the weary troops in rear ample time to reform. Shields wrote in his official report that he was opposed at Kernstown by 11,000 men, which was slightly greater than his own number, whereas Jackson had brought up scarcely 2,700, with whom he had fought an all-day battle and then withdrawn in military order. The Confederates, on the other hand, had underestimated completely the strength of Shields. The information imparted by the people of Winchester to Ashby's scouts, that only a few regiments remained in the vicinity, proved unreliable. Shields had skillfully, and entirely unknown to them, concealed a whole division in a ravine close by, which even Ashby's attack upon his pickets had not developed. But though a tactical defeat had been suffered by the Confederates a strategical victory was gained, the far-reaching effect of which that night it is doubtful if the genius of Stonewall Jackson even dreamed, for Banks instead of McClellan received reinforcements, and the alarm quickly changed from Richmond to Washington.

The value of the saber has ever lain in the hand that wields it. By his advance-guard action before Kernstown, Ashby gained time for Jackson to deliver Banks a staggering blow, and by his rear guard immediately afterwards he performed even a greater service in saving Jackson's army from being cut to pieces. His keen eye for position gave assurance that no opportunity was ever neglected for checking the enemy. This fact was usually heralded by the three little guns, which, like the war dogs that they were, set up a continual barking until their throats were dry and parched and they were taken to some more distant ridge and again lashed into action. Frequently during a lull in hostilities, a condition altogether distasteful to his fiery nature, he would order his gunners to "wake up the Yankees." A Federal officer said after the war that they were accustomed to look for Ashby's shells as regularly as for their breakfasts. There was one gun, the Blakeley, which was called by the people

of the valley "Ashby's gun." It had a peculiar shrill, piercing voice and was indeed his favorite. He always called upon it when there was hot work at hand. Once, when a Union general made his headquarters at a plantation in the path of the invading army, the distinctive cry of this little field-piece was suddenly heard toward evening, down the valley, by a little girl, who came running into the house, exclaiming excitedly: "Listen! Don't you hear Ashby's gun? Now the Yankees will go away and papa will come home again."

Once the fire of the little gun in the rear failed to check the Federal onslaught and, being unsupported, it was in imminent danger of capture. Ashby alone saw its peril. His quick perception, celerity of movement, and the inherent boldness of the man were never more evident than at that moment. Halting his horse on the crest of a neighboring hill, he calmly awaited the advance of his foes. The advancing Federals were bewildered by his action and dared not approach too near his position lest they be led into a snare. Ashby seized this moment of uncertainty to order the gun to be limbered, and he soon had the satisfaction of observing it dash in safety across the stream and join its two companions.

Banks, upon being reinforced, was ordered to "push Jackson hard"; yet it is an historical fact that Ashby's regiment of cavalry, "solitary and alone," checked his army of fifteen thousand at Tom's Brook, just south of the town of Strasburg, and there created the impression, bruited throughout their lines, that the six thousand under Jackson was multiplied by three. "Our stay," says the Union general, Gordon, "was a continuous season of artillery brawling and picket stalking."

General Joseph E. Johnston, while on a visit to Jackson's army, once said: "The knowledge that Ashby is between us and the enemy made me sleep very soundly last night."

When the days were sunny, beyond the groves of cedar and pine that lined the sparkling waters of the Shenandoah as it wound between those two austere lines of mountains, could be seen the rebel cavalry, and again, when the air was thick with hail and the mountains covered with snow, the forms of these half-frozen horsemen were forever discernible peering through the mist to see what the Yankees had been doing.

These tactics, varied by frequent brushes with the enemy, which made the name of Ashby a terror to their camp fires, were continued until Jackson was reinforced by Ewell's division to 17,000 men. Meantime Jackson found himself confronted by an adversary in another quarter. Fremont was in West Virginia, with a plan bearing no coördination with that of Banks, to push through Virginia by way of Staunton to relieve the loyal inhabitants of eastern Tennessee. This plan was soon modified to the extent of considering primarily the disposal of Jackson. Meanwhile the special idea which stood paramount

in the minds of Southern leaders was that the more troops Jackson could keep successfully employed in the valley, the less chance for the advance on Richmond.

Banks, after remaining nearly a month at Strasburg, at length crossed Tom's Brook, a wooded stream of inconsiderable width or depth, and advanced to Woodstock, the next town on the main turnpike down the valley. He did not advance farther, being fearful lest Ashby might get in behind the covering screen afforded by the lofty peaks of Massanuttin Mountain and play havoc with his line of communications or perhaps attack him in rear. But Ashby had other work on hand. General Fremont had by this time started south, from beyond the Alleghenies, and Jackson immediately set about to carry out two of his favorite maxims: To mystify his fresh and newest adversary and at the same time to deliver upon him a telling blow. While Ashby masked his movement by driving back Fremont's cavalry, Jackson made a forced march *eastward* through one of the mountain gaps, as though it were his intention to abandon the valley. He might be going either to attack Washington or defend Richmond.

When he reached a small station on the Alexandria Railroad he suddenly entrained, came back to Staunton, and thence by a quick detour he attacked Fremont's advanced troops, under Milroy, at McDowell, thus cutting off the last vestige of communication between Fremont and Banks. There remained only the possibility offered by a few difficult and unfrequented hunters' trails over the Alleghenies. Each of these was scanned from behind some commanding rock or clump of trees by the lynx-like eyes of a Virginian horseman. Sometimes, where the trail seemed more favorable, rocks were rolled down or trees felled across it to make amends for the oversight of Nature.

Ashby now made a demonstration toward Strasburg, where Banks lay idly awaiting the turn of events. He also blocked the road and cut the telegraph lines on either side of Front Royal, where Colonel Kenley, with an outlying detachment of only one thousand men, was hazardously engaged in guarding the Manassas Gap Railroad. From Milroy, Jackson turned his attention to Kenley, who fell beneath a saber cut, and his scanty force was ridden down on the road to Winchester, which was the only one left open.

It had become the custom of Ashby to withdraw his men from picket duty, as he found that only a few pairs of eyes were needed to turn the trick, and to meet at some appointed rendezvous, under the shelter of the friendly mountains, whence, his horses having had a refreshing rest and perchance extra provender, he would make a forced march to join Jackson by one of those unused, precipitous trails which were known only to his own scouts, which they alone would dare to scale. After the battle of Front Royal, Ashby's cavalry moved down the railroad to a place called Buckton, where it attacked and defeated two companies of Pennsylvania infantry and intercepted an urgent telegraphic message to Banks for reinforcements.

Considering these attacks nothing more than raids and imagining that Jackson still confronted Fremont, Banks remained sanguinely inactive. It now became Ashby's duty to advance in the direction of Strasburg and fathom his intentions. According to the official report of the Massachusetts General, previously made, he had determined to make a stand in the vicinity of Winchester, "to test the enemy's substance," and having already put his army in motion toward that place, it had reached Newtown. While the Union train, loaded with many an envied luxury, was pursuing its ponderous route down the valley, there descended upon it, with the swiftness of an eagle upon its unsuspecting quarry, the Southern cavalry from the surrounding heights. The confusion was intensified by the shells of the artillery, which, dropping from time to time in the midst of the Federals, blocked the road with debris. The redoubtable Ashby himself, smoking pistol in hand and the fierce light of conflict in his dark eyes, dashed in among the wagons of the terrified teamsters, where unaided he captured a number of prisoners and sent them to the rear, while his men, singly and in groups, could be seen making their way across the fields with strings of captured horses. These extra animals soon stood them in good stead, for their pursuit of the demoralized enemy was checked only when darkness came as a welcome boon to their well-nigh exhausted mounts. The next day, with Jackson at his heels, Banks withdrew across the Potomac at Williamsport.

It was only a brief five months from the snowstorm ushering in the new year of 1862, when Jackson first sallied forth to attack Banks' outlying detachments, until for Ashby the brilliant Valley Campaign abruptly ended. But though life may be measured by time, a military career must be gauged by events. A fair estimate of the activity of this leader of light horse may be formed from a statement casually made in a letter to a friend, in which it appears that during the twenty-eight days which immediately succeeded the battle of Kernstown he fought the enemy in thirty-two distinct engagements. Throughout the entire period his regiment was on active service, and so completely was the time occupied in scouts, forays, and skirmishes that, as we learn by the simple statement in a trooper's letter, it could find time for but five days' drill. As the days were replete with excitement and adventure, so the name of Ashby proved a talisman, and there was naturally no dearth of recruits among the horse-loving Virginians of the valley. They came flocking into Ashby's camp, riding their own mounts, any one of which, picked at random, would show superior breeding to the sorrel which carried the fortunes of him whom they affectionately and unanimously called "Old Jack."

Strictly speaking, as has been already mentioned, there was never any real regimental organization. After the battle of Kernstown the number of troops was multiplied from twelve to twenty-six and, as emblematical of the mountains from which they sprung, the name of Laurel Brigade was bestowed upon

them. It was altogether fitting that when Colonel Ashby, on a May evening, rode up with his small staff to a hotel in the town of Winchester which served as Jackson's headquarters and received his commission as brigadier general, all of the cavalry in Jackson's army was, by a special order of the Valley District, placed under his command.

As it was quite common for Jackson to grant his men short furloughs to go to their near-by homes and attend to their crops, there were occasionally times when, though their services were urgently needed, their numbers were few. In the cavalry, such was the spell wrought by the magic name of Ashby, there were always more men to answer to the muster rolls than in any other part of Jackson's forces, not even excepting the Stonewall Brigade itself. The men were variously armed. Each carried at his saddle-bow his favorite rifle or shotgun, which had for years—perhaps more than a generation—been a faithful family friend. Clustered in his belt were saber, bowie-knife, and pistol, for Ashby placed impartial reliance upon both ball and blade.

Now holding a wood by dismounted fire-action alone, now challenging the enemy to hand-to-hand mounted combat by charging into their midst, his unexpressed motto was *L'audace, l'audace, toujours l'audace* and his slogan, "Charge them, boys! Charge them!" His presence was magnetic and his commands were generally answered by loud, excited cries of "Ashby, Ashby!" As the name swelled in chorus to the accompanying crescendo of the horses' hoofs, it became as ominously familiar to the advanced troops in Banks' army as the sight of the chieftain to whom it belonged. His white horse, invariably seen on some hillside, where his skillful eye had chosen a particularly advantageous position for his rear guard, was always the last to leave, while shells screamed over him and the sharpshooter's bullet sought him in vain.

He had the wonderful gift of a clear, cool head amid the shifting scenes of battle. His black eyes, which, reflecting the light of the camp fire, were mild as those of a woman, peered restless and eager from beneath his broad-brimmed hat to catch each turn of the tide of battle, and while he moved rapidly hither and yon, his unusually long, raven beard swept the snowy mane of his steed "like streamers in the battle shock."

When Banks crossed so precipitately into Maryland after "testing the substance of the enemy," Jackson lingered long enough on the banks of the Potomac to nurture the rising dread in the mind of Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, who was then managing the Union campaign, that he was preparing to attack Washington. But the plan had already been discussed in Richmond and rejected because of paucity of numbers—a condition which frequently overshadows the destiny of war. Jackson could never muster more than fifteen thousand, whereas Banks alone, soon after he had passed over the dividing river into northern territory, was promptly reinforced to that number, who, with bulging knapsacks and cartridge belts, were again ready to reënter the valley. Shields was close by with ten thousand rifles and ten thousand were

stacked in reserve camps in the rear, while Fremont was beyond the Alleghenies with an army equal to that of Banks.

In Jackson's last retreat down the valley Ashby continued his usual rear-guard tactics with unabated boldness and energy. Jackson was like a tiger at bay and Ashby his eyes, ears, and claws combined. He blocked the mountain passes with a strong cordon of pickets. He cut off the enemy's communications and kept a continual watch on his movements. By audacious charges he checked his advance. Knowing every mountain trail, his men could travel miraculous distances in comparison with his opponents and appear in the most unexpected places.



From an old drawing

Ashby's acquaintance with Jackson dated back to the time when they met at Harpers Ferry to repel the invasion of their native State by the fanatic, John Brown. Jackson was then a silent, staid, rather eccentric professor, directing the evolutions of the gray line of cadets from the Lexington Military Academy.

Ashby was at the head of his mounted company of mountain rangers. Their mutual confidence seems to have dated from that moment. The thread is easily discernible in the woof of "Old Jack's" official messages. On March 19, 1862, he wrote to Ashby: "I send a list of bridges herewith, between Strasburg and Mount Jackson. Not only destroy every one, but use every means of delaying an advance. . . . Please let me hear from you where the enemy is. . . . You had better take plenty of time before the enemy comes for burning bridges." The latter piece of most excellent advice with regard to burning bridges may have been prompted by an experience which Ashby had while engaged in this important undertaking.

Shortly after the battle of Kernstown, Ashby himself remained behind to superintend the destruction of a bridge over Cedar Creek. Chew's effective little battery of horse artillery was, as usual, on a hill well in the rear, commanding both the bridge and the turnpike for some distance on the other side. As the guns came into action, Ashby's familiar figure and conspicuous long, black beard were in plain sight of both friend and foe. He stood defiant, smoking pistol in hand, his milk-white charger quivering in every limb, and appeared the very spirit of knight errantry, the reincarnation of James Fitz-James or Roderick Dhu.

Some Confederate officers from the neighboring hill at once recognized him. The artillery was made ready; the guard was in the act of firing the bridge, and Ashby remained as calmly to watch the fire kindle as though he might after the chase have been viewing the prostrate form of Reynard. Suddenly four Union troopers, singling him out, dashed across the bridge and charged him in a body. When he refused their summons to surrender, they fired simultaneously, and one pistol ball pierced the lungs of his horse. His faithful and favorite animal, which had carried him through many a hair-breadth escape, had just strength enough to take him to the top of the hill, from which the artillery was now barking angrily, where he fell, never to rise again.

A letter of Jackson's gives an insight into what kind of military information was most acceptable to the commander-in-chief of that doughty little Army of the Valley. "The information I desire from behind the lines is the position of the enemy's forces, his numbers and movements, what generals are in command and their headquarters, especially the headquarters of the commanding general." The same date (April 7, 1862) Ashby was given some instructions from the same source about his pickets. "I wish you would constantly keep a cavalry picket in Fort Valley; also in the valley of the South Fork. They need not be large; all that is necessary is to keep me advised of any movement of the enemy in that direction." Jackson was so interested in seeing where Ashby placed his pickets that he sometimes mounted his faithful "Old Sorrel" for the express purpose of accompanying a troop upon this arduous and vital duty.

The wish conveyed from Jackson to Ashby by the staff officer who brought

him his deserved promotion, the wish that it might result in less hazard to his life, as might have been expected, took no root. This cavalier met his end in one of the brilliant rear-guard actions, like a score of others where death had passed him close. The lofty peaks of the Alleghenies, Jackson's silent allies, towered forbiddingly between Shields and Fremont. It had fallen to Ashby's active share to perform the twofold duty of protecting the Valley Army from any sudden incursions which might be made by Shields, as well as from the Federal cavalry under Fremont. After passing Harrisonburg in the pursuit southward, Fremont, whose cavalry had proved itself of better quality than that with Banks, against which the Confederate troopers had been so recently arrayed, began to press Jackson's rear with greater energy. A body of New Jersey dragoons soon came forward with the avowed purpose of bagging the "wily rebel," the account of whose doings had for the past year been the unflinching topic of Northern newspapers. A quick counter-charge of the kind for which Ashby had already become famous forced them to retreat without their coveted prisoner, but leaving many from their own ranks in his hands. Instead of taking the road toward Harrisonburg, where lay their supporting troops, they became confused and turned in the wrong direction south, on the valley turnpike, toward Staunton.

Ashby's quick eye, which never missed the advantages of a situation, saw like a flash that if Fremont's infantry could be checked at Harrisonburg a glorious opportunity was afforded of capturing this force of Union cavalry before they could retrieve their blunder. As his own cavalry was insufficient, it was imperative to send a message to General Ewell, whose division was immediately in rear, for permission to use a couple of regiments of infantry to carry out his scheme. Ewell, after making a personal reconnaissance of the ground, assumed his grotesque, bird-like attitude of serious reflection and pronounced it a brilliant exploit. The long delay in putting the infantry in position facing Harrisonburg, however, was sufficient to allow the enemy to obtain possession of the hill from which it was purposed to make the Confederate advance. Nevertheless the regiments, when they at length arrived at the double quick, were marshaled for the attack. The succession of cheers which habitually greeted the well-known martial figure of Ashby, as he rode superbly along the line, again bespoke how completely he held the loyalty of his men. As they advanced, he seemed everywhere in their midst, always in the forefront, where his word of encouragement and cheer found ready response and his presence inspired courage and enthusiasm.

In the midst of the fight, his horse suddenly plunged downward upon his knees, rolled upon his side, and lay still. Almost simultaneously as the rider sprang to his feet his encircling saber was checked and his last admonition, "Forward, my brave men!" forever sealed upon his lips, for a ball from a sharpshooter's musket had at length sought him out and ended his career.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

To the people of Virginia that day it was as if Prince Rupert had fallen at Marston Moor. We are indebted to a pen that owed allegiance to the blue, in the Pennsylvania regiment known as The Bucktails, for an impartial and graphic delineation of this event. "Our men advanced cautiously to the spot where the cavalry under Wyndham had been repulsed," says the note-book of this Union soldier, "and there met a body of infantry, and quite a heavy engagement ensued. The enemy were led by an officer who made himself very conspicuous by the daring exposure of his person and the wonderful influence he exerted over his men. He afforded at the same time an excellent mark, and a number of muskets were evidently aimed and fired at him. He soon fell, mortally wounded. This man, the next day, we found to be General Ashby, the brilliant leader of the enemy's cavalry, a man worth to them regiments."

"A blast upon whose bugle-horn was worth a thousand men."

As though by virtue of some hidden prophecy, Ashby fell just as the beams of the setting sun heralded the close of the most glorious day of his entire pageant of victories. Some of the members of the same old mounted rifle company, the Mounted Rangers, he had raised in the neighborhood of his boyhood home, Wolf Crag, who had cheerfully followed him forward since the beginning of the war, now rendered their final service of bearing him sorrowfully to the rear. To the secluded spot, where he lay through the night enshrouded in a pall of silvery moonshine, there was a steady tramp, tramp, tramp, as of the march of an army to his bier. The Shenandoah, meanwhile, chanted his requiem. Among the mourners there were assuredly none whose sorrow was more sincere and poignant than that of Stonewall Jackson himself. After spending there alone an hour of silent communion, he returned to his tent and by the wavering, uncertain light of a tallow candle wrote his report to Richmond of the fateful skirmish near Harrisonburg.

Great soldiers do not usually deal in long paragraphs, for hard facts must alone comprise the terse, concise reports of military operation. In them is no space for extended eulogies or the expression of personal feelings. A mere rear-guard action it was, yet Stonewall Jackson that night abrogated one of his own maxims, as there sounded dimly upon his ears from down the valley, like an echo of the past, that continuous tramp of the Laurel and Stonewall brigades visiting Ashby's bier.

"In this affair," he wrote, "General Turner Ashby fell. An official report is not the place for more than a passing notice of the distinguished dead, but the close relation which General Ashby bore to my command for most of the previous twelve months will justify me in saying that as a partisan officer I never knew his superior. His daring was proverbial, his powers of endurance almost incredible, his tone of character heroic, and his sagacity almost intuitive in divining the purposes and movements of the enemy."

THE PROFESSION OF ARMS

At the beautiful cemetery of the University of Virginia, where Turner Ashby now lies in a vault built upon ground hallowed by the presence of many other illustrious sons of the Old Dominion, his deeds need no recital to guide the present youthful generation in the pathway of duty, for they are too well known. The silver plate upon his coffin bears this simple inscription:

GENERAL TURNER ASHBY

Born October 23, 1828

Killed in a heavy skirmish near Harrisonburg

June 6, 1862



The Profession of Arms

BY

Captain ELBRIDGE COLBY, Infantry

"Who, whether praise of him must walk the earth
Forever, and to noble deeds give birth,
Or he must go to dust without his fame,
And leave a dead, unprofitable name,
Finds comfort in himself and in his cause . . .
This is the Happy Warrior; this is he
Whom every man in arms should wish to be."—Wordsworth.

A YOUNG MAN entering upon a career in the Army must realize first, last, and all the time that he is embracing a serious profession and not merely taking a "job." There are many professions in this world—engineering, law, medicine, the ministry, teaching, and a host of others—and there are many "jobs," from that of the corner grocer to that of the department-store owner. The person who holds a "job" works for money; he handles it as a part of his trade; he sets his prices so as to secure it; he dispenses eatables and garments, to be sure, but—for money; he reckons his success in cash balances and the number of dollars and cents thereon, not in the number of hungry or ragged

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

people he has fed or clothed. The professional man has another point of view. He accomplishes the task which comes to his hands for the sake of the task. The engineer harnesses the forces of Nature and applies her laws to create a useful work. The lawyer, unless he is a "shyster," and therefore unprofessional, zealously upholds public order and public ordinances or honestly guards the just rights of his client, and wins his case for the joy of winning, not for the fees. The doctor solemnly takes the Hippocratic oath to serve mankind, and places his services always at the call of the sick, at any hour of the day or night. The teacher, charged with the responsible duties of education and the most poorly paid public servant we have, teaches well for the love of the work. The minister hears his "call" and preaches the Word of God, not from a desire for money, but from a wish to do his duty according to his inspiration. It is as impossible for an educated professional man to think chiefly of profit as it is for any one but a glutton to think chiefly of his dinner. We all must eat to live, and we even enjoy eating. We must all receive salaries because without them we would cease to live; and we even enjoy receiving our salaries. But professional men do not think solely of their salaries, any more than others think solely of their dinners. The love of the work overshadows the thought of the remuneration. This is the professional spirit. Each carries in his heart the words of the Lord Jesus: "But seek ye first the Kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you." Our principal interest in life is in our work.

Yet the professional work of an Army officer has still less influence on his income than that of the engineer, the lawyer, the doctor, the teacher, and the minister. If one of these does his work exceptionally well and makes a reputation, he is straightway given greater and greater responsibilities and his income increases commensurately, even though the monetary rewards may be simply some of those things that are added afterwards, even though the period of large returns may come late in life and be very short.

The Army officer, on the contrary, receives no reward, either in increased pay or in increased rank, for especially meritorious service. He must wait his turn for promotion under a strict rule of seniority. Of course, there have been a few exceptions. General Goethals and General Wood received special assignments from the President, proved their ability, and achieved world-wide fame. General Pershing was singled out and jumped from captain to brigadier. But these are rare cases. In general the rule is that, regardless of ability, the Army officer is promoted only in accordance with his position on the list. When war comes, testing all by the truth of the sword and the equity of the rifle, temporary advancement may come with it; but it is only temporary, and at the end all revert to their former grades. Politics is barred, and properly so. The only incentive for the man in khaki is his love of his profession; his only reward his satisfaction and delight in his elected field.

THE PROFESSION OF ARMS

Why, then, should any one adopt a career where the advancement is of such a pedestrian character, step by step up the Army list? To this question there is but one answer: Adopt this career only if you like it for itself alone:

"Hermits are contented with their cells
And students with their pensive citadels."

Let no man too querulously measure by a scale of profit what shall be his life work. We are all slaves in this world—slaves to employers, slaves to our families, slaves to custom, and slaves to convention. Some labor from restlessness or ambition, some for money, some for praise. The clerk in the cigar store and the financier of Wall Street lead lives prescribed by rules and regulations. They must go to the shop or the office. Each is whipped on, either by the need of money or by the obligations which an excess of wealth brings. The Army man is impelled by obligations which he has freely assumed. The clerk and the banker may find their pleasures in a Sunday at Coney or a holiday at Newport; the Army man chiefly in the work he does, more than in anything else. "It must be dreadfully monotonous," I have heard folks say, and I always reply, "No more monotonous than running a Subway express train from the Battery to Van Courtlandt a certain number of times a day; no more monotonous than correcting college examinations or pleading endless cases in court all your years."

In fact, Army life is far less monotonous than any of these. It has almost unlimited variety. The officer does not simply stand in front of a line of neatly clad men and shout commands which spin them here and there in pretty movements on parade. Amid the drums and trappings of war, even, he does not simply shout, "Follow me!" and rush bravely forward mid shot and shell, while his noble soldiers take their cues in that "dreadful and impassioned drama." The Army officer's chief work is in the teaching and training of men—a varied and always interesting problem, and an enthralling one, too, for his results are reckoned in human lives. To arrive at battle efficiency for his unit, he must concern himself with the details of hygiene and sanitation, with smoothness of administration, with questions of quarters and cooking, with finance and property accounts, with recreation and physical exercise, with education and behavior, with organization and esprit de corps, with loyalty and with punishments. He has more responsibility toward the men under his command than a father toward his children; more duties to perform than the mayor of a town. He controls his unit, whether a platoon or an army, in everything. He has to perform all the functions of government except those of legislation.

Then there are the fascinating personal elements—plenty of healthy outdoor life, a pleasant community spirit with comrades of the same temperament; the joy of developing and training men; the idealism of the service; the change

of station from Manila to Alaska, from the Golden Gate to Texas, from Minnesota summers to Georgia winters; the boundless reaches of the West; the tropical breezes of the South; the hills and valleys of the North; the interesting places and the charming people. The thoughts that come and the sights you see, even when inspecting the guard after midnight, occupy the mind and enrich the soul. Not the pomp and circumstance of war, not the sharp clash of bayonets or the roar of bursting shells, but the many-colored lights of life and the steady building of military character, his own and those of his men—these are the things in which the Army officer delights. He who can enjoy these simple, homely pleasures may well adopt the profession of arms.

There are many delightful elements in an officer's life—duties and the things which come in addition to duty—and these are elements, moreover, which are inherent in his work, not simply those which come when he is off duty or on leave. If he were not in uniform and not a part of the military establishment, he would never know them. They are, perhaps, too vague and indefinite for accurate description; yet they combine to create an almost unreasoning prejudice in favor of the Army. I recall an incident in a novel by Rene Bazin, where an old soldier of fourteen years' experience is speaking to a nephew who is about to leave to serve his time and is unwilling to go, from a hostility to military ideas and a dim fear of the service. The nephew says:

"They made you march from one end of France to the other, for seven years, and then abroad, to the Crimea, just as they wanted you to. And you didn't have enough of it; you took on for seven more years."

"Exactly, and I have no regrets. It was even splendid, I tell you, our campaigns, Inkermana, the siege, the English with us, Palestro, Magenta."

"I know; but what did you get out of it?"

"Get? Get?"

"A sou a day; isn't that right?"

"I was fed, for one thing; I had my tobacco; I had"—[then the old man saw his nephew smiling superciliously.] "I'll not argue with you. I served among comrades, not for pay, but for honor, for pleasure."

"Think a minute, uncle. They took from you the best part of your life; kept you from being your own master, from having a trade.

Ah! we of today are of another type. The men of today will not be like you. I tell you, there will soon be no more of it."

"No more of what?"

"No more army."

But this was too much. The old man stood erect. With a gesture of his old profession, suddenly come back, he pushed against the door as if he feared some one would enter; as if he had heard the approach of the officer of the day, who might punish such blasphemies. Then his eyes, the eyes of a soldier, fixed on the nephew who denied the army. He did not speak; his eyes spoke for him.

Across the table, between him and the young rascal, his fourteen years of barracks and campaign rushed in a succession of confused images—figures of his comrades in ranks with the gun at the shoulder; of the officers whom he had adored; of pealing music; of floating flags; of bayonet charges; of rejoicings after victory; of garrison towns—all the glory and all the careless joy of his profession. All this passed and repassed, stirring his soul. It was the old army which was reincarnated in the old soldier; the men of other days who fumed with indignation; all of the past of humble bravery which resented the insult. Madiot raised his only firm fist and with it struck the table.

"Silence!" he cried. "Silence!"

However, I would not wish, like Bazin's character, the uncle, Madiot, simply to beat the table with my fist and to cry for silence. I grant that there are disagreeable things about the career. You will serve at times in unpleasant stations, where the heat of summer is oppressive or where the cold of winter is almost unendurable. You go where you are sent and do what you are told, whatever your inclinations. You separate yourself from former friends and family, to see them but rarely. You live often at an inconvenient distance from towns that are far from interesting when you do get to them. There is mud, and rain, and hard marches, and hot, dusty roads to travel. Some may be inclined to throw a halo over camp scenes and to describe a soldier's life as it would be seen through colored glasses; but it is best to be frank. If there are compensations and unforgettable delights, there are also disadvantages, as any one who ever went on a camping trip knows—when his kit has been drenched with rain or his canoe upset in the river. Yet what camper does not like to tell of his "experiences," and who would want to have missed the fun?

In addition to all this, there is something more—nay, something more important, too—to be said of the career of an officer. The Army is now a learned profession. To plan and provide for the organization and training and mobilization of all our national man-power in such a manner that our armies—Regular, Guard, and Reserve—may take the field efficiently requires on the part of officers the serious study of the science and art of war. An "intense longing for active service" is not enough. A man must have made a deep study of his subject, of the immutable principles of war and of their many means of application with modern weapons, which are neither simple nor few. He must have stored up an inexhaustible amount of information.

The officer trains his men—yes, but he then does something else, he trains himself. Soldiers are trained for battle, not for theatrical drill-ground effects; and the officer must equip himself to lead them well under circumstances where every mistake means wasted lives, where ignorance is a crime. Many an officer has devoured every book on the theory and practice of war that he could

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

beg, borrow, or afford to buy. Many a future general has worked with his maps and copied plans with as deep an interest as a woman reads light romance. Many a successful leader of armies has spent those deadly midday hours of the tropics, while the rest of the population was taking a siesta, in reading military history and the lives of great commanders.

No more pertinent model can be found than that famous British Field-Marshal who in his memoirs speaks from time to time of this or that one of his former superiors in words like these: "A first-rate officer. . . . From him I learned a great deal professionally." It is not only a profession. It is a learned profession, fit for the best minds of well-educated, intellectual men.

When a transport was making toward the West Coast of Africa to initiate an expedition through a dense and dangerous jungle, the officers spent their hours at sea not in lolling on steamer chairs, playing deck games, or listlessly watching the rise and fall of the ship, but in carefully reading and studying every document and volume they had been able to scrape together concerning the history and geography of that region or that type of warfare.

The Army is always on the way toward the next war, and he who would succeed himself and play his part in a successful campaign must devote himself strenuously to the duties of his profession. It is not enough to have fought bravely and nobly led his men. He must have led them well. This can only be done by the man who has embarked on the career with the true professional spirit, striving always to improve his own mind and to develop his own abilities and aiming always to advance the interests of the Army as a whole.

Of what, then, does his study consist? Is it merely a technical knowledge that is required? The Army is a highly complex organization of specialized branches. There are commands and movements to be learned out of the drill-book. There are many weapons to be mastered, in their mechanical construction and in their operation. There are scientific facts to be assimilated—trajectories, vulnerability, velocity. There are practical matters to be mastered concerning transportation, and all the details of caring for a mass of men, from garbage collection to sewerage and water supplies and food supplies and housing and wireless telegraphy and airplane photography. These are all facts. There are facts about the rifle, about the hand-grenade, about the light mortar, about the one-pounder, about the machine-gun, about the three-inch field piece. There is an almost encyclopedic amount of material to be studied and remembered. But to say that these things can all be thrown in the balance and war simmered down to an exact science is to betray as great an ignorance as that of the man who thinks that combat is merely a rush of cavalry, a roar of artillery, and the grim ardor of an infantry charge. Indeed, it is more than that.

THE PROFESSION OF ARMS

Each weapon, each element of war, must be learned as a piece of machinery, of course; but each weapon has, in addition, certain tactical characteristics, such as mobility, visibility, and fire-power, which govern its uses. In order to employ it efficiently, sound thinking must exist—in the soldier who directs the piece as well as in the higher commander who orders it into position. Keeness of imagination, quickness of observation, rapidity of decision, and simplicity of action—these are the things, inculcated by experience and training, which make a good officer. These are human elements. Indeed, if war were purely an exact science, we could count bayonets and shells and not bother to fight. Yet so delicate are the distinctions that it is to be doubted if it is not superiority of spirit rather than superiority of fire, of men and metal, that finally determines the victor.

War is an art, not a science or a trade. There are general principles to be learned, and then to be applied in a wide variety of cases. There are no inflexible rules and laws of battle. A scientific oneness of method, as the Germans found out to their cost, is out of place in action. Every company of men is different, in spite of the uniforms and in spite of uniformity of training. Every piece of terrain is different, as is every landscape to the artist. Every situation is different, and requires a different estimate and a different handling.

But do not misunderstand my figures of speech. When I speak of "military art," I do not think of painting a countryside with lines of khaki or dotting it with gleaming bayonets and bursting shells. The proper application of men and metal on the field of battle is something which requires real talent, no less than the proper application of mauves and indigos on a canvas. The artist has his colors, his lines, and his curves, his means of concentrating attention and of representing perspective. In his early training he learns most of these mechanically; later he grows to use them thoughtfully, logically, instinctively, yet with a sure and certain hand. Just so the military man has his problem, his personnel, his weapons, his terrain, his means of concentration and supply. In his early training he learns these mechanically; later he becomes able to employ them with due regard to their characteristics, their capabilities and limitations—sagaciously, logically, instinctively, and decisively. This is the art of war, a high and peculiar art, using more and more of scientific appliances as the years go on, but not a science; essentially dependent upon its own fluctuating conditions of give and take, upon its own most important element, the art of commanding men.

Listen to the words of Carlyle:

"The commander over men; he to whose will other wills are to be subordinated, and loyally surrender themselves, and find their welfare in so doing, may be reckoned the most important of great men."

The manner and the means of training troops and of waging war are ever changing. New technique must be developed; new methods of instruction sought; new organizations devised; new policies found and framed. There is ever work to be done. Civilization is ever providing new tools. The man of the Stone Age fought with a hatchet; then appeared the spear; then the bow and arrow; later came the sword and shield; afterward the Cæsarean "engines of war." The "summer soldiers and sunshine patriots" under Washington handled weapons that seem as hopelessly primitive to us as our grenades and long-range artillery will to the embattled warrior of a hundred years hence. Times change, and the military mind must ever seek the best uses of the new arms and the new projectiles. The officer must be prepared to be learning all his life, to be thinking out new solutions with the new material, new schemes for developing the maximum efficiency of the Army.

Simply because the regulations now say a thing is thus and so is no reason it should always remain thus and so. If a new idea is worthy, it will be properly tested and approved. There is plenty of room for initiative and ingenuity, only here it is properly guided. The officer may conduct his own studies, may make his suggestions, through proper channels, to higher authority, and may receive intelligent criticism and adequate recognition. If his ideas receive favorable judgment, they are likely to be incorporated into the training regulations of the Army, and to supersede such portions of those regulations as they may contradict. Nor is this all a fine theory of possibilities. Experimental departments and boards are maintained for just this purpose. For instance, the teaching of rifle marksmanship, probably the most important duty of a soldier, has recently been entirely revised in this manner, as the result of the industry, the initiative, the application, and the insight of one officer. Rewards may not always be so prompt, but good work is always good work and eventually will accomplish its aims, the improvement of the service. There is the case of General Upton, which I will quote from the papers of a Secretary of War:

"After the close of the Civil War, he addressed himself to the task of interpreting the lessons of that war to his countrymen for the improvement of our military system. Of his own motion he devised a new system of tactics, which, being capable of adoption by a simple military order, was adopted, and revolutionized the tactics of the Army. On the recommendation of General Sherman, he was sent around the world with two associate officers to study the armies of Europe and Asia, and upon his return he made a report which gave the results of his accumulated observation and experience. He recommended the three-battalion formation in cavalry and infantry regiments. He recommended the establishment of a general staff, and he recommended the general and systematic extension of military education. His recommendations had behind them all the pres-

tige of his brilliant military career. They had the advocacy and support of the great soldier who then commanded the American armies, General Sherman. They embodied the practical lessons of the Civil War and the results of military science throughout the world. Yet his voice was as the voice of one crying in the wilderness. The Government did not even print his report, but with those of his associates it was filed in manuscript and forgotten among the millions of documents in the archives of the War Department. General Upton subsequently printed the report himself for the benefit of the public, through a private publisher. More than a quarter of a century later, and long after death had ended the restless striving of that farseeing intelligence, other men, working out the same problems with which he had dealt, found the sanity and wisdom of his conclusions and gave them effect. Were Upton living today—he would see all of the great reforms for which he contended substantially secured—the three-battalion system, the establishment of a general staff, and the completion of a system of military education."

Furthermore, it may be added now, that General Upton's other study, of the military policy of the country, after lying long in the files, was rescrutinized and discovered to contain many pertinent truths. When, finally, his ideas had been studied by such statesmen as Mr. Root and President Roosevelt and popularized by General Wood and the "Plattsburg Movement," the United States at last took heed, and it is no exaggeration to declare that Upton's arguments, adopted by military men and by legislators, really were responsible for our present system, for the creation, for the very life and breath, of the Army of today. He gave his life to his country as truly as any man who now sleeps beneath the shattered fields of France, not in the crash of battle, but in an earnest, unremitting, sincere devotion of heart and mind to aid his country's cause.

The officers of the Army work for the good of their profession. They do this without hope of tangible reward, and an officer's character and professional standing, as General Carter has said, are about all he has usually to represent his many years of service by flood and field. Even then acts of commission or of omission may blight or terminate his career. As an Army officer, I am naturally loath to say nice things about Army officers, but prefer, and, may I hope, be allowed, to describe them in the words of Mr. Root, who remarked:

"The officers of the Army conform in their character and conduct to the purpose for which the Army is maintained and the character of the people from which they come. I wish to say to you, not in the language of rhetoric, but as a sober statement of what I have found by observation, that they are free to a degree which I never dreamed of, until I commenced to know them, from the vices which have prevailed in most armies of the world during all history. They are a temperate set of men. They are freer of the vice of drinking

to excess than almost any other class that I know of in this country. They are free from the vice of gambling. No such thing as duelling, which disgraces and deforms many military services, obtains in our Army. The man who is dissipated is out of favor, and the public sentiment of the officers of the Army is opposed to dissipation and excess. The man who does not pay his debts falls into disfavor, and it is an offense which is punishable in the Army by court-martial."

For the inefficient or misplaced officer there are now provided special and easy means of elimination. There are efficiency reports, and periodical ratings, and probationary periods. Your worth is always plain and you go on to honor and distinction or else leave "for the good of the service."

The standards of the Army are high as regards character as well as regards training. Furthermore, you never bury your dead past. It may seem strange, but it is true. A seemingly slight affair may have stupendous results. Everything you do, good or bad, remains on your record and in the minds of your fellows. You never get away from yourself so long as you remain in the service. A man's reputation stays with him always, until he resigns or retires. It follows him up the Army List from grade to grade. It goes with him from regiment to regiment, from Coblenz to Luzon, from Devens to Del Rio.

The moving finger writes, and, having writ,
Moves on; nor all thy piety nor wit
Shall lure it back to cancel half a line,
Nor all thy tears wash out a word of it.

And it is justly so. He who leads must be fit to lead. Our Army is very proud of its good reputation and very careful of it. The Army insists on high ideals in personal conduct and on a thoroughly professional spirit. The Army knows what battle is, and strictly maintains that dissipation or idleness in peace and gross brutality in war are absolutely beyond the pale. Character counts. The Army knows this, and in all its earnest endeavors strives to make itself the best Army possible, so that when it meets the storm of battle in authentic form it can accomplish its duty thoroughly and well. The Army appreciates, as perhaps few others do, the truth of the words of Steinmetz: "When God holds his assizes and hurls the nations against one another in combat, there is no single element of physical, intellectual, or moral strength or weakness which does not weigh in the balance."

Some Polo Suggestions

BY

First Lieutenant M. L. STOCKTON, Cavalry, A. D. C.

A GREAT deal has been written on the subject of training of polo ponies; so much that it would appear the subject has been fairly well exhausted. A lot of this matter, however, has assumed the presence, in posts or regiments, of a number of so-called suitable types, and writers have devoted their energies to discussing the handling of these types. The problem that confronts posts or units at the present time and period of economical retrenchment is, first, how to select the ponies, and, second, how to train them; for suitable types are now and will continue to be hard to secure.

It is generally conceded that a polo pony should possess the following qualifications:

1. Hardiness; 2, speed; 3, good mouth; 4, endurance; 5, suitable temperament or disposition; 6, courage; 7, four to ten years' old.

In addition, he should be well proportioned, have good depth of chest, clean limbs and feet, and in general excellent conformation. The next thing is to locate within the regiment or post twenty-five horses that will meet these requirements. A conference of troop commanders on this subject, in an endeavor to secure these mounts, will result in about the following:

Captain A will report one such horse in his troop, basing his statement on the fact that this horse won the quarter-mile event in the "Horse Show." Captain B will deny the possession in his troop of any such animal, thinking the only one that meets these requirements belongs to the first sergeant and hence is not available. Captain C will report the presence of six or seven, being anxious to take up polo and feeling that the possession of so many is a credit to his troop's equitation and horse-training. Captain D will conscientiously report none, and so on down the roster. The result is, on the schedule day, there appears on the polo field some dozen or fifteen animals, tall and rangy, short and chubby.

The "trying out" then commences. This "trying out" usually consists in taking a stick in one hand and swinging it around the horse's head a few times, when if he doesn't shy he is put into a gallop, then extended, pulled up with heavy hands, and accepted or rejected as a prospect. All horses are tried out in this manner, and polo is under way. Occasional finds are added to the string, and eventually there develops a polo stables where some twenty or thirty animals are kept and two or three times a week are ridden in practice. This is,

I venture to say, the ordinary rather than the exceptional procedure in the organization of a polo team.

Before starting in to discuss the training of the pony in the things he should know, I want to say a word as to his selection.

During a recent polo tournament I discussed with representatives of various posts and regiments the class of their ponies. Invariably, some time during the conversation, these officers said: "We have no polo ponies in the regiment and can't get a car-load from the remount. We are up against it." During the past three years I have been polo representative for four different posts or units and at first felt as stated above. A few requisitions from the remount convinced me otherwise. The remount sent, upon requisition, ponies theoretically suitable for polo; that is, they sent what, from appearances, seemed likely of developing. They did all that could be expected, and yet less than a third of the number shipped were ever played. This is simply because, as has been said, "You can't tell from the looks of a frog how far he can jump"; neither can you tell from the looks of a horse how well he can play polo.

Whether the polo team is organized or not, and not considering whether it has had a successful season, I would suggest trying some such plan as the following:

On the appointed day have every horse in Troop A brought to the field. Have these horses ridden by some of the officers who are to play, and observed by the balance. Have the observers bear in mind that features that offend the eye are frequently good points in polo ponies. For illustration, a tendency to sickle hocks and goose rump, while generally meaning some loss in speed, invariably means hardness in turning. Have the carriage of his head watched with particular care, and in no less degree watch the action of his feet and legs, and base your judgment on these points almost entirely. I do not mean by this to accept as a prospect every horse that has good leg action and a good head carriage, but I do mean if either of these features are noticeably bad that the chances of the prospect developing into a good mount are somewhat limited, while if both are reasonably good, so is the prospect apt to be.

Each horse on this preliminary try-out should be ridden for at least fifteen minutes at the walk, trot, and slow gallop. The time necessary to give these horses a try-out will depend naturally on the number of officers available for the work, but it is reasonable to expect three days per troop (or proportionate number of horses) will accomplish this. A regiment, then, could be finished in a month.

Having completed this try-out, there should be now between one hundred and one hundred and fifty horses selected and recorded as prospects.

Before continuing the try-out and undertaking the training of these prospects, it would be well to look into what the horses will be called upon to do, namely:

1. To start quickly, jump into the bridle at once, and strike off from the halt into the gallop.
2. To travel at any rate of speed desired, from a slow to the fastest gallop.
3. To pull up to a halt in a very limited space and when traveling at maximum speed.
4. To change leads at the slightest hint.
5. To turn on the haunches immediately after being stopped.

Having the above in mind, we are ready to start the pony's training. What horses of the number that have been set aside will be chosen first? Ordinarily the ones that pleased the eye most in the initial try-out. Let me urge that this be not done, but that the first twenty on the list be taken in order.

Begin training at the canter or slow gallop in straight lines and for short distances, 25 to 35 yards, backing the horse when halted and endeavoring to get him to spring into an easy gallop from the halt. Give him ten minutes of this exercise after he has had the stiffness walked out of him, which can be done by the man in charge before the hour set for practice. Follow the first exercise with a short walk and then by galloping in serpentines. Don't indulge in wild throwing of the weight and vigorous use of the legs to get the horse to change leads on the serpentine, but just enough application to exact obedience, then lessen the use of the aids as the horse learns to obey. This exercise, like the first, should be of about ten minutes' duration. Another brief walk should follow, and then circles, wide at first and gradually diminishing as progress is made, should be tried, alternating first to the right, then to the left, and making sure the lead is habitually correct. Every horse going through the training should have at least an hour a day in these exercises. A week's practice with the first string of twenty (a number chosen arbitrarily, having in mind ten officers working two mounts per day) should be enough to satisfy the players whether the horse is to be tentatively selected or rejected. Six to eight weeks should be sufficient to go entirely through the list of prospects, which by now will be reduced one-half.

All the training conducted up to this time should be without either ball or mallet and positively without the ball. The mallet can be introduced now, introduced on the field, tied in the stall, suspended from the picket line, and in evidence wherever the pony is to be seen. This, while not essential, is important, in order to accustom the pony to seeing it and convincing him it is not a means of punishment, which occasionally through accident, but more often through awkwardness, it appears to be. The ball can be introduced at the same time. It should not be pounded from one end of the field to the other and chased at maximum speed, but nursed along with dribbling or half strokes in straight lines, serpentines, and circles. The mounts should now be worked in pairs, as has been done individually, in straight lines, in circles, and in serpentines. Riding off comes next, and should be given a good deal of attention, starting at the walk and then undertaken at the canter. Horses which grasp

this feature readily should not be worked against timid ones, but every horse pitted against, as nearly as possible, his counterpart. Now accustom the ponies to meeting others by riding in pairs with and passing oncoming ponies as close as possible. Here, I think, is the only justification for the trot on the polo field. This gait is one that a polo pony is never called upon to show, and if trained in this, when tired and at a critical point in a chukker he will fall back on it as a saving gait. In meeting oncoming ponies, there is generally a tendency to side-step. This can be seen in some horse in almost every polo game. Training the pony to avoid this requires great care and not infrequently some punishment. I would recommend, therefore, that the horses be trotted in this feature of training, and the gallop be not undertaken until absolutely no tendency to side-step exists at the trot.

Match play can now be safely undertaken.

The question will probably be asked: How do you know, up until the time the match play starts, that your ponies have the requisite speed? The only answer that I can make is that you have the speediest ponies available, or that you have all the speed in the regiment or post that can be utilized for polo.

It is presumed that the above-mentioned training will be conducted in late afternoons after the day's duty. Such being the case and presuming there is a detail to look after the ponies kept (and they should be) at designated polo stables, let me say just a word as to what these ponies should do during the forenoons:

(a) They should be loose in individual box stalls when in the stables.

(b) They should be loose when in the corral.

(c) They should be exercised daily, taken on long walks on days when there is no practice and shorter ones on practice days. Their walks should not be on level ground, but over hilly country. They need to stretch their muscles. Going up hills accomplishes this and develops the driving muscles of the haunches. Going down hills aids in getting the haunches under the horse.

This sort of training for polo ponies will decrease the volume of clamor for a new car-load of polo ponies from the remount and, if the officers hold black-board games and work industriously with the wooden horse while it is being undertaken, will improve both players and mounts.

In writing this paper I have had constantly in mind those officers who do not feel that polo develops quick thinking, aggressiveness, horsemanship, and is of real military value, etc. Some such system of training as outlined above should overcome the hostility there is toward the game. Officers who are antagonistic have doubtless some good reasons for their attitude, and these reasons are probably remembrances of crashes, runaway horses with bleeding mouths, etc. If conscientiously followed, any good system of training which presumes a thorough study of the mounts available and careful selection of polo material will eliminate the undesirable features of the game, convert antagonists to supporters, and raise the standard of army polo.

What the World War Did for Cavalry

BY

Major GEORGE S. PATTON, Jr., Third Cavalry

ALTHOUGH much progress has been made since our ideas of the tactics of dismounted action were epitomized in the command "To fight on foot," we are still very far from being proficient in the art of handling men in the presence of the enemy.

Colonel Sir Thomas Cunningham, while an instructor at the A. E. F. Staff College, said, in a lecture: "The characteristic of war is its constant change of characteristic." An incessant change of means to attain unalterable ends is always going on; we must take care not to let these sundry means loom with undue eminence in the perspective of our minds; for, since the beginning, there has been an unending cycle of them, and for each its advocates have claimed adoption as the sole solution of successful war. Yet the record of all history shows that the unchanging end has been, is, and probably ever will be this: predominant force of the right sort, at the right place, at the right time; or, as Forrest is credited with putting it, "Getting there fust with the mostest men."

Predominant force has been effected by the phalanx of Greece, the legions of Rome, the columns of Napoleon, by walls and ditches, wire and machine-guns, artillery and tanks, and countless other means, successful or not, according as they were applied at the right place at the critical moment.

We, as subordinates, have little choice in the selection of our force. So far as it is concerned, our chief responsibility rests in conserving its magnitude by avoiding dispersion and waste. But we are deeply interested with the place and time of its application. A mistake of yards or minutes in these respects may blight our career and butcher our men. Hence the vital necessity of mastering, in as complete a manner as possible, the mechanism of its application—orders, maps, and tactics.

While I do not hold with those who consider the World War as the sealed pattern of all future efforts to maintain peace, it is, nevertheless, our most recent source of information, and the tactical tendencies shown will most certainly color to a considerable degree our initial efforts in the next war.

As soon as the first battle of the Marne was won, the World War became a special case, due principally, in my opinion, to two reasons: Fixed flanks, which prevented maneuver, and the splendid rail and road net on both sides, which permitted a very heavy concentration of men and a relatively easy ammunition supply. Without these good roads and short hauls, it would have

been impossible to have fed and supplied the vast armies, and the war would have taken a different course.

Predominant force, after the Marne, first appeared in the well sited and constructed German trenches. This was countered by increased expenditure of artillery ammunition. The single line was pierced only to again have force desert the guns and appear in concentrated reserves for the counter-attack. More and heavier guns adjusted the balance, only to again have it disrupted by the defense in depth with machine-guns. This was answered by the *tank* and countered by more elastic defense, with greater depth, and we were back, almost, to pre-Marne conditions of open warfare; but with many more and complicated engines of destruction and excessive potentialities in guns, ammunition, airplanes, and accurate intelligence—excessive, that is, in comparison with other possible theaters of war—and all due to the *roads*.

So much for a hurried survey of what has occurred. Now, to safeguard our perspective of the relative importance of these happenings, let us analyze certain features which are bound to crop up in the future with undue emphasis, since they have been grasped by the popular mind and have filled the writings of many thoughtless critics and historians, both civil and military.

The restricted area, long deadlock, and vast resources permitted the employment of masses of guns and ammunition which probably, during our lifetime, cannot be duplicated, certainly not in any other theater of operations. The great results, apparent and real, accomplished by these guns has so impressed the majority of people that they talk of future wars as gun wars. To me, all that is necessary to dispel such dreams, or at least limit their sites to western Europe, is a ten-mile drive along country roads in any State of the Union, except perhaps a favored half dozen along its coasts.

Tactics based on a crushing artillery are, then, impossible except in one place. But, even where roads permit its use in mass, the effect of artillery alone is negative, so far as offensive victory is concerned. Sufficient shells concentrated at the right time and place will, as at Rheims, stop any attack; but all the artillery ever built cannot defeat an enemy unaided; for that the personal touch of the infantry (with the bayonet) is needed.

The guns are the greatest auxiliary, but only that. Infantry without them cannot beat infantry with them. The great range of the present gun has helped both the attack and the defense by making concentrations of great density possible at widely different places from the same gun positions. The same increased range has made it possible to place the artillery in depth, which in turn has made turning movements less deadly and more expensive.

Still, guns in moderation or in excess will not win a war. And the more open the war, the more uncivilized the country where it is fought, the less will they affect the issue; for in war of movement there will be less guns, less time to bring up ammunition, less time to hide batteries. Airplanes will locate them more easily, and they will have to use most of their limited ammunition supply

shooting at each other and less of it shooting infantry. Get all the guns you can, and then steal or otherwise procure all the shells possible, but don't deceive yourselves with fancied zero hours and barrages.

Another feature resulting from the war, and which also has left its mark, is the evolution of the *specialist*.

His birth is the result of an unholy union between trench warfare and quick training. Fighting in trenches was more or less stereotyped; hence men apt at bombing, shooting rifle grenades, using automatic rifles, etc., had time and opportunity to ride their hobbies. Further, it was easier and quicker to make a good grenade-thrower than a good soldier. Time pressed, so one-sided men were evolved who knew little and cared less for anything but their one death-dealing stunt. But the evil did not stop here; these one-idea gentry could be more quickly produced by instructors of a like ilk. These instructors and their pupils assembled in schools, with the result that unit commanders did not train their men, did not learn to know them; leadership suffered, and, as one drink leads to another, so the evil grew. The only way to fight such collections of specialists was to devise "set-piece" attacks, where each did his little stunt in his little way. This made necessary voluminous orders defining in detail the littlest operation, and in consequence taking all initiative from the fighting officers. All that was left to them was to set heroic examples; and this they did.

Now, so long as the specialists could ply their sundry trades behind the barrage and scavenge in the wake of the shells, they were efficient; but when they either lost the barrage or progressed beyond the range of the guns, they were lost. Untutored courage was useless in the face of educated bullets; so when the barrage was gone, officers and men felt naked and at a loss. They had no confidence in the rifle which they had never used; for confidence is the result of habit. Fire and movement, as taught by the Field Service Regulations, were forgotten or never learned.

Our own men, thanks to the genius of General Pershing, were less troubled by the specialist disease than were our allies; but, due to lack of time, many of ours were not, and could not have been, well-rounded open-war soldiers.

Now, the moral of this story of the specialist is this: The combat officer must be the combat instructor of his own men; not only must he know his own tactics, but he must know how to use the various instruments with which his unit is equipped to ply its trade, and he must know each better than any of his men. Further than this, he must have thought and practiced the use of his complicated instrument, so that it plays equally well under his hand the simple one-step of the set-piece attack or the complicated tango of the open-war fight. He must *think, teach, and practice* the tactics of his arm.

Still another development of the war, and one from which we shall surely hear in the future, was the enthusiast of the special arm—the man who would either bomb, gas, or squash the enemy into oblivion, according as he belonged to the Air, Gas, or Tank Service. All these men, and I was one of them, were

right within limits; only they were overconfident of the effectiveness of their favorite weapon. In the future there will be many more such, and we must accept all they say and give them a trial, for some may be right; but we must not plan our battles on the strength of what they think they will do until we have more than oral proof.

Whether we or the Germans first realized the futility of trench warfare is open to discussion. In the winter of 1917 German and American infantry practiced open-war formations, while the rest of the world still clung to trenches. But, whoever first originated the idea, there is no doubt that the Germans first practiced it, and 1918 saw in its colossal struggles the results of that training.

First, in Artois, in Flanders, and in the first phase of the 1918 Marne, the mighty German attacks met with great success. Here the time and place of the attacks were not so much a surprise as were the methods used in pressing them.

Next, east of Rheims a similar great attack was a complete failure, and again due to surprise as to method; but this time as to method of defense by the French under Gouraud.

Followed an allied attack south of Soissons, using open-war methods, where a complete success was prevented by the fact that the attack was not a surprise.

Then came the British attack with tanks, on a limited front, at Villers Bretonneux, with complete success, as a result of surprise as to both method, time, and locality. And finally our great surprise attack in the Meuse-Argonne.

The outstanding tactical features of all these great battles were, first, open-war methods, and, second, surprise, made possible by secrecy and deception. Notice that all three of these features are as old as war.

In the Rheims battle prisoners captured the day before gave exact data as to the time and place of launching the attack, so that the resulting victory was an example of good tactical dispositions combined with peculiarly exact knowledge. The outstanding features of this momentous success were the following: The abandoning of the outpost zone and the filling of the dugouts with mustard gas; the placing of sections of determined infantry along what would have normally been the line of resistance of the outpost zone. These sections were in strong points from 350 to 450 yards apart and were well supplied with machine-guns; the S. O. S. barrage was placed to fall both between and beyond the strong points. Finally, the excellent French counter-preparation, which, due to the prisoners above mentioned, fell in great density, at the exact time and place desired. This counter-preparation is a fine example of the results obtainable from a mass of guns whose collection was made possible by the European road system.

Little of interest in purely cavalry tactics is at present available as a result of the World War in the west, although details of the defense of the Messines sector by Gough's cavalry between the forces of General Haig and General Paltenev, in November, 1914, will show splendid cavalry work. Yet, even with

the locking of armies in the west and the total absence of flanks, there were chances for cavalry. High authority is of the opinion that the German failure to use their mounted arm at Artois and on the Marne probably cost them, if not decisive, at least great strategic, successes.

In Russia and under Allenby, cavalry was as important as ever in its history. In Palestine alone there were seventeen mounted charges against infantry in position, only one of which was a failure.

A general survey of the tactical tendencies at the close of the World War seems to me to point to greater, and not lessened, usefulness and importance for cavalry. The necessity, due to air observation, for most marches of concentration being made at night adds vastly to the destructive power of the mounted man, because charges with the saber or pistol or surprise fire by machine rifles will be terribly effective and most difficult to prevent.

True, no such operations took place in the west; but this is accounted for by the lack of flanks and by continuous wire. In the Civil War, on the other hand, Mosby so operated against the Union wagon trains with great success and almost complete immunity. That he did not do so against columns of infantry or guns is due to the fact that in the Civil War marches by these arms at night were seldom necessary and hence not indulged in.

The machine-gun and automatic rifle, which at one time we considered so prejudicial to our usefulness, have in fact made us more effective. They give us the fire power dismounted which we lacked before.

Our present effort must be to study using these weapons as pivots of maneuver—that is, to use their fire to pin the enemy to the ground while the mounted elements use their mobility to attack the flanks or rear of the enemy so held. I do not believe that such encircling attacks will invariably be made mounted, but the use of the horse for speedy transportation will make their prompt and judicious application possible.

In this connection the cavalryman must be careful to differentiate between his action dismounted and that used by the infantry. The present infantry attack is the most deadly and powerful operation developed in the long school of war; but the very immensity of this power makes the speed of its application somewhat slow. To progressively develop its intense fire-power and consummate it with the final resort to the steel, requires a relatively deep formation; and since the man on foot, unlike the horse, has but one rate of speed, it takes time to get the final rearward elements into action. Further, to secure this depth, great man-power is of necessity required.

The cavalry, on the other hand, both because of its organization and the necessity of caring for its led horses, which, due to the menace of enemy airplanes, will almost always have to be kept mobile, cannot develop the man-power necessary for an attack, along infantry lines, on anything like an appropriate front, except in very special cases, where great bodies of horsemen are available; and even here only peculiar circumstances of terrain or tactical neces-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

sity would justify the cavalry in making a long dismounted attack on the principle that it is foolish to batter down a door if a window is quickly available for entry.

Since, then, the time allowable for our dismounted action will always be short, we must study to gain effect for it by surprise, by an advantageous selection of the direction of attack, and by the prompt development of maximum fire-power. In other words, we must make our maximum deployment early, start it at short range by the use of cover and mobility, and rush it to a conclusion, holding out only sufficient supports to give the impetus for the final charge.

Clearly, such tactics will be difficult in very open country, where distant observation will prevent the employment of the mounted encircling movements on which such an attack is predicated.

These considerations lead to the enunciation of a rather revolutionary theory as to what is *good cavalry country*. We have for years been told that open, unfenced pasture land was "ideal cavalry country"; but I believe that enough has been shown here to prove that such is no longer the case. Closed country, preferably wooded, is what we want for the cavalry. When such conditions permit cavalry to launch its attack close to the enemy, by surprise, it will be hard to stop, mounted or dismounted.

The foregoing remarks might give rise to the opinion that the usefulness of cavalry will be limited by the necessity for special country peculiar to its own needs. This would be true were it not for the fact that the increased importance of the airplane will probably make all arms seek similar country. Certainly, open prairies, where every camp, bivouac, and line of supply will be open to the ever-growing menace of air bombardment, where every movement will be seen and reported, make it seem probable that future armies will in war, at least, eschew billiard-table country, however pleasant it may be for bulletless maneuvers. Speaking generally, then, cavalry tactics seem to simplify themselves into the following:

(a) Delaying or harassing action against infantry.

To be effected by long-range fire of automatic weapons, and offensive by counter-attacks by mounted mobility against flanks and rear; these last to be made by day if cover permits, and, failing such cover, by night.

(b) Attacks against flanks or thinly held sectors.

To be effected by methods similar to (a). It should be noted that in delaying actions by cavalry the essence of success lies in the use of numerous positions for short actions rather than in the strong resistance in favorable localities which the slower rate of infantry makes necessary.

(c) Actions against enemy cavalry—*always offensive*.

This is to be effected by the use of the fire of automatic weapons as a point of rest around which the mounted action pivots, the final attack being *mounted*

WHAT THE WORLD WAR DID FOR CAVALRY

against the *enemy* if he is also mounted, and against his led horses if he is dismounted; for the cavalryman who dismounts in the face of a mounted opponent gives his birthright for a mess of pottage; he sacrifices his mobility to lack of determination and assumes the defensive without hope of crippling his agile enemy.

When mounted action is used in conjunction with fire action, as above, every effort must be made to have the charge at right angles to the direction of fire. The guns must keep in action till the lines meet. This requires good ground observation.

(d) Action against enemy lines of communication.

To be executed mounted and by surprise, effected either by cover or by night.

(e) Actions by patrols.

(f) Actions against strong positions, where either cover or obstacles prevent maneuver.

To be effected dismounted by adopting a formation as near as possible to that used by the infantry; that is, by deploying troops abreast with platoons in column to form the successive waves, and attaching the machine rifles to the rifle platoon. This will absolutely immobilize the troops, but circumstances are possible where such a thing will be necessary. If it occurs, cavalry must show the same heroic determination that infantry does, and close, using the pistol in place of the bayonet.

Against the Turks, troops of the Desert Mounted Corps also attacked strong positions, unwired trenches and batteries mounted, using covering fire from machine-guns and horse artillery to assist their advance. As much as 3,000 yards were covered in such attacks. The formation for the advance was line of platoon columns with wide intervals. The troops in each squadron followed one another at 100 yards' distance. The gait during all the war was a trot or gallop, depending on the condition of the horses. In any case, the final closing was at a charge. In the attack against trenches, the first line jumped them and went on against the supports; the second line jumped the trenches and dismounted, turning the horses loose, mopping up the trenches with the saber; the third line assisted. The losses sustained by the mounted men were small and the killed among the enemy with the saber very large. The *point* was used exclusively.

It now remains to discuss the tactics of the mounted charge. To my mind, this is a very simple operation, since tactics, under such circumstances, will be lacking, just as they apparently are in the bayonet charge.

For, though the preliminaries to the bayonet charge involve much shooting and crawling and rushing, the charge itself is simply a blind stampede of furious and exhausted men, initiated on the spot by a few brave spirits who start going and are followed pell-mell by the rest. Unless the enemy is so

situated that he cannot get away, he departs before the bayonets ever reach him. At least that is how I have pictured it, how I have heard it described, and how I once saw it enacted by about twenty Americans against a group of machine-guns.

So, with the mounted charge, there is much searching for cover, much maneuvering for position, some trotting in column; but when the golden moment comes, there will be simply a rush, the faster the better, and unless, as in the case of the bayonet charge, the enemy cannot get away, he will never stop to meet you; his wounded will be punctured in the back.

The bayonet charge and the saber charge are the highest physical demonstration of moral victory. The fierce frenzy of hate and determination flashing from the bloodshot eyes squinting behind the glittering steel is what wins. Get as close as you can to the objective unseen or helped by covering fire, and then charge in line, in column, or in mass; it makes no difference. Such an attack will no more resemble the majestic charge of Murat's horsemen than did the blind rush of the twenty doughboys simulate the advance of the Old Guard at Waterloo. It will generally be conducted by small bodies, platoons, troops, or, at most, squadrons. Remember that there is nothing too good for the man who brings off a successful saber charge; and though 16 to 1 was fatal in 1896, Palestine* proved that it will be the ratio of your success when you give the war-cry of the cavalry: "*Charge saber!*"

* According to Colonel Preston ("The Desert Mounted Corps"), there were 32 successful and two unsuccessful cavalry charges in Palestine.



The First Regiment of Cavalry, United States Army

(Continued from the January Number)

1896 to 1922

In May, 1895, Headquarters, Band, Troops C, F, G, K, L, and M were transferred to Fort Riley, Kans., for station; Troop D from Fort Apache to Fort Reno, O. T., in September, 1895; Troop B from Fort Bayard, N. M., to Fort Reno, O. T., and Troops E and H from Fort Grant to Fort Sill, O. T., in October, 1895.

Troop A left Fort Stanton, N. M., and took station at Fort Huachuca, A. T., in January, 1896; Troops C and G left Fort Riley, Kans., taking station at Fort Sheridan, Ill., in August, 1896, and Troop I left Fort Bayard, N. M., taking station at Fort Huachuca, A. T., in November, 1896.

Troops B and D were in summer encampment at Fort Gibson, I. T., during September and October, 1896, and Troop H at Eaglehart Springs, O. T., during October, 1896.

During 1896 and 1897 Troops A and I were engaged in numerous scouts against hostile Indians and reconnoitering the international boundary line between the United States and Mexico.

Troop B left Fort Reno, O. T., in February, 1897, and established camp near Hayden, I. T., preserving order during disbursement of funds to Cherokee freedmen. Payment being transferred to Fort Gibson, I. T., the troop proceeded to that camp in April, 1897, remaining until August, when it was relieved by Troop D, which remained on this duty until December, 1897, when it returned to Fort Reno, O. T.

THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

At the outbreak of the Spanish-American War, in April, 1898, the troops of the regiment assembled at Chickamauga Park, Ga., with Colonel A. K. Arnold in command. In May the regiment moved to Lakeland, Fla., preparatory to the invasion of Cuba. Colonel Arnold was appointed a brigadier-general of volunteers and Lieutenant-Colonel C. D. Viele assumed command of the regiment. On June 7 Headquarters, the Band, the First Squadron (Troops A, B, G, and K), and the Second Squadron (Troops C, D, E, and I), all dismounted, embarked at Tampa on the transport *Leona* for Cuba. The following officers were with the regiment: Lieutenant-Colonel Viele, Majors J. M. Bell and A. G. Forse, Captains T. T. Knox, H. E. Tutherly, R. P. P. Wain-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

wright, J. G. Galbraith, W. C. Brown, First Lieutenants J. F. R. Landis, G. W. Goode, G. L. Byram, P. E. Traub, E. S. Wright, W. C. Rivers, J. D. L. Hartman, C. Overton, M. F. Davis, Second Lieutenants R. C. Williams, W. M. Whitman, H. D. Berkeley, N. A. Kirkpatrick, C. McK. Saltzman, and H. C. Smither.

Leaving Port Tampa on the 13th, the ship arrived off Daiquiri, Cuba, June 22, and the troops disembarked the next day.

On the afternoon of the 23d the First Squadron (Major Bell commanding) left Daiquiri and marched until 11 o'clock p. m., then bivouacked until 3 o'clock a. m., when march was resumed. Siboney was reached at 5 o'clock a. m., where the squadron joined forces with a squadron of the 10th Cavalry and the 1st Volunteer Cavalry (Rough Riders). The troops took different routes, advancing against and capturing Las Guasimas Ridge on the morning of June 24. This was the first land action, leading to the Battle of Santiago. The First Squadron sustained a loss of seven enlisted men killed, while three officers (Major Bell, Captain Knox, and Lieutenant Byram) and five enlisted men were wounded. The Spaniards retreated from their position to the next line of works, at San Juan.

The 1st Cavalry, the 10th Cavalry, and the 1st Volunteer Cavalry formed the Second Brigade, Cavalry Division, 5th Army Corps, commanded by Colonel Leonard Wood, the division by General Joseph Wheeler. July 1, 1898, Colonel Viele, with Headquarters, Band, and the two squadrons, after acting as a support to Captain Grimes' Battery at El Pozo, engaged in the battle for the possession of Kettle Hill and San Juan Ridge. In this hotly contested fight the regiment lost Major Forse and 12 enlisted men killed and 44 enlisted men wounded. Six of the wounded died later. First Lieutenant A. L. Mills, 1st Cavalry, captain and adjutant of volunteers, was also wounded in this engagement. On July 2 the regiment was in position near San Juan Fort, moving that evening to a new position, two men being wounded.

Santiago was bombarded July 10th and 11th and the city surrendered the 17th. The regiment remained in its trenches until the 18th, when it went into camp northeast of Santiago (Camp Hamilton). On August 7th the regiment embarked on the transport *Mattewan*, sailing for home on the 8th. Montauk, Long Island, was reached August 15 and the command went into the detention camp. A detachment of recruits from Fort McPherson, Georgia, had preceded the regiment to this camp and had constructed it. Troops F, H, L, and M, with horses and baggage, reported from Lakeland, Fla., and the regiment was once more united. Owing to the hardships of the campaign, 32 died from disease contracted in line of duty, making a total loss of three officers and 55 enlisted men.

The regiment left Montauk September 28, without horses, for stations in the Department of Dakota. Headquarters, Band, Troops A, B, I, and L went

THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. ARMY

to Fort Riley, Kans.; Troop C to Fort Robinson, Nebr.; D to Fort Yates, N. Dak.; E to Fort Washakie, Wyo.; F to Fort Keogh, Mont.; G and M to Fort Meade, S. Dak., and K to Fort Niobrara, Nebr. Troop H went to Fort Sill, Okla., remaining there until December 31, 1898, when it proceeded to Fort Meade, S. Dak.

In January, 1899, Headquarters, Band, Troops A, B, and L changed station to Fort Robinson and Troop I to Fort Meade. Troops A and L left Fort Robinson in May for duty, preserving order among turbulent striking miners in the Cœur d'Alene Mountains of Idaho. In June Troop B changed station from Fort Robinson to Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., Troop M from Fort Meade to Fort Yellowstone, Wyo., and Headquarters and Band from Fort Robinson to Fort Meade. Troops A and L were relieved from duty in the Cœur d'Alene District and returned to Fort Robinson, Nebr., and Fort Logan, respectively—the former in November, 1899, and the latter in June, 1900. Troop G changed station in June, 1900, from Fort Meade, S. Dak., to Fort Yellowstone, Wyo.

The "Boxer Rebellion" in China assumed such grave proportions during the year 1900 that nearly all the powerful governments sent troops to Peking to rescue their diplomatic representatives, who were besieged by the Boxer troops. In July of that year Headquarters, Band, and Troops A, B, C, D, I, K, L, and M received orders to proceed to Seattle, Wash., with a view of embarking for service in the Orient, and for a couple of weeks this command was encamped near Fort Lawton, Wash. The following officers were with the command: Lieutenant-Colonel T. C. Lebo, Majors A. Smith and F. K. Ward, Captains P. S. Bomus, F. A. Edwards, J. Pitcher, J. G. Galbraith, O. J. Brown, First Lieutenants P. E. Traub, E. S. Wright, J. D. L. Hartman, M. F. Davis, S. B. Arnold, W. Yates, J. W. Craig, H. D. Berkeley, Second Lieutenants C. S. Babcock, F. Lee, Jr., E. A. Hickman, J. D. Tilford, R. S. Fitch, and S. R. Gleaves.

The men were embarked on the transport *Garonne* August 6, and the horses on the *Pak Ling*, under Lieutenants Hickman and Tilford. The *Garonne* sailed August 7, arriving at Nagasaki, Japan, via the Inland Sea, August 30, 1900. Here the news of the capture of Peking by the Allied armies was received, and, much to every one's disappointment, orders were changed, sending the command to the Philippine Islands for duty instead of China. Manila, P. I., was reached September 7, 1900, just in time to escape a severe typhoon.

The *Pak Ling* unloaded the animals for a short rest at Kobe, Japan. This ship passed through the typhoon with but small loss in animals. Great credit is due the officers and men on board for the excellent care taken of the animals during this storm, and the fine condition of all the horses when unloaded showed that systematic care had been taken of them throughout the voyage.

The *Garonne* and the *Pak Ling* arrived September 11 off Batangas, and here the troops disembarked, as follows: Headquarters, Band, Troops I and L,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

for station in Batangas; Troop B, for Santo Tomas; Troop K, for Bauan; Troop M, for Lipa, and Troop D, for San Juan de Boc Boc. On September 20 the transports sailed for Lobo, and here, on the 21st and 22d, Troops A and C (Major Allen Smith commanding) were unloaded. Troop A went into camp in the town of Lobo, Troop C remaining in camp on the beach.

PHILIPPINE INSURRECTION

Having settled in their new stations after relieving the volunteers stationed in the province, the troops immediately commenced active scouting. Troop M engaged insurgents October 18, 1900, at Baleta and dispersed them, and October 23 at Ibaan, defeating and pursuing them. October 29 a detachment of Troop C returning from Batangas was attacked at San Isidro. The detachment repulsed the insurgents and drove them from their position.

November 27 a detachment of Troop D encountered insurgents near Rosario. November 29 a detachment of Troop C returning from Batangas engaged insurgents. Chief Packer Welsh, 1st Cavalry Pack Train, died next day from wounds received in this engagement. On the same day Lieutenants Craig and Tilford, with Troop D, recaptured a boat with stores for San Juan de Boc Boc which had been previously taken by bolomen.

On December 8 a detachment of Troop M engaged a force of 200 insurgents on Boot Peninsula, Lake Taal, dispersing them in a running fight of two and a half hours' duration. Four insurgents were killed and three captured. The detachment lost one man killed.

In January, 1901, Troops A, C, and L were transferred to Tayabas Province, Troop A taking station at Lucban and Troops C and L at Tayabas. Troop L furnished a detachment for garrison at Pagbilao. In March Troop C marched to Lucena for station. The early part of 1901 was a period of almost daily or nightly scouts for the troops, which suffered exceedingly from exposure to the heavy rains and the burning sun, the sick list being large from this time on. During the year numbers of the insurgents surrendered, this being of almost daily occurrence.

February 1 Troop I, under Lieutenant Lee, struck an outpost of insurgents at Japanol, dispersing them and wounding one. On the 12th the same troop engaged about 225 insurgents in the mountains east of Batangas, driving them from their position and inflicting casualties. Natives reported that 25 of the insurgents were wounded.

April 19 a detachment of Troop D was attacked near Sariaya. The insurgents were driven off by the detachment, which then pursued them. April 27 Lieutenants Craig and Tilford, with a detachment of Troop D, surprised insurgents fifteen miles from San Juan de Boc Boc and captured four, adding three to this bag three days later. May 5 Lieutenant Hartman, with Troop K, engaged about 250 insurgents at Mount Solo and drove them from three separate

THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. ARMY

positions, killing one and capturing three. May 20 Captain Hartman, with a detachment of Troop K, destroyed a cuartel on Mount Durango. They were fired on by about 100 of Colonel Cabrera's command, which they then drove from two successive positions and followed several miles. One insurgent was wounded and three captured. May 26 Captain Davis, Lieutenants Babcock and Hickman, with Troops C and L, struck insurgents in Puas Valley, and after two short engagements followed them into the mountains. One man of Troop C was wounded. June 14 Lieutenant Hickman, with a detachment of Troop L, surrounded Barrio Bamlad and captured Major Crispo Ella and two insurgents. This apparently insignificant capture led to information which resulted in securing a large number of rifles from supposedly peaceful Filipinos.

June 19 and 20 Lieutenants Lee and Fitch, with detachments of Troops I and K, engaged insurgents at Talumpo. June 26 Captain Craig, with a detachment of Troop D, was attacked near San Juan de Boc Boc. They pursued the attacking band during the following two days. July 24 Lieutenant Hickman received the surrender of Lieutenant-Colonel Zurbano with part of his forces. The next day the remainder surrendered, making a total of 1,170 who surrendered and took the oath of allegiance. July 26 Captain Hartman and Lieutenants Fitch and Graham, with a detachment of Troop K, captured 34 insurgents of the "Flying Column of Bauan," together with Captain Magbohoh, commanding. August 6 Captain O. J. Brown and Lieutenant Munro, with Troops C and M, engaged insurgents at Mount Niaga, near Lobo, and drove them into the mountains in a fight of six hours' duration. One man of Troop M was killed.

Troop D changed station in September from San Juan de Boc Boc to Batangas. October 22, on Mount Maquiling, Lieutenant Gleaves, with a detachment of Troop B, surprised and captured one major, one captain, and three followers.

November 12 Captain Hartman, at Bauan, learning of the proximity of about 400 insurgents, left with Lieutenant Enos and 50 men of Troop K on the Taal road to engage them. Proceeding cautiously, it was discovered that the insurgents had prepared an ambush where the road ran through a cut about a mile from town. Instead of marching into the trap, the troop made a detour and surprised the insurgents by a volley which enfiladed their lines. After a fight lasting about 30 minutes the enemy retreated in disorder, leaving two prisoners in the hands of the troop. While the fight was in progress Captain Hartman received a message from the adjutant at Bauan informing him that Lieutenant Tilford, with Troop D, was on the way to reinforce him, and that *Mrs. Hartman was watching the fight from the high church tower*. The insurgents had 35 killed and later reports indicated that their total loss in killed and wounded was about 100. About half of these insurgents were armed with rifles, the remainder with bolos. Two men of Troop K were wounded. This engagement ended the insurrection in the vicinity of Bauan.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

November 19 Lieutenant P. W. Arnold, with Lieutenant Enos and a detachment of Troop K, surprised an outpost at Munting Tubig. One insurgent was wounded. December 16 Lieutenant Moseley, with a detachment of Troop I, struck a band of about 125 insurgents at San Isidro, killing seven and pursuing the remainder into the mountains. December 19 Lieutenant Tilford, with a detachment of Troop D, located a cuartel on Mount Bonai, killed 17 insurgents, wounded one, and captured two.

In August, 1901, Troop F was relieved from duty at Fort Keogh, Mont., and proceeded to Fort Yellowstone, Wyo., for station, and in November Troop H left Fort Meade, S. Dak., and took station at Fort Keogh.

From January to April 18, 1902, the troops of the First and Third Squadrons in the Philippines, with Colonel Wells commanding the column, were in the field constantly in General Bell's various expeditions after Malvar. This period was characterized by the many surrenders of men and arms of the insurgents and the large amount of food supplies taken. During the period of the reconcentration, food supplies for the people were distributed by the regiment from Batangas for the major part of the province.

March 1, 1902, Lieutenant Fitch, with a detachment of Troop D, captured four armed soldiers at Barrio Tubig. March 15 Lieutenant Gleaves, with a detachment of Troop B, struck insurgents on Mount Maquiling, killing four and capturing two, one of whom was an officer. Again, on March 18, the same detachment effected a second surprise on Mount Maquiling, killing four and wounding one. On March 23 a detachment of Troop I captured Commandante Domingo Mertija, one lieutenant and one follower, with a quantity of arms. Numerous scouts not chronicled here were made, resulting in the surrender or capture of insurgents and arms. With the surrender of Malvar active operations in Batangas ceased.

In April, 1902, Troop A changed station from Lucban to Batangas, and Troop M from Lipa to Balayan. In May Troop L took station at Taal from Tayabas, and in September Troop C left Lucena and took station at Balayan. The Second Squadron having been detailed for service in the Philippines, Troop H left Fort Keogh, Mont., in June; Troop E left Fort Washakie, Wyo., and Troops F and G left Fort Yellowstone, Wyo., in August, 1902, and proceeded to Presidio of San Francisco, Calif. August 16, 1902, the squadron left San Francisco on the transport *Sumner*, arriving at Nagasaki, Japan, September 9, and at Manila September 16. Troops G and H left Manila on the transport *Legaspi* and took station at Neuva Caceres, Ambos Camarines. Troops E and F proceeded from Manila on the *Sumner* to San Joaquin, Iloilo, in October.

In February, 1903, Troops E and F changed station to Camp Jossman, Guimaras. Headquarters, Band, and Third Squadron, having been relieved from duty in the Islands, boarded the transport *Proteus* May 2, 1903, for

THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. ARMY

transfer to Manila. On May 12 they sailed on the transport *Sheridan* for the United States, arriving at San Francisco June 6. A few days later they proceeded to their new stations in the Department of Texas. Headquarters, Band, and Troops I, K, and L took station at Fort Clark, Texas, and Troop M at Fort Sam Houston.

Troop B changed station from Taal to Batangas in June, 1903. The First Squadron was relieved from duty in the Philippines in August, 1903, and on August 1 Troops A, B, C and D commenced the movement to Manila, from which port they sailed on the transport *Sherman*, arriving at San Francisco September 17. They proceeded to Fort Sam Houston for station, relieving Troop M, which joined the Third Squadron at Fort Clark October 1.

Troops G and H were relieved from duty at Neuva Caceres and took station at Pasay Garrison, Manila, in August, 1903. The Second Squadron was relieved from duty in the Philippines and proceeded on the transport *Sheridan* to San Francisco, arriving October 10, 1903. They were transferred by rail to Fort Clark, Texas, where they took station October 23.

The Band was on duty at the Louisiana Purchase Exposition during the month of June, 1904. The First and Third Squadrons changed stations, by marching, September, 1904, the First Squadron arriving at Fort Clark and the Third Squadron at Fort Sam Houston. The Second and Third Squadrons changed stations, by marching, in October, 1905. The Third Squadron arrived at Fort Clark October 27, and the Second Squadron at Fort Sam Houston on the 28th.

In May, 1906, the regiment left the Department of Texas for temporary duty at San Francisco, Calif., in relief work incident to the great earthquake and fire. It was on duty in charge of relief stations, as sanitary police and in charge of camps, until relieved in June. The regiment, except Troop K, marched to Austin, Texas, in July, 1906, and participated in the camp of instruction near that place, returning in September, 1906, to its proper stations. The Second Squadron was on duty with the Texas National Guard at Camp Mabry, near Austin, Texas, from July 19 to July 27, 1907, proceeding from Fort Sam Houston and returning by marching, a total distance of 166 miles. Troops A and M, with a detachment of 35 men from troops at Fort Clark, Texas, left that post July 17 and marched to Leon Springs, Texas, a distance of 165 miles, arriving July 23. They remained here until August 6, on duty during the Southwestern competitions, and then made the return march to Fort Sam Houston, covering 158 miles. Troop B was engaged in mapping the country in the vicinity of Del Rio and Eagle Pass, Texas, and in observing the Rio Grande border, from August 20 to October 1, when it was relieved by Troop I. The latter troop was relieved from this duty October 25.

November 30 the regiment, except Troops D, H, and I, commenced the movement to San Francisco, where it embarked December 4 on the transport

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Thomas, en route to the Philippine Islands. The regiment reached Manila January 2, 1908, and proceeded to Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, for station, relieving the 3d Cavalry. Troops D, H, and I were relieved from duty in the Department of Texas February 28, and, proceeding to San Francisco, embarked on the transport *Thomas* and sailed March 5 for Manila. The squadron arrived in the Islands and took station at Camp Stotsenburg April 5.

The regiment remained at Camp Stotsenburg for a two-year tour of service unmarked by unusual incident, and January 15, 1910, it embarked at Manila on the transport *Logan* and sailed for San Francisco, via Nagasaki, Japan, and Honolulu, H. T. The regiment arrived at San Francisco February 12, and the First Squadron and Troops K and M took station at the Presidio of San Francisco the same day. Headquarters, Band, and the Second Squadron arrived at Fort Walla Walla, Wash., February 16 for station. Troops I and K arrived at Boise Barracks, Idaho, for station on the same day.

Troops D and K left the Presidio of San Francisco April 21 for duty at Yosemite National Park, from May 4 to November 1, when they returned to their proper stations by marching. Troop A left the Presidio of San Francisco May 14, for duty in the Sequoia National Park from May 31 to September 15, when it returned to its station by marching. The Band, Machine-Gun Platoon, and Troop G participated in the military tournament at Tacoma, Wash., from July 24 to 31. Headquarters, Troops E, F, and H left Fort Walla Walla by rail July 29, to participate in the maneuvers at Camp Cosgrove, American Lake, Wash., where they were joined July 31 by the Band, the Machine-Gun Platoon, and Troop G. Upon the termination of their duty at this camp, the troops proceeded to Spray's Lake, Wash., for target practice.

During the absence of the regular garrison, Fort Walla Walla was garrisoned by Troop I, from Boise Barracks. Troop H and detachments from Troops D and K were engaged in fighting forest fires in August and September. The squadron returned to Fort Walla Walla from Spray's Lake September 10, and on the 24th, together with the Machine-Gun Platoon, left the post by rail for station at Fort Yellowstone, Wyo. Fort Walla Walla was abandoned September 27 and Headquarters and the Band left for Boise Barracks for station. Troop M changed station from the Presidio of San Francisco to Fort Du Chesue, Utah, where they arrived October 1.

The most of the regiment was engaged during the spring and summer of 1911 in guarding the Mexican border line, while the revolution was in progress in Mexico against the Diaz government. The troops patrolled the Arizona border from New Mexico to Calexico, Calif. Troop A was stationed at Yuma from February 5 to April 26. Troop B was at Nogales, Ariz., from February 5 to April 25, and at Yuma from April 26 to July 14. Troop C was at Calexico, Calif., from February 5 to April 27, and Troop D at Tucson, Ariz., from February 5 to April 16.

THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. ARMY

Headquarters, Band, Troops I, K, and L left Boise Barracks, Idaho, March 9 for duty on the Mexican border, taking station as follows: Headquarters, Band, and Troop L at Fort Huachuca, Ariz., Troop I at San Bernadino and Lang's Ranch, Ariz., and Troop K at Douglas, Ariz. April 15 Troop L left Fort Huachuca and marched to Douglas, arriving the following day, and was joined by Troop D from Tucson the same day. During the engagement at Agua Prieta, Mexico, Troops D, K, and L were actively engaged in preventing violations of the neutrality laws and keeping the combatants on Mexican territory.

April 25, 26, and 27 Headquarters, Band, and Troops K and L changed station to Calexico, Calif. May 10 Troops C and D left the Presidio of San Francisco, by marching, for duty in the Yosemite National Park. They marched 305 miles, arriving May 22. Troop A left Yuma, Ariz., and arrived at the Presidio of San Francisco, April 29. May 16 this troop marched to Camp Sequoia, arriving June 2.

Troop B left Yuma July 14 by rail to General Grant National Park, taking station there July 18. Troop C arrived at Presidio of San Francisco from Calexico April 29. Troop D arrived at the same station from Douglas April 25.

Headquarters and Band and Troops K and L were relieved from duty at Calexico, Calif., on July 14, and proceeded by rail to Lemon Cove, Sequoia National Park. Troops I and B arrived at the same time, Troop B taking station at General Grant National Park and Troop I joining Headquarters and Band at Kaweah, Calif. On account of lack of forage at Kaweah, the command marched overland to the Presidio of San Francisco, Troop B joining at Fresno. Headquarters and Band took station at the Presidio and Troops I, K, and L left by rail for their proper station at Boise Barracks, Idaho, joining that post August 24, 1911. Troop M was relieved from duty at Fort Du Cheane and took station at Boise Barracks September 18. Troop A rejoined at the Presidio from Camp Sequoia, by marching, arriving September 28. Troops C and D rejoined from duty in the Yosemite November 9 by marching. The Second Squadron remained at their station throughout the year, furnishing the necessary details for outpost duty in the Yellowstone National Park.

The Third Squadron left Boise Barracks February 14, 1913, by rail for station at the Presidio of Monterey, Calif. Troop C left the Presidio of San Francisco May 14, by marching, for duty in the Sequoia National Park during the summer months. It rejoined its proper station September 11. Troops A and B left the Presidio of San Francisco April 18, by marching, for duty in the Yosemite during the summer months. They rejoined their proper station November 8. Troop I was on temporary duty at Calexico, Calif., during September, October, and November, 1913, for enforcement of neutrality laws. Headquarters changed station from Presidio of San Francisco to Presidio of Monterey December 10, 1913. The Band and First Squadron followed on the 14th.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

January 1, 1914, the stations of the troops of the regiment were as follows: Headquarters, Band, and First and Third Squadrons at the Presidio of Monterey, Calif.; Second Squadron and Machine-Gun Platoon at Fort Yellowstone, Wyo. Troop M left its station April 18 for duty in the Yosemite, marched to Wawona, Calif., and was then ordered to return to its proper station. The troop rejoined the post May 8, having marched 450 miles. Troops D and L took station at Calexico in the latter part of April for duty on the Mexican border, and the Machine-Gun Platoon joined there from Fort Yellowstone, May 8. Troop B was on duty at the camp of instruction at Pacific Grove, Calif., from June 20 to July 26.

The Second Squadron arrived at the Presidio of Monterey for station from Fort Yellowstone July 9. Troops A, B, K, and M left the Presidio of Monterey August 1 and proceeded by the transport *Buford* to San Diego, Calif., for duty on the Mexican border. Troops A, B, and K left San Diego August 5 and took station at San Ysidro, Calif. Troop M marched at the same time to Tecate, Calif. August 27 to September 9, Troops A and K exchanged stations, by marching, with Troops D and L. The Machine-Gun Platoon was relieved from duty at Calexico September 5 and proceeded by rail to the Presidio of Monterey. Troop I marched from the Presidio of Monterey to the Presidio of San Francisco and returned in October, a total distance of 291 miles. During the winter of 1914-1915 and during most of the year 1915 troops of the regiment were on duty at the two expositions at San Diego and San Francisco.

March 12 and 13, 1916, the regiment, less Troops B and M, which remained at Calexico, left the coast for duty on the Mexican border. Headquarters, Band, Troops A, C, D, I, K, L, and Machine-Gun Troop took stations at Douglas, Ariz., to replace the 7th Cavalry, which had entered Mexico with the punitive expedition. Troops E and G took station at Naco, Ariz., Troop F at Nogales, Ariz., and Troop H at Fort Huachuca, Ariz., replacing the 10th Cavalry, also in Mexico with the punitive expedition. Troop H took station in succession at Lochiel, Nogales, and Arivaca, Ariz. The troops at Douglas furnished garrisons for Forrest Station and Slaughter's Ranch, Arizona.

Troops F and H left Nogales in February, 1917, for Calexico and joined Troops B and M. They left Calexico April 7 and proceeded, by marching, to Camp L. J. Hearn, Palm City, Calif., a distance of 134 miles. May 19 and 20 Headquarters, Band, Supply Troops, Machine-Gun Troop, and Troops A, C, D, E, G, I, K, and L left Douglas, Ariz., by rail for station at Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo. There the regiment made the necessary arrangements for the formation of the 24th and 25th Cavalry regiments. Troops F and H, from Palm City, Calif., exchanged stations with Troops B and M at Calexico, by marching, in May. Troop F marched back to Palm City in June, and in August proceeded to the Presidio of San Francisco. It remained at that station from August 11 to December 10, when it entrained for Douglas, Ariz.

THE FIRST REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, U. S. ARMY

Troop H left Calexico July 8, 1917, for Palm City, Calif., where it joined Troops B and M. January 4, 1918, the three troops arrived from Palm City at Douglas for station, joining Troop F. December 13, 1917, the remaining troops of the regiment, with headquarters, left Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., for Douglas, Ariz., and the regiment was united in one permanent station for the first time in fifty years.

COLONELS OF THE FIRST CAVALRY

Henry Dodge.....	March 4, 1833	George S. Anderson.....	September 5, 1906
Stephen W. Kearny.....	July 4, 1836	Edward J. McClelland.....	November 20, 1906
Richard B. Mason.....	June 30, 1846	Walter L. Finley.....	September 6, 1911
Thomas T. Fauntleroy.....	July 25, 1850	George K. Hunter.....	July 10, 1914
Benjamin L. Beall.....	May 13, 1861	Frederick S. Foltz.....	December 14, 1914
George A. H. Blake.....	February 18, 1862	Edmund S. Wright.....	Oct. 9, 1916 (attached)
Alvan C. Gillem.....	December —, 1870	John C. Waterman.....	August 18, 1917
Cuvier Grover.....	December 2, 1875	Frank B. Edwards.....	September 23, 1918
Nathan A. M. Dudley.....	June 6, 1885	Julien E. Gaujot.....	January 25, 1919
James S. Brisbin.....	August 20, 1889	Hamilton S. Hawkins.....	May 21, 1919
Abraham K. Arnold.....	April 22, 1891	Guy H. Preston.....	August 12, 1919
Almond B. Wells.....	February 2, 1901	Frank Le J. Parker.....	September 18, 1920
Martin B. Hughes.....	August 5, 1903	Edward A. V. Anderson.....	January 4, 1921

NOTE.—This brief history of the First Cavalry has been based upon the history of the regiment compiled by the late Major R. P. Page Wainwright, with later additions made by Regimental Sergeant-Major Kraus, and supplementary notes submitted by former officers of the regiment.—*Editor.*

CAVALRY EXPLOIT OF SEPTEMBER 19, 1914

THE cavalry regiment Stoecklen of the group of reserve divisions commanded by General Pol Durand had the chance to pick up, near d'Heudicourt, a German cavalry patrol, which capture discovered the fact that two enemy corps, strongly provided with heavy artillery, had left Metz the day before and were now in the region of Saint-Genoît-Theancourt and farther north, and that they were about to attack the French army.—From "*La Tranchée de La Soif*," by General Cordonnier, *Revue Militaire Générale*, January, 1922.

SCARED

THE pretty girl was eagerly watching a drill at a camp when a rifle volley sounded. With a surprised scream she shrank back into the arms of the young corporal standing behind her.

"Oh, I beg your pardon," she exclaimed blushing; "I was frightened by the rifles."

"Quite all right," said the corporal. "Let's go over and watch the heavy artillery."—*American Legion Weekly.*

Cavalry Reconnaissance

The Modern Service of Information and Cavalry's Rôle in It

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

(Translation by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff)

IN GOOD old times, when wars were waged by professional armies, the strength of which was counted by a few tens of thousands, the service of information was very simple. It consisted of cavalry reconnaissance and of espionage. And the work itself was very much simplified by the elementary mechanism of that former warfare. The armies rested, moved, and fought in close formations. The cavalry scout could approach as near as two or three hundred paces without taking heed of the enemy bullet. The spy, after gaining valuable information, could communicate it quickly and easily to the side which had sent him out. It was not necessary for him to work his way through the front lines; being short, they could be turned easily.

But it would be a mistake to draw the deduction that in the old times the leader of an army was better informed with regard to the activities of the enemy than is the case today. One who entertains such an idea should be invited to the intelligence section of the headquarters of a modern army. The visitor would be surprised by the picture he would see: officers and clerks writing and drawing in big books, typewriting, designing, and making notes on maps. The walls are covered with maps, tables, and sketches; card indexes are on the desks. Near by is a photographic workshop fully equipped with apparatus for projection and various accessories—the latest word of science. In a quiet atmosphere, reminding one of the work of an office in time of peace, the intelligence section of a modern army headquarters collects checks and systemizes the large volume of information put at the disposal of an army leader by the circumstances of modern war.

Every one is familiar with the toy called "puzzles." I cannot think of a better comparison to describe the work of a modern intelligence section of an army or an army group. Here, also, a whole picture is being made out of separate small fragments. But the difficulty of the work is increased, owing to the fact that the intelligence section, before placing each fragment into the general picture, has to establish first the degree of its trustworthiness.

The visitor would finally be astonished at the degree of exactitude and comprehensiveness which can be attained by a well-organized service of information.

CAVALRY RECONNAISSANCE

To give an illustration, I might say that during the period of two years when I was director of military operations and chief of staff of an army the intelligence sections of my headquarters only twice made an error in their estimation of the strength of the opposing enemy forces, and in both cases the difference was not bigger than one regiment.

The exactness of the work of a modern army's intelligence section is made possible by the new means and methods employed. Among the new means the air reconnaissance should be mentioned in the first place. Aviation enables us to penetrate deeply into the enemy's zone and to observe from above the enemy's movements and fortifications. With regard to the latter, the use of photography determines the smallest details with absolute preciseness. Furthermore, radio intelligence, listening in by means of the telephone, listening posts for locating the enemy batteries—all these means were used by us on a large scale in the World War.

Besides, the modern conditions of social life have also opened new possibilities for the service of information. The highly developed press and the postal communications are sources of valuable information. To that class of information, in modern conditions of warfare, belong the communications mentioning stations of army units. The conduct of modern war is based on keeping absolutely intact the established army organization. Information to the effect that a certain regiment is in a given place permits the conclusion that in that district is stationed a certain division. Checking up such information with other data, the intelligence sections can come to conclusions also with regard to larger units—army corps and armies. Information about the arrival or withdrawing of certain units in certain sections of the front discloses the enemy's plans and is, therefore, of the greatest importance.

The most reliable information of that kind is obtained by taking prisoners. A prisoner can refuse to give evidence, but he cannot conceal that he belongs to a certain unit. Even a superficial examination of his uniform and of articles on his person will give an exact answer to the question which interests us. Therefore even a prisoner who will not speak is an evidence. If the intelligence work, requiring above all a careful classification and checking up of information, is being done well, and if there exists a regular exchange of information among all the intelligence sections, every deviation in the prisoner's evidence will be quickly discovered. Finally, there are always in the possession of a prisoner letters, various documents, scratch books, all of which are very valuable material.

Only one branch of the service of information—the reconnaissance—can bring in prisoners. On that account, although the observation on the front is at present extremely difficult, the reconnaissance remains, as formerly, of the foremost importance. On the basis of experience in the Russo-Japanese and the World Wars, it can be taken as a rule that reconnaissance by the taking of

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

prisoners establishes with complete exactness the enemy divisions of the first line and with great probability the divisions of the second line.

There is another information which no service of intelligence except reconnaissance can give us, namely, the establishing of the "contour" of the enemy position or maneuver. The reason is easily understood: contact with the enemy requires, on one hand, work without interruption, and, on the other hand, application of force; both can be fully achieved by reconnaissance only.

The two functions mentioned above—establishing and maintaining contact with the enemy and taking prisoners—are of such importance to the general intelligence work that, among all the means of information, reconnaissance is to be retained in its former honorable place. All the other means of information are only a necessary supplement to reconnaissance. Moreover, reconnaissance is closely connected with the service of security. As a matter of fact, it is even impossible to draw a distinct line between the reconnaissance at a short distance and the service of security. For that reason reconnaissance, notwithstanding all technical inventions, will always be of great importance. Its rôle at present only seems smaller, because the conduct of war in general, including the intelligence work, has become more complicated.

To get what is called the reconnaissance of the enemy "contour," troops must carry out observation with their own eyes. During a period of trench warfare that observation is made by the infantry. The latter is aided by the artillery with its special "artillery reconnaissance," of which the object is to locate the enemy batteries, to find out the positions of new ones and to discover the shifting of old ones. To achieve that, the technical developments of modern war place at our disposal observation balloons and listening posts. The engineer reconnaissance, carried out by the engineer troops, helps the infantry to follow the changes in the disposition and equipment of the enemy fortifications. The infantry is also aided on a large scale by the aviation, which photographs the enemy positions and by the listening-in telephone stations.

There is no room for the cavalry in that period, in a general way, nor can it perform reconnaissance during that period; but, as soon as the fronts begin to move and the war of maneuver starts again, the first rôle in reconnaissance falls to the cavalry. As long as the distance to the enemy grows, the cavalry only is in position to "feel" and establish the enemy's contour.

Technics, in the shape of aviation, helps to determine the directions in which the cavalry must "feel the contour" and to establish a stable contact. In that period the "wireless intelligence" is also of help, because it enables us, by discovering in certain districts new wireless stations, to presuppose the arrival of new large units. Nevertheless, the establishing of the contour can be achieved only by means of rifle and gun. At a distance of one day's march, only the cavalry can do that.

FERRATA

In the April 1922 Number of the Journal in the Article by General Golovine entitled Cavalry Reconnaissance a regrettable interchanging of type occurred which made pages 188 and 189 partly unintelligible. If after the next to the last line on page 187 the reader will skip to the seventh line from the bottom of page 188; then after the eighth line from the bottom of page 189 will continue on the last line of page 187; then upon reaching the seventh line from the bottom of page 188 will continue on the eighth line from the bottom of page 189 the sense of these pages will be restored.

CAVALRY RECONNAISSANCE

In such state of things lies the cardinal distinction between the old-time and the modern cavalry reconnaissance. The former laid stress on the secret character of observation; as to the application of force, it was considered as an evil which was to be avoided. The Russian field-service regulations of 1904 and 1912 contained instructions to the effect that reconnaissance in force is an action admissible only on condition that it is followed immediately by a decisive fight. The modern cavalry reconnaissance should be based on the opposite principle. Direct observation, even through field-glasses, has become so difficult that every act of cavalry reconnaissance demands application of force. Only by applying force can we make the enemy open fire, push back the weaker parts of their "contour," and take prisoners. In the course of application of that force, we can carry out our observation. The latter consists, speaking in a general way, in finding out the intensiveness of the fire, the presence of enemy artillery, infantry reserves and larger units, the location of fortifications, etc.

Establishment and maintenance of steady contact with the enemy's "contour" is even of greater importance in modern war, because the distribution of infantry masses on the roads lifts the curtain from the strategical plans of the enemy. In one of my previous articles,* the action of General Novikoff's cavalry on the left bank of the Vistula in September, 1914, was described. Thanks to the information secured by the cavalry about the left flank of the main mass of German infantry, the Russian high command learned the plan of the German maneuver and could plan a right counter-maneuver.

Each maneuvering side takes measures not to show its infantry contour, and to that end sends forward its available cavalry. Thus, in front of the infantry line a cavalry front is created, which may have a contour differing from the infantry contour and therefore not showing the high command's intentions. The reconnoitering cavalry should press forward as far as the enemy's infantry contour. To accomplish that task, it is necessary to break or to push through the outer cavalry contour. Such act on its part requires application of a considerable force, for it will be necessary to engage the main body of the enemy cavalry, supported by infantry units and aided by various technical means. Even heavy artillery may take part in these engagements.

To sum up, in the conditions of modern warfare the reconnoitering cavalry has to fight in order to accomplish all its tasks. Cavalry reconnaissance, therefore, has always the character of a reconnaissance in force.

Different principles of reconnaissance work in modern time and in former epochs change the methods of cavalry reconnaissance.

Formerly the detached patrols (patrols sent out far ahead and for a considerable time) were the chief organs of cavalry reconnaissance. At present the patrol likewise is not in a position to do so effectively.

* Cavalry on the Front. CAVALRY JOURNAL, July, 1921.

Let us take another case when other methods of modern intelligence may be substituted for long-distance patrols. It is commonly known of what importance are the so-called "negative" reports—that is, reports establishing the absence of the enemy in a certain area. They are of a special importance on the flanks of the maneuver. In our own country, if the net of telegraph and telephone lines is well developed, information of that kind can be received more quickly and easily by making inquiries through the local telegraph and telephone stations. In the very beginning of the World War, when the telegraph and telephone net in Poland was not destroyed, there were cases when we succeeded in getting replies from stations that were located even in the rear of the enemy cavalry. The checking up of the enemy's absence in a certain district can be accomplished also by sending out in that direction automobiles or motorcycles with side cars.

Display of force is an express condition of the conduct of modern reconnaissance. The idea of "reconnoitering squadrons" appeared in the military literature some thirty years ago; but a reconnoitering squadron was mostly regarded as a reservoir, serving to supply single patrols, and also as an intermediary post of liaison between the forward patrols and the main body of the cavalry. The idea that the reconnoitering squadron should take part in the reconnaissance with its main force was for the greater part neglected. As a result of wrong conception came defective work of the reconnoitering squadron, which was frequently noticeable on our maneuvers before 1914. A reconnoitering squadron used to send out simultaneously a series of independent (detached) patrols charged with very broad tasks. Sometimes, after a certain time, an additional series of patrols followed the first one: then the remaining small nucleus of the reconnoitering squadron became in fact an intermediary post of liaison.

In 1914, just before the war, when I was the commander of the Finland Dragoon Regiment, I had to struggle much against such erroneous ideas. To demonstrate my point, I practiced the following method: Calling out one of the squadron commanders, I used to present for his solution a map problem on the conduct of a reconnoitering squadron. After drawing his attention to the position, when his squadron was deployed in the "fan" of independent patrols, I used to direct all the patrols, as well as the squadron's nucleus, to occupy on the next day, at dawn, their respective positions in the field, and after that to continue the solution of the problem on the terrain with troops. The same morning I used to order one or two other squadrons to act as the enemy. This rôle of such independent patrols has greatly changed. Under the conditions of modern warfare, a patrol can only find the contact with the advance enemy groups. Just imagine a patrol ten to fifteen horses strong. What is its force? Seven to ten rifles. It will be stopped by a similar small party and will not be able to learn anything. To establish a regular contact, work is required not in a single spot, but on a front. The smallest unit which can achieve such results is a squadron. Deploying on a wide front, it is in a position to over-

throw the obstacles in the form of small ambushing groups, which can easily stop a single patrol. In view of the uselessness of independent patrols in the modern epoch, the cavalry leader is obliged to work by means of small attached patrols (patrols sent out short distances), which do not get farther away from the main body of their squadron or unit than five to seven miles; these patrols are charged only with simple, short-timed tasks, and the squadron reinforces them if necessity arises.

No doubt instances will occur when it will be necessary to send out patrols for longer distances. Such was the case during the action of a Grodno Hussar regiment at Yanoff, described in my second article,* in which two instances of detached patrols are mentioned, namely, the sending of Colonel Lazareff's patrol from the village Pikoule to the bridge across the river San near the village Oulanovo, and the sending by me of a patrol, after the fight on the main road, to the bridge across the same river near the village Garasiuki. In both cases the Hussar squadrons were obliged to interrupt fighting in the given direction, because the enemy were speedily retreating, while for us it was necessary to find out whether they would leave any units on the other side of the river San. In both cases we were able to find contact under exceptionally favorable conditions.

Other opportunities undoubtedly may come up in connection with the varying circumstances of a battle. But it is of importance to understand clearly the limited ability, under the actual conditions, of a single patrol; that was frequently forgotten by the superior commanders during the World War. At the same time it should be remembered that the modern technics places at the disposal of the reconnaissance, which is rightly called by the French *a coups de sonde*, a series of new and powerful means. In the first place, there is the airplane, which enables us to discover from a long distance the movement of enemy columns along the roads. In the second place, we have the armored car. Long-distance reconnaissance is conducted along the main roads, mostly macadamized, and cars can easily be sent out in these directions. An armored car of high speed can reconnoiter on an extended area, and without much difficulty overthrow the little obstacles which might hold up a small patrol on tired-out horses. It is true that an armored car cannot keep the contact, but a small latter squadron (or squadrons) was to start its action at a certain hour. It was free to choose its methods, but was guided by my assistant in accordance with instructions given by me before the maneuver. All officers not taking part in the maneuver were appointed by me as umpires in the patrols and posts and directed to watch strictly over the maneuvering officers and men and insure that they take into consideration the power of the modern rifle and machine-gun fire. Very soon after the beginning of the action the commander of the maneuvering squadron would feel the impossibility of directing the reconnais-

* The Cavalry Action at Yanoff. CAVALRY JOURNAL, April, 1921.

back to
bottom
page 187

sance. Those of his detached patrols which had come across enemy patrols and had not tried to disperse them found themselves cut off, unable to get reports through to the squadron commander. As to those patrols that had been held up by the enemy small groups, the squadron commander was not in a position to reinforce them, because there were not enough men left at his disposal. Under such conditions, when the enemy reconnoitering squadron, keeping a strong nucleus, advanced in an important direction, the squadron commander who had deployed his squadron into a "fan" had nothing to do but to cede to his adversary the field of action and to turn into a passive spectator of what was going on.

The commander of a reconnoitering squadron should remember that his unit, in the course of reconnaissance work, must represent an organism the parts of which are in close liaison among themselves, which lets out its feelers and draws them in, lets out new ones, and finally envelops, with all its mass, the section that interests it most and where its feelers are stopped by the enemy. The latest act is a necessary conclusion of its whole work. For that reason its work should be based on the work of the attached patrols, which do not get separated from the main body by long distances, as is always the case with detached patrols. The attached patrols are sent out on strictly determined missions only and do not get away from the nucleus of the squadron farther than six to eight miles. Such a method enables the squadron commander to direct, in fact, the activities of all the parts of the squadron and keep stronger forces in its main body. When the main body of the squadron is brought into action, much use will be made of its machine-guns.

The World War experience shows that the above-noted evolution in the field of cavalry reconnaissance went further still. The strength of a squadron turned out to be sufficient for establishing the first contact only. That is not enough. Cavalry must break its way forward to the infantry contour.

In order to come down on General Samsonoff's army, which had invaded eastern Prussia in the end of August, 1914, the German army commander, General Hindenburg, had to remove nearly all the infantry from the front opposing another Russian army, that of General Rennenkampf, which also had invaded eastern Prussia. That extremely risky operation was carried out under the protection of the German cavalry, supported by small infantry units. As is well known, that maneuver ended successfully for the Germans: three out of five army corps of Samsonoff's army were surrounded. According to a remark of Hindenburg's chief of staff, General Ludendorff, if Rennenkampf had moved forward only one day's march in a southwestern direction, the Germans, in their turn, would have been attacked in the rear and would themselves be in a catastrophic position. But the "contour of the maneuver" had not become clear to Rennenkampf, and when he got the order to advance energetically in a southwestern direction it was already too late; Samsonoff's army was surrounded.

Let us repeat that the cavalry should carry out its reconnaissance by energetically pressing forward not only with its advanced units, but also with its main forces. As soon as the reconnoitering squadrons are stopped, cavalry regiments, brigades, and then divisions should come into action, making use on a large scale of all the modern technical means, including heavy artillery and fast-moving tanks, and taking advantage of the assistance of the attached infantry units.

Without a break of the cavalry contour, *no reconnaissance can be made*. After such a break only will it become possible to feel out the contour of the infantry masses, to locate their flanks, and take prisoners, which act will finally open the eyes of the army and army group headquarters upon the grouping of enemy forces.

Cavalry's reconnaissance work is based, in the first place, on the existence of a close inner liaison among the reconnoitering organs. It seems that it is hardly necessary to stress this fact. But I would like to emphasize that cavalry's reconnaissance work doubly requires the establishing of liaison, first, because in the course of that work the cavalry units have to occupy wider fronts than in battle; secondly, because in the beginning of a maneuver the first information has a special value. In that connection I might refer to two data only: (1) information about the presence of enemy infantry in new directions; (2) information derived from the taking of prisoners belonging to infantry units not yet discovered on the front. These data are of such importance from the strategic point of view that the armies, where I was chief of staff, were instructed to order the reconnoitering units to report information of that kind not only to the immediate superiors of those units, but to telegraph it directly to the intelligence section of the army headquarters as well. On that information very often depended fundamental strategic decisions, which, besides, had to be executed without the smallest delay. The success of every maneuver depends, above all, on the promptness of its execution. The flexibility or suppleness of forms for maneuvering is also a derivative of the promptness with which they can react on the data clearing up the situation.

It is of importance, therefore, to speak in this article about the means of liaison that should be used by different organs of the cavalry reconnaissance.

Patrols and posts communicate with the units which send them out by sending dispatch-bearers. Reports from patrols at a distance of six to eight miles will require one to one and a half hours for delivery. Inasmuch as the attached (short-distance) patrols are charged with strictly limited missions, their reports are for the greatest part of a simple nature. They are an affirmative or negative answer to a question put in a definite way. For instance, Is a certain village, or edge of a wood, or hill occupied by the enemy or is it not? On that account the use of signals can be of great help in the communications between the patrols and the squadron's nucleus. In the Russian army, before

the war as well as during it, too little attention was paid to that. Meanwhile a series of various means are placed at our disposal by modern technical developments, viz: light, heliographs, signal lamps, and all kinds of pyrotechnic devices, such as signal pistols, bombs, rockets. The possibility of using them should not, however, be exaggerated. A wooded terrain excludes the possibility of communicating by means of signals. On the other hand, it would hardly be possible to maintain signal liaison with every patrol sent out. For that reason the organization of a net for signaling should be based on the following plan: the squadron establishes at the longest possible distance from it signal posts, which at the same time are charged with receiving reports from the nearest group of patrols and have to carry out observation of the terrain in their own front.

Should it be necessary for the cavalry commander to send out a detached (long-distance) patrol, he should by all means consider how to facilitate the delivery of dispatches of that patrol. In that respect a special intermediary post of liaison, supplied, if possible, with a motor-cycle, would be useful.

The reconnoitering squadrons cannot make use of signaling for keeping up liaison with the units that send them out; their reports are much too complicated to be transmitted in that way. The best liaison would be by telephone, but we cannot count upon the reconnoitering squadron being in a position to establish a field telephone line behind, in the first place, on account of the great mobility of the reconnoitering squadrons; in the second place, on account of the inadvisability of overloading the cavalry trains. Nevertheless, it is necessary to do the utmost in order to have wire liaison with the reconnoitering squadrons, at least for a part of the distance. With that object in view, the following methods might be adopted: (1) the main body, using its own means, brings up a branch of wire liaison to a certain point in front of it, and the head station of that branch will serve as liaison for one or a few reconnoitering squadrons; (2) the reconnoitering squadron makes use of the existing telephone and telegraph lines, equipping its own head station only. In the period of maneuvering in war the destroying of telephone and telegraph lines in the advanced zone of cavalry's action is limited to destruction of the stations only. As to the wire line, it is cut only here and there, so that the wire remains and the reestablishing of liaison can be effected quickly. To do that it is necessary (1) to have spare telephone and telegraph sets; (2) to know in detail, from official maps and diagrams, the telephone and telegraph net of the district under reconnaissance; (3) to send out from the main body of the reconnoitering unit (because the squadron is not in a position to do that) parties to repair the line of liaison. Withal, it should be borne in mind that the establishment of wire liaison between the reconnoitering squadrons and the unit that sent them out presents much difficulty; we should do our best, therefore, to make that liaison secure by using motor-cycles.

With the further progress of technical development we may expect that in the near future it will become possible to make use of wireless telephones and telegraphs in order to maintain liaison with our squadrons (reconnoitering, advanced, as well as those on duty in the battle line). In that respect the technics puts at our disposal two methods:

(a) The method of transmitting electric waves above the surface of the earth (called by the French T. S. F.). The disadvantage of this method for the squadron is the excessive weight of the sending stations; but, on the other hand, the receiving stations are so light that every squadron could be equipped with one. That permits us to take advantage of wireless telegraphy in the maintaining of liaison forward, and the squadron on duty will be able to receive orders and communications from regimental and divisional headquarters as well as from airplanes sent out for that purpose.

(b) To maintain liaison *backward*, the technics provides us with another kind of wireless communication, called by the French T. P. S.; that is the system in which the surface of the earth is used for transmitting the waves. The features of that kind of liaison are heavy weight of the receiving and light weight of the sending stations. Squadrons supplied with such sending stations can use them for transmitting their messages.

It should be mentioned here that messages sent through any kind of wireless liaison, in spite of further improvements, are subject to the possibility of being intercepted by the enemy. That disadvantage grows in proportion to the shortening of the distance between our stations and the enemy front. Therefore the use of a cipher or a special code becomes indispensable. To make it difficult for the enemy to interpret the cipher or code, the latter should be different in every division and should be changed daily.

The liaison of regiments and brigades with divisional headquarters (and of divisional headquarters with the cavalry corps headquarters, if the cavalry corps has been formed) should be established, as a general rule, by wire. To that end use should be made of the existing permanent lines as well as the field lines built by the troops. It is worth remembering that the German cavalry used for field lines a very thin and light wire, which it did not remove, but turned over to the telegraph troops marching behind, getting new reels to replace the used ones. Side by side with the wire liaison, advantage must be taken on a large scale of motor-cycles and automobiles. Light stations for wireless telegraphy above the surface of the earth (for receiving and sending messages), as well as receiving stations for wireless liaison on the surface of the earth, will be put in practice by the regimental, brigade, and divisional headquarters more and more.

The regimental, brigade, and divisional headquarters organizing liaison must consider the following rule as a fundamental one: The larger army unit has to equip as many outgoing liaison lines as possible, in order to enable the smaller subordinate unit to save its means for the occasion of its deployment

in battle. In other words, we must follow the rule of moving the liaison forward instead of expecting the units which are detached to establish liaison behind them; yet the Russian field regulations advised the latter way, which was not right.

Liaison between the cavalry corps and the army headquarters is established by wire; but the Morse apparatus is not capacious enough to maintain that liaison. Apparatus is required on the order of the Hughes apparatus, which was used by us in the war for equipping lines between the corps and army headquarters. The volume of communication by telegraph between the cavalry corps and the army is very large. It consists not only of operation orders and of reports, but also of quartermaster and administrative orders. An overburdening of the telegraph can be avoided by a well-organized postal service by means of automobiles and motor-cycles. Nevertheless, the volume of the telegraphic communication between a cavalry corps and an army reaches, as I can report from my experience in the World War, 20,000 words daily.

Considering the question of liaison, we cannot overlook the newest type of liaison, namely, well-developed aviation. Liaison by airplanes is a very tempting thing. However, taking into consideration the great need for airplanes for air reconnaissance, it should be borne in mind that they should be used for transmission of orders and messages only when such transmission cannot be carried out by other means. But there is a new kind of liaison in which the airplane cannot be replaced. Airplanes sent out by divisions and army corps, by flying above the troops occupying the battle line and getting certain signals from them, quickly determine the outline of our front. The signals are made either by identifying panels spread by squadrons or regimental headquarters or by colored flares. If regiments and squadrons are supplied with receiving wireless stations, the airplane, flying above, can put questions to those units, to which questions they can give answers by combining in a prearranged manner the signal panels or the colored flares. Such communication, of course, makes possible short conversations only. For instance, the airplane telegraphs the question, "Where are you?" and in reply to it certain colored flares are lighted. The very fact that such a new kind of liaison enables the leader to be quickly informed of the exact outline of his front is of the greatest importance for reconnaissance and especially for the conduct of the battle.



Editorial Comment

ANNUAL MEETING OF THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

THE ANNUAL MEETING was held January 17, at the Army and Navy Club, Washington, D. C. The attendance of nearly fifty members was very gratifying, and the remarks of the President, Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, and Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, cavalry, were received with great interest. The principal business of the meeting was the adoption of a new constitution and the election of officers. A full report of the meeting was mailed to each member of the Association, except that mailing was not made individually to officers serving with cavalry regiments or at the Cavalry School.

NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE CORPS REPRESENTED ON THE EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

IN SYMPATHY with the plans of the War Department to create an Army of the United States of which the National Guard and the Reserve Corps shall be components, each of these important branches is now represented on the Executive Council of the Association, which, in accordance with the provisions of the new constitution, has been enlarged.

Brigadier-General John P. Wood, Pennsylvania National Guard, has a long record of service, as follows: Massachusetts Institute of Technology Cadet Corps, 1878-82; private, sergeant, 1st sergeant, 1st Lieutenant, Captain, Pennsylvania National Guard Cavalry, 1897-1911; Major, Q. M. C., 1st Brigade, Pennsylvania National Guard, 1911-12; Major, 1st Squadron Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard, 1912-1914; Colonel, 1st Pennsylvania Cavalry, 1914-1917; Colonel, 1st Pennsylvania Cavalry, 103d Engineers, and 101st Cavalry, National Guard, in U. S. Service, 1917-18; Colonel, Q. M. C., U. S. A. Assistant to the Acting Quartermaster General of the Army, 1918-19, honorably discharged, January, 1919; Colonel, 1st Pennsylvania Cavalry, 1919-20; Colonel and Inspector-General, Pennsylvania National Guard, 1920-21. Brigadier-General, Pennsylvania National Guard, 1921. From August 6, 1921, commanding 52d Cavalry Brigade, Pennsylvania National Guard.

Lieutenant-Colonel John Phillip Hill, Cavalry Reserve Corps, was a private in Battery A, Massachusetts Volunteer Militia, 1904-1906; 2d Lieutenant, Company D, Maryland National Guard, 1906-1907; 1st Lieutenant, Company L, Maryland National Guard, 1907-1909; Captain, 4th Infantry, Maryland National Guard, 1909-1910; Major, Maryland National Guard, 1910-1916; Major, J. A. G. Dept., Federal Service, Provisional Division of National Guard

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

on the Mexican Border, 1916; Major, 29th Division, Judge Advocate and Acting Division Inspector, 1917-1918; Lieutenant-Colonel, J. A. and Assistant G-3, 8th Army Corps, 1918-19; Lieutenant-Colonel, Casual Officer, 1919. He was commissioned a Lieutenant-Colonel, Cavalry Reserve Corps, March 31, 1921, and assigned to command of 306th Cavalry, 62d Division (Organized Reserves). He was decorated with the Croix de Guerre with silver star (gassed at Verdun). Colonel Hill is Member of Congress from the Third Maryland District (Baltimore).

ARMY PAY LEGISLATION

THE PROGRESS of pay legislation has been marked by so many proposed changes and there have been so many conflicting claims to adjust, that even at this writing it is not possible to predict the outcome. The preparation of a bill that should reconcile the conflicting interests of the several groups in all the services was, however, concluded on the last of February, and a study of the result made it at once apparent that the members of the joint committee of Congress and the joint committee of the services had consummated a difficult task in a most creditable manner. It is not possible to frame a pay bill that will satisfy in the last degree all members of the services. But the bill now being presented to Congress is the result of painstaking study, based upon a determination to provide an adequate and equitable compensation with due regard to the peculiarities of service life. It has unquestionably satisfied these conditions in a large measure, and it is believed that, if it is enacted as it stands, it will win the general appreciation of the services.

It was considered desirable to acquaint members of the Association with the provisions of the proposed bill in its final form, together with the principles underlying its construction. To this end a pamphlet was prepared and distributed March 4 to every cavalry garrison and to all members of the Association (in the Regular Army) on detached service.

THE HAPPY CAVALRYMAN

THIS IS the title that seemed most apt for the cheerful individual who decorates the frontispiece. He is presented here as a type. He has atmosphere—atmosphere with a high percentage of ozone. He abounds with cheerfulness, engendered in the healthy environment of a corps d'elite, with energy and vitality and efficiency, a compound that harks back to familiar origins—a good mess, a good commander, a vigorous mounted drill.

We are enduring a trying period. Our war expansion and peace contraction have left a legacy of problems and loose ends, if not actual evils. We have an infinitude of things to do. We must continuously and ceaselessly get educated for one thing. Then we must organize an army of the United States and educate it, by correspondence course and otherwise. We have

EDITORIAL COMMENT

R. O. T. C. and C. M. T. C. to develop and maintain, the border to patrol, and some thousands of acres of cantonments to conserve, just to mention a few of our jobs.

We are doing these things the best way we know. But, while barely under way upon the task of reorganization, upon the development of the most comprehensive and mature scheme of national defense the country has ever had, we are hamstrung in the first lap by a crippling reduction. Further reductions threaten. We have, moreover, lost all but a remnant of the one-time army of civilian specialists and employees, skilled and unskilled.

In a word, we are attempting a record-breaking output, and our means for the task are steadily diminishing. They are diminishing faster than the increasing zeal and increasing capacity of individuals can make good. The present is no time for carping and thoughtless criticism. But the question is inevitable: Are we thinning out our product?

Each must seek his own answer, based upon the particular activity in which he is engaged. But one common criterion may be suggested. As long as our efforts result in *soldiers*—soldiers of the type of *The Happy Cavalryman*—then we are keeping to the track. No need to define or describe *soldier!* Turn back to the frontispiece and gaze at him.

BACK NUMBERS OF THE JOURNAL WANTED

REQUEST has been received for a copy of number 110 of Volume XXVI (1916) and a copy of number 115 of Volume XXVII (1917). The U. S. Cavalry Association will be glad to purchase these numbers from any source.

INDEX OF VOLUME XXX

THE Index of Volume XXX is ready, and will be mailed upon application without cost.

NOT SO SLOW

HE WAS a very young officer who looked as if he should be wearing knee breeches, says *Everybody's*. One day, when his company was up for inspection at the training camp, one of the men remarked in a tone of deep sarcasm, "And a little child shall lead them." "The man that said that, step forward," was the immediate command. The entire company stepped out and repeated the quotation. The lieutenant looked up and down the line. "Dismissed," he announced shortly. The men thought that they had got the better of him, but not for long; for that night at retreat, when the orders for the following day were read, they heard: "There will be a 25-mile hike tomorrow with full equipment, and a little child shall lead them—on a damned good horse."

Topics of the Day

MARCHING REMOUNTS

FORT D. A. RUSSELL, WYOMING, February 27, 1922.

THE EDITOR CAVALRY JOURNAL,
Washington, D. C.

SIR: The following account of a trip I made last year may be of interest to the members of the Cavalry Association:

Colonel Thomas B. Dugan, 15th Cavalry, mentioned to me some time during the month of February, 1921, that the regiment would probably make a hike to Fort Riley, Kansas, starting in May, and that we needed 250 remounts, which couldn't be shipped on account of lack of funds. I suggested that if he would authorize it I would take a detachment overland to Fort Robinson, about 250 miles, and bring back the remounts. About the middle of March authority was granted and the trip was successfully made.

The detail consisted of 41 enlisted men, one junior officer, and myself. We took eleven escort wagons, a light wagon, and two saddle horses. The wagons carried a full load of forage, portions of which we *cached* with ranchers at camps, to be used on the return trip. Forage for the last two days of the return trip was sent out from the post and met us. Forage carried from here took us to Fort Robinson and provided in the *caches* forage for the fourth, fifth, and sixth days of the return trip. Forage obtained at Fort Robinson carried us to our first *cache*.

The return trip was made in eight days without lay-over, as the weather in this region is very uncertain during the month of April and I did not wish to take chances of a severe storm. We averaged better than thirty miles a day. The first day of the return trip was naturally the worst. We figured on an early start, but, as usual, getting away from the post was hard work. There were to be five picket lines, on which the 250 remounts were tied, two abreast. A team of mules with a swing-bar were hitched to the front end of the line, the near end of the line being passed through the ring of the pole of an escort wagon and tied to the axle of the wagon.

We got under way about 8:30 a. m., the first camp being about 28 miles out. The horses were green, the men mostly recruits—greener. The horses were tied on the line by a sheep-shank knot, which we attempted to teach all hands, but of course it was frequently poorly done and a great many got loose. Some of these were caught easily; others started back to Fort Robinson. However, all were caught up.

The lines, with two abreast, were too long for the crooked roads, as in making the turns the lead horses pulled those in the middle into the corner

TOPICS OF THE DAY

posts or telephone posts at turns, and once hung up a line on a "Look out for the cars" sign, and, what was more interesting, I could hear a train coming, which was hidden from us by a bend in the road, at no great distance. We did the only feasible thing—broke the sign down—and managed to clear the track only a few seconds before the train passed. I decided to try shorter lines the next day by putting the horses four abreast. Two horses were tied closely together, and then the inside horses tied opposite. This system was entirely satisfactory.

We arrived at our first camp at 6:00 p. m. Overhead picket lines were put up. The horses were untied from the lead lines, watered, and tied on the picket lines. Grain was then fed in feed-bags. None of the remounts had ever seen one, so this took some time. The cold rain of the day turned to snow—a regular blizzard. The remounts had all been clipped on account of lice. They were unaccustomed to being tied on picket lines. Miserable, cold, and thoroughly unhappy, they fought and squealed all night. The ground being sandy, the picket lines continually became loose; picket pins pulled up, tripods fell down, and horses got loose. We were up most of the night untangling them. However, we lost none, and the next night we solved the picket-line proposition. We halted three escort wagons abreast of each other about 40 yards apart, set their brakes, tied one end of a picket line to the bed of one wagon, ran it through the spokes of the middle wagon, made a rope pulley at the other end, and, with three or four pulling, fastened it to the wheel of the last wagon. This gave a steady, tight line, which could be raised with tripods where necessary.

The second day was much easier; the shorter lines, with the horses four abreast, went along nicely. I had one man riding one of the lead mules, driving his team thusly, one man driving the escort wagon and a non-commissioned officer and two other men assigned to each line; they rode alongside of the lines to assist in making turns and to untangle horses when necessary. They soon learned, when the line was forced to halt, to ride in and hold the line up. The lead team would sometimes slacken; the driver of the wagon then set his brakes and tightened the line in that way. In two or three days the wagon mules had slack traces most of the time, and we trotted gaily along where the roads permitted.

The work was hard. We had breakfast at 4:30 a. m. and were on the road by 6:30 a. m. We watered once a day, just before feeding, in the afternoon. The weather was cold and, as usual, windy—it was far from a joy-ride—and yet the men seemed to enjoy it. The remounts lost a little in flesh, but did not suffer in the least. We lost none and injured none seriously—a few kicks only. Most of the men received a few kicks, myself included. One of them was rather painfully bitten; we had to pry the horse loose; but on the whole it was a thoroughly satisfactory trip.

The forage worked out well and we had no sick horses. When the horses were received they were green. When we arrived at Fort D. A. Russell they were ready to be ridden.

I believe that this method of obtaining remounts is better than shipping by rail, where distances are not too great.

ROY W. HOLDERNESS,
Major, 13th Cavalry.

CHIEF OF CAVALRY MAKING LONG TOUR OF INSPECTION

MAJOR-GENERAL W. A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry, accompanied by Colonel George Vidmer, executive officer, left Washington on February 28, on an inspection trip which will take them through all cavalry posts of the United States and to all R. O. T. C. cavalry units through the South and West. The trip may require two months and possibly three. During General Holbrook's absence, Colonel F. C. Marshall will be in charge of the office. Following is the itinerary:

Fort Oglethorpe, Ga., March 1 to 5; Fort Benning, Ga., March 6 to 7; College Station, Texas, March 10 to 11; Fort Brown, Texas, March 12 to 15; Camp McAllen, Texas, March 16; Fort Ringgold, Texas, March 17; Fort McIntosh, Texas, March 18 to 22; Fort Sam Houston, Texas, March 22 to 24; Fort Clark, Texas, March 25 to 26; Eagle Pass, Texas, March 27; Del Rio, Texas, March 28; Marfa, Texas, March 29 to 31; Fort Bliss, Texas, March 31 to April 10; Douglas, Ariz., April 10 to 12; Fort Huachuca, Ariz., April 13 to 17; Tucson, Ariz., April 18 to 19; Camp Hearn, Calif., April 21 to 22; Presidio of Monterey, Calif., April 23 to 26; Presidio of San Francisco, Calif., April 27 to 28; Corvallis, Oregon, April 29 to 30; Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., May 3 to 7; Fort Riley, Kans., May 8 to 15; Fort Des Moines, Iowa, May 15 to 18; Fort Snelling, Minn., May 19 to 20; Fort Sheridan, Ill., May 21 to 23; return to Washington, D. C., May 24.

GENERAL DE LAGARENNE ON THE FUTURE OF EQUESTRIAN SPORTS

(From "L'Echo de Paris," January 6, 1922)

GENERAL DE LAGARENNE, president of the Union of Societies of France for Military Equitation, recently stated his opinion as to civil and military equitation and the rôles which they should continue to play in national activities. The following is a short synopsis of his declarations:

"Because the late war took an abnormal form and trench warfare, with its uninterrupted front, rapidly followed upon open warfare, certain critics have thought that the cavalry would henceforth be of no use. This is a grave and serious mistake. During the first encounters

in 1914 our cavalry attained such a superiority over the German cavalry that the latter did not even attempt a pursuit when the French armies were in retreat. If great masses of German cavalry had thrown themselves on our defeated armies at Charleroi, would the magnificent recovery at the Marne have been possible? And if, when the armistice was concluded and the German army was on the eve of an irreparable defeat, our cavalry had been able to follow up the pursuit, peace would have been signed on enemy territory. Hence we shall always need horsemen and drivers as well, for it is indispensable that the infantry be followed by the mounted artillery in all the phases of a combat—a task that is impossible to motor artillery.

"The preparation of young men for service with mounted troops, such as cavalry, artillery, and supply troops, is, for this reason, more than ever a measure of prime necessity. We must get the greatest possible number of young men into the ranks of the army who are not only accustomed to physical exercises and familiar with firing, but who know how to manage a horse. This aim is being pursued by the Union of Societies of France for Military Equitation, which is a national federation of societies for preparation for the service of mounted arms. Founded on November 30, 1903, and approved by the Minister of War on April 5, 1909, its object is to promote the foundation of societies of military preparation and improvement, to devote its attention to the mounted arms of the service, to federalize these societies, to help them in their efforts, to arrange conferences, technical meetings, festivities, competitions and all kinds of sportive tests.

"The union extends its activities not only to cities and large centers, but to less important rural districts, to the inhabitants of the country, in order that they, too, may derive the advantages of equestrian instruction before entering upon their military service.

"The union, moreover, does not limit its tasks to military preparation. As a complement thereof, it endeavors to improve officers and non-commissioned officers of the reserve by encouraging their training through the organization of large sportive events, such as long-distance reconnaissance, sword-fencing, etc.

"This, in substance, is what the Union of Societies of France for Military Equitation is doing. Although assisted by the government and high personages, yet it is necessary that all officers of the reserve belonging to mounted troops, all those who take an interest in horsebreeding, and all enthusiasts of equestrian sports should support it, in order that its influence may be spread still farther. The union is working for the army and for the country."

CAVALRY DISCUSSED BY ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION

AT THE Royal United Service Institution, January 18, some interesting statements were made by General Lord Horne and Lieutenant-General Sir P. W. Chetwode, Deputy Chief of the Imperial General Staff, as to the position of the cavalry in the future. The occasion was a lecture by Colonel-Command-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

ant G. A. Weir, commanding the 3d Cavalry Brigade, on the cavalry campaign in Palestine. The operations were described by the lecturer as "one of the most complete victories which ever fell to the lot of a British commander to achieve." The outstanding lesson of the campaign, in his opinion, was that, where no physical obstacle existed, cavalry can charge infantry and machine-guns in position with every hope of success. He could not help thinking that any campaign which took place in the next decade was more likely to resemble the campaign in Palestine than in France, and that, until a sufficient quantity of machines capable of going anywhere were produced, the country must rely upon the mounted man to achieve decisive results in war.

Lieutenant-General Sir P. W. Chetwode urged that infantrymen and cavalrymen must try to pull together and consider how they were going to beat the next enemy they were up against. It was very natural that the men who went through the terrors of the Western Front should be obsessed by them, but, even if the war on the Western Front was repeated in ten or fifteen years, it would not take the same form. No general staff or nation would be content to go into another war of trenches. All the best brains of the world—mechanical, scientific, and military—were devoting themselves to making that impossible. The country which thought it could go into trenches while it made a new army would see its end. No man living knew what the army division of the next ten years would be like. Whatever it might be, it would be harder hitting and swifter moving. Nothing had yet definitely displaced mounted troops which would be able to use mechanically drawn artillery, tanks, and airplanes for their assistance, and so become very much more powerful than in the last war. It was only by a war of maneuver that we would win in the future. In view of the possibility of attack from the air, it would not be possible to mass cavalry in the field, or even a battalion of infantry. Commanders would have to time their punch by giving orders from such enormous distances as were never before dreamt of. That showed that the cavalry had to sit up and take notice.

CAVALRY PONTOON BRIDGE

A LIGHT TYPE of pontoon bridge is ordered to be developed for cavalry divisions, with a minimum roadway width of 9 feet 6 inches, capable of supporting a maximum single-axle load of 5,000 pounds and a maximum two-axle load of 9,000 pounds. Vehicles which are indispensable to the combat operations of a cavalry division will be limited to the weights above prescribed, for the vehicle and its load.

New Books Reviewed

The Book Department of the U. S. Cavalry Association can furnish any of the new books reviewed or referred to in this department, and will give prompt attention to any orders submitted by the readers of the Journal.

WITH THE RUSSIAN ARMY—1914-1917. By Major-General Sir Alfred Knox, K. C. B., C. M. G. Two volumes, 58 illustrations, 19 maps. E. P. Dutton & Co., New York. (Price, \$15.00.)

This very attractive work is written by the British attaché with the Russian Army, and treats more fully and authoritatively of the Russian participation in the World War than any other work we have seen. The volumes are beautifully printed and illustrated and the set makes a notable addition to any military library.

The disaster to the army of Samsonov, in east Prussia, is graphically described, the author having been with the headquarters of this ill-fated army. There are several references to the action of the cavalry, of which the following are typical:

"Hindenburg had ordered the 1st German corps to storm Usdau by 10 A. M., on August 26th. A Russian cavalry division penetrating to the rear of the German corps caused some confusion in its transport and the attempt on Usdau failed."

"There was already a considerable interval between the right of the 1st Corps and the left of the 2d Division. The 2d Division and the Guards Regiment with it were overwhelmed, and the enemy's cavalry, several batteries of artillery and machine-guns on motor-cars, poured through the gap to reoccupy Neidenburg and so sever the most important line of communications."

The picture presented of the defeated and dejected Samsonov, amid a few of his staff officers, in the midst of the debacle, "stumbling through the woods, moving hand in hand to avoid losing one another in the darkness," has a tragic vividness that fixes itself upon the memory.

A chapter is devoted to the observations of the author while accompanying the 14th Cavalry Division on a raid made in September and October, 1914, in conjunction with four other cavalry divisions. This raid was made with the object of cutting the Austrian communications and forcing a retirement of the enemy. It failed of accomplishment, but the operations are interesting and instructive.

The author's comment on the lack of Cavalry with the Guard Corps is interesting: "We have no divisional cavalry with the Guard Corps. The General insists on maintaining Mannerheim's Independent Guard Cavalry Brigade intact. It is true that this particular brigade is of too good cavalry to split up between infantry divisions, but he could easily apply for Cossacks. It is really disgraceful that we have lost touch again. *The men were crying aloud for cavalry when they got the Austrians on the run, but there was none forthcoming.*"

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

HANDBOOK FOR THE NATIONAL GUARDSMAN IN RANKS. By Major John Adams Bechtel. (Single copies, \$1.00, postpaid.)

This is a useful manual for the soldier in the ranks, which should supply his needs adequately. The book makes available for the individual soldier the basic knowledge which he should possess and should lessen the work of the organization commander in training recruits by encouraging study on the soldier's part. Among the excellent selections for this manual, which is of convenient pocket size, are: rules for salutes and courtesies, illustrations and directions how to pack the saddle, care of public animals, care of leather equipment, the description, etc., of the automatic pistol, the Browning automatic rifle, loadings and firings, extracts from mounted drill, wire entanglements, rifle practice, and many other subjects of equal importance.

THE STORY OF THE FOURTH ARMY IN THE BATTLES OF THE HUNDRED DAYS, AUGUST 8 TO NOVEMBER 11, 1918. By Major-General Sir Archibald Montgomery, K. C. M. G., C. B., General Staff, 4th Army. Two volumes. Hodder & Stoughton, London. (Price, \$20.00 net.)

This splendid military history is certain to be of much interest to many American readers because of the fact that the American II Corps, composed of the 27th and 30th Divisions, formed part of the British 4th Army during the period covered. The second volume is of maps, plates, and sketches.

To the cavalryman this work is specially interesting for its account of the operations of the British Cavalry Corps August 8, 9, and 10, especially its dashing work in the main attack on the opening day of the Battle of Amiens, and on October 8, 9, and 10, 1918, while they were practically leading the advance of the 4th Army. During these three days' operations the cavalry corps captured over 500 prisoners, 10 guns, and 60 machine-guns, while their casualties amounted to 7 officers and 77 other ranks killed and 41 officers and 479 other ranks wounded or missing. The Cavalry Corps, commanded by Lieutenant-General Sir C. T. McM. Kavanagh, was composed of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Cavalry Divisions, each division comprising three cavalry brigades, an artillery brigade, engineer, signal and auxiliary troops. Each brigade comprised three regiments, a battery of six guns, a machine-gun squadron, and signal troop. The corps troops included air service, tanks, bridging park, motor transport, and communication troops.

NEW BOOKS RECEIVED

MODERN CAVALRY. By Major Malcolm Wheeler-Nicholson, U. S. Cavalry. The Macmillan Company, New York. Price, \$2.00.

AFTER THE WAR. By Colonel Repington. Houghton Mifflin Co., Cambridge, Mass. Price, \$5.00.

THE MACHINES HAVE ADVANCED. By Lieutenant-Colonel Giles Bishop, Jr., U. S. M. C. Illustrated. The Penn Publishing Co., Philadelphia. Price, \$1.75.

THE QUARTERMASTER CORPS in the year 1917, in the World War. By Major-General Henry G. Sharpe, U. S. Army. The Century Co., New York.

RESERVE OFFICERS' EXAMINER. Published by U. S. Infantry Association, Washington, D. C. Cloth, 260 pages. (Price, \$2.00.)

Foreign Military Journals

Revue Militaire Générale, November, 1921.

In the course of an article by Captain Kuntz on the strategy of the operations in the east (of France), mention is made of the disappearance of the French cavalry at a moment when it was greatly needed to preserve contact between the First and Second Armies and to cover the infantry flank. This is accounted for by the impractical tactics of the French cavalry, which, intoxicated by the offensive spirit of the existing regulations, vigorously pursued the German cavalry wherever it appeared, and were led by the latter, who did not allow themselves to become seriously engaged, into positions held by infantry and machine-guns. Men and horses were rapidly used up in these encounters. "Ten, fifteen, twenty hours in the saddle were not infrequent, and as a total result very little useful information. Modern warfare demands a cavalry employment more practical, if perhaps less brilliant." The writer decries the charge, pure and simple, and urges the use of deception rather than of force. The missions of cavalry are exclusively, he insists, "To reconnoiter the enemy. To co-operate in the liaison work which cavalry alone will render elastic."

Revue Militaire Générale, December, 1921.

The Breaking up of the Russian Front, by General Martchenko, is a vivid series of pictures of the effect of the Russian Revolution on the troops, and the episodes of this narration are depicted with such brutal directness as to call to mind revolutionary scenes from the pen of Victor Hugo or the barbarian warfare described by Sienkiewicz.

In *The Recasting of the Regulations and Our Doctrine of War*, by Lucius, the following is stated with respect to cavalry instructions in force at the end of 1916:

In order to exploit the success obtained by the other arms, prevent the defeated enemy from reorganizing, and to turn his retreat into rout, cavalry must adapt its methods of combat to conditions of modern combat characterized by fire-power. The missions which it will have to fill in modern battle are the following:

1. Immediate exploitation of success and liaison with the attacking armies.
2. Distant operations of exploitation for the execution of which large cavalry units must count only on their own force.

The entrance into action of large units of cavalry will take place when a break has been made in the enemy defensive system or when the latter have commenced a retirement on a wide front. It will then take up the pursuit with the constant object of reaching and outflanking the main body and beating it to the position to which they are attempting to retire. This necessitates a *plan of pursuit* formulated by the army commander and comprising three phases: 1st, Assembly preparatory to crossing the lines; 2d, Execution of the pursuit; 3d, Combat.

These instructions point clearly to a belief in the important rôle which cavalry may play in the exploitation of success, thanks to its mobility and fire-power.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Revue Militaire Générale, January, 1922.

The leading article, by General Robillot, is entitled, "What Cavalry Do We Need?" The author asks pointedly the question: Are there indispensable missions which only cavalry can fulfill in modern warfare?

The screening of mobilization and exploration are first considered. While some brilliant officers profess that aviation will accomplish these important tasks, the writer calls attention to the fact that aviation is effective only by day, when the weather is favorable and the sky is not too low. Moreover, the air service only discovers what the enemy will permit to be seen. This was proved by the German secret concentration before the great offensives of 1918. Then, it is not sufficient to discover only main bodies. Identification by prisoners or documents is necessary.

The writer then considers briefly the use of armored automobiles and tanks, but concludes that these will not suffice for this rôle.

"Only one arm today, the cavalry, can go far and fast over all country, with powerful means of fire—that is to say, combat. It alone can assure its own security, and its supporting troops, if there be any, can fight and take prisoners. Aviation and T. S. F. (wireless telegraphy) will enable it to transmit its information almost instantaneously. Whatever the weather, the cavalry can not only assure the security of our mobilization, but will hinder the enemy concentrations."

The author next considers the use of cavalry on the service of security at a distance, and concludes that cavalry alone can assure the safe accomplishment of strategic maneuvers. Other sections are devoted to operations on the flanks and in the enemy's rear, intervention in battle, the cavalry strategic reserve, the pursuit, cavalry against cavalry, modes of action, mobility, fire power of cavalry, war organization, large units, and cavalry combat against infantry.

In this number, also, Colonel Monsenergue has contributed the first installment of what promises to be a valuable and interesting series, entitled "1914—The French Cavalry During the First Three Months of the Campaign." This installment comprises a foreword; Chapter I, "The Concentrations"; Chapter II, "The Cavalry Corps of General Sordet in Belgium."

The Cavalry Journal (British), January, 1922.

The leading article is an appreciation of Field Marshal His Royal Highness Arthur, Duke of Connaught and Strathearn. In this number also appear Field Marshal Haig's address on the disbanding of the cavalry regiments at Canterbury (see *Topics of the Day*, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL (U. S.), January) and Queen Alexandra's farewell order to her 19th Hussars. Two articles deal with the Yeomanry Cavalry, which in the British scheme of defense occupy much the same place as our National Guard Cavalry and which is suffering a considerable reduction in the present reorganization.

Colonel Commandant Pitman surveys briefly and in outline the operations of British cavalry in 1914 on the western front. As there were 17 regiments with the British Expeditionary Force in 1914 and all of them were actively employed, it is obvious that the story of their work cannot be fully told in a dozen pages. Interesting mention is made of the charge of the 2d Cavalry Brigade north of Audregnies and the cavalry delaying action fought at Le Cateau. The charge at Audregnies was the one in which the 9th Lancers.

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

charging German infantry to check their advance, fetched up on a wire fence. The author states with respect to the delaying action and to the maneuver of Sordet's French cavalry, which by a long night march in rear of the British army gained the outer flank and put in an attack on the German right flank at the critical moment: "This operation of the French cavalry, the good work done by General Allenby on the left flank, and the position accidentally taken up by General Gough on the right, furnish one of the finest examples on record of the value of cavalry in a big infantry engagement."

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, November, 1921.

The interesting article in this number, from a cavalryman's standpoint, is "Cavalry in Open Warfare, Illustrated by the Operations Leading up to the Occupation of Mosul in November, 1918," by Major C. B. Dashwood Strettell.

This account of the operations of the last two weeks of the war on the Mesopotamian front is a valuable contribution to the history of cavalry work in the World War. In these operations two British cavalry brigades participated actively, made long and trying marches, often without water for long periods, kept up reconnaissance, and were in many hard engagements.

"In the success of these operations the two brigades of cavalry were no small factor, and as a study of 'how cavalry should be handled' possibly these operations are as brilliant an example as history can find."

The action at Hadraniyeh is an excellent study of cavalry combat. In this engagement, against a force numbering at least 1,000 men with guns and machine-guns, the 7th Cavalry Brigade put up a hard fight, lasting from dawn until early afternoon, and by a charge against the bluff on which the enemy were entrenched, followed by a scramble up the bluff dismounted, with bayonets fixed, and supported by charges delivered in the flanks and a barrage from the accompanying horse artillery, the brigade drove the enemy out of his entrenched and strong position and took the majority prisoners.

Another lesser action, at Qaiyarah, demonstrates the value of bold leadership: "The leading squadron was under the command of Major Bromilow, D. S. O., 14th Lancers. As he neared the copse on the river bank, heavy fire opened at 500 yards' range. He at once 'charged' and killed and wounded many of the enemy. His losses were one man severely wounded and twenty-nine horses. A moment's hesitation on his part would have meant that the squadron would have been wiped out."

This account offers also a number of instances of air service coöperation with the cavalry and air-service reconnaissance, instances which indicate that there is need for much peace-time training in this respect.

Militär-Wochenblatt, No. 27, 1921.

In this number appears an article by Lieutenant-General von Poseck, inspector of cavalry, in criticism of the articles by Brégard, Daubert, and de Taragon in the July-August and September-October, 1921, numbers of *Revue de Cavalerie*. He refers to these writings as attempts to discredit the performance of the German cavalry, and by way of proving the falseness of their assertions he cites fourteen instances in which French cavalry refused to accept combat with the German cavalry units and sixteen instances in which the German cavalry made successful mounted attacks.

Polo

At the annual meeting of the Polo Association the army circuit was abolished. This, it is believed, will work to the advantage of the army for reasons of economy and efficiency. The army teams now, instead of playing among themselves, will contend with civilian teams to a greater extent.

FIRST CAVALRY

The regimental polo team played the decisive game of the series with the 10th Cavalry team October 14, 1921, at Fort Huachuca, Ariz., winning by a score of 11 to 8. October 16 a special game was played with the same team, resulting in a score of 16 to 3, in favor of the 1st Cavalry. November 16 the polo team played a game with the 1st Cavalry Division Headquarters team at this station; result: 5 to 4 in favor of the Division. A series of two games was played by the regimental team with the 10th Cavalry team, the first on November 11; result: 9 to 2 in favor of 1st Cavalry; second game, played November 13; result: 16 to 1 in favor of 1st Cavalry.

Very interesting games are held every Sunday afternoon, generally between first and second teams, playing six periods; and four periods between the Douglas Country Club team, consisting of Douglas citizens and "The Four Horsemen," a team made up of embryonic Milburn Deveroux among the younger lieutenants of the camp.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY

Polo in the regiment was given a big boost by the arrival of Major C. P. Chandler from the 17th Cavalry. Major Chandler was elected team captain, and systematic training of ponies and practice games were started. A first-class team has been developed, which easily won the exhibition game which opened the winter tournament at Del Monte on January 23. Our opponents were three of the regular Del Monte team and one officer from the H. M. S. *Raleigh*. Score: 7-2. On January 31 the strong San Mateo four was defeated by the score of 12-10 in the first round of the Junior Handicap games. The regimental team won the trophy in the series by the defaulting of the Del Monte Juniors. On January 25 the regimental "B" team defeated a team from H. M. S. *Raleigh*. Score: 20-2. On February 1 two of our "A" team with two of our "B" team won from a picked four of San Mateo and Del Monte by the score of 9-5. On February 3 the regimental team lost the Senior Handicap trophy to the Del Monte team by the score of 13-12. Throughout the tournament Major Chandler has played wonderful polo at No. 2, being brilliantly assisted by Captain C. A. Wilkinson at No. 3. Captain J. C. Rogers, though new at the game, is developing into a strong back. The team has been greatly handicapped by poor mounts, practically all our ponies having been developed from troop horses. All we need to put the cavalry in the front rank of poloists on this coast is good ponies. We are trying to get authority to get some Parker Ranch horses from Hawaii, which are easily the best and cheapest horses the Government can buy for that purpose.

At the present time the regimental team is in Pasadena to participate in the tournament there; then they are to go to Coronado for the tournament. No funds were available from the Government, so the entire expense of this trip had to be borne by the Regimental Polo Association and the players themselves.

We are very anxious to have some competition within the army, and hope that we may in future participate in tournaments in which other posts and regiments are represented.

POLO

TWELFTH CAVALRY

The two squadron polo teams of the regiment have gotten down to real work during the past three months. Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold each have a good field, and each team has a number of enthusiastic players who have been giving much attention to the game, although Fort Brown has been handicapped during January and February by weather conditions which have not permitted regular practice.

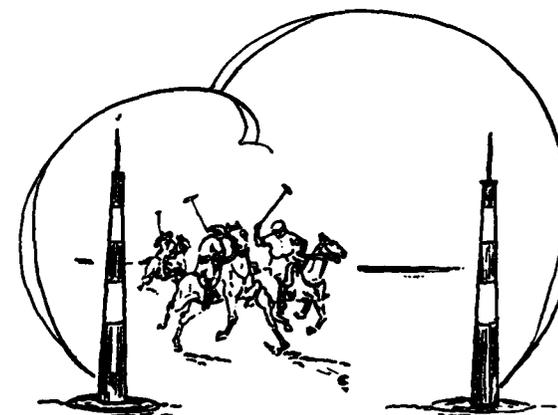
The 2d Squadron team came down from Fort Ringgold and played the 1st Squadron at Fort Brown on January 2d, the score resulting in 7 to 3 in favor of Fort Brown. The 1st Squadron team was composed of Captains C. B. Byrd, C. A. Pierce and H. F. Rathjen and 1st Lieutenant H. G. Maddox, while the 2d Squadron team had the following members: Captains Winfred Houghton, Raymond C. Blatt, Conrad G. Wall, and James W. Ewing.

On February 4 the 2d Squadron team was victor in a game played at Fort Ringgold, the score being 11 $\frac{1}{4}$ to 2. The line-ups were the same as in the previous game, except that Captains Frank M. Harshberger and Ernest F. Dukes were substitutes for the 1st and 2d Squadrons, respectively.

The 12th Cavalry team engaged in two games with the 4th Cavalry team at Fort McIntosh on February 21 and 23, the first game resulting in a score of 13 to 4 in favor of the 4th Cavalry, while the second game was almost a tie, with a 4 to 5 score in favor of the 4th.

NORWICH UNIVERSITY

The Norwich University polo team made recently an extensive and successful trip. The party consisted of Lieutenant-Colonel F. B. Edwards, U. S. Cavalry, manager and coach, and Cadets I. D. White, J. W. Joslyn, K. G. Allen, and R. A. Switzer. In New York, on February 17, the team played against the Durland Club team and defeated them 10 to 3. February 18 they defeated the University of Pennsylvania team at Philadelphia by a score of 12 to 5. After the game, Colonel Edwards and Cadet Switzer returned to Norwich. The other three cadets continued to Cleveland, where they won the tournament there. No report has been received at this writing of the results of the game in Cincinnati. Thirty-four students are out for polo at Norwich University.



Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL Fort Riley, Texas

Exhibition rides by platoons of the Troop Officers' and Basic Classes, displaying both schooling and jumping, have been a feature of the Saturday morning schedule, with large and enthusiastic attendance.

The instructors of the department of horsemanship have given three beautiful exhibitions of schooling and jumping during the last month, in honor of General Pershing, Assistant Secretary of War J. M. Wainwright, and the Deputy Chief of Staff, Major General Harbord, and Major General McGlachlin and Board of Officers, who visited the School. The following officers rode in the exhibition: Colonel H. S. Hawkins, Major John A. Barry, Majors W. W. West, Jr., Sloan Doak, A. E. Wilbourn, H. D. Chamberlin, J. B. Thompson, Captains F. L. Carr, W. B. Bradford, L. A. Shafer, T. M. Cockrill, W. T. Banskett, Jr., and R. C. Winchester.

An open winter has added much to the pleasure of outside riding, and the weekly drag hunts of the Cavalry School Hunt, under the supervision of Major D. W. McNery, master of hounds, have been well attended. On February 16 the Cavalry School Hunt received official recognition by the National Steeplechase and Hunt Association and is now listed in the racing calendar. Cavalry School horses, therefore, are now entitled to entry as qualified hunters at all horse shows.

The horses are now being prepared for mounted saber work and pistol firing. A number of pistol experts may be heard every afternoon holiday, getting in a little extra preliminary practice. Some very high scores are anticipated this year in both pistol and saber courses.

The Cavalry School polo team is keeping in condition by means of indoor polo, with considerable outside practice in the open weather. Sunday afternoon matches have been a feature of the garrison entertainment all winter.

The Communications Course for enlisted specialists, in charge of Major R. E. McQuillin, began February 15, with thirty-one students enrolled. The schedule covers twenty weeks' instruction in telegraphy, elementary electricity, care and operation of cavalry radio apparatus, telephony, visual signaling, message center and messenger service. The communications systems of a cavalry brigade, arranged in miniature, will be demonstrated for each of the officers' classes, and a demonstration of communication between the ground and airplane will be featured, in which the 16th Observation Squadron, Air Service, will take part. That organization, Major C. L. Tinker, commanding, with five officers, fifty-five enlisted men, and two 4-B De Havilland planes, are now hard at work, principally on organization and elementary instruction, with flights every fair day.

A second enlisted specialists' course of four months began February 15, with thirteen students, in charge of Captain Lewis A. Gordon, 9th Engineers. The students were detailed from the pioneer and demolition sections of the Headquarters Troops of the regiments, and will receive instruction in demolition, reconnaissance, field fortifications, and military bridges.

The Gun Club, under the leadership of Lieutenant-Colonel A. B. Coxe, is having an active season, in spite of the fact that several of its most enthusiastic members are taking the Field Officers' Course. Great interest is taken in the shoots, which are held regularly twice a week, with a tea at the club-house, following the shoot, every Sunday afternoon.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

The Cavalry School Club has been reorganized, a new constitution adopted, and new officers elected. Plans are now being entertained for refurbishing the club and increasing its activities.

The Cavalry Board is now hard at work revising the training regulations pertaining to the cavalry. The training regulations, as a whole, will consist of about one thousand pamphlets, of which forty-nine are to be prepared by the cavalry. Fourteen of these are now completed and the remainder are nearing completion.

The board is also busy preparing correspondence courses for reserve officers, based upon the courses for troop and field officers at the Cavalry School, which are to be forwarded to the Chief of Cavalry for revision April 1.

Several interesting experimental tests by the board are now nearly completed, among which are several new types of rifle stocks, some of which have pistol grips of varying length; a new type of pack-box for cavalry demolition outfits, which will reduce the weight on the pack animal to two hundred pounds; a new design of barrack bag of heavy waterproof material, having a carrying handle similar to that on a suit-case; a new rifle-cleaning solution, which can be issued ready for use, requires no mixing; and improved forms for recording individual scores in pistol practice, and the consolidated report of the regimental commander. Machine-guns, caliber .50, are now being manufactured by the Ordnance Department and will be forwarded to the Cavalry Board for experiment in the near future.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona

Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

The regimental football team played a tie game with a strong team at Bisbee, Ariz., October 23. October 30, in a return game on the home grounds, the 1st Cavalry won, 13-7. November 20 the regimental team was defeated at Bisbee by the American Legion team; score, 17-0.

The regiment participated in the Armistice Day parade November 11, in the City of Douglas, Ariz. Appropriate ceremonies were held during Christmas week, including a very successful post Christmas tree for the children.

A review of the regiment was held January 26 for the Assistant Secretary of War, J. M. Wainwright, Major-General James G. Harbord, Deputy Chief of Staff, and Major-General John L. Hines, commanding 8th Corps Area.

At a formal parade January 24, 1922, an Italian War Cross was presented to Master Sergeant Lloyd M. Seibert, 1st Cavalry, and the regiment passed in review in his honor. On January 31 a detachment of one officer and ten men marched to Naco, Ariz., to garrison that station, relieving a detachment of the 10th Cavalry. Tactical exercises are held every Wednesday, involving units from the squad to include the regiment.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel John S. Winn, Commanding

The 1st Squadron, on duty at Camp Funston since January, 1921, was relieved by Troop G December 15, and has returned to Fort Riley for duty. When the sales now in

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

progress, and others in prospect, at Camp Funston are completed, it is hoped that a small fire guard will suffice for the cantonment and that the entire regiment will be at Fort Riley.

Troop E, commanded by Captain Frank E. Nelson, acted as escort to Assistant Secretary of War J. M. Wainwright and Major-General J. G. Harbord, Deputy Chief of Staff, during their visit to the post, February 1.

The Regimental Basket-ball League, temporarily halted by influenza, is again under way. Bowling teams have been organized by the enlisted personnel in several organizations of the regiment. The officers of the post have organized a bowling league of six teams. The 2d Cavalry team stands third to date.

At date of writing, February 24, the enlisted strength is 741, with every indication that the authorized strength of 818 will be reached in the early spring. The character and intelligence of the present-day recruit is considerably higher than that of those obtained in the intensive recruiting drives of the years immediately following the conclusion of the World War.

Training of recruits has been progressing satisfactorily. Owing to the mild winter, the regiment has been able to drill almost daily out of doors. Only a few days during the winter has it been too cold for outdoor work.

Advantage is being taken of the several schools for specialists at the Cavalry School, 38 enlisted men being detailed for instruction as stable sergeants, horseshoers, cooks, radio operators, and pioneer and demolition specialists.

THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Myer, Virginia

Headquarters and Second Squadron, Colonel William C. Rivers, Commanding

The severe winter has made the ground impracticable for much outside work and most of the training has, therefore, been in the riding hall. Exhibition drills have been given each Friday afternoon, and will continue during March. The program has consisted of a close and extended-order drill by Troop E, armed with the saber; a rough riding exhibition by Troop F; a "monkey drill" by Troop G; an exhibition of four-line team-driving by the Service Troop or a period or two of indoor polo; a battery drill by the 3d Field Artillery and a jumping exhibition by the jumping squad. These rides are well attended by the people of Washington and have been witnessed by a number of distinguished national and foreign personages.

Officers of the squadron entered a number of horses in the jumping classes at the American Remount Association impromptu horse shows on January 21 and March 3, at the Washington Riding and Hunt Club, and shared in the ribbons awarded.

The officers' equitation class has been working a number of remounts, mostly half-bred, from the Depot at Front Royal, Va. A squad of officers and men are training for the District Cross Country Race on February 28. Basket-ball, boxing, and bowling have been among the indoor winter activities.

Excellent classes have been maintained in the post school, with an enrollment of 200 and a high attendance average. The courses have included primary and secondary general education; small arms, cavalry and field artillery; topography, map and sand-table work; radio and telephone; West Point entrance requirements; Spanish; saddlers; horseshoers; company clerks; intelligence; demolitions; signal communication, etc.

First Squadron, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Colonel George Williams, Commanding

On December 15 and 17 riding-hall exhibitions were given, the first in honor of the Chamber of Commerce of Burlington, the second in honor of the members of the garrison.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

All troops took part, as well as Troop L, Training Center Squadron, No. 1, formerly Troop E of this regiment.

The mounted work in the riding hall has been kept up throughout the winter. This is unusual, as in the past the freezing of the tan-bark has frequently forced the suspension of mounted work. This year a six-inch layer of shavings was placed over the bark and the whole oiled. In addition, a liberal allowance of salt was placed over the floor, and we have been rewarded with a good, soft, non-freezing floor covering.

Since the first of the New Year, considerable interference with the prescribed training has been experienced. The two causes were the necessity of harvesting ice for the coming summer and the unloading of coal for the use of the post.

Squadron headquarters has been organized and radio and wire sections are now under instruction. It is believed that by the time spring opens up we will be ready to go into outdoor work with all the departments of the squadron functioning. The morale of the enlisted men is at present excellent.

FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

Practically the whole garrison turned out for the dance on New Year's Eve, and this was followed the next morning with open house by Colonel and Mrs. Hickok. At noon the party rode over into Mexico and as the guests of the Mexican officials partook of a venison luncheon.

January 22 Colonel Hickok and Captain C. E. Goodwyn gave a hunt breakfast, which was thoroughly enjoyed by all.

The regimental polo tournament is proving very exciting. The Red, Blue, and Yellow teams are all close contestants. Games are played every Sunday, and the attendance of the civilian population is very large.

January 19 the Assistant Secretary of War, Colonel Wainwright, and General Harbord inspected the garrison. The Kiwanis Club of Laredo gave a dinner in honor of the visitors. Colonel Wainwright remarked during the evening about the cordial relations that existed between the members of the regiment.

Basket-ball has been started at the post. The Service Troop defeated the Laredo High School. The prospects in this sport look bright.

Troop E, 4th Cavalry, Captain Barrett commanding, gave a horse show January 29. The prizes won were as follows: Jumping, Sergeant Saunders; equitation, Sergeant Wells; best N. C. O. equipment, Sergeant Jones; best private's equipment, Private Jordan.

February 21, during a severe sand-storm, the 4th Cavalry Polo team defeated the Laredo team by a score of 13 to 4.

The whole day of February 22 was devoted to the dedication of the new international bridge. The 4th Cavalry was escort to Governor Neff, of Texas, while the Mexican garrison was the escort for the governors of the four neighboring States. After the ceremony there was a parade in which all the troops participated.

Fort Ringgold was defeated at polo February 23 by the 4th Cavalry, 6 to 4. The game was tied 3 to 3 for a long time.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. D. Forsyth, Commanding

Orders have been received designating Camps Eagle Pass and R. E. L. Michie as subposts of Fort Clark, each subpost to be garrisoned by one troop of the regiment. On February 23 Headquarters, Headquarters First Squadron, and Troop B were relieved from duty at the subpost of Camp R. E. L. Michie and marched to Fort Clark for station.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Troop A remained at Camp Michie. On March 1 Troop G marched to Camp Eagle Pass for temporary station, relieving Troop C, which marched to Fort Clark for station.

Great interest is displayed in the monthly rifle and pistol competitions conducted at Fort Clark. One event featured in each competition is the *known poor shot* match. Judging from the results obtained in the last match, there will be no poor shots in the regiment when the time for regular practice arrives.

February 24 a regimental field day was held at Fort Clark, all events being mounted. The list of events included 440-yard flat race; 440-yard Roman race; 440-yard Cossack race; 200-yard potato race; officers jumping, 4 jumps, 3 feet high, twice around on figure of eight; enlisted men's jumping, same as officers; equitation, squad of one sergeant, one corporal, and seven privates, selected from alphabetical roster in grade; slow mule race; escort wagon race. All troops present at Fort Clark had entries in each event.

Polo in the Fifth Cavalry is now an asset. The interest, both active and otherwise, of all officers for duty at the post and the encouragement given the game by our present commanding officer, who is one of our most enthusiastic players, combine to make our prospects more favorable toward developing a winning team. We are fortunate in having Colonel W. D. Forsyth as an active member, thereby giving us the needed beneficial instruction, from his experience, gained from many years of fast play in various parts of the country.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

(Sixth Cavalry notes not received in time for publication)

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

The regimental polo team won the finals in the 1st Cavalry Division Polo Meet, defeating the 82d Field Artillery by a score of 11 to 4. The team consisted of Captains Wood, Gay, Craig, and Short, Captain Carson substituting.

Since January 1, 1922, the regiment has been recruited to within 30 men of the authorized strength. These recruits are being rapidly and efficiently trained by a training cadre of officers and specially selected non-commissioned officers, and when turned over for duty with their organizations are qualified to perform the duties of a cavalry soldier on a par with men of longer service.

The basket-ball team, under charge of Captain Waters, is making a very creditable showing in the Post League, and gives promise of developing into a strong team before the close of the season.

The regiment was reviewed by the Division Commander on January 23, 1922, and by the Assistant Secretary of War and Deputy Chief of Staff on January 25, 1922, and, notwithstanding the large number of recruits present in the ranks, the showing made was highly satisfactory.

An Inter-Troop Baseball League has been organized, the object being to develop good-natured rivalry between organizations and to determine the best players in order to select members for the regimental team. A pennant will be awarded the winning team.

The garrison training has progressed steadily. Unit Schools for officers and non-commissioned officers have been conducted with increasing interest and very gratifying results.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel James H. Reeves, Commanding

The recent arrival of a number of recruits from Fort Logan, Colo., and Fort Benjamin, Harrison, Ind., has brought the regiment to approximately its authorized strength. All recruits are now undergoing intensive training, which includes practice marches and camping; this intensive training is conducted by junior officers under the direction of squadron commanders, and every effort is being made to bring recruits to the high standard of the cavalry service.

The polo teams are now practicing at every opportunity, in preparation for the Junior Polo Tournament, which is to be held during the month of April.

The semi-monthly boxing shows are a great success, drawing all the fistic fans of the regiment and surrounding organizations, as well as a large number of civilians from El Paso. These exhibitions are held every two weeks, alternating with the bi-weekly dances, which have proven delightful social affairs. The culminating event of the dancing set was a masquerade on St. Valentine's Day, which was largely attended by members of the regiment and their friends of El Paso.

A noteworthy feature of the regimental religious service each Sunday is the attendance of the families. An active Sunday School for the children is growing rapidly. Our Christmas celebration was a great occasion. It was financed and supervised by the Board of Governors of the Service Club and is considered to have been the greatest season ever known in the regiment.

The regimental exchange has been moved into headquarters building, new equipment installed, and many conveniences added, making it the most complete, if not the best, regimental exchange along the border.

A regimental dinner at the officers' mess each month is a regular social affair, at which several speakers discuss service problems.

The non-commissioned officers have recently organized a club. They have beautiful club rooms, elegantly furnished, and it has become a very popular resort. Its usefulness is not limited to recreational purposes, since it affords an ideal meeting place for the popular discussion of the military problems peculiar to the non-commissioned officers.

The Women's Club, composed of the wives of the non-commissioned officers, is very active. They have social and business meetings weekly and assist the activities of the regiment in many ways.

Regimental recruiting, under the personal supervision of Captain E. P. Gosnell, has been exceptionally successful. His detachment up to February 20 had recruited a total of 206 men; the next highest by any organization in the garrison was 113, total recruits enlisted by all organizations of the post being 713.

NINTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

Colonel Edward Anderson, Commanding

From October 26 to November 21, 1921, eight officers, including the regimental commander and 180 men of the regiment, participated in the Philippine Department annual staff ride. The detachment marched about 350 miles, and some of the officers and men marched still farther, coming out at Antimonan, on the east coast. For two weeks of the period there was much rain and mud. The work was very interesting and involved the use of all branches of the service.

Supplementary target practice was held during November and December, and the new course in rifle marksmanship is considered much superior to the old one.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Three field meets were held at this post during October, November, and December. As usual, victory for the 9th Cavalry resulted. The Pentathlon and Decathlon were included in the events.

The regiment completed its reorganization on December 1. The delay was caused by officers and men being on the department staff ride.

No baseball games were played at Camp Stotsenburg during the last three months of the year, but the regimental team has entered the Philippine Island Baseball League, and as the regiment has good material every one is expecting an excellent showing. Our record in the league at present shows ten games won and one lost.

On the late afternoon of December 24 the regiment formed and, with band playing, marched to the regimental Christmas tree. Every officer, man, woman, and child received a present. Much credit is due the chaplain and the women of the regiment for their hard work.

The 9th Cavalry Polo Club has been very active and prosperous during the period. Fourteen officers are now regular playing members. We intend entering two teams in the annual Department Tournament to be held in Manila, January 29 to February 12. Upon the departure of Brigadier-General Charles G. Treat, the club lost a very enthusiastic and active player, and in commemoration of his active support of polo throughout his army career the club presented him with a beautiful silver loving cup.

In the best and most interesting Department Meet ever staged in this department, the Ninth Cavalry romped home in first place. The final scores were: 9th Cavalry, 73; 57th Infantry, 61; 43d Infantry, 56; 45th Infantry, 51; 24th Field Artillery, 7; 14th Engineers, 4. The meet was held January 23, 24, and 25, at Manila.

The regiment is entering two polo teams in the Department Polo Tournament, in which seven teams will compete.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona Colonel Edwin B. Winans, Commanding

Our high light of the past quarter was the visit of Assistant Secretary of War Wainwright, Major-General Harbord, Deputy Chief of Staff, and Major-General Hines, 8th Corps Area Commander. We had feared that we were too far off the scheduled route for them to visit us, and the unexpected honor was all the more pleasant for this reason.

In Generals Harbord and Hines we greeted old friends and in Secretary Wainwright we found a new one for whom we will always have a high and sincere regard.

Life is real and life is earnest in the regiment these days. Just as the 1st Cavalry Division is the corps d'elite of the army, so we expect to be the elite of the division, and we realize that hard work does it. The division training schedule is quite a strenuous one, and we are at it hammer and tongs. We have even laid aside polo until later in the year and are also using Saturdays for instruction.

We are greatly pleased over the prospect of the entire regiment being again together for the first time in several years; this will be when Troop F returns from Fort Apache and our detachment is withdrawn from Lochiel. Our Naco detachment is already at home, Naco now being garrisoned by the 1st Cavalry.

Our only sporting events since the last issue of the JOURNAL have been two race meets.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California Colonel John M. Jenkins, Commanding

A football tournament for enlisted men's teams, representing each organization in the regiment, was completed in January, with the undefeated Headquarters Troop the

REGIMENTAL NOTES

winner of the cup. A similar tournament in basket-ball is now being held, after which baseball will start.

Monthly race meets are being held on the Del Monte race-track. They have been very successful and well attended by both the military and civilian population.

Field meets have been held each month, and the athletes of the regiment are rounding into fine form. All we need is some inter-regimental competition to prove that the 11th is still pre-eminent in the field of sport.

Boxing competitions are being held monthly, and some first-class boxers are being developed.

The last week in January H. M. S. *Raleigh* was at anchor in Monterey Bay. The officers and men were fittingly entertained by the regiment. A rifle competition was held on the target range between eight men teams from the *Raleigh* and from the 11th, in which the cavalry won by 180 points, each man beating his competitor. The conditions of the match were arranged by Captain Bromley, in command of the *Raleigh*.

On February 2, the Regimental Birthday, fitting ceremonies were held on the parade ground, with speeches by the Commanding Officer and Major C. P. Chandler, after which a field meet was held, which was well attended by the civilian population and which displayed excellent horsemanship in the mounted events and proved our athletic ability in the dismounted events.

On February 8 a detachment, under command of Major Chandler, consisting of Troop G and one automatic rifle squad from the other line troops, left the post on a three-day hike to test out improvised packs for the automatic rifle. It rained continuously while the detachment was out, but they came in February 10, having marched seventy-five miles, without a sore back or a lame horse and with men and animals in excellent condition. An average marching gait of six miles per hour was maintained each day. All pack animals carried a minimum weight, including auto-rifle ammunition of 150 pounds.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Mercedes, McAllen, Sam Fordyce, and Fort Ringgold, Texas Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

Assistant Secretary of War J. Mayhew Wainwright and Deputy Chief of Staff James G. Harbord visited the various stations of the regiment on January 17, 18, and 19. The party, in company with Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Lieutenant-Colonel Byron L. Barger, O. R. C., Lieutenant-Colonel Charles O. Thomas, Jr., Captain Charles S. Miller, special aide to Secretary Wainwright, and Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin, General Harbord's aide, visited Matamoros the morning of the 17th, later inspecting the various points of interest, at the post. A reception at the Officers' Club was attended by members of the American Legion, the Chamber of Commerce, and the Rotary Club. The officers and ladies of the post called on the Secretary and General Harbord at Colonel Rice's quarters the same night, at 8 o'clock. The party left Fort Brown the morning of the 18th, visiting Mercedes, McAllen, Sam Fordyce, and Fort Ringgold that day.

The entire regiment has been shocked by the loss of Colonel and Mrs. Rice's quarters, which burned early Sunday morning, January 15. The contents of the quarters were consumed by the flames, only a very few minor articles being saved. A severe blow to Colonel Rice was the loss of his splendid collection of Indian relics, etc., accumulated during his years of army service. These included a painting of Sitting Bull by C. M. Russell and paintings of several Indian scouts by Burbank, each of the scouts having served with Colonel Rice many years ago in Arizona.

The officers and ladies at Fort Brown have enjoyed two splendid rides during February. The first was a paper chase on the 12th, which was won by Miss Elizabeth Thomas,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

daughter of Lieutenant-Colonel and Mrs. Charles O. Thomas, Jr. Captain and Mrs. John J. Bohn entertained the officers and ladies of the post and a few invited guests from Brownsville, Texas, with a ride Sunday, February 19.

A barn dance, given at the Officers' Club for the Army Relief Society Christmas week, was a great success. On the night of December 24 Christmas-tree exercises were held at the E. & R. building. At McAllen, Christmas Eve night was celebrated by a Christmas tree, which was thoroughly enjoyed by all. The main feature of the evening was the appearance of Santa Claus in his splendid regalia, riding a peppy little Texas burro.

A baseball team, recently organized at McAllen, shows promising results. The regiment is preparing for the target season, which starts shortly.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

Style versus stamina concisely sums up the problem which confronted the 13th Cavalry riding team, which, in the National Western Horse Show, held at Denver, Colo., January 16-21, 1922, captured twenty-eight premiums in competition against some of the best saddle-horses in the country, when the competitors from the regiment, now stationed at Fort D. A. Russell, Wyo., first scrutinized the entries made by the Loula Long Combs, William E. Dee, Broadmoor Farms, J. B. Cooper & Son, C. T. Hall, and other nationally prominent stables in the western tanbark classic.

To even hope to furnish competition with such high-stepping, high-priced, five-galting horses as *Tiger Rose* and *Grand Master*, of the Combs stables, seemed out of the question; but with the regimental motto, "It shall be done," firmly before them, the 13th cavalymen scratched not a single entry, and not only carried off ribbons in classes which seemed at first glance to be beyond their mounts, but secured the lion's share of the premiums in the classes for which service mounts are by reason of their training preëminently fitted.

The show was strictly a civilian affair and the ability of an entry to reveal high hock and knee action seemed to count far more with the judges than did schooling. Suitability for shaking up a tired business man's torpid liver with a fast single-foot on a shady bridle-path, together with picture-book conformation, was more greatly prized by the judges than the all-around suitability necessary in a public horse; but, of course, this was to be expected.

Where the cavalry scored most heavily was in the polo pony and jumping classes, where bold hearts, strong riding, and conscientious schooling won their sure and just dues. In two of the jumping events troop horses, cleverly ridden, captured first, second, and third places. Up until the day before the show ended, not a single refusal was chalked up against the cavalry entries. Of four refusals, encountered toward the end of the show, when the horses were becoming surfeited with howling mobs and difficult obstacles, not one resulted in disqualification, for the riders, without exception, gallily threw their hearts over the threatening bars and rode their mounts over after them.

King, a horse assigned to Troop A of the regiment, cleverly ridden by Captain Theodore E. Voigt, a graduate of last year's basic course at the Cavalry School, made a strong bid for honors as the champion hunter of the show. His initial performance of clearing a four-foot-six-inch triple-bar jump, covering a distance of twenty-three feet, placed both himself and his rider squarely before the eyes of the Denver press.

In this connection it seems apropos to state that before the horse show the writer was told by one of the officials of the show that military entries he had encountered hitherto had been extremely disappointing, without exception. This same worthy, after the first triple-bar jump, along with the rest of the officials and judges, was loud in his praise of the army entries and the skillful riding exhibited.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

Four of the seven officers of the regiment composing the riding team are Cavalry School graduates and the remainder are eager, although they are now exceptional horsemen, to absorb the Riley idea.

Of the twenty-eight ribbons won, five were blue, nine red, eleven yellow, and three white. This gave the Thirteenth fourth place among all exhibitors, the renowned steeds of Loula Long Combs finishing far ahead of the field.

The officers composing the riding team were Major Roy W. Holderness, Captain Frank L. Whittaker, Captain Howard C. Tobin, Captain Herbert E. Watkins, Captain Harry E. Dodge, Captain Bruce M. McDill, Captain Theodore E. Voigt, and Lieutenant H. B. K. Willis, manager.

During the course of the show the 13th Cavalry polo team, composed of Captains McDill, Dodge, Voigt, and Watkins, played the Denver Country Club team three indoor matches of two periods each, winning all three handily by the scores of 5-2, 5-1, and 6-0, respectively.

The distinct hit of the show, however, as evidenced by the plaudits of both the press and public, was the musical drill team, selected and trained by Major Roy W. Holderness from the troops of his squadron, the second squadron, which gave an exhibition at each of the nine performances. An officer, the guidon, and twenty-four troopers constituted the team, which, without a word of command, went through a series of some forty evolutions at the school trot and the gallop, to music.

Such noted horsemen as J. D. Farrell, of Seattle, Wash.; Chairman D. Schilling, of the National Western Horse Show; Richard Stericker, of Chicago, Ill., and others characterized the drill as the best thing of its kind that they had ever seen. From the first performance to the last, the drill never suffered a hitch nor a slip of any kind, from the first movement of forming line at the gallop to the saber charge, which was the conclusion of the exhibition. Applause was continuous throughout the drill, each time it was presented, and daily the press was unanimous in stating that the "cavalry riders were the stars of the show."

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel Robert A. Brown, Commanding

Zero weather has been the keynote of the second winter spent by the 14th Cavalry at Fort Des Moines, and the riding hall has been the center of most of the mounted training and sport.

Much interest has been displayed by local sportsmen in the civilian polo team inaugurated at Fort Des Moines this winter. Indoor polo has been played with some success, although the size of the riding hall has cut the team to two players to a side. The civilian team hopes to acquire its own mounts in the near future and move into quarters at the new Country Club, about a mile from the military reservation.

An excellent indoor rifle and pistol range has been constructed in one of the vacant stables. This range is well heated and lighted and is one of the best indoor ranges in the army. Competitions between individuals and units are being held weekly, with the result that keen interest is being displayed by officers and men and much improvement in the shooting of the regiment is assured.

The social life of the post has been enlivened by several dances in town and at the post.

Riding has become the favorite pastime of the ladies of the post and of Des Moines, and the ladies' riding class is always well attended.

The Reserve Officers Department

CORRESPONDENCE SCHOOL COURSES

The correspondence school courses, delayed some weeks, were started early in the year and have aroused gratifying enthusiasm. The cavalry courses particularly seem to have won an immediate popularity and about 700 officers are enrolled in the cavalry basic course. The scheme of instruction is based upon a single general situation developed by a continuing operation, designed to hold the interest and co-ordinate all phases of instruction and clothe them with as near an approach to the actuality of war conditions as possible.

COLLAR INSIGNIA

In accordance with a recent change of Army Regulations, the collar insignia worn by members of the Officers' Reserve Corps, whether on active duty or not, will not have the letter "R" superimposed on the "U. S.," but will be the same as the insignia worn by commissioned officers of the Regular Army.

The insignia of the 61st Cavalry Division, recently adopted, is a black horse's head with yellow 61 underneath on a golden-yellow silk horseshoe.

RESERVE OFFICERS' EXAMINER, published by The U. S. Infantry Association—price, \$2.00—is a book designed to place in the hands of officers of the Reserve Corps a complete set of questions and answers covering the five subjects included in the basic examination for promotion of all officers: Administration, Military Law, Military Courtesy, Customs of the Service, Field Service Regulations, and Military Hygiene. This is the book you've been waiting for—the book that every reserve officer will eventually want. Get your copy now, devote a little systematic study to its contents, and when the time comes you will be ready for your examination for promotion.
(Use the order blank below.)

Order Blank

THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION,
1824 H Street, Washington, D. C.:

Please forward to the address below the following book:

RESERVE OFFICERS' EXAMINER.

Address:

.....

.....

THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT

MASTERS OF FOXHOUNDS ASSOCIATION ENCOURAGES RESERVE CAVALRY DIVISION

At the annual meeting of the Masters of Foxhounds Association of America, held in New York February 15, it was resolved as follows:

Whereas the Federal Government is laying broad plans for the national defense and is causing the Reserve Corps to be organized, and is including in this organized reserve six cavalry divisions; and

Whereas the development of such divisions will in time of peace develop an intensive interest in the horse, horsemanship, and mounted sport; and

Whereas in time of war they will be of inestimable value to the nation; be it

Resolved, That this association encourage in every way the growth and success of the reserve cavalry divisions.

PROGRAM FOR FIELD TRAINING OF RESERVES, SUMMER OF 1922

(Extract: War Department Circular No. 36, February 11, 1922)

The program for troops of the mobile army assumes twelve working days and is arranged as follows:

MORNINGS	AFTERNOONS
Terrain exercises for all officers daily.	Demonstrations.
Practical schools of application for all enlisted men.	Drill.
	Ceremonies.

Terrain Exercises.—For each officer these exercises should require the solution of tactical problems appropriate for his grade and usually in assumed war operations of his own unit. About one-half of the twelve exercises should deal with the attack, one-fourth with the defense, and the remainder with observation and security.

Demonstrations.—All officers and men should witness demonstrations to illustrate important tactical principles involved in the following:

- (a) Platoon of infantry in the attack.
- (b) Rifle company in the attack
- (c) Machine-gun company in the attack.
- (d) Battery in the attack.
- (e) Battalion of infantry, supported by one-pounder, trench mortar, and artillery in the attack.
- (f) Demonstrations by other arms when considered feasible and desirable.

In addition to the above, the schools of application should demonstrate current methods for the training of specialists to the officers of the particular arm.

When practicable, service ammunition should be used against properly placed silhouettes to represent the enemy.

Drill.—To constitute a refresher course and to acquaint all concerned with the best methods, company officers and enlisted men should be given from one-half to one hour's close-order drill each day in suitable provisional organizations. Command in each unit should be by roster, to give experience and practice to the greatest number.

Ceremonies.—To promote esprit, each day's work should conclude with a parade or review by the provisional drill organizations.

The National Guard

NATIONAL GUARD ENCAMPMENTS

A compilation of all regulations, orders, instructions, and circulars, in force at this date, which relate to encampments, maneuvers, and other field training of the National Guard has been prepared for the use of the National Guard organizations of the 1st Corps Area. It is of sufficient value to all National Guard organizations that the references are repeated here and a few paragraphs are given entire:

Law Requiring Encampments.—Each company, troop, battery, and detachment in the National Guard shall participate in encampments, maneuvers, or other exercises, including outdoor target practice, at least 15 days each year, unless excused from participation in any part thereof by the Secretary of War. (Sec. 92, National Defense Act.)

NOTE.—In case of failure, for any reason, for any organization to participate, it is best to obtain the excuse in writing from the Militia Bureau.

Fifteen-Day Encampments Authorized.—(Sec. 94, National Defense Act.)

Four-Day Instruction Camps Authorized.—(Sec. 97, National Defense Act.)

Status of National Guard in Camp.—(Par. 518, N. G. R., 1919.)

Command of Posts and Cantonments.—(Sec. 95, National Defense Act.)

Camps and Schools for National Guard.—Contingent upon the necessary funds being available, the National Guard will attend a field training period of fifteen days, and, in addition, schools of instruction for officers and specially selected men may be held for a period not to exceed four days' actual attendance in camp. It is believed that it would be most beneficial if arrangements can be made to have the four-day period immediately precede the main encampment. (Letter M. B., 354.1, December 6, 1920.)

Availability of Funds Previous to July 1, 1922.—Schools of instruction for Commissioned Officers and Enlisted men.—There is small prospect of any funds being available to hold classes of a four-day period for commissioned officers and specially selected enlisted men previous to July 1, 1922. The same remark applies to the 15-day period field training. (Letter C. M. R., January 13, 1922.)

Training Schedules and Standards.—In preparing schedules for training the National Guard, the limited time available and the intermittent character of the work require the maximum concentration upon those subjects which are the most essential. It cannot be expected that the standards of efficiency to be attained will be equal to those established for troops which devote their entire time to military service. (Training Policy, M. B., August 31, 1921.)

General Scope of Field Training.—It will be assumed that the completion of their instruction will normally come in a period of intensive training upon their draft into Federal service in time of war, and to such extent as is logical each summer camp will be regarded as a miniature period of such intensive training. (Training Policy, M. B., August 31, 1921.)

Training of Commanding and Staff Officers.—The administration and instruction of the encampment or march should be such that all officers shall perform, as far as practicable, all the functions appropriate to their grade and office that would devolve upon them if in actual campaign.

Report will be made of the degree and manner in which the commanding and respective staff officers performed the duties of their office.

Any officer displaying marked ability or inefficiency will be noted by name in the report. (Page 2, Field Inspection Report.)

THE NATIONAL GUARD

Recruit Instruction.—So far as is possible, the aim should be to finish recruit instruction in the armory and take to the annual encampment organizations which are ready to work as units. (Training Policy, M. B., August 31, 1921.)

Training Schedule for Entire Year.—The prescribing of a training schedule applicable to all the National Guard troops of any service is impracticable. Local conditions will vary widely; some units are new from captain to private, others have had considerable experience and know how to function as a team. The situation which confronts the companies should be thoroughly understood by the regimental commander, who is expected to visit and observe and assist all the organizations in his command. Schedules of armory instruction will be prepared by the Regular Army instructor, detailed for duty with an organization of the National Guard, after consultation with the commanding officer of the organization. These schedules, after approval by the proper State official, should be published for the guidance of the officers who are responsible for the execution of the program. Training schedules for the summer encampment will be similarly prepared, but transmitted by the instructor to the corps area commander for final action. In the preparation of the instruction schedules, the latest training memoranda of the different services and the standards of proficiency which have been adopted in the training of the Regular Army will be available. The proper application of the information contained in such manuals will rest with the judgment and initiative of the respective commanders. Full consideration will be given to the time limits involved, which, as a rule, cannot be extended. Ordinarily, seventy-two (72) hours per year will be the maximum time which can be devoted to armory instruction and not more than fifteen (15) days will be available for field training. Manifestly, selection must be made of those features of Regular Army training which are considered the most important and the most practicable of application. For the present year, emphasis must be laid on such features to the complete exclusion of other subjects which have a place in the annual program of instruction in the Regular Army, but which must be postponed in the case of the National Guard. No combined maneuvers will be prescribed without special authority from the Militia Bureau, War Department. Subject to the above instructions, the armory training schedule will be arranged so that it constitutes a first period of a general program, the natural ending of which will be the summer outdoor period. When practicable, neither part should include exercises which could be better covered in the other period of the program. (Training Policy, M. B., August 31, 1921.)

Training Schedule for Camps.—In the field training of the coming year emphasis should again be laid upon the fundamentals for small units. For more detailed instructions with reference to the training of the National Guard, see approved memorandum of August 31, 1921, published by the Militia Bureau, copies of which were furnished corps area commanders for guidance and distribution to instructors. As a rule, no maneuvers will be attempted this year, but in each camp at least four half-day terrain exercises without troops will be held for all field and general officers. These exercises should furnish tactical problems appropriate for the grades of those participating, and should deal with assumed war situations for the units (battalion, regiment, brigade, or division) to which they belong. (Letter A. G. O., 353, December 31, 1921.)

General Scheme of Training.—Instruction in the following subjects will be given to all branches of the National Guard:

Discipline; military courtesy and customs of the service; exercises for physical development; care, making up, and use of personal equipment (infantry), including arms; personal hygiene and first aid; school of the soldier (infantry); school of the squad (infantry); guard duty; tent-pitching and camp expedients; marches and march discipline; performance of riot duty.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In addition to the subjects listed above, instruction in the cavalry will cover the subjects given below:

(a) School of the trooper, mounted and dismounted; elementary principles of equitation; training of specialists; care of animals, map-reading and road-sketching.

(b) Mounted and dismounted, with and without arms, progressive through squad and platoon; target practice—rifle, automatic rifle, machine-gun, and pistol; week-end practice marches; entraining and detraining; making and breaking camp; mounted attack; dismounted fire action; terrain exercises; combat problems; ceremonies, inspections, and reviews; tests of proficiency.

Lectures, Conferences, and Schools may be held in the evening, but it is more expedient to hold them during the day. They should be held preferably in the morning and never immediately after a meal. (Circular Letter M. B., No. 11, February 26, 1920.)

Practice Marches During Camp.—Such marches as may be prescribed should be for the purpose of instruction in march discipline, conduct of marches, etc., and not as tests of endurance or as a hardening process. (Circular Letter M. B., No. 11, February 26, 1920.)

Simple Night Maneuvers During Camp.—For troops sufficiently advanced in fundamental training, one or more simple night maneuvers or exercises, such as occupying by night a position selected during daylight, should be prescribed embodying the following features and as many more as may be deemed expedient, viz:

(a) Necessity for clear and concise orders and definite objective; (b) Necessity for silence and absence of lights during operation; (c) Means and methods of maintaining direction, contact, and communication throughout command. (Circular Letter M. B., No. 11, February 26, 1920.)

Specialization in Training.—This limitation of time is a fundamental consideration which must be recognized not only in the general training policy, but in preparing the schedules of instruction and arranging the details of execution. The National Guard officer or non-commissioned officer is not expected to become a competent instructor in all of the technical and tactical details, and the solution of the problem must be found in such a division of work as will permit individuals to concentrate on only a part of the whole duty. Their work must be so laid out as to permit officers and non-commissioned officers to specialize on one or at least a few subjects, and then be developed so that they can perfect themselves to a point where their own efforts as instructors will be valuable as coming from one who has specialized on the particular subjects considered. The methods known as the block system are calculated to meet such a situation as confronts the National Guard, and, where applicable, it is recommended that the system be followed for a part of each training day. (Training Policy, M. B., August 31, 1921.)

The "Block" System of Instruction.—The "Block" system of instruction of units has been tried out in a few States and has given satisfactory results.

The system divides the complete course of instruction necessary to produce a well-trained unit into "blocks" and requires each individual, squad, and platoon to become proficient in the subjects embraced by each block before passing into the next block or group of subjects. This system presupposes the existence of experts who are to act as instructors in their particular branch. Some newly formed National Guard units do not include in their personnel the number of experts required by this system, and it has been suggested that an intensive course of training at the 15-day field training period would provide block instructors for the organizations not already provided with them. The progress of this system is being carefully observed by the Militia Bureau, and, if results warrant it, recommendation will be made to extend the system to the entire National Guard. (Address, C. M. B., December 12, 1921.)

Allotment of Funds.—(Par. 515, N. G. R., 1919.)

THE NATIONAL GUARD

Estimate of Funds for Camps.—(Circular Letter M. B., No. 11, February 26, 1920.)

Disbursing Officers for Encampments.—(Par. 659, N. G. R., 1919.)

Division of Camp Expenditures.—(Par. 712, N. G. R., 1919.)

Requisitions for Funds made by Governor.—(Par. 656, N. G. R., 1919.)

Form of Requisition for Funds.—(Par. 657, N. G. R., 1919; Change No. 1, December 18, 1919.)

Requisition for Supplies for Camps.—(Par. 516, N. G. R., 1919, and Par. 517, N. G. R., 1919.)

Transportation Requests.—(Par. 660, N. G. R., 1919.)

Notations on Transportation Requests.—(Circular Letter M. B., No. 21, April 21, 1920.)

No Mileage for Travel.—(Par. 664, N. G. R., 1919.)

Transportation of Baggage and Supplies.—(Par. 667, N. G. R., 1919.)

NOTE.—The use of Federal motor transportation issued to the State is encouraged.

Transportation for Practice Marches.—(Par. 713, N. G. R., 1919.)

Animals to be Taken to Camp.—(Par. 970, N. G. R., 1919.)

Public Animals to Another State.—(Par. 972, N. G. R., 1919.)

Payments of transportation of mounted officers who take part in the actual field or camp service for instruction, pursuant to the provisions of section 94 of the act of June 3, 1916, and for the horses of these officers, may be made from funds allotted to the State or Territory or the District of Columbia, under section 67, National Defense Act, from the home station of the officers to the place of encampment and, returning, from the place of encampment to the home stations of the officers, provided such horses have been inspected by an inspector-instructor or other officer of the Regular Army and certified to as suitable first mounts, as required for officers of the Regular Army. (Par. 717, N. G. R., 1919.)

Allowance for Subsistence.—(Sec. 94, National Defense Act.)

Determination of Money Value of Ration.—(Par. 1205, A. R.; par. 1220, A. R., modified by Changes No. 95, October 9, 1919; par. 1221, A. R.)

Field Inspection at Camp.—(Par. 559, N. G. R., 1919.)

Field Report on Discipline.—The inspector will report on the following: Control of officers and non-commissioned officers over enlisted men: In camp and at drill—disciplinary; on field-work—leaders.

Assembly for drill and instruction: Promptness, orderliness.

Reveille: Attendance of officers and men; promptness, completeness of uniform, observance of taps; conduct of men in and out of camp. Is uniform worn properly and do men present a military appearance? Is there any marked organization esprit? (Pages 9, 10, Field Insp. Rep.)

Report on Arms, Uniforms, and Equipment.—(Page 10, Field Insp. Rep.)

Report on Camp Administration.—(Page 11, Field Insp. Rep.)

Inspectors for Camp Inspection.—(Par. 510, N. G. R., 1919.)

Muster a Prerequisite of Camp Pay.—(Par. 521, N. G. R., 1919.)

Time of Muster.—(Par. 721, N. G. R., 1919.)

Report of Absentees from Camp.—(Circular Letter M. B., No. 11, 1920.)

Attendance of State Staff Officers.—(Par. 520, N. G. R., 1919.)

Helpers and Caretakers to Camp.—(Par. 971, N. G. R., 1919.)

Leaves of Absence for Certain Government Employees.—(Sec. 80, Nat. Def. Act.)

Reservists may be Enlisted for Camp.—(Par. 2, Circular Letter M. B., No. 31, 1921.)

Assigned Reservists Brought to Camp.—(Par. 4, Circular Letter M. B., No. 31, 1921.)

Report of Attendance at Camp.—(Page 3, Field Insp. Rep.)

Report of Absentees from Drill.—(Page 4, Field Insp. Rep.)

Prescribed Strength of Organizations.—Those organizations of the National Guard (similar to the organizations in the Regular Army) which have a prescribed enlisted

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

strength greater than 65 must secure by July 1 at least 65 active enlisted men. Other organizations of the National Guard must be maintained at the strength prescribed for similar units in the Regular Army. Variations in active enlisted strength of 10 per cent either way will be permitted. (Circular Letter No. 31, M. B., 1921.)

Prescribed Strength of Organizations.—While the above policy establishes a minimum peace active strength of 65 for companies and corresponding units of the National Guard, every effort should be made to encourage the maintenance of such units at the peace strength prescribed for the Regular Army in Tables of Organization. (Circular Letter No. 48, M. B., 1921.)

Strength of Organizations.—Efforts should be made to increase the enlisted strength of all new organizations from the authorized recognition strength of 50 to 65 within six months of the date of Federal recognition. (Letter C. M. B., January 13, 1922.)

Overstrength Attendance.—(Par. 721, N. G. R.)

Assigned Reservists.—It is especially desired that all National Guard organizations may participate in the annual period of field instruction with the maximum strength of assigned enlisted reservists. (Par. 2, Circular Letter 76, M. B., 1920.)

Dates for which Pay is Due.—(Sec. 98, National Defense Act.)

Mustering for Camp Pay Mandatory.—(Par. 720, N. G. R., 1919.)

Credit for Attendance at Camp.—(Par. 512, N. G. R., 1919.)

Changes in Regulations.—Attention is invited to the fact that the provision requiring sixty days' previous service and fourteen drill periods of one and one-half hours each before a national guardsman is entitled to pay for attending field training has been removed. (Circular Letter No. 64, M. B., 1920.)

Verification of Attendance at Drills.—(Par. 512, N. G. R., 1919.)

Qualifications for Pay.—(Par. 720, N. G. R., 1919; Changes No. 1.)

(The pay-rolls should show date of Federal recognition of each officer.)

Qualification of Enlisted Men for Camp Pay.—All enlisted men attending field training for not less than one-half of the full training period will receive pay, subsistence, and transportation. (Par. 3, Circular Letter M. B., No. 31, 1921.)

Qualification of Officers for Camp Pay.—The pay of officers will depend upon the numerical strength of the enlisted men in their respective organizations who attend field training, as follows:

(a) In those organizations of the National Guard which are not required to maintain a strength of at least 65 active members, 70 per cent of the actual required enlisted strength must attend field training for the officers to receive pay.

(b) For those organizations of the National Guard which must maintain a strength of at least 65 active members, the officers will receive pay if 70 per cent of 65 active members attend field training—i. e., 46 active enlisted members. (Par. 3, Circular Letter M. B., No. 31, 1921.)

Regular Army Rates of Pay.—(Par. 714, N. G. R., 1919.)

Same as Regular Army Allowances.—The officers and enlisted men of the National Guard while engaged in encampments, maneuvers, or other exercises, including outdoor target practice, for field or coast defense instruction, shall be entitled to the same pay, subsistence, and transportation as officers and enlisted men of corresponding grades of the Regular Army are or hereafter may be entitled by law. (Sec. 94, N. D. A.)

Officers and enlisted men of the National Guard attending camps for the instruction of officers and enlisted men prescribed by the Secretary of War shall be entitled to pay and transportation, and enlisted men to subsistence in addition, at the same rates as for encampment for field exercises or coast-defense instruction. (Sec. 97, N. D. A.)

Encampment Pay Table.—One day's pay of corresponding grade in the Regular Army at present writing (May, 1921) is as follows:

THE NATIONAL GUARD

Captain, \$8.66 6-9; first lieutenant, \$7.22 2-9; second lieutenant, \$5.88 8-9.
Grade I, \$2.96; Grade II, \$2.12; Grade III, \$1.80; Grade IV, \$1.80; Grade V, \$1.48;
Grade VI, \$1.16 6-9; Grade VII, \$1.00.

Specialist rating a daily compensation in addition to pay of grade: First class, \$0.833; second class, \$0.666; third class, \$0.50; fourth class, \$0.40; fifth class, \$0.266; sixth class, \$0.10.

PROGRESS AND PROFICIENCY RECORD

A bulletin recently issued from the office of the Adjutant General of the State of Colorado and compiled from data contained in Cavalry Memorandum No. 3, issued from the office of the Chief of Cavalry, has for its purpose to prescribe specifically certain essentials in which every recruit should qualify before his admission to the troop for full duty, and at the same time to indicate the more advanced items in which he is required to demonstrate the degree of proficiency attained. By such standardization the degree of military proficiency of recruits placed for full duty with units will be known definitely, with resultant advantage.

Training objectives are prescribed. Methods are left to commanders. The course of training for recruits set forth in this memorandum is, therefore, furnished as a basis for experimentation and report, not as a fixed form, limiting the initiative of commanders as to recruit-training methods. It is noted as essential that the instructors be capable; that each day they make all necessary advance preparation, and that each day they follow carefully the detailed schedule, with no indecision and no lost motion.

Texts to be used in the preparation of detailed schedules of instruction are noted, as follows: Cavalry Drill Regulations, Rifle Marksmanship, Pistol Marksmanship, Manual for Non-commissioned Officers and Privates of Cavalry, Field Physical Training of the Soldier (Special Regulations No. 23), Manual of Physical Training, and Saber Exercise. These should also be made available to recruits for individual study and reference.

In this connection it is desired to add that the texts noted above are procurable by purchase from the Superintendent of Documents. Remittances should be made to the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., by postal or express money-order. Postage stamps and uncertified checks will not be accepted. No charge is made for postage to points in the United States or dependencies. The publications are furnished bound in paper covers, unless otherwise specified. The classification number should be mentioned. The texts mentioned in this bulletin bear the following numbers and prices:

Cavalry Drill Regulations. W 2.6/1: C 31/9, cloth, 50 cents.

(NOTE.—This is the 1916 regulations. The new regulations have not yet been printed.)

Rifle Marksmanship. Adj. Gen. Doc. No. 1021, 35 cents.

Pistol Marksmanship. W 3.16/1: M 34/3, 15 cents.

Manual for N. C. O.'s and Privates. W 3.16/1: C 31m, fabricoid, 50 cents.

Manual of Physical Training. W 2.6/1: P 56, cloth, 50 cents.

(NOTE.—There is also published "Extracts from Manual of Physical Training, Army." W 2.6/1: P 56/2, cloth, 30 cents. The latter does not include chapters on climbing, jumping, and exercises with gymnastic apparatus.)

Saber Exercises. W 2.6/1: Sa. 1/3, 10 cents.

In addition to the texts noted in this bulletin, it is desired to invite attention to an excellent manual, or, rather, compilation of manuals, particularly useful for the mounted services, "As To Military Training," by Major Wall. This is procurable from the U. S. Cavalry Association. Price, \$2.50, with reductions in price when ordered in lots.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

An itemized record, "Progress and Efficiency Card," should be kept for each recruit, on which each qualification is checked as it is attained. This record, with remarks by the instructor descriptive of the recruit's personality, his particular defects and special abilities and aptitudes, should be kept on file by the troop commander.

Progress and Efficiency Record of

Names	Date enlisted	School of trooper dismounted		Articles of War, courts-martial, in the National Guard		Physical training		Morale		Military courtesy		Nomenclature, care, and cleaning rifle	
		Q	Hrs	Q	Hrs	Q	Hrs	Q	Hrs	Q	Hrs	Q	Hrs

The "Progress and Efficiency Record," of the form indicated above, has a line for each recruit and a double column for each qualification. These are noted in this bulletin as the following:

- School of the trooper, dismounted.
- Articles of War and courts-martial in the National Guard.
- Physical training.
- Morale.
- Military courtesy.
- Nomenclature, care, and cleaning of the rifle.
- School of the squad, dismounted, close order.
- Manual of arms.
- School of the squad, dismounted, extended order.
- Loadings and firings.
- Nomenclature, care, and cleaning of the pistol.
- Manual of the pistol, dismounted.
- Nomenclature, care, and cleaning of saddle, bridle, and web equipment.
- Nomenclature, care, and cleaning of the saber.
- Manual of the saber, dismounted.
- Pack and unpack saddle.
- Care and stabling horses.
- Sanitation, hygiene, and first aid.
- Rifle marksmanship—preparatory instruction.
- Rifle marksmanship—gallery practice.
- Rifle marksmanship—range practice.
- Pistol marksmanship—preparatory training.
- Pistol marksmanship—range practice, dismounted course.
- Pitch shelter tent and lay out equipment for inspection.
- School of the trooper, mounted, 1st period. Without saddle, with blanket, surcingle and longe; then with saddle and snaffle bridle.
- School of the squad, mounted, close order.

THE NATIONAL GUARD

- School of the squad, mounted, extended order.
 - Drill and firing signals.
 - Interior guard duty.
 - School of the trooper, mounted, 2d period (elementary equitation).
 - Manual of the saber, mounted.
 - Manual of the pistol, mounted.
 - Saber exercises, dismounted.
 - Saber exercises, mounted (running at dummies).
 - Inspection of arms and equipment, mounted.
 - School of the trooper, mounted, 3d period (work on double snaffle, obstacles, work at fixed distances, individual charge, etc.).
 - School of the trooper, mounted, 4th period (work with double bridle).
 - School of platoon, dismounted, close order.
 - School of platoon, dismounted, extended order.
 - School of platoon, mounted, close order.
 - School of platoon, mounted, extended order.
 - To form the troop dismounted fully equipped for the field, to make a short march, and go into camp for inspection of equipment.
 - To form the troop mounted and ditto.
 - Pistol marksmanship, mounted, preparatory training.
 - Pistol marksmanship, mounted, range and qualification practice.
- No definite time is allotted for the various subjects, as it is believed the best results will eventually be attained by qualifying the individuals in the various progressive steps rather than to lay down a certain time limit for each subject. The comparative progress of the several organizations will indicate the efficiency of the commanders.
- The subjects listed above are properly subdivided in detail, following the arrangement of these subjects in "Standards of Proficiency for Cavalry" (Cavalry Memorandum No. 3, sent out by the office of the Chief of Cavalry to all officers of the National Guard federally recognized).

"THE BADGER TROOPER"

The 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, is publishing a monthly paper which is bound to be a helpful factor in the development of the cavalry in that State. It is a printed small-size sheet of eight pages. The subscription rate is \$1.00 per year. Other cavalry regiments might well benefit by a similar effort. The Wisconsin cavalrymen call their news sheet *The Badger Trooper*. About half the space is devoted to news items of the several troops and regimental sports news. The rest of the paper is given up to special articles, regimental history, editorials, etc.

THE FIFTY-SECOND CAVALRY BRIGADE

From the 52d Cavalry Brigade comes the following item: At Philadelphia there are seven units drilling five nights a week in two different armories. There is much enthusiasm in polo. The Essex Troop, of Newark, N. J., recently beat the polo team of the 103d Cavalry, but the latter got the scalp of the New York Squadron A team.

The 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard, commanded by Colonel Edward J. Stackpole, Jr., D. S. C., will stage a tournament and field day at Island Park, Harrisburg, Pa., on July 4 of this year. Many cavalry officers of the regular establishment, as well as a number of Reserve and National Guard officers, will be invited to attend this round-up, the first in the annals of the Pennsylvania Guard.



POLO GOODS
MALLETS—BALLS—SADDLES
(1921 CATALOG WITH BOOK OF RULES ON REQUEST)
CHAS. MEURISSE & CO.
4638 Cottage Grove Ave.
CHICAGO

MEURISSE

BARTLEY BROS. & HALL, Inc.

IMPORTERS OF

English and French Military Saddles



Sole Agents for

**EGLENTINE BITS,
STIRRUPS, and
SPURS**

120 Chambers Street

50 Warren Street

NEW YORK CITY

A HISTORY of CAVALRY

From the Earliest Times, with Lessons for the Future

By

COLONEL GEORGE T. DENISON,

Late Commanding the Governor-General's Bodyguard, Canada

Periods

CONTENTS

1. To the Fall of the Western Roman Empire.
2. From the Fall of the Western Roman Empire to the Invention of Firearms.
3. From the Introduction of Firearms to Frederick the Great.
4. From Frederick the Great until the Introduction of Rifled Firearms.
5. From the Introduction of Rifled Firearms to the Present Time.
6. Organization, Armament, and Employment of Cavalry in Modern Warfare.

¶ Exhaustive Treatise on the Development of Cavalry.

¶ Rigid Maneuvers of Ancients.

¶ Individual Combats of Chivalry.

¶ Effect of Introduction of Firearms on Tactics and Armament.

¶ Most Significant Battles—Cannae, Blenheim, Marengo, and many others, illustrated by maps.

¶ American Civil War Cavalry Operations Well Discussed.

¶ Principal Cavalry Leaders—Hannibal, Cæsar, Vercingetorix, Gustavus Adolphus, Marlborough, Seidlitz, Ziethen, Prince Rupert, Kellerman, and Murat, as well as Jackson, Morgan, and Sheridan—are depicted.

¶ Characteristics of General-in-Chief of Cavalry.

¶ A Real Scholar's Work, with References to Original Sources for Facts.

¶ Shows Interplay of Infantry, Artillery, and Cavalry, one on the other, so Book is Really a History of Warfare.

¶ Won Prize Offered by Emperor of Russia for Best History of Cavalry.

467 Pages—Index—11 Maps—2d Edition—Price, \$4.20

U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C.

Please send me a copy of "A History of Cavalry."

Signature.....

Address.....

CONTENTS FOR JULY, 1923

VOL. XXXII, No. 132

	Page
CAVALRY MARCHES (PRIZE ESSAY).....	261
Captain Benjamin F. Hoge, Cavalry.	
ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT.....	269
Being a letter from an old dragoon to his son, recently commissioned.	
GASOLINE, WAIST LINES, AND WHAT NOT.....	276
Major J. A. Barry, Cavalry.	
THE ROAD TO SOISSONS, JULY, 1919 (POEM).....	277
Ralph B. Evans.	
THE CAVALRY FIGHT.....	278
Lessons from the fight at Volchkovtsy, on August 21, 1914.	
General N. N. Golovine (translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaleff).	
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA.....	286
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry (observer with the British Army).	
SUGGESTIONS TO EXECUTIVE OFFICERS ON DUTY WITH ORGANIZED RESERVES	296
Captain George H. Shea, Cavalry.	
A RUT IN THE ROAD.....	297
Major E. P. Pierson, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY BOARD.....	299
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry.	
"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!" (CUSTER'S BATTLE PLAN).....	308
The story of his last message, as told by the man who carried it.	
Lieutenant-Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. (with commentary by Brigadier-General Edward S. Godfrey, U. S. Army, Retired).	
A CAVALRY COMMANDER IN THE SADDLE.....	318
A reminiscence of General von Poseck.	
Colonel Henry C. Whitehead, U. S. A., Chief of the Remount Service.	
GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE.....	319
A SOUTH AMERICAN CAVALRY CHARGE.....	324
TRAINING MACHINE-GUN ORGANIZATIONS AT OBSTACLES.....	325
First Lieutenant Paul M. Robinett, Cavalry.	
HORSESHOES AND MILITARY EQUIPMENTS OF DURALUMIN.....	326
Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. Army, Retired.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
OUTLAWING WAR—CAVALRY ROAD SPACE—PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST WON BY CAPTAIN HOGE—THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL—THE CAVALRY FUND—A SERVICE THE CAVALRY JOURNAL CAN RENDER—APPRECIATION OF THE JOURNAL—U. S. M. A. 1884 CLASS BULLETIN—SUBSCRIPTIONS—CAVALRY JOURNAL REACHES THE R. O. T. C.....	
	328
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM PREPARATIONS—CHIEF OF CAVALRY HONOR RIFLE TEAM—NATIONAL MATCHES—HORSESHOEING IN ORGANIZATIONS—COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—NEW CAVALRY DISTINGUISHED MARKSMEN AND PISTOL SHOTS—THE ARMY AND THE BOY SCOUTS—SCREW WORMS IN FISTULOUS WITHERS—A TEXAS ENDURANCE RIDE PROPOSED—CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ACTIVITIES.....	
	337
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	345
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	348
POLO	354
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL.....	358
REGIMENTAL NOTES.....	360
NATIONAL GUARD.....	371
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES.....	376

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.

Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBERG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.

Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.

Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.

Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXII

JULY, 1923

No. 132

Cavalry Marches

BY

Captain BENJAMIN F. HOGE, Cavalry

PRIZE ESSAY

ALL authorities and writers on the subject of cavalry training are agreed that there are two essential elements which good cavalry must now possess. These two vital elements are fire-power and mobility. Colonel Henry, in his article on mobility, which appeared in the April, 1920, CAVALRY JOURNAL, states: "The war has demonstrated that American theories for the training and use of cavalry are thoroughly sound. It has shown that cavalry, to be successful in modern war, must have heavy fire-power and great mobility, the most essential of these two being the latter, for without this the arm cannot fulfill its rôle when the supreme test comes."

An essential of mobility is the possession of good horses. The American Remount Association is the agency in whose hands rests our hope of ultimately possessing an ample supply of horses suitable for cavalry service. It is unnecessary, I hope, to urge that each one of us should do all in his power to further the objects of this patriotic organization.

Another essential to mobility is conservation of horseflesh. If, after the first few days of a campaign, the horses are worn out, lame, and covered with saddle sores, then we have lost our most powerful characteristic—mobility. We are then, at best, worse than the poorest infantry, because we have no mobility and are burdened with a host of invalids, which we must nurse, feed, groom, water, and assist along the road from one camp to the next. Then it is that the cavalryman finds himself impotent and practically useless to himself and every one else. His only hope is for a lull in the operations, which may allow him to restore his wasted horseflesh. He has learned his lesson—but perhaps too late!

How to prevent such a condition is the question that naturally arises. I think the answer lies primarily in knowing how to march properly, because it



THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL
See Fitzpatrick Comment

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

is marching that kills horses. Most of our theories on the subject are correct, but we cannot, or rather do not, apply them in practice.

The first regiment I had the honor and pleasure of serving with was stationed in Arizona. For several years my duties were those which usually fall to the lot of a second lieutenant. Among them was the conduct of the troop non-commissioned officers' school and the pursuit of the old garrison school course. In carrying out these duties I was struck with the frequent allusions made in text-books to the necessity in campaign of conserving horses and improving in every possible way their condition. Frequent mention was made of saddle sores; but I never saw one and wondered if they ever existed with veteran cavalry such as we had. The horses were fat and sleek, and although we averaged four or five hours each day in the saddle, their condition remained the same. Occasionally we made a march of thirty or forty miles, but I could observe no effects from such marches. It appeared to me that with good food and sufficient water the horse could probably go on marching such distances day after day with no ill effects. Was all this talk, then, an exaggeration or merely imagination? Fortunately I received the answer when my regiment was ordered into Mexico as part of the punitive expedition. This answer was as startling as though a pitcher of ice water had been poured down my unsuspecting back while enjoying the luxury of a warm tub. I feel that if every one of our cavalymen could have been with me to share some of my experiences, there would be little or no call for writing this article.

A study of the instructions contained in the Cavalry Drill Regulations of 1916 on the subject of marches reveals sound fundamentals. Much stress was placed on the proper gaits; hourly halts were advised, at which time saddles and equipment were to be inspected and adjusted; it was stated that good cavalry should be able to march twenty-five miles per day and keep it up indefinitely without injury to the horses; the normal rate of march was given as five miles per hour, including halts; it was recommended that sufficient distance be allowed between organizations, so that each unit could maintain a steady gait and not be annoyed or injured by any unsteadiness of gait at the tail of a preceding unit; when conditions permitted, it was considered advisable to allow sufficient distance between units of the marching column, so that each unit could trot or walk on the same ground that the leading unit used; the practice of maintaining any one gait too long or of changing the gait too frequently was condemned. In brief, these instructions were very similar in character to those we now have. Their most serious deficiency was in the treatment of leading, to which only a brief reference was made.

The application of these instructions to the conditions and necessities that confronted us was another story. I marched about two thousand miles while on this expedition, with all-sized units, from patrols to brigades. My troop

CAVALRY MARCHES

changed commanders three times, my squadron twice, the regiment three times, and the brigade twice. Each commander had his own style and regulations, and nearly all violated in their entirety the simple rules stated above. One brigade commander set a trot of twelve miles per hour, which resulted in one-third of the horses galloping; a squadron commander used a six-mile trot, which few of the horses could take without great constraint and which caused the rear of each troop column to alternate about once a minute between the trot and walk; another brigade commander, in marching sixty miles daily for two days, did no trotting or leading and halted rarely. At the beginning our weight and that of the equipment was on the animals' backs for fifteen hours at a stretch, and the effect was killing on them. At this time the horses were in the pink of condition and the country ideal for trotting or leading. The practice of making hourly halts was not observed, and when a halt was made notice was seldom given as to its length. Leading was so rare that you would not have supposed that it had any value for man or horse. At times it was so cold that to lead would have been considered a boon by the laziest trooper. Incidentally, I do know that General Howze (then a major in command of a picked body of men from the 11th Cavalry) walked the shoes off his men, but conserved his horses, and got closer to Villa than any one else. The condition of his horses was much superior to that of other units which I observed at Parral, the southern limit reached by our troops.

The results of the above-mentioned methods of marching were not only discouraging and heartrending, but criminal. After my brigade had marched 120 miles in 44 hours, a report was asked of troop commanders as to the number of horses still fit for service. My troop, which was reputed to be one of the best mounted in the regiment, showed a loss of 20 per cent, and the condition of many which we included as fit was far from satisfactory. And this was the result of only two days of severe marching! From day to day the condition of the horses grew more serious. The lack of good forage and the bad start seemed to combine their effects in telling blows, so that we were not able thereafter to march over fifteen or eighteen miles in a day. Frequently, when we should have been hot on the trail, it was necessary to lay off for a day and rest. Trotting was almost out of the question, as the animals were too jaded and weak. Upon reaching the vicinity of Parral, we were practically unhorsed and at half strength.

After a few days rest near Parral, the troops were ordered to withdraw. This retirement north was a most unhappy affair. My troop was detailed to take charge of the wounded and proceed by a longer but more level route than the main column. My instructions were to march in rear of the troop with a small detail and protect and assist into camp any horses that could not keep up with the troop. The daily marches were short, usually twelve or fifteen

miles, and from necessity were made at a walk. Many of the poor animals had to be shot and some were barely saved. Frequently it was necessary to put a shoulder behind a poor animal and shove him up a hill, hoping that it would be the last one for the day, and that he might be able to drag himself into camp by dark.

Some of these horses were so game that they excited our highest admiration. They seemed to understand that it meant death not to keep up. One I recall quite well. My guard came upon him lying in the road, completely exhausted. As we approached, he turned his head and looked at us with an almost human expression of grief. We waited a time for him to rest, and then, by surrounding him and all lifting together, we placed him on his feet. He was able to proceed a few hundred yards at a time, and then his legs would crumple and he would go down in a heap. Fortunately, it was past the middle of the afternoon and camp not far distant, so we succeeded in getting him in some time after dark. We found that here the column which had taken the shorter route was waiting for us. We remained in the camp for a day, and this brave horse was saved by the slight rest afforded him.

The region we were in, south of Chihuahua City, had formerly been the great horse-producing country of Mexico. Our guide, an American, who had lived many years in this section, informed me that the owners of the Tres Hermanas, near Satevo, had once held a big pageant at which several hundred of the ranch employees had been mounted on gray horses. Now it was impossible to purchase any mounts from the Mexicans, as the country had been stripped of all its horses by the various military leaders who succeeded the Diaz Government. Due to this fact, our men who lost their horses had to foot it.

A rather amusing incident occurred with reference to these dismounted men. It was customary for them to start ahead of us in the morning in a group, and generally it was an hour or more after we reached camp before they arrived. One day, while the troops were grooming, shortly after arrival in camp, we were surprised to see one of our dismounted men riding in, proudly on a fine Mexican pony. Upon questioning him as to the source of his mount, he stated that he had met a "Carranza Captain" down the road, who had traded him the pony for a box of hard bread. The trade excited considerable amusement and speculation among the men, but the proud possessor was heartily congratulated. Late that night I was aroused by quite a commotion, consisting mainly of much Spanish. An inquiry next morning revealed that the real owner of the pony had come to claim his property. The "Carranza Captain" had turned out to be a horse thief with a keen sense of humor.

As our long and tedious withdrawal was completed, a marked change in the weather conditions had taken place. In March, when we entered Mexico, it was bitterly cold, especially in the mountains and at night. But now, the middle of May, it began to be very warm. Up to this point we had had scarcely

any trouble with saddle sores. Nearly all the backs had had puffs or swellings at one time or another, but by bathing them with cold water and cutting holes in the saddle blankets to remove pressure from the affected part, these tender spots had disappeared. But now, with the heat upon us, they all reappeared and rapidly developed into terrible-looking sores, which attracted swarms of flies and maggots. The worst of these sores would suppurate in all directions, sometimes as far as from the withers to a point on the fore legs or shoulder. Fully half the remaining horses were now out of commission for months from the effect of these sores. At this stage had the situation demanded activity on our part we could not have met it unless half our horse strength had been replaced by new mounts.

The above account is one which surely reflects no credit upon our marching ability. As I have pointed out, the instructions contained in the "Drill Regulations" were sound, but they were not carried out or understood. Why? If I may be allowed to quote Colonel Henry's article again, I believe the question can be answered thus: "Officers do not receive any systematic education in these matters and simply grow up in the service, absorbing such information and ideas as may come their way."

Before seeking a remedy for this condition of affairs, it is desirable to consider what the present has to offer in the way of new theories, instructions, and thought. The Cavalry School, Department of Horsemanship, has issued a pamphlet on marches, dated October 17, 1921, which is the best and most complete treatment of this vital subject which I have yet encountered. A comparison of this pamphlet with what was contained in the 1916 Cavalry Drill Regulations shows that our theoretical knowledge has advanced tremendously. The following are outstanding new features:

(1) Cavalry will probably have to make longer and more rapid marches in the future than in the past, due to the fact that railways and motor vehicles have increased the mobility of the enemy's infantry.

(2) Night marches will probably be very frequent in future wars, due to the necessity of avoiding air observation. These marches, to be successful, will require the mastery of many new details.

(3) Leading is now recognized as of vital importance. No successful march can be made without much leading.

(4) Hourly halts must be the rule.

(5) In case of checks due to obstacles, troopers and units should be trained to overlap when there is room, thus avoiding the shock throughout the column. (Upon one occasion I recall receiving a severe reprimand for doing this very thing.)

(6) Rate tables are considered necessary for all well-conducted marches.

(7) Dismounting frequently on the right side is considered valuable as a precaution against sore backs.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

(8) Every command should have a non-commissioned officer with a well-gaited horse to set the gaits, for the reason that the man who sets the gaits should have nothing else to do. An officer generally has many other things on his mind, especially in campaign.

(9) The use of a time and rate sheet and the detail of another non-commissioned officer to keep it is considered valuable as a means of locating yourself, when traveling by a poor map or at night. It is necessary also for reference when you have decided to march at a certain rate per hour.

(10) A careful study is made of the distances which should separate units on the march, when it is possible to allow considerable distance between units.

These points are only a few of the more important considered in this pamphlet, which is deserving of the most careful reading and study by every officer of our cavalry.

I have discussed the subject of marches with a great many cavalry officers, and have noticed that whenever the officer has had real experience with it he is invariably intensely interested. Frequently they have valuable ideas on the subject that are worth trial and consideration. I have observed that whenever the officer is a polo man he is in favor of rapid marching. One officer believes that the column should always lead at the beginning and end of each hour's march; another, that in hot weather the cinches should be loosened at every halt and the backs allowed to cool by turning the blanket corners under the saddle bars, thus creating a slight air space under the blanket.

Perhaps at this point it would be well to note some of the opinions of the British cavalry. Colonel George E. Mitchell's account of the Palestine Campaign states that the cavalry forces under General Allenby were divided into two schools on the question of rate and gait of marching. The Australian and New Zealand troops favored the four-mile walk for a cavalry column. Their reasons were that a faster gait detached the cavalry from its artillery, ambulances, and other essential combat transportation. They also claimed that the trot used up the horses. They believed it essential to always have the brigade or division complete, including auxiliary troops, until contact with the enemy was gained. Then, they say, is the time to use the trot or gallop to gain the position you want or to get around the enemy's flank. On the other hand, the Yeomanry troops favored the frequent use of the trot, on the ground that the condition of the horse is bettered and his strength conserved if you reduce the time of marching. They also claim that if you march too slowly you do not preserve the spirit of dash and aggression essential for cavalry, and, further, that you lose many valuable chances to inflict losses upon the enemy.

Colonel Mitchell also states that the Australian and New Zealand troops had fewer sore backs than the Yeomanry. However, the former carried the rifle on their back and the latter on the saddle. It is possible that the difference in sore backs was the result of this one feature; also the reluctance of the former

CAVALRY MARCHES

to trot may have really been due to the way they carried the rifle. Even a brief test of trotting with the rifle slung over your back will convince you that it is exceedingly uncomfortable. Certainly there is much logic on both sides of the question. For marches not in the presence of the enemy there would be no necessity for slowing down the rate of march for the wheel transport. Again, where the situation is reversed and the enemy close, it might be vital to have all combat elements present. Thus it is evident that tactical considerations must frequently affect the rate of a march.

The question as to whether the trot is good or bad could be definitely settled by a test between two squadrons. The test would have to be over a considerable distance, say five hundred miles, and carefully conducted. The daily marches should average about thirty miles, and each squadron should cover the same route on the same day. One would use only walking and leading and the other would trot from twenty to thirty minutes each hour, and do the balance at a walk or by leading. Care would have to be taken to insure that the horses were of equal quality and condition at the start. A close examination of the horses of these two squadrons at the end of such a test would certainly disclose many interesting and valuable facts. The truth or fallacy of many ideas would thus be settled beyond dispute.

Possibly the chief value to us of the above opinions and theories is to point out unmistakably that the field for progress and development in cavalry marches is almost unlimited. We are just at the threshold of a new era of development along this line. The old wasteful methods must be relegated to the dump heap. It is a subject as broad as the entire field of cavalry training itself. If we hope to justify our existence in the next emergency, we must know how to retain our mobility under the most difficult conditions of terrain, of forage supply, and of tactics. As poorly conducted marches are the chief cause of loss of mobility, we must know how to make them in a manner calculated to insure a maximum conservation of horseflesh. Our methods of marching must be standardized throughout the service. Even though we have many new doctrines and principles to guide us, will we be able to apply the new any more successfully than we did the old? Without doubt, the conditions that confront us will be infinitely more difficult to meet than were those that faced us in 1916. We shall certainly never be blessed with better officer material than we then had. I feel that Colonel Fleming has placed his finger on the trouble when in the July, 1920, *CAVALRY JOURNAL* he states: "With the exception of one or two minor lapses, our theories have always been sound. Emphasis should, however, be placed on the word 'theories.' The trouble has been that while our theories have been sound, our training for the past twenty-five or thirty years has been the reverse of sound."

It is, then, to proper training that we must look for the cure. Theories, regulations, and doctrines are of little value unless they are tested and practiced,

so that all become familiar with their practical application. To draw an analogy, suppose that, instead of our present system of training in rifle marksmanship, we had only a set of rules and regulations to teach us how to shoot. Suppose we had no preliminary training in positions, use of sling, adjustment of sights, sighting drill, trigger-squeeze exercises, and rapid-fire practice. Suppose we had no gallery practice or preliminary or record firing on the range, or competition for ratings, honors, or medals. Do you think that if we followed such a system we would be able to use the rifle effectively in war? Would not an organization which depended on such a method (or lack of method) for the development of its marksmanship find that when the acid test came it had as many theories of how to shoot the rifle as there were men on the firing line? I think the point is beyond dispute. What we need is proper training, and to get it we must follow the lines indicated by our training for the development of rifle marksmanship.

In order to secure the highest possible standard of march efficiency, the field training period for all regiments should have a definite time allotted for training in marching, which should culminate in a march of at least three hundred miles. The length of daily marches should average about thirty miles, so that the test will be fairly severe and bring out any faults that might exist. The rules and regulations for the proper conduct of a march should be rigidly enforced. Careful data should be kept as to the way the men and horses stand this test. Prior to the march the commanding officer should be required to submit his plan of march to the Chief of Cavalry, showing route, total distance, proposed length of daily marches, rate of march, and any new ideas on marching which he desires to test. Upon approval of the plan, it should be strictly adhered to. At its conclusion a comprehensive report should be submitted to the Chief of Cavalry showing: (1) photographs of horses prior to the march and at its conclusion; (2) a table of average weights of horses before and at the end of the march; (3) a report on the number and character of sore backs. If possible, the troops and squadrons should be rated on their marching efficiency by the colonel and the results published in orders. When regiments are stationed close together, there should be a competition arranged, and suitable trophies offered to stimulate the competitive spirit. Units located where the heat is extreme could make their marches entirely by night, with the result that we would soon be able to conduct them efficiently. In this connection air observation could be arranged and the column be required to elude it. Based on his reports from the various regiments, the Chief of Cavalry could determine which regiments excelled in this field of training. Observers from his office could witness these tests and assist him in making his ratings, which would be published to the service.

With some such system of training, our cavalry would soon be in a class by itself as regards marching. Then the next war will not find us wanting in cavalry's chief asset—**MOBILITY**. Let's have it!

Essentials of Military Conduct

BEING A LETTER FROM AN OLD DRAGOON TO HIS SON,
RECENTLY COMMISSIONED

FORT EXPERIENCE, June 1, 1923.

MY DEAR SON:

There are a few matters which for some time I have had in mind to discuss with you, and now that my sand-glass is fast running low the thought is strengthened to action. As I watch in the glass the operation of the eternal law, each grain of sand brings up a memory. Looking backward, it is easy to see how the precious grains of achievement could have been increased in number and size, how the black grains of failure and disappointment could be reduced or eradicated, and the general drab effect of the whole materially brightened. In the hope that my reflections may benefit you, they are here set down, naught in malice.

You have just graduated from West Point. In your youthful exuberance of enthusiasm, innocence, and energy, life is spread out before you like a beautiful green valley. You have come forth imbued with that time-honored ideal which we all love—"DUTY, HONOR, COUNTRY"—which is a firm foundation for citizenship, whether the bearer be a civilian or soldier. You feel that your ideal is not only the highest, but that it should also be the ideal of all men. High as is this ideal and the honor which, in its observance, you will be to the country, that alone will not bring you personal advancement, nor even keep you out of Class B. To attain the one and avoid the other, a careful course must be laid and steered, avoiding alike the rocks, shoals, stormy weather, and uncharted seas.

The career of a strong and forceful officer should be like the meanderings of a great river. It has one fixed general direction. It turns here and there at times, as obstacles to its direct march are encountered, doubling back and almost reversing its direction, but always finally coming back to the fixed course to its goal. For the officer, these obstacles may be: ignorance, which is overcome by study; lack of skill, which is met by practice; traits of character to be formed, reformed, or eradicated; the natural jealousy, hostility, and opposition of others, which must be countered in all the proper methods and against which the greatest skill, judgment, tact, self-control, and perseverance are necessary; and indifference, inertia, and mental and physical lassitude, which will frequently oppose an almost immovable resistance—a resistance which can be overcome only by the determined will to do. This determined will power must be present throughout your life. If persisted in sufficiently long,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

it will become fixed and, like other fixed correct characteristics, will then give little concern.

First of all, strive to perfect yourself in your profession. Find out what is the best literature and read it with serious intent. Make it a rule of life that each day, come what may, you will devote at least one hour to personal improvement.

Cultivate the habit of reflection. "Think twice before you speak" is an adage the observance of which will lead naturally to the formation of sound judgment. Be conscientious, but an ingrowing conscience will land you in Class B just as quickly as will the absence of one.

With your youth and inexperience it can hardly be expected that you will know instinctively which is that line of work or activity for which you have particular aptitude. With the various tasks that will naturally fall to you, sooner or later you will be able to determine in what particular work you most excel. Every true soldier prefers, of course, active service with troops. Besides your duty as a combatant officer, select and, whenever practicable, work in the specialty wherein you have particular talent. Wherever your preferences and aptitude do not coincide, elect your aptitude, for there you will attain the greater success and your preferences will, as a matter of course, follow your successes.

The term "bootlick" is, righteously enough, odious to you. However much you loathe the term, you, in common with others, frequently envy the apparent success that follow the efforts of this class. Tact in some form is usually one of the means employed. Remember that seniors are attracted by efficiency and performance and frequently are apt apparently to overlook those methods and traits that render a man odious in the eyes of his associates and coequals.

Tact is a quality which by far will do more for your advancement than any other. By all proper means seek to gain the good will of every one—your superiors, equals, and juniors. Mediocrity plus the good will of others will accomplish hundreds of times more in your personal interests than will real genius without such good will. Your tact will prevent adverse efficiency reports, and these efficiency reports will then always be commendatory. Tact may not and probably is not natural to you, but study it and cultivate it. Make frequent introspections of each and every one of your personal characteristics and freely analyze your successes and failures in contrast with the personal characteristics and actions of successful men. In this matter the seed sown as a young man will in your advancing years bring forth fruit many fold.

In my day courtesy, deference, and politeness were cardinal soldier virtues, though this latter-day generation does not appreciate their real value, and they are suffering a decline; yet you will find that the punctilious observance of these qualities will cause you to be sought out as a desirable member for many an occasion, social and official. By such courtesies you will frequently gain unofficial friends who, even unsought by you, will be your advocates and

ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT

champions with your commanders. Many an aide or adjutant owes his first appointment to such friendship and gratitude.

Be careful of your manners and of the details of your habits and personal appearance. The incorrect and apparently inconsequential use of a particular piece of tableware may bar you from exclusive homes, and clean and neatly pressed clothing may gain you an invitation to choice entertainments. If you do not know the correct social forms or customs, seek the advice of an older, kindly disposed, and polished comrade.

It should be unnecessary to say that your language and conversation should be pure. Occasionally one meets some picturesquely profane conspicuous poser. They are amusing for the moment, and then become great bores. Such language is prohibited and cannot be used toward the men. You will, of course, select as your personal friends and associates only those who are gentlemen.

You have always been temperate and need no caution thereon. You probably do not recall that years ago one of our articles of war, inherited from the British Mutiny Act, prohibited courts-martial from sitting between 3:00 p. m. and the following 8:00 a. m. This was because of a former custom, long since discarded, that no gentleman was supposed to be sober after 3:00 p. m. Now, however, drunkenness is properly taboo at all times and has been the cause of enough Class B notices to serve as warnings and bitter repentances.

In your career you will have many disappointments and heart-burnings. To others will go honors and preferments which you may have thought were more deserved by yourself. If you were to consult your comrades, you would find that practically all of them entertain similar sensations in their own regards. Disappointment is one of the most common personal emotions of the soldier. The antidote is hope, optimism, cheerfulness, and an acceptance that all is for the best. Preferment, appointments, and commendation, not being bound by hard and fast rules, are matters of prerogative and are not necessarily based on merit, but upon personal acquaintanceship. Therefore, the more pleasing your personality and the greater your circle of friends, the greater are your chances for preferment.

Besides the satisfaction of correct living, the object of this line of conduct is to secure advancement by personal efficiency and by the creation of a sentiment favorable to yourself. Paraphrasing a well-known military maxim, it may properly be said that "one enemy in the dark can overthrow the good done you by ten friends in the open." Although your efficiency record may be replete with encomiums, one adverse report will frequently offset them all. In your seeking or being sought by others for important details, no matter how many friends may be working for you, one unknown enemy in the chain of action can, unseen, stab the approval to its death. Many men today are heart-broken from just such causes. Make it a rule of conduct that each enemy made is one more spadeful dug in the grave of your military career.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Practice serenity of disposition. While always making your best efforts, do not worry because you have not secured maximum success. You will find that, after all, the consciousness of duty honestly done to the best of your ability—in other words, the approval of your own conscience—is your greatest and most usual reward in any undertaking.

It has been said:

"Opportunity, master of human destiny am I . . .
I knock once unbidden at every gate."

This statement is hardly correct. Opportunity is always knocking, but the trouble is we do not always recognize the knock. We are surrounded by opportunities, but either fail to recognize them or, even frequently recognizing them, we lack those qualities necessary to take advantage of them. By your friends and acquaintances your reputation is passed on to others. Your name is on various rosters. In selecting from an available list, the authorities will look at your listed qualifications and will consider the general reputation which you bear. Any such selection you should regard with satisfaction. It will bring you into contact with higher-ups, where you may further add to your reputation and be still further passed up to a higher level of preferment. Thus your character and reputation will create opportunities.

Study to eliminate from your make-up all peculiarities or idiosyncrasies—personal, physical, and mental—that are objectionable to others. While never deprecating nor disparaging your own qualifications, eradicate egotism or boasting. Be properly modest. Cultivate a pleasant manner.

Always be zealous. Make the fullest use of each of your abilities. Excel or endeavor to excel in each duty, however trivial. Whatever be the duty, you should be the example of correct performance. Although, according to the parable of the talents, no two men are endowed with equal ability, each should make of himself the best man he is capable of becoming. Endeavor to find out what is your "max" and always seek to raise it.

With whatever duty or matter you may be connected, not only perform your whole duty, but even more, if necessary to demonstrate that you have discharged your whole duty. With any matter with which you may be connected, let your actions be clean cut and such as to show clearly that no fault nor shortcoming may be charged to you.

Loyalty is an indispensable quality to success. In whatever subordinate capacity you serve, always be loyal to your commander. Seek to carry out faithfully his every idea. Make it, for the time being at least, your own. Develop it in every way to the fullest extent. You may not inwardly agree with the idea, principle, or duty, but the responsibility is not yours. It is his and he reaps the rewards of failures as well as success and will be ever grateful to you for your loyalty.

ESSENTIALS OF MILITARY CONDUCT

Commend publicly your subordinates for their good qualities, efforts, and showings made. Make corrections no more publicly than is necessary. In general, a reproof or correction privately made will carry greater weight with the person reproofed and will make him more favorably disposed to you. Admonitions properly made will create a friend where otherwise you would have made an enemy.

Enter into all proper activities around you—athletics, society, or whatever it may be; enter fully and sincerely into the spirit thereof. Play polo and own good ponies. Be an enthusiastic horseman. Organize entertainments, or, if that be not your aptitude, at least enter into the spirit of those that others organize. Be an optimist, never a crepe-hanger.

Let your spirit be whole-hearted. Above all, be full of human sympathy. Publicly, at least, and irrespective of your private opinion, respect the other fellow's personality, position, ability, and attainments. It is remarkable how this is contagious and reciprocal. Avoid developing temperament. Besides being an objectionable quality in itself, it will sooner or later bring disaster to its possessor. When some one, whether your superior, commander, or junior, loses his temper and commits himself to an unjust remark or act, return it not in kind. He hurts himself, not you, and your restraint will be a victory and will grow into a laudable and confirmed trait of character.

Irrespective of the action of others, pursue an even manner and high principle of doing kind and thoughtful things for your associates. Casting bread upon the waters as a principle dates from the dawn of history. It is related that when President Roosevelt appointed to a major-generalship that genial veteran, Commissary General John F. Weston, the latter called upon the President to thank him, and conversation to the following effect took place:

The PRESIDENT: "I pleasantly remember your efficiency at Santiago and your kindness to me in seeing that my men received their rations."

The GENERAL: "I assure you, Mr. President, that such kindnesses were nothing compared to those I would have shown had I known you were to be President."

Live a strong, active physical life. A sound body and a sound mind go together. You will observe that those branches of the service wherein the daily life is one of physical activity produce more men of greater than average vitality, mentality, length of life and number of years of distinguished service than do the services of less daily physical activity.

You may at times be called upon to handle troops in various cases of civil disorders. Those situations are full of shoals and rocks, and by them military reputations are easily wrecked. In general, the political authorities desire that you use your force merely as a bluff and to intimidate. Openly you are generally given latitude to use your judgment, but the unexpressed hope is that by cajolery, persuasion, and covert threat you can succeed in quieting the dis-

turbance. Such action is really political tact. Any actual use of force is such a strong lever for the enemies of the government to use in political arguments as infringement and abuse of liberties, with the broad avenues of invective against the military, that the authorities all dread any actual use of force. Your success in such undertakings, then, is measured by accomplishment through peaceful means, and the amount of force you actually employ measures your failure.

One of the most universal traits of American character is to resent domination by others—the authority which one man exercises over another and the orders which he issues. You will undoubtedly frequently feel this resentment. It is necessary that you give your special attention to curbing any such tendencies and to restrain your passion. This resentment—this tendency to object to the control by others—is the basis of indiscipline and disobedience, and these are among the greatest of military crimes. It is absolutely necessary to your success that such resentment of authority be killed at its very inception.

Keep out of army fights. Owing to causes too numerous to mention here, controversies, magnifying unimportant details and multiplying personal animosities, are apt frequently to arise. In general and where possible, the authorities will, in the interests of discipline, decide all controversies in favor of the senior. But neither side to a controversy adds any honor or dignity to his reputation. In general, the reputation of each controversialist is soiled by the controversy, if not absolutely blackened. Many an officer has had his conduct justified by a court-martial and at the same time has received from his comrades an unenviable reputation. Learn to sense the causes of army fights. Avoid them as you would poison. You may frequently imagine that affronts and discourtesies are directed at you when in reality there was no such intention. Pass these unnoticed, and also even those real slights which are minor and really immaterial. Should any slight or affront be actually damaging to such an extent as to affect your honor, standing, and usefulness in the service, then, by taking the matter up in the proper official way, justice will be done you. Let your own hands be always clean, and your straightforward manliness, integrity, and singleness of purpose will win you friends and cause the decisions to be made in your favor.

A favorite pastime with many is "knocking"—a destructive criticism of everything and all authority, *animo furandi*. This tendency is easy to start, grows rapidly, like all noxious weeds, and, once started, spreads quickly and is hard to stop. Basically, all laws and orders are founded on right and justice, though frequently perverted. The junior never sees with the eyes of the higher-up, charged with responsibility and whose issued orders must be framed to produce the desired results. You yourself will some day be placed as your commander now is and will have the same right to expect the cheerful compliance by your juniors.

When put in positions where you are responsible for enforcing discipline, let such action, as far as possible, be automatic, in the manner of cause and effect. Just as every man knows that a hand put in the fire is immediately burned, so should the administration of discipline proceed promptly and automatically, as a natural law. It is thus impersonal, and you will not be charged by your subordinates as being the author of their misfortunes.

Be punctilious in money matters. "Short reckonings, long friends" is particularly true in the army. Tradesmen know that an officer is sure pay and are frequently eager to extend credit. Many of them, when payment is slow, seek redress through the War Department, and then trouble begins. Every such complaint is one step toward Class B. Live within your income. Do not try to emulate others whose income being greater may spend more. Scrupulous honesty is essential, and your word once given must be absolutely inviolable.

Each positive trait of character has its negative counter trait to be avoided. Personal polish must not degenerate into effeminacy, nor tact into obsequiousness, nor render you a spineless jelly-fish; strength of character and determination must not become unyielding stubbornness; zeal and loyalty should not make you a prejudiced partisan; knowledge should avoid pedantry; success must not develop egotism nor overconfidence; a careful selection of friends and associates should avoid snobbishness; be conservative, but not unprogressive; progressive, but not radical; be willing and obliging, but always sincere and dependable; be kind and sympathetic, but never officious; proficient and skilful in your work, but not obnoxiously spectacular in performance; prudence should not be overcautious, nor should forceful resolution become rashness; intense interest in your work should not produce worry nor nervousness, nor should cheerfulness, serenity, and acceptance of results cause indifference and lack of interest. There is thus ever a fight. Success is surrounded by self-produced dangers.

It is impossible in the short space of this letter to touch on all the essentials of personal conduct, but by following those herein laid down you will not go astray. In their observance you will take increasing pleasure, and your satisfaction, self-approval, and the respect of your comrades will increase with your successes and perfection of character.

AN OLD DRAGON.

SUPPLYING A SEAT

WHEN A DISTINGUISHED visitor arrived at Jodhpur to be initiated to pig-sticking whose equitation was not quite as it might have been, Sir Pertab, in his whimsical way of relating events, said: "I hunting all over Jodhpur for fast running man putting each side of sahib. If he falling this side other man pulling other leg."—From (*British*) *Cavalry Journal*.

Gasoline, Waist Lines, and What Not

BY

Major J. A. BARRY, Cavalry

Decorations by Capt. W. T. BAUSKETT, Cavalry



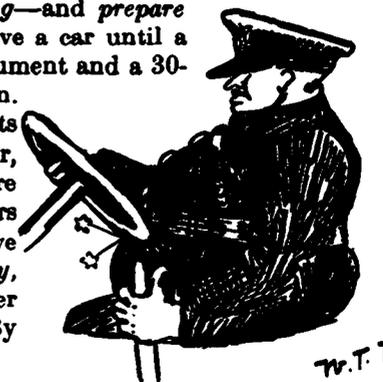
AN army medical bulletin recently carried an article on *calories* and their tendency to produce or eradicate *waist lines*—a production metrically, an eradication artistically. The issuance of such article is evidence, if such were needed, that waist lines are getting too long or, as the ladies say, are disappearing. The article tells how to reduce waist lines by avoiding or cutting down on many of the good things we like to eat. Nearly all of them carry too many calories to be eaten with safety—if we let the calory rest after eating him. The War Department most properly insists on physical activity; the Medical Department deplores obesity, and the Horse Department of the Cavalry School comes to the assistance of both and most modestly, but quite confidently, recommends the little appreciated sport of *horseback riding*.

It is admitted by all that one little calory can and does grow bigger and bigger, day by day and in every way, on the seat of an automobile than in any other place or under any other conditions. It's sad but true: you can't motor your calories away. It's equally true that you can ride them away, painlessly (more or less, according to patient). Moreover, writers who make money from their books about "How to Defeat Old Age," all agree that *horseback riding* is the best bet. It is also agreed that most cavalrymen in time of war (only) have got to ride a horse. (The colonel is the only man in a regiment allowed a car by the Tables of Organization.) Neither the heart nor hindpart of a cavalryman is or can be developed on the seat of a motor car.

GASOLINE, WAIST LINES, AND WHAT NOT

Let's all get busy—and *thin*—and *young*—and *prepare for war*: Let's ride a horse. Let's don't drive a car until a 4-foot jump looks like the Washington Monument and a 30-degree slope like the walls of the Grand Canyon.

Let's teach our youngsters the gear shifts of a horse—his care, his flexibility, his power, his speeds, his makes, his utility, the pleasure to be got out of him—before our youngsters learn the same of a car, and then we'll have cheaper gasoline, less *obesity*, more *activity*, shorter and more artistic *waist lines*, lighter and better Cavalry. How can we do it? By *riding a horse*



THE ROAD TO SOISSONS, JULY, 1919

By Ralph B. Evans, in "Foreign Service"

How well do I remember
Those Lancers, brave and gay,
Riding along the forest road
That pleasant summer day.
They laughed and seemed so happy,
And as they rode away,
Those brave and happy soldiers
Feared not the hosts in Gray.

How well they rode their horses,
Those fighting men of France;
How bright the morning sun shown on
Each saber and each lance.
The clinking of their scabbards
Was music to our ears,
They seemed to us like knights of old,
Who rode down through the years.

How well France must have loved them;
How well they fought and fell.
I think of them so often,
As they rode to battle's hell.
True sons of France, we hail you!
So brave through all your fears,
Your memory will go with us
Through all the passing years.

The Cavalry Fight

Lessons from the Fight at Volchkovtsy,* on August 21, 1914

BY

General N. N. GOLOVINE

(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff)

THE cavalry of the European States entered the World War believing in the theory of the "shock." Some believed in it to a greater, others to a smaller, degree. The Russo-Japanese and the Anglo-Boer wars made many cavalrymen critical. Changes were adopted, the greatest part of them by Germany. Nevertheless, the belief in the "shock" as a decisive means of cavalry struggle continued. It is in this respect that the fight at Volchkovtsy is highly instructive. In it two cavalry masses clashed in close formations.

The first thing that should attract the attention of a student of that fight is the small number of losses.

Indeed, imagine two big masses encountering each other at full speed. What a great number of killed and injured should remain on the battlefield as the result of the law of mechanics, according to which the power of impact

is measured by the formula $\frac{mv^2}{2}$! In this connection an accident comes to my mind which took place at a cavalry maneuver near Krasnoe Selo, when two horsemen, riding on the flanks of two squadrons attacking each other, clashed at full speed: one lay on the spot with his skull broken, the other died from serious injuries.

In the Volchkovtsy fight the losses caused by cold steel during the encounter itself were on each side 40 to 50 men only! Yet in that fight clashed and fought 10 squadrons on the Russian side and 8 on the Austrian side—that is, no fewer than 1,800 horsemen. Thus the percentage of the losses in the encounter was only 5.

This result strikes one at first glance; it is in contradiction to the very theory of the "shock," and proves that the theory is wrong. Battle experience is the only and incontestable judge for all "military theories."

The erroneousness of the "shock" theory consisted in the fact that it arrived at its conclusions in too theoretical a way; it put to the forefront the "mechanical principle," forgetting that the psychological side of the events on the battlefield is paramount. In time of danger, "flesh" speaks so loudly that it silences the arguments of the mind; this is the case with the greatest

* See CAVALRY JOURNAL, January and April, 1923.

THE CAVALRY FIGHT

part of the men. Two cavalry groups galloping to meet each other do not present two lifeless masses governed only by the laws of matter. In these masses, made up of men with their complicated spiritual structure, a process of a psychological nature develops before the mechanical impact takes place. This process dissolves the masses and very often forces them to turn their backs.

I will illustrate this by an example which I observed from a few hundred paces. Two squadrons—one Russian and the other Austrian—having emerged from the folds of the ground, unexpectedly found themselves facing each other on horseback at a distance not greater than 1,000 paces. Both at once deployed and moved forward at a gallop to meet each other. The picture immediately following the first movements made a distinct impression upon me. In the smoke enveloping the Austrian squadron I saw that the latter began to spread in depth (I was watching from the side); every moment the spreading increased. I could not see an encounter, because it coincided, in the literal meaning of this word, with the moment when I saw clearly horsemen—Russian and Austrian—galloping in the same direction—toward the wood from which the Austrians had come. Then I understood that the transformation of the deployed line into an "egg" had for its reason the fact that the more timid Austrian horsemen of the second file began from the start to hold their horses. Subsequently their example was followed by others, and a general turning back ensued; so that, at the moment of the final approach, the Austrians became mixed up with our horsemen and all were galloping toward the wood.

A similar process takes place and formerly took place in all cavalry encounters. For this reason the clash often did not occur; one side or both used to turn before it. In the Volchkovtsy fight the two sides were so brave that they actually met, but their speed was slowed down and the hand-to-hand fight was entered into by the bravest, who are called "heroes," and who are followed by the crowd. *Turning back* began from the very outset, on every section of the fight area. Such was the case with the Russians in the center, apparently with both sides in the northern section, and with the Austrians in the southern section. With the crowds on horseback tossing about on the battlefield, incidents occur in the nature of the one in the center described by Colonel Slivinski—the appearing of units in good order coming up from the rear. Now with them rests the fate of the fight; around them foams the mob element formed by the disorganized units which had clashed. In this element the emotional inspirations rule supreme.

Right here I should like to mention a detail from the reminiscences of Colonel Slivinski with reference to that moment when Count Keller ordered the troop of his escort to charge the Austrian squadron, which was galloping in good order. The staff and the escort, as if they had waited for this order,

went at a gallop from the spot against the flank of the passing squadron. "The chief of the escort, Lieutenant Penzin, drew his revolver, took aim, and fired near my ear. The commander of the Austrian squadron, galloping in front, fell from his horse, hit by the bullet. The squadron did not withstand our charge. It veered to the left and cleared off the battlefield. It was followed by disorderly groups and single horsemen." Please note that here also there was no "shock"; the squadron turned back under the influence of a flanking attack by much smaller forces.

Studying the letters of the participants of the fight, I can only see the steady confirmation of the fact that, although the cavalry forces rode up to each other, the fate of the fight on all sections was morally decided before the moment of the mechanical encounter. This explains observations like the one made by General Barbovich: "I noticed that the Austrians did not attack; * * * they did only defend themselves, turning around." This was taking place on the Russian left flank (at the southern part of the battlefield), where two squadrons of the Inguermanlandski Hussars unexpectedly attacked the flank and rear of the Austrian White Dragoons.

In the letters of the Austrians, participants of the fight, you will come across similar observations with regard to the centre, where the fight in the beginning was to their advantage: "First, we met a swarm of cavalymen (*Wir trafen . . . zuerst auf einen Schwarm*) . . . We passed through it (*diesen durchritten wir*) and were confronted by units in close formation, constituting evidently the second line or the reserves." In this way the first encounter is described by the chief of staff of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, Oszkar de Rovid Maxon, who, together with his division chief, led the attack. These were his impressions. In reality it was the close formation of our Lancers, which had already begun to "dissolve." We also know that Count Keller had neither second line nor reserves, and what the Austrians in the thickest of the fight took for them was the escort troop, with a small group of dispatch riders, which, like the last grain of sand, were thrown by Count Keller on the scale of victory.

The turning back of the horsemen is one of the outward manifestations of the psychological process by which every fight is ended—a cavalry fight as well as any other—and which can be formulated as follows: *unwillingness to fight*.

This psychological law finds its expression in various forms. It is seen in a most conspicuous way when it takes the form of the refusal to fight on the part of the leader ordering a retreat or stopping the attack, or in its frequent manifestation—lacking the courage to charge on horseback.

The Volchkovtsy fight is of a special interest because both leaders proved to be brave and energetic in the highest degree. General Count Keller, as well as General Zarembo, looked for an opportunity to charge, threw their cavalry

into the fight, and, if such expression may be used, "played the game" to the end. General Zarembo showed it when he placed himself at the head of the White Dragoons. Count Keller did not lead his troops personally into the fight; he was in more favorable conditions; his personal example was not necessary for the units of the 10th Cavalry Division, and to the last moment he could remain the leader controlling the fight.

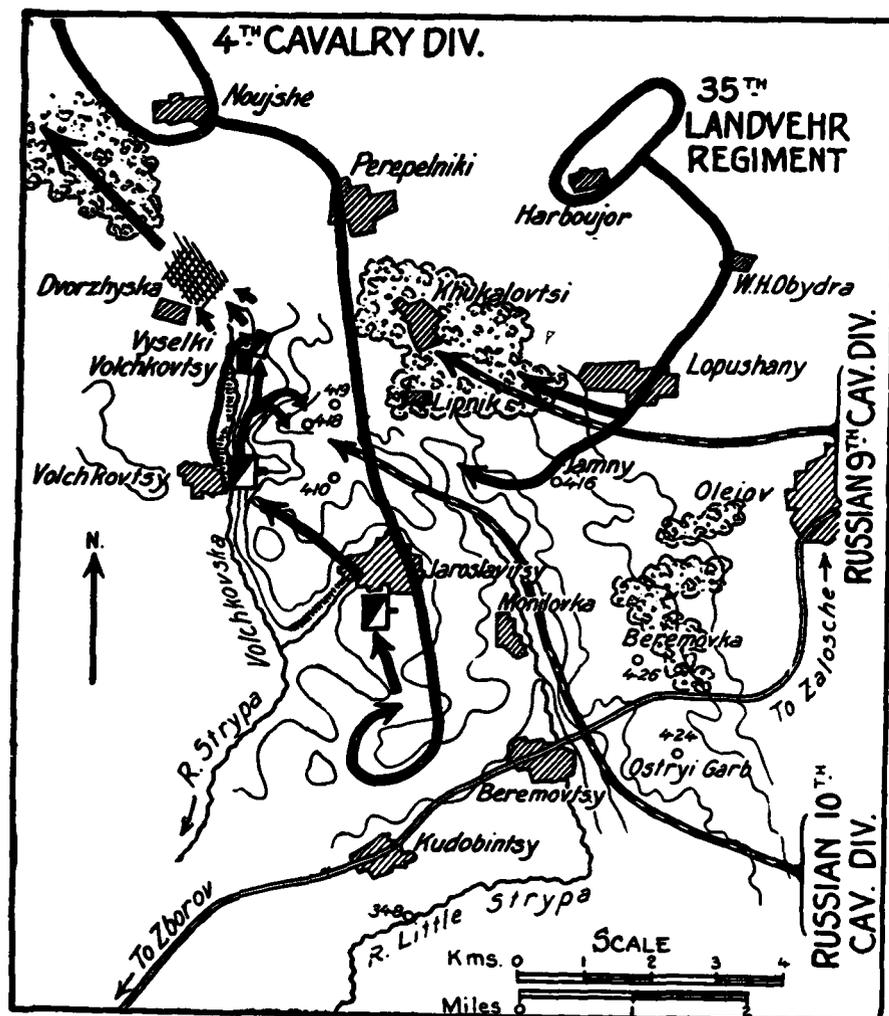
But his determination and valor are characterized by his own words, pronounced after the fight to Captain (now General) Barbovich, the commander of the two squadrons of the Inguermanlandski Hussars: "When I threw in my last reserve, the escort, I drew my revolver (my heart nearly jumped out) and decided that if they should run I would send a bullet through my head." One should have known Count Keller to understand the whole dramatic force of his words; his personal bravery amazed everybody, and he met his death in 1919, at Kieff, like a hero, having refused to don a German military coat and by this change of cloth to escape being shot by Petlura's Ukrainian troops.

Both leaders, Count Keller and General Zarembo, showed themselves battle leaders of the kind of whose bravery every army can be proud. "The unwillingness to fight" was not on their part.

In such cases the psychological process finds its sphere of application among the junior leaders. This we see on the Austrian side. Indeed, just put to yourself the question: Why, out of 22 squadrons of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, only 3 took part?

Three squadrons of the 13th Lancer Regiment, as we know, galloped northward. The Austrian source explains that this was owing to the erroneous reports about the presence of the enemy there. We also know that these reports were not as wrong as the Austrian author thinks they were: The advanced units of the 9th Russian Cavalry Division had begun to appear there. Notwithstanding, in the moment when Major Vidale (the commander of the rear squadrons of the 13th Lancer Regiment) began to deploy his group of squadrons in order to charge the Russian Dragoons, who suddenly dived out of the folds of the ground, there could be no other decision for the commander of the 13th Lancer Regiment, as well as for the commander of the group marching ahead, but to support their brave comrades by an immediate charge. Only such a decision can be considered to exhibit true cavalry nature. Is not that which took place with the 13th Lancer Regiment one of the manifestations of the "unwillingness to fight" one of the stages of moral dissolution? Here is another fact: Two regiments, the 9th Dragoons and the 1st Lancers, stood during the cavalry fight waiting near Viselki Volchkovtsy, one-third of a mile from the place of the encounter. They waited for the order of the division commander!

All great leaders of troops have shown a superior talent for judging the hearts of their men. In this lies the characteristic difference between them and



PRINCIPAL MOVEMENTS OF TROOPS DURING FIGHT AT VOLCHKOVTSY, AUGUST 21, 1914.

the theorists of the military art, who themselves have not endured a serious battle experience.

Napoleon as well as Frederick II of Prussia ordered that their cavalry when charging should be in close formation and keep the line. Napoleon and Frederick had in mind least of all the laws of mechanics. Their motives were of another nature.

The first reason was the necessity for the man, fighting with cold steel, to be sure of immediate support from his neighbors, protecting his flanks and rear. Without this, his participation in a fight requires of him a very high morale and degree of preparedness.

The second reason was the impossibility for individual horsemen, when in close formation, to turn back. Frederick insisted especially on this, because he was not sure of the quality of his troops, drafted by recruiting (not on the principle of military service based on citizen's duty). In this respect he went very far. There were instances, according to his contemporaries, when the horsemen, galloping in the midst of the masses moving against each other, were lifted in the air. The most reliable men, non-commissioned officers, were placed on the flanks, so that the rank and file were as if immured in the deployed formations of the striking lines. Those compact masses, for which the only direction open was ahead, had, in the full meaning of the word, to be "led" by their leaders. Thus Napoleon's and Frederick's tactics were no more than methods of bringing up the cavalry to the encounter.

Let us consider now, in the example of the Volchkovtsy fight, to what extent was it possible to put such methods into practice. We should also remember that this is the only example available for our study, because all other efforts invariably ended in such a way that the close formations of cavalry appearing in the sphere of artillery fire were shot to pieces without having the honor of seeing the enemy's face. Once such case I told about in the article describing the action at Yanoff.*

The Austrian cavalry leaders believed in the doctrine of the "shock" even more than we. This accounts for the fact that throughout all the morning of August 21st General Zarembo was dragging his division in close formations in his trail. When taking up a waiting position, he assembled his regiments in columns. From the point of view of the "shock" doctrine, he was right.

About 9 a. m. he was severely punished for the faultiness of his doctrine. The 4th Austrian Cavalry Division got under the quick fire of the Russian horse batteries standing in position near the hill "Beremovka." We use the word "severely," although we know that in reality the losses of the Austrian cavalry division from this fire were not heavy; but the result in the moral respect was heavy. This was the result: the disorganized division fell back and was afterward taken unawares by the Russian cavalry in the region of the hills 418 and 419. The division commander was obliged to lead the first regiment to charge personally, and the remaining regiments, with the exception of the squadrons of Major Vidale, refused to fight.

The fundamental cause of the Austrian failure lies in General Zarembo's tendency to drag his division in his trail in compact formations. Thus we see that in modern war, even in such an exceptional case as the fight at

* CAVALRY JOURNAL, April, 1921.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Volchkovtsy, the old method of bringing up the cavalry to the encounter does not give good results.

It was somewhat different with Count Keller. The fight was started by the vanguard regiment, the Cossacks. They attacked the retreating infantry in lava formation. The Orenburgaki Cossacks were followed, behind their right flank, by Count Keller's 10 squadrons. To the Cossacks' left two more squadrons protected the region of his maneuver. Fate was extremely favorable to Count Keller. These 10 squadrons unexpectedly found themselves 1,000 steps away from mounted enemy masses. General Count Keller showed himself a true cavalry leader when he decided without hesitation to take advantage of this accidental meeting; he threw his squadrons into a charge, despite the fact that he had every reason to consider himself only half as strong numerically as his enemy. He was right, because the "mechanical shock" does not exist, and very little weight, therefore, is to be attributed, under such conditions, to the law of mechanics or the number of troops. In this sphere the spirit of boldness reigns supreme.

But how to come up, under the conditions of modern war, to 100-200 paces from the enemy—to this effective distance in a cavalry fight? The old method is of no use. Another is to be looked for. The finding of the other method will be greatly facilitated if we consider the evolution of infantry tactics in connection with the increasing efficiency of fire-arms. Already, in the beginning of the XIXth century, its battle formations began to extend, growing wide along the front and deep from front to rear. Cavalry's battle formations should also extend along the front and to the rear.

Let us imagine that General Zarembo, having decided to outflank the hills 418-419, should have occupied hill 410 by dismounted units with machine-guns, and at the same time should have sent a regiment to occupy hills 418-419, giving the latter the remaining machine-guns and a battery. This regiment would have taken up a waiting position, having part of its troops dismounted and the machine-guns and battery ready to take under fire the approaches leading to those hills. Under the cover of this immobile shield, General Zarembo might have carried out with the other regiments the maneuver planned. We think that the result of Count Keller's charge in this case would be different. If we consider modern cavalry's armament—the French cavalry, for instance, provides every squadron with 6 light machine-guns and the cavalry division with 24 guns, 48 regimental machine-guns, 8 machine-guns with the cyclists, and 36 armored cars with 37 millimeter gun and machine-guns—it will be clear that the stability and fire power of the regiment in the region of hills 418-419 would be such as to make the issue of the charge of Count Keller's 10 squadrons in close formation beyond any doubt.

We have the right, in this connection, to put to ourselves the question: Will the leader be right if, under the conditions of future war, finding himself in a tactical situation analogous to the one in which Count Keller found

THE CAVALRY FIGHT

himself when he came up to the hill "Ostryi Garb," he carries out the decision (the movement of the main body) by the same methods? Undoubtedly not.

What, then, is the right solution of the problem for a cavalry leader in a position similar to that of Count Keller on the Ostryi Garb? Having decided, after the Cossacks were sent out, to move north-westward with the 10 squadrons, he should first direct another regiment with part of the machine-guns to occupy the hills 418-419, and then with the remaining 6 squadrons, forming his reserve, move along the valley.

Now the reader might object that this regiment runs the risk of being attacked by the Austrian cavalry, if the latter, despite all that was said above, should stand in compact masses behind the hills. Here we come to the fundamental difference between the former three-line battle formation, characteristic of the "shock" tactics, and the one articulated and dismembered along the front and to the rear. The latter does not have for its object the mechanical unity of the mounted shock. It builds the cavalry fight on a combination of the dismounted (fire) and mounted fights. Therefore, taking into consideration the power of modern fire-arms, it is not afraid of the defeat of one of its separate parts. But, on the other hand, it makes possible the utilization of the full power of modern fire for creating on the battlefield a whole net of fire zones in which the enemy cavalry, trying to revive the picture of former mass attacks, will unavoidably get entangled as in a spider web. Let us even suppose that this enemy cavalry will have a partial success over one of the parts of the dismembered formation, thanks to the dash and force of its first impulse. What will be the result? According to the unalterable psychological law, a cavalry unit, once thrown into a charge, becomes like a bullet which left the rifle barrel. It pursues the part of the enemy which it succeeds in hitting and with it turns into a mob. The bullet has spent its force. In this situation, even our small reserves, appearing on the battlefield, will have an influence like that of Count Keller's escort on the Austrian squadron and the mass of Austrian horsemen round it, galloping after the Russian Lancers; and, further, those waves of galloping horsemen will get entangled in the fire zones created by our dismounted elements.

Modern cavalry doctrine demands now, not the old boot-to-boot formation, but the "lava" of small units. As, in a cross-country ride, groups of horsemen part and come together in order to take the obstacles, so in a modern fight the groups of the troop lava gallop forward, not only getting over the obstacles on the ground, but also over the obstacles created by fire.

It is not a paradox to say that the cavalry of today must be composed of horsemen who have the *cavalry spirit* to a greater degree than they of an earlier type. Every atom of a cavalry force, every individual horseman, is a self-urged unit looking forward toward a bold, quick maneuver.

The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry

(Observer with the British Army)

THE CONQUEST OF SYRIA

THE admirable strategy, the sound tactics, and the fine fighting which featured the Jerusalem Campaign were to be surpassed by the 1918 advance into Syria. The brilliancy of these two campaigns need not be accounted for by mystery, by good luck, or by attempts to belittle the quality of the opposition. The simple explanation is the presence of superior ability in the person of the Commander-in-Chief and those whose close support blended in his assertions of command. A bold spirit dared to do, a superior military mind calculated correctly the capacity of troops of all branches, genius stamped the resulting combinations, and real leadership imbued an entire army with matchless confidence.

Sir Philip Chetwode, commanding the XXth Corps, one of the real strategists of the World War; Guy Dawnay, Bartholoman, and others at G. H. Q., under the skillful direction of Major-General Bols, Chief of Staff, gave the Commander-in-Chief a composite mind distinguished for its grasp, its acuteness, and its flexibility in determining situations and achieving solutions. This was a group endowed with unique genius for movement warfare. They would have done as well in the highest places on other fields. In fact, as far back as 1914 several of this general group had contributed much toward saving the day in France. We are liable to forget the words of the British Commander-in-Chief, Lord French, who said in those critical days: "The greatest threat of disaster with which we were faced in 1914 was staved off by the devoted bravery and endurance displayed by the Cavalry Corps, under a commander (General Allenby) who handled them throughout with consummate skill." The same genius for movement warfare, the same appreciation of mobility, and the same aptitude for measuring the power of men which had held back overwhelming forces in the unready days of 1914 brought forth perfect campaigns when this group appeared in complete control of the situation in Palestine. Here and in Syria they produced the classic of all recent warfare.

Like any other work of art, this Syrian campaign produces pleasure and enthusiasm even when viewed quite superficially, after the manner of the layman, but to the aspiring professional it presents so much evidence of surpassing technique that a close examination is a necessity as well as a pleasure.

To picture the situation as the Commander-in-Chief saw it, and then follow his mental processes as he made his estimate, we must turn to the map shown

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

on page 289. The dotted line represents the British positions in mid-September, 1918—a line about 50 miles long, with its right flank resting on the Dead Sea, its left on the Mediterranean, with the enemy confronting them along its entire length. The Turks' total strength was believed to be about 104,000 men. Considerably more than two-thirds of the force was west of the Jordan River, occupying the area indicated by green on the map—a parallelogram about 45 miles in length and 12 miles in depth. It will be observed that the Turkish lines of communication ran northward from the eastern half of this parallelogram, converging on El Afule and Beisan, about 25 miles to the north. From those two points the main communications ran eastward to Deraa, the junction where the Palestine Railway and the Hedjaz Railway unite with the main line running down from Damascus. Obviously, if El Afule, Beisan, and Deraa could be seized, the Turkish retreat would be cut off. The problem, then, was to concentrate a sufficient striking force to penetrate the green parallelogram at its most vulnerable point, and then to send through the break a force possessing sufficient speed to reach objectives in the rear quickly and of sufficient strength to hold them securely. The density of the troops in the parallelogram and the nature of the terrain within that area had to be considered.

Early in 1918 the density had, perhaps, been quite uniform throughout the parallelogram. There followed a succession of events which caused a considerable change. First came a great raid against the Turks east of the Jordan, in March, 1918, resulting in a shift of Turkish troops to the east. A second raid in the same direction, in April, caused the Turks to take more troops from their right flank to strengthen the center and left. During the summer months, still impressed by the probability of a great attack against his eastern positions, the Turk stripped his coastal region of more troops. Thus, as a result of Turkish-German misinterpretation of circumstances, the western end of the green parallelogram, from the standpoint of lack of density, presented to the British the most favorable point for penetration.

As to terrain, everything favored an attack near the coast. Here the plain, though only about 10 miles wide, offered space for deployment and smoothness for advance, while everywhere to the east tangled hills and mountains made difficult obstacles. Moreover, if the Turkish lines could be broken in the coast plain, the extension of this latter feature to the north was in effect a great, wide corridor along the Turkish right flank, up which could sweep the fast-moving columns seeking to cut off the Turkish army. The Jordan River, to the east, difficult of crossing except at Jisr El Damie, which the Anzac Division was ordered to seize, presented a barrier against the escape to the east of the two Turkish armies which lay west of the Jordan. The crippling of the railway at Deraa Junction would prevent the escape of the Turkish army which occupied the region east of the Jordan.

And so it was decided to concentrate in the coast plain north of Jaffa

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

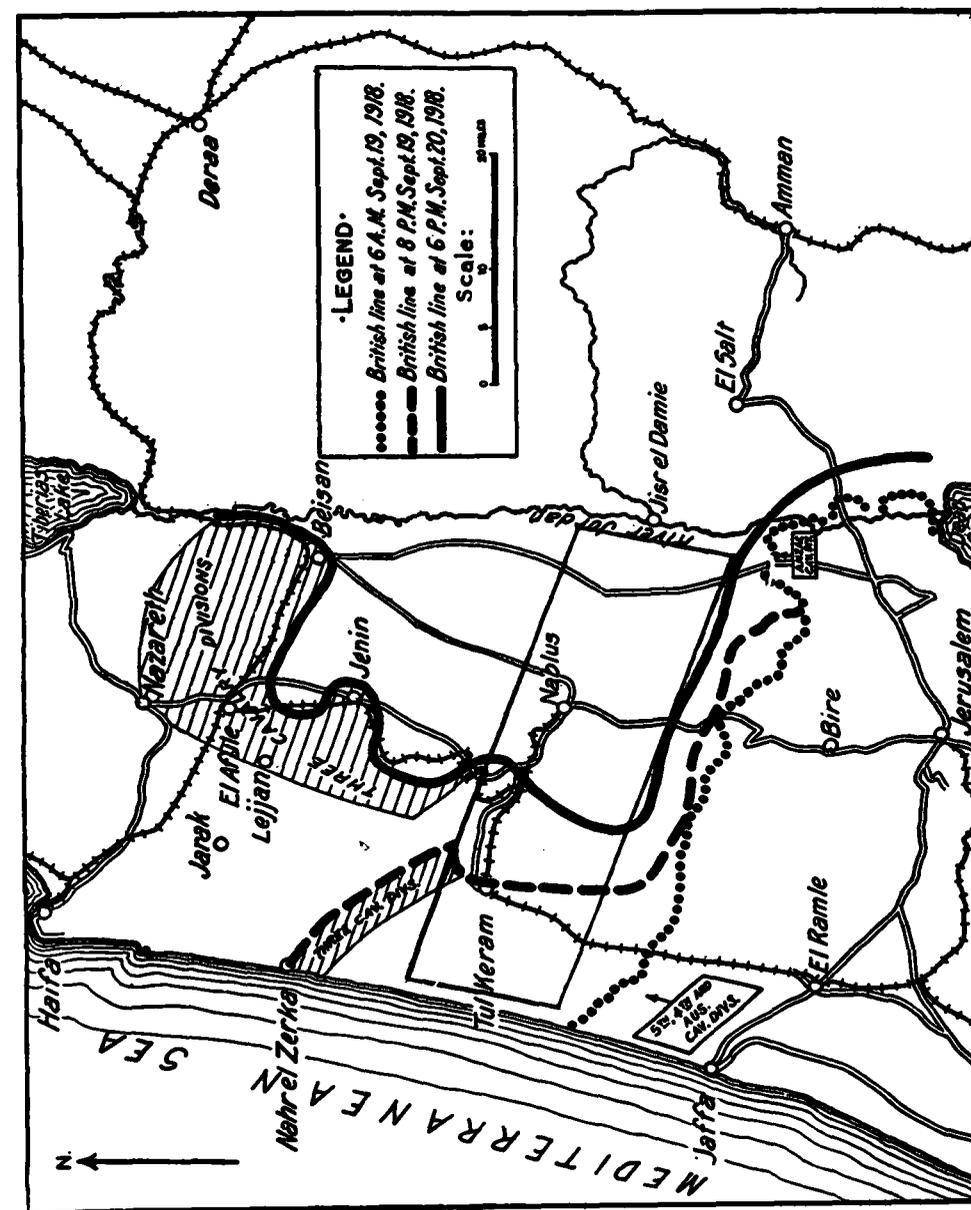
a mass of infantry capable of opening a gate or door in the Turkish lines next to the sea—a gate ten miles long—which, pushed open clear back to the hills east of the railway and there held fast, would present a passageway for a mass of 20,000 cavalry and horse artillery, destined within a few hours to establish behind the Turkish army a great barrier of brigades and batteries controlling the exits from the hills. This was to be the first phase—a combined effort of horse, foot, and guns, each assembled in strength exactly calculated for the task, each assigned a rôle in keeping with its special qualities. Other phases were to follow, but it will be appropriate now to consider the preparations which were made for this first phase.

During the half year preceding this attack, General Allenby had sent to France the equivalent of about three divisions of British infantry. Those had been partially replaced by troops which included a large component of Indian infantry. He gained one additional division of cavalry, making his total four divisions of cavalry. The various changes reduced his front-line strength to about 70,000, whereas in the Palestine campaign he had had about 100,000. Moreover, in the latter campaign his fighting force had included more than 75 per cent British troops, most of whom had fought in France, Gallipoli, and Macedonia, while in this Syrian campaign perhaps 75 per cent of his troops were of the Indian Army, including battalions which had not yet seen service in the World War. These circumstances naturally demanded greatly increased care in organizing, planning, and training for the 1918 offensive.

As the four mounted divisions now included two divisions of Indian cavalry, it is not too much to say that there was a gain in speed, dash, and the quality of pure cavalry offensive, because those Indian troopers tend toward a special cultivation of these characteristics. A change in the armament of the Australian Division made a further contribution to the spirit of swift offensive. This division had been armed with the rifle and bayonet only, during the Palestine campaign. It now appeared armed with the saber, or sword, as they correctly call it. It would be entirely superfluous to dwell upon the offensive spirit of the Australians. A British general officer of exceptional war experience once said to me that, in his opinion, the Australians were probably "the élite attack troops of the Empire." It was altogether fitting, therefore, that they should be given the sword, and subsequent events proved that they knew how to use it. Only a few weeks' training under old British cavalrymen were available for the Australians' instruction; but natural aptitude made up for lack of time. As an added element of spice, there now appeared in the 5th Australian Brigade a regiment of French cavalry, half regulars, half Algerian Spahis. In a general atmosphere of real cavalry leadership characterized by great daring, rare judgment, and swift decision, these French cavalrymen were able to display their individual capabilities to great advantage.

The most difficult undertaking of the preparatory phase was the transfer

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA



Green Parallelogram Defines the Area Containing the Bulk of the Turkish Forces West of the Jordan River.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of divisions from the eastern to the western end of the line without arousing the suspicions of the Turk. Where one infantry division had been, four were now to be concentrated, and one of these came from a point 40 miles distant. Where some 70 guns had stood, over 350 had now to be emplaced. Of the four cavalry divisions on the right, three were moved some 45 miles to the west. To appreciate the difficulty of secret troop movements in Palestine, one should keep in mind the lack of cover along the roads and the dearth of villages or other artificial features. The east and west roads in the Jerusalem-Jaffa belt are singularly open throughout their winding courses, and the roughness of the country permits marching troops but little dispersion laterally. I know of few hill roads where troops, or even a single horseman, are so conspicuous to airplane observation as the road from Jerusalem as far west as Latron—the main artery to the coast.

However, the German air force was to have few opportunities to observe troops on any road, for they were driven from the air, in this particular area, three weeks before the attack began. The Turk was thus left in a position which many military enthusiasts thoughtlessly build up for themselves when they confidently plan to accomplish all their reconnaissance by airplane. They overlook the fact that on the eve of operations "the other fellow" may suddenly acquire the command of the air. It was part of General Allenby's technique in both campaigns to withhold his real air strength for many months, and then suddenly unloose overwhelming combinations at just the right time. The Turk, having only a small force of cavalry, and not very good cavalry at that, eventually found himself in each campaign almost as blind as the proverbial bat.

But the troops themselves contributed greatly to the secrecy of their movements by the stealth of their night marching and their skillfully camouflaged bivouacs by day. In Macedonia, when Sarrail made his big offensive in 1916, I had seen some excellent camouflage of this variety, but the British troops in Palestine were especially thorough at such work. The "heavies" particularly, despite their long treks and ungainly bulk, were so marvelously inconspicuous by day that one sometimes thought they had disappeared entirely. Once across to the Jaffa area, the troops found good hiding places for their bivouacs. Here, in the coast plain around Ramleh, Ludd, Sarona, and Jaffa, there are really extensive orange, olive, and almond groves. The orange groves are especially fine for concealment purposes, the trees being very close together and the foliage thick. The olive and almond groves, while not such perfect cover, offer a little more room for horses.

One bit of deception had its humorous side as well as its undoubted effect on the Turk. In Jerusalem, outside the walls, there stands the Hotel Fast, which was kept by an old German named Fast prior to the British capture of the city and in fact for some time afterwards. Herr Fast's well-ordered tavern seemed a godsend in those days, because it had, among other things,

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

at least one bathtub and several small stoves. The stoves, stoked with stubborn olive wood, and the bathtub, full of hot water, restored more than one officer to a condition of real warmth, when despair had seemed to whisper that the cold, clammy chill of the Judean hills would remain always in the very marrow of his bones. Here, also, tea, Scotch, and many other comforts pertaining to the human side of war were found. But the heavy hand of Mars fell on this haven of rest as the autumn of 1918 approached and busy artificers began fitting it up for occupancy by G. H. Q. Swiftly to the bazaars this significant item of news was carried, and, of course, from there to the Turks, whose apprehension of a British attack east of Jerusalem seemed now confirmed. Back near Ramleh, thirty miles away, the Commander-in-Chief smiled a grim smile. Fast's Hotel was destined to be only a dummy G. H. Q., not his kind.

Another instance of the painstaking attention which marked the details of preparation was the maintenance of dummy camps in the Jordan Valley. In this area the cavalry had been active throughout the year and it was important to conceal the fact of their departure. Their camps were, therefore, left standing and appearances of activity were kept up by a few men left behind. Imitation horses were made by setting up four sticks in the ground and draping an old blanket over them. Standing along dummy picket lines, these dummy horses did their duty for the benefit of the enemy air observers so completely that one document taken from the German Commander-in-Chief's captured files read as follows, under date of September 17, two days before the attack: "Far from there being any diminution in the cavalry in the Jordan Valley, there were evidences of twenty-three more squadrons."

Over in the zone of attack, next to the sea, it was necessary to build many miles of new roads for the impending operations. As fast as built, these roads were carefully covered with refuse, grass, and other material. Four new bridges over the River Auja north of Jaffa were necessary. To conceal the preparation of these structures, two "Schools for bridging instructions" were established and a curriculum of building and removing bridges was carried out most nonchalantly, but just on the eve of operations the "faculty" very carelessly left the bridges in position where they would be most useful. Enemy barrages were systematically provoked and their positions carefully noted; the utmost caution was observed in the opening of new wire or wireless stations; selected bodies of troops were marched eastward by day and westward by night. In short, every artifice which would contribute to the enemy's deception was employed with marked thoroughness and "finesse."

A study of the methods of really great commanders throughout history reveals in each a consummate craftiness or super-sagacity in the art of misleading the enemy. It is a fact that this quality was rather conspicuous by its absence during the World War. One who knows the German people, their psychology and the spirit of the old military machine, understands why

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

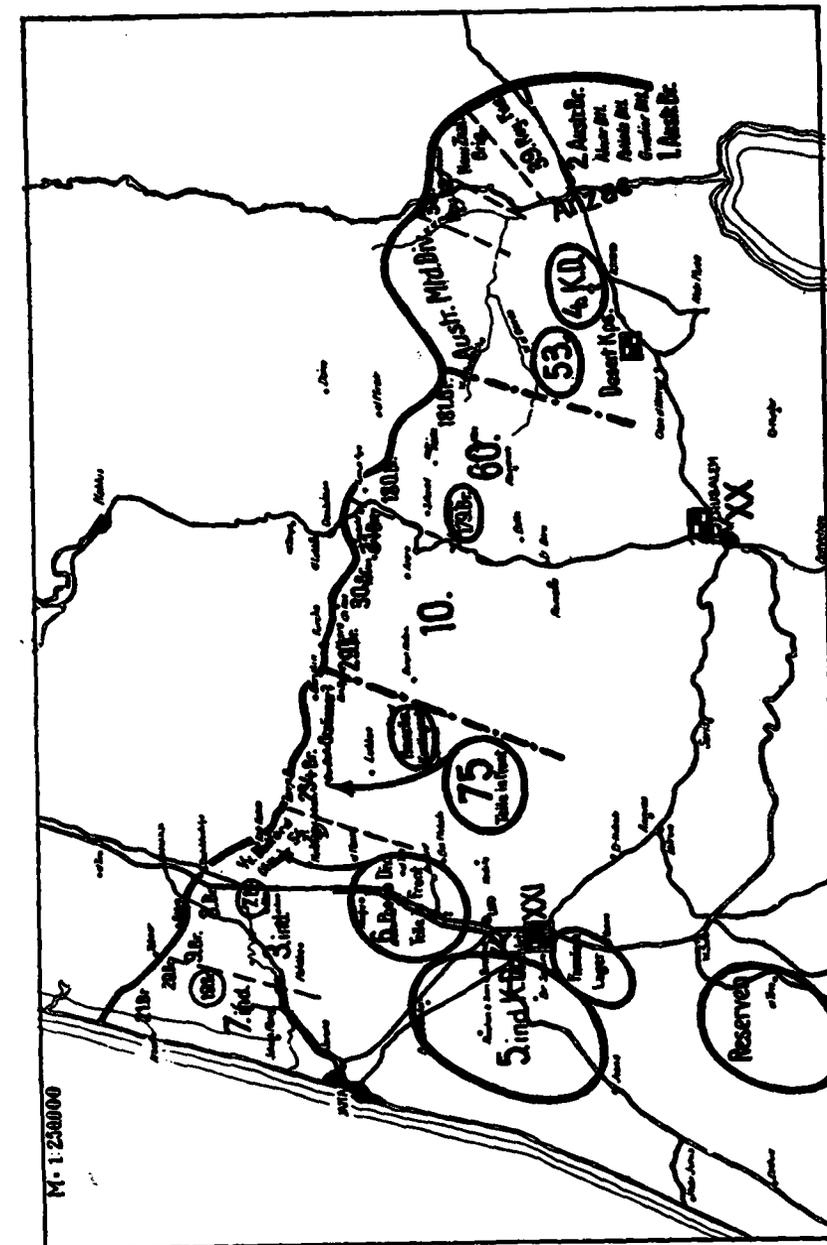
this quality was lacking in their otherwise remarkably perfect composite. In other armies anxiety, temperamental barriers, or inexperience prevented or dwarfed the development of this subtle and most formidable quality. But it was a very prominent agency in the operations of General Allenby, and was never more convincingly shown than in the preparations for the Syrian campaign. Turkish "intelligence" was directed by German officers, whose thoroughness and industry need no comment. The Turk himself is famous for his adroitness, and, as to "combat intelligence," his craftiness is noteworthy. That spies were present within the British lines in considerable numbers is obvious to all who know the kind of people who dwell in that part of the world.

It is impressive, therefore, to examine the map shown opposite, which was captured by the British in the victorious attacks of September, 1918. This is the "Enemy Order of Battle" map prepared by the intelligence officer (German) at Turkish G. H. Q., and purports to give the locations of British troops on September 17, 1918, about 36 hours before the attack of September 19. The mistakes in it show how skillfully the British had effected and concealed all the changes in the line preparatory to the attack. For example, the Australian Mounted Division was not in the Jordan Valley, as shown, but was 40 miles away to the west, near Jaffa; the 4th Cavalry Division was also near Jaffa, over 43 miles west of its location on the map; the 60th Division was not on the east of the Jerusalem road, but was 30 miles away, on the left of the line at the coast; the 75th Division, shown on this map northeast of Ludd, was actually some ten miles to the west. The 3th Poona Division of the Indian Army, shown here as in the Ludd sector, was actually on the Mesopotamian front, 400 miles away.

At half-past 4 on the morning of September 19, 1918, just as dawn broke, the five infantry divisions next the coast leaped forward to the attack, under cover of an intense artillery bombardment. The Turk was completely surprised and his first position, 14,000 yards in length and 3,000 yards in depth, was swept through even before the sun, with all his eastern swiftness, could bring the full light of day. Pressing on, the infantry completed their penetration and began to change direction to the east within an hour and a quarter after beginning the attack. With great skill in maintaining direction, this mass of five infantry divisions, with a cavalry brigade on their left, emerged from the labyrinth of conquered trench and wire, wheeled to the right, and drove the enemy before them. Not only had they this task, but in their eastward sweep all elements had to clear the roads leading north by a certain time in order to free them for the cavalry. Thus the great gate, ten miles long, was pushed open by the infantry and jammed back against the hills east of the railway.

As early as half-past 7 the 5th Cavalry Division was crossing the old Turkish trench system, marching right along the beach. The Mediterranean coast

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA



THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

throughout much of the length of the Holy Land is featured by a belt of sand and gravel lying under a coastal cliff averaging, perhaps, 40 feet in elevation. Down below Gaza in 1917 this sheltering cliff had served many purposes, and now the 5th Cavalry Division rode forward under its cover.

By 9 o'clock the 4th Cavalry Division was crossing the enemy's trench lines, following a road about five miles distant from the coast. Once free of the enemy's former works, they rode forward in line of brigade columns.

The Australian Division advanced on the same road, following the 4th Division. Advanced Corps Headquarters marched with the Australians. Each of the three divisions picked up its horse batteries as the old Turkish line was approached, these batteries having taken up forward positions for participation in the preliminary bombardment.

The Australian official correspondent described that day's ride in the lines below, giving a picture as vivid as it is accurate: "They rode away in the sunrise, the advanced squadrons trotting out after the ground scouts, the flank patrols galloping wide, brigade after brigade, over the rolling sand hills. The men were eager, the horses fought for their heads. The swords of the Yeomanry flashed and Indian lances glinted from each successive sky-line. It was the war scene of the picture galleries. Quickening the pace, the regiments raced on past our guns, most of which were already limbered up for the pursuit. The infantry, busy with their prisoners, cheered them as they passed, and soon they were speeding down on Turks who had fled from the onslaught of the infantry. But their sport with sword and lance was brief."

The perfection of our organization was revealed very early. The cavalry was scarcely clear of the trench system before scores of field guns were rumbling in their wake; and, pressing on after the artillery by many tracks, good and bad, went mile after mile of camels and wheeled transport. Where the cavalry went the supplies must follow; and the cavalry rode from 40 to 50 miles between sunrise and midnight. With nothing to check them, their pace was controlled only by the endurance of their horses. The men rode light; they carried only one blanket, and that as a saddle-cloth. Tent sheets and waterproof were forbidden. It was a wild ride against time. But horses were loaded with three days' rations, and few carried less than 250 pounds and many more than 280 pounds.

By 10 o'clock that night the two leading divisions were 35 miles north of the Turks' former trench lines. During the night they crossed the hills of Samaria—the 5th Division by Jarak, on the left; the 4th by Musmus, on the right. By 2 o'clock in the morning the two brigades leading the 5th Division had reached Abu Shusheh, down the eastern slopes, and by 5 o'clock in the morning all the 4th Division were at Lejjun, in the Musmus Pass. From these points the divisions marched directly on Nazareth and El Afule, their respective objectives.

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

In the last hours of moonlight on the morning of September 20, after a march of 55 miles in 22 hours, the leading brigade of the 5th Division galloped into Nazareth, the Turkish G. H. Q., and began an attack against the headquarters building. The garrison, taken completely by surprise, effected, nevertheless, a desperate resistance. The Commander-in-Chief, Liman von Sanders, was reported to have escaped in his pajamas. Be that as it may, his headquarters guard, including a large component of German troops, not only lingered, but demonstrated that the town could not be entirely taken by one brigade. In the meantime, however, specially designated troops of the 13th Brigade had raided the Turkish Army Headquarters and captured its most important documents. With these and some 2,000 prisoners, the brigade withdrew in the direction of El Afule.

In the meantime the 4th Division, just as day broke, debouched from the Lejjun defile into the Plain of Esdraelon, the 2d Lancers leading, accompanied by armored cars. A dramatic combat ensued as the head of the column discovered a Turkish battalion advancing toward the pass, engaged it with the armored cars' machine-guns in front and charged through it with cavalry from left to right, killing 46 with the lance, capturing the 470 survivors, and eliminating the force in about five minutes. The division as such, despite several unexpected developments, had, by reason of its commander's quick, definite decisions, just seized the pass in time. Then, upon entering the plain, the commander of the leading regiment had by similar quick action, as above described, eliminated a new danger. Impelled by such typical cavalry decisions, the whole enveloping movement surged forward that day. Seizing the railroad station of El Afule at 8 o'clock that morning, the 4th Division had made good its great first objective by covering 65 miles in 24 hours. Beisan, down the valley to the southeast, was seized that afternoon and the second main outlet closed, after marching 85 miles in 34 hours. Later in the day a regiment closed the passage across the Jordan River—100 miles in 36 hours.

The Australian Division in the meantime crossed the crest of the hills of Samaria in daylight, reached Lejjun at about 11 o'clock, rode hard to the southeast, and drove in the last big wedge by seizing Jenin at half-past 5 in the afternoon. Thus the Cavalry Corps had in 36 hours projected its self-sustaining groups of fire and shock power all along the vital points of a 100-mile arc inclosing the entire Turkish Army west of the Jordan River. Four or five short, sharp engagements had been fought and about 12,000 prisoners taken, in laying down the net which was to gather in so many additional thousands. The sweep of the corps to the north and its swing then to the southeast had placed just inside the arc of its own communications the old Turkish telegraph system; and so, by quick repairs, the enemy's former wires were now used for signal communications back to G. H. Q., at Ramleh. Thus the first, or cavalry, phase was complete, even as to the continuity of communications.

Suggestions to Executive Officers on Duty with Organized Reserves

BY

Captain GEORGE H. SHEA, Cavalry

THE Corps Area Commander is the commander of all reserve divisions within his corps area. To assist him, there have been formed, with an appropriate commissioned personnel, a staff for each division and one army corps headquarters within the corps area, whose duty it is to weld together the units accredited to their divisions, so that, if necessity should arise, the division may be mobilized without delay, and training started.

Executive officers have, as far as practicable, been assigned, and to a great extent the ultimate success of the Reserve Corps rests with the executive officers. Conditions vary greatly within corps areas, as to the amount of personal contact that executive officers may have with the commissioned personnel of their units. In most cases the companies of regiments are scattered and, due to lack of funds for travel, the executive officer rarely will meet all the officers of his regiment, his one chance being to get them to attend the 15-day encampment and to be there himself.

The correspondence course should be encouraged and every effort made to get all reserve officers of the organization to pursue it. Every assistance should be given reserve officers taking the course, and visits to the offices of students to assist them or the conducting of night classes will materially aid in the submission of problems to the instructor for correction and in a higher average in the number who will endeavor to complete the course.

An executive officer should not consider his sphere of activities as confined to the unit of which he is executive officer, but should extend his help, as far as practicable, to all units within his immediate vicinity which do not happen to have an executive officer assigned to them.

The organization of a chapter of the Association of the Army of the United States, or Reserve Officers' Association, is most essential. Weekly or monthly lectures should be given, at which time a talk on some military subject not only proves of interest, but, it will be found, will increase the attendance and membership.

Mounted officers on duty as executive officers should make an effort to start a riding club and to get all reserve officers of the mounted branches in as members; also as many civilians as may care to become members. The writer of this article assisted in the organization of a riding club within six weeks after his reporting for duty as executive officer. This club now has

SUGGESTIONS TO EXECUTIVE OFFICER

about one hundred members, seventy-five of whom own their own mounts, and through members of the club their estates have been opened and rides for some miles through private grounds permitted. Paper chases are held, and one member is preparing a polo field at his own expense for the use of reserve officers. Advantage is also taken of these rides to conduct minor tactical problems and terrain exercises. It is true that the whole club cannot be gotten together, but flock rides of from 10 to 25 are most common three or four times a week in good weather.

Officers of the staff departments and dismounted branches who do not care to participate in equitation should be encouraged to participate in trap shooting, golf, hikes, or any amusement that will bring them together and which will require them to exercise. It is exceedingly important that reserve officers be kept physically fit. Executive officers should assist them to do so. It is as much their duty to do this as to keep the records of their office correctly. Not more than half a day is necessary for an executive officer to complete the requirements of his office work; the other half should be devoted to development of the reserve personnel, professionally and physically. Visits to places of employment, rides, lectures given at luncheons, lectures at night, etc., assist in accomplishing this result.

No set formula can be prescribed; each executive officer will have to solve his own problem in his particular sector. Some sectors can, due to local conditions, procure better results than others, which is no reflection on the executive officer whose locality is not quite so productive of results.

The third component of the army has come to stay, and, that the development of this component may be accomplished as desired by the War Department, executive officers should lend every effort that success may be achieved.

A Rut in the Road*

BY

Major E. P. PIERSON, Cavalry

A RUTLESS road is the aspiration of every road-builder, but a good-looking road may yet be impassable because rutless. Such a road may be ideal in good weather, but let the rain and the storm come and the vehicles slide off for lack of a rut to guide them straight ahead, even against their will.

Apply the simile. A business can measure its progress better by compari-

* A thought occasioned by an editorial, *Brass Polish and Elbow Grease*, in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* for October, 1922.

son with the so-called stagnant elements of the trade. Beautifully colored get-rich-quick schemes usually land their victims in the ditch. The conservative business man makes use of both the "ruts" and the slick places.

An army without "ruts" would be a perfect mechanism indeed. One with nothing but "ruts" would be a good argument for its abolishment. However, any well-traveled road will in time become more or less "rutty"; sometimes from sheer wear, sometimes from weakness. Unless ruts get too bad from weakness, they are repaired in the normal upkeep processes—*e. g.*, by dragging and grading—and by entire removal and renewal of the road bed only when this becomes unavoidable.

In the evolution of the modern soldier, especially if his casual public remarks are observed, it is feared there is a pharisaical tendency of aversion to the old army. Stories are told in derision about the old-type colonel, with unkempt beard and untrimmed hair, when a razor was an unheard-of luxury, while the modern defender is a perfect advertisement of the tonsorial art. In those days the cut and style of uniform did not change, as now, with the season's fashions. Then comforts were appreciated because obtained in response to personal efforts, while now welfare is bestowed so freely that it has become a veritable burden. Then a soldier learned his duty in the school of experience, while now duty has to compete with numerous schools. The aims were, of course, the same; no soldier should neglect his duty, violate his honor, nor fail to defend his country.

The fair-weather soldier is hardly worth emulating. He seems to look upon the mere routine of a soldier as a hardship. We hear little of his duty, too much about his personal honor, but what about his country? He thinks soldiering should consist only of parades on sunshiny days, always playing to the gallery. He recounts frequently his personal sacrifices. This usually includes the position he "might have had" had he not accepted the low pay for service to his country. When ordered for duty beyond the bright lights, he begins to talk of leaving the service. In short, he looks upon his engagement to serve as a job, with no other obligation than that it should please him.

It is fortunate that this is not a picture of the real army. We have occasional so-called ruts left, but they are better than a lot of rolling stones. We need men who join the service for better or for worse. They can be depended upon in emergency to leaven the whole with loyalty and devotion to duty, such as to tide over any temporary slippery and boggy stretch. All that glitters is not gold; equally, all that wear the neatest uniform are not genuine clear through. Therefore, let us be slow to condemn every conservative soldier as a rut or obstruction. Some shiny boots would look better if a little bespattered from true service.

So, here's to the useful rut. He is the backbone on which to build in time of emergency. May he ever inspire our newly acquired citizen soldiery with the clear-ringing motto, *Duty, honor, country before self.*

The Cavalry Board

BY

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry, Recorder

THE Cavalry Board is permanently stationed at Fort Riley, Kans., and consists of the Commandant and Assistant Commandant of the Cavalry School and not less than three nor more than five other officers designated by the Chief of Cavalry, the junior among whom is the recorder. The board operates under direction of the Chief of Cavalry, with whom correspondence is direct. The purpose of the board is to consider subjects pertaining to cavalry, which are referred to it by the Chief of Cavalry, and to originate and submit to him recommendations looking to the improvement of the cavalry arm.

The home of the board is the Cavalry Board Building, an old band barracks in rear of the headquarters building, at Fort Riley. It contains the board room, where meetings are held, offices for the recorder and other members of the board for whom offices are not provided elsewhere, store-rooms and two museum rooms. One of the latter contains exhibits of foreign cavalry equipment, including British, French, Italian, Spanish, Belgian, Japanese, Dutch, and Danish, and the other contains samples of every article tested by the board, each article properly tagged to indicate the recommendation of the board. This collection of tested articles serves as a physical record of the work of the board, to which its members can refer when considering new or similar changes in equipment.

The function of the board is advisory only, as it can recommend, but cannot carry its own recommendations into effect. In practice, however, every contemplated change affecting cavalry is submitted to the board by the Chief of Cavalry, thus making it a sort of clearing-house for new ideas on every phase of cavalry activity, including organization, training, armament, clothing, equipment, and even administration. The questions to come before the board, which have at times included as many as fifty different subjects in a single month, are discussed and decided at its regular meetings.

In the long run, improvement is obtained only as a result of individual interest and initiative in submitting new proposals. It is impossible for any single officer or group of officers to be familiar constantly with all the varied forms of cavalry activity, to the extent of being able to suggest all the needed improvements. For example, an officer instructing his men in pistol or saber work is impressed on the spot with needed improvements, which would not be called to his attention at other times, and which if not submitted immediately are apt to slip his mind entirely, until the next period of instruction in this work. The board, therefore, desires every cavalryman to submit his constructive ideas to the board.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Many new ideas, which are otherwise practical, have to be abandoned because they adversely affect economy, the mobility of cavalry, or some other important consideration. A large part of the work of the board is thus never brought to the notice of the service, because four or five ideas are usually considered for every one which is recommended for adoption. All such ideas, however, are carefully preserved in the records of the board for possible future use.

There are two possible methods for the board to use in arriving at its decisions: One is to organize the board itself to handle its own research and experimental work; the other is to have this work done for it by the various activities concentrated at Fort Riley, and have the board act on the work submitted, either by rejecting it entirely or by adopting it as submitted or with modifications. Both methods have been tried. The first necessitates a cumbersome organization, with a large overhead, and results in each part of the organization being idle at least a part of the time. The second is now in operation and seems to be satisfactory.

In practice, it works as follows: A new weapon, or a modified one, for example, is submitted to the board for recommendation. The board submits it to the Director of the Department of Cavalry Weapons in the Cavalry School for test and comment of a technical nature affecting cavalry, to the Director of the Department of Tactics in the Cavalry School for test and comment as to its suitability and possible tactical employment with cavalry, and to the Commanding Officer of the Second Cavalry (School Troops) for a practical try-out with a cavalry organization. From the data thus collected the board is able to arrive at a fairly accurate conclusion as to the value of the weapon for cavalry purposes. As a factor of safety in the case of very important modifications in armament or equipment, the board usually recommends a more extensive test in other organizations before final adoption.

In reality, then, the Cavalry Board includes the whole post of Fort Riley, with the officers actually detailed as members sitting as a board of review and decision on every question considered. As practically every officer now stationed at Fort Riley is a graduate of the Cavalry School and the board works in close conjunction with the school, good progress is being made in the solution of cavalry questions with which all are familiar. In questions involving the cavalry brigade and the cavalry division, the assistance of the Commanding General of the First Cavalry Division, at Fort Bliss, Texas, is solicited.

To show the completeness with which the subject of arms, clothing, and equipment is covered, the board is required to submit each year a complete list of those articles used by cavalry officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates which are considered in any way unsatisfactory, with a report of the steps being taken to improve them. This list includes articles which for economic reasons cannot be replaced in the immediate future, due to quantities

THE CAVALRY BOARD

already on hand, but which can and should be changed when the supply is exhausted or an emergency requiring an additional supply arises. In such cases changes, with full data as to specifications, are recommended, and if approved are kept on file, to be put into effect when the supply is exhausted or an emergency arises.

The most important subjects covered by the board divide themselves naturally into two main classes: First, organization and training; and, second, armament, clothing, and equipment. In addition, there are many subjects of such a varying nature that they can only be classed as miscellaneous.

Immediately following the war, the board submitted its recommendations on cavalry organization. The recommendations were materially altered in adopting the present organization, due to various considerations, chief among which were the reduction in the authorized strength of the cavalry and the desire to retain at least fourteen active regiments at or near authorized strength. The present organization, however, embodies many of the basic principles deemed by the board to be essential to modern cavalry.

In training, the principal work of the board has been in the preparation of the new training regulations now being published under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry. Forty-five pamphlets have been prepared by the board, which constitute in their entirety a complete revision, based on the lessons of the war, of all drill regulations, manuals, and other publications pertaining to the training of cavalry, as well as certain additional subjects which have never before been adequately covered. Among the most important of these latter are the "Employment of Cavalry" and the "Employment of Cavalry Machine-guns," which together enunciate for the first time a complete doctrine for the employment of the arm.

The procedure used in the preparation of these pamphlets was to have the original draft prepared by a specially qualified officer, or group of officers, sometimes members of the board, sometimes instructors in the school, and for the board, acting as a body, to then review, revise, edit, and approve the original draft. In addition, a great number of pamphlets, prepared by other branches, have been reviewed and commented on. The board is now engaged in the preparation of a Cavalry R. O. T. C. Manual, or text-book, and has had a considerable part in the preparation of the Cavalry Correspondence Courses.

On the subject of armament, the board has tested and recommended for adoption the Browning machine rifle, which is now being issued to the service, together with a receiver sight. It is now testing a stock rest for the machine rifle which it is believed will add greatly to the stability of the weapon. It has recommended a pistol grip form of rifle stock and range dummy cartridges for both rifle and pistol. It has recommended several modifications in the parts of the automatic pistol, the adoption of which will add materially to the comfort and ease of holding the weapon, especially for a man with a small

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

hand, and reduces the natural tendency to point the pistol low. It is experimenting with a sub-caliber pistol and an expendable pistol ammunition clip, neither of which are as yet satisfactory. It has developed a cavalry carbine which is in effect a modified Springfield rifle, and recommended that it be issued to troops in sufficient quantities to insure a conclusive report. It is interested in several types of auto-loading rifles, the .50 caliber machine-gun and the Thompson submachine-gun.

It has recommended an all-leather leggin and a campaign hat strap for mounted enlisted men and is testing and experimenting with a uniform field boot for officers, a uniform raincoat, and a new type of waterproof clothing.

The board is vitally interested in the cavalry pack animal, which, with the new organization, has become an integral part of every cavalry unit down to and including the troop. The cumbersome aparejo is destined to be replaced by a pack saddle whose development is now nearing completion and whose adoption will render unnecessary the search for men skilled in the almost lost art of packing. It is developing a pack cooking outfit, a picket-line pack, and a cavalry demolition pack, all to be attached to the saddle, as the machine rifle will also be attached, by means of metal hangers, similar to machine-gun hangers, which will settle forever the fate of that bugaboo, the diamond hitch.

A modified McClellan saddle, with a girth similar to that used on a flat saddle, replacing quarter straps, rings and cincha and removing the great objection to the McClellan saddle, which is that the trooper cannot get his legs around his horse, has been recommended for issue in reasonable quantity to troops for final test. A lighter, simpler stirrup strap has been recommended for the McClellan saddle. A web bridle has been recommended for use in emergencies when leather is scarce, and an officers' saber-carrier, which holds snugly either the officers' saber or the cavalry saber, has been developed.

Other equipment which has been recommended by the board includes a steel helmet and a gas mask, to be issued to cavalry only when required; a web rifle sling similar to the web bridle, an aluminum tent pin, a stable sergeant's veterinary set, a cavalry bandoleer, which can be carried either on the trooper's shoulder or around the horse's neck; a soldier's kit bag to replace the present barrack bag, a mechanical cipher device for encoding and decoding messages, and a message center equipment case.

This description indicates only a small part of what has actually been accomplished by the board in research, experiment, test and development of arms, clothing and equipment. It is clear that not even a small fraction of the work that has been done, not only on these subjects but on others as well, could ever be accomplished without a permanent board with a permanent home and permanent records.



NEW MODELS OF EQUIPMENT PROPOSED BY THE CAVALRY BOARD

March Cooking Pack Set, contents of one side load

Modified McClellan Saddle

Proposed Carbine compared with Springfield

"Come On! Be Quick! Bring Packs!"

CUSTER'S BATTLE PLAN

The Story of His Last Message, as Told by the Man Who Carried It

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel W. A. GRAHAM, J. A.

With Commentary by Brigadier-General EDWARD S. GODFREY, U. S. Army, Retired*

FORTY-SEVEN years have passed since Custer, the Yellow Hair, the dashing, impetuous, and fearless, rode to his death at the battle of the Little Big Horn. And because, out of that greatest of Indian fights, not one of his immediate command escaped alive; because the utter annihilation of nearly half a regiment of cavalry by Indians was a thing unheard of, undreamed of; because it was at once spectacular and terrifying; because of the prominence of the man who led his followers to destruction; because he was a man who, not only in the regiment itself, but in the service generally, had both blindly faithful friends and as blindly bitter enemies, there have been, ever since that day, hardly waiting for the body of Custer to grow cold, and but little abating now after half a century, acrimony and dispute over the whole campaign of 1876 against the hostile Sioux.

One never-failing source of discussion, which engages student, critic, and partisan alike, is the tactics of the combat—the plan of battle, if you will. Volumes have been written upon the subject, but when one has read them all he is still left to conjecture and hypothesis.

Did Custer have a plan of battle? And, if he had, what was it? When did he resolve upon it; and when and how, if at all, did he communicate it to his detached subordinate commanders. Was it carried out? And, if not, why? Or was the whole fight a hit-and-miss affair, which depended upon luck and chance?

Was the battle of the Little Big Horn only a startling example of fatal division of forces in the face of the enemy, with consequent defeat in detail? Was it a blind, impetuous, dashing attack without thought of the consequence, or even of the possibility of defeat? Or was it a well-planned fight, which failed for lack of co-operation and communication? These are some of the problems which inevitably occur to the student of this extraordinary battle.

Partisan dispute will never clear them up. It seldom clears up anything,

* This story of the battle of the Little Big Horn has been prepared with care, from the most authentic available sources, and after much study and research. I thank you for letting me see General Godfrey's comments. The General has been more kind than I deserve, and if I have produced anything worth while out of all my digging, it has been largely due to his kindly interest.—THE AUTHOR.



Sergeant John Martin in 1879, when he appeared as a witness before the Reno Court of Inquiry in Chicago



Sergeant Martin at retirement—
1904

THE MAN WHO CARRIED CUSTER'S LAST MESSAGE

though I suppose it is heresy for a lawyer to say so. It is only by delving into authentic records and contemporary statements and accounts, by marshaling all the testimony available, and by searching for new evidence that one gets at the facts. And in presenting the story of Sergeant John Martin, who was General Custer's orderly trumpeter on that fatal day in June of 1876, I am confident that, upon some phases at least of the many disputed questions pertaining to the fight, it is the testimony of the only competent witness who survived the battle, the last man to see Custer alive, except those who rode on and died with him upon the ridge.

Martin is the man who carried Custer's famous last message: "Benteen, come on—big village—be quick—bring packs. P. S.—Bring packs."* He was then a young man of twenty-five, who was already the veteran of one war. Born at Rome in 1851, he had enlisted with Garibaldi, as a drummer boy of fourteen, in the Army of Liberation, and had seen the backs of the Austrians at Villa Franca in '66. After the restoration of Venice to her rightful allegiance, he left his home in sunny Italy in 1873 and almost immediately upon his arrival in America enlisted in the United States Army. His right name, I should tell you, is Giovanni Martini, and he is still hale and hearty, seventy-one years of age, a resident of Brooklyn, N. Y. He served continuously from 1874 to 1904, when he was retired as a sergeant.

He is rather a remarkable old soldier, who never misses an occasion to honor the Stars and Stripes, and who turns out in the old blue, his left arm literally covered to the elbow with service stripes, every time the call of patriotism sounds, whether it be to honor the dead or to greet the living. His form still erect and soldierly, his salute just as snappy as it was when he marched with Garibaldi and rode with Custer, he is well worthy your respectful attention. A fine old soldier, who has deserved well both of his own and of his adopted country; for, beside his long and honorable service, Martin has given two stalwart sons to the American Army.

His 7th Cavalry discharge, which he exhibits with pardonable pride, bears the signature of F. W. Benteen, his old troop commander, the man to whom Custer's last message was sent. And Benteen has described Sergeant Martin in that discharge as "the only surviving witness of the Custer massacre."†

SERGEANT MARTIN'S STORY

A little before 8 o'clock, on the morning of June 25, my captain, Benteen, called me to him and ordered me to report to General Custer as orderly trumpeter. The regiment was then several miles from the Divide between

* The message was signed by his adjutant, Lieutenant Cook.—THE AUTHOR.

† Since the story was written, Sergeant Martin has passed on. He died at his home in Brooklyn, on Christmas Eve, 1922. I know that the readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sorry to learn that another of the old guard is gone.—AUTHOR.

"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn. We had halted there to make coffee after a night march.

We knew, of course, that plenty of Indians were somewhere near, because we had been going through deserted villages for two days and following a heavy trail from the Rosebud, and on the 24th we had found carcasses of dead buffalo that had been killed and skinned only a short time before.

I reported to the General personally, and he just looked at me and nodded. He was talking to an Indian scout, called Bloody Knife, when I reported, and Bloody Knife was telling him about a big village in the valley, several hundred tepees and about five thousand Sioux. I sat down a little way off and heard the talk. I couldn't understand what the Indian said, but from what the General said in asking questions and his conversation with the interpreter I understood what it was about.

The General was dressed that morning in a blue-gray flannel shirt, buckskin trousers, and long boots. He wore a regular company hat. His yellow hair was cut short—not very short; but it was not long and curly on his shoulders like it used to be.

Very soon the General jumped on his horse and rode bareback around the camp, talking to the officers in low tones and telling them what he wanted them to do. By 8:30 the command was ready to march and the scouts went on ahead. We followed slowly, about fifteen minutes later. I rode about two yards back of the General. We moved on, at a walk, until about two hours later we came to a deep ravine, where we halted. The General left us there and went away with the scouts. I didn't go with him, but stayed with the Adjutant. This was when he went up to the "Crow's-nest" on the Divide, to look for the Sioux village that Bloody Knife had told him about. He was gone a long time, and when he came back they told him about finding fresh pony tracks close by, and that the Sioux had discovered us in the ravine. At once he ordered me to sound officers' call, and I did so. This showed that he realized now that we could not surprise the Sioux, and so there was no use to keep quiet any longer. For two days before this there had been no trumpet calls, and every precaution had been taken to conceal our march. But now all was changed.

The officers came quickly, and they had an earnest conference with the General. None of the men were allowed to come near them, but soon they separated and went back to their companies.

Then we moved on again, and after a while, about noon, crossed the Divide. Pretty soon the General said something to the Adjutant that I could not hear, and pointed off to the left. In a few minutes Captain Benteen, with three troops, left the column and rode off in the direction that the General had been pointing. I wondered where they were going, because my troop was one of them.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The rest of the regiment rode on, in two columns—Colonel Reno, with three troops, on the left, and the other five troops, under General Custer, on the right. I was riding right behind the General. We followed the course of a little stream that led in the direction of the Little Big Horn River. Reno was on the left bank and we on the right.

All the time, as we rode, scouts were riding in and out, and the General would listen to them and sometimes gallop away a short distance to look around. Sometimes Reno's column was several hundred yards away and sometimes it was close to us, and then the General motioned with his hat and they crossed over to where we were.

Soon we came to an old tepee that had a dead warrior in it. It was burning. The Indian scouts had set it afire. Just a little off from that there was a little hill, from which Girard, one of the scouts, saw some Indians between us and the river. He called to the General and pointed them out. He said they were running away. The General ordered the Indian scouts to follow them, but they refused to go. Then the General motioned to Colonel Reno, and when he rode up* the General told the Adjutant to order him to go down and cross the river and attack the Indian village, and that he would support him with the whole regiment. He said he would go down to the other end and drive them, and that he would have Benteen hurry up and attack them in the center.

Reno, with his three troops, left at once, on a trot, going toward the river, and we followed for a few hundred yards, and then swung to the right, down the river.

We went at a gallop, too. (Just stopped once to water the horses). The General seemed to be in a big hurry. After we had gone about a mile or two we came to a big hill that overlooked the valley, and we rode around the base of it and halted. Then the General took me with him, and we rode to the top of the hill, where we could see the village in the valley on the other side of the river. It was a big village, but we couldn't see it all from there, though we didn't know it then; but several hundred tepees were in plain sight.

There were no bucks to be seen; all we could see was some squaws and children playing and a few dogs and ponies. The General seemed both surprised and glad, and said the Indians must be in their tents, asleep.

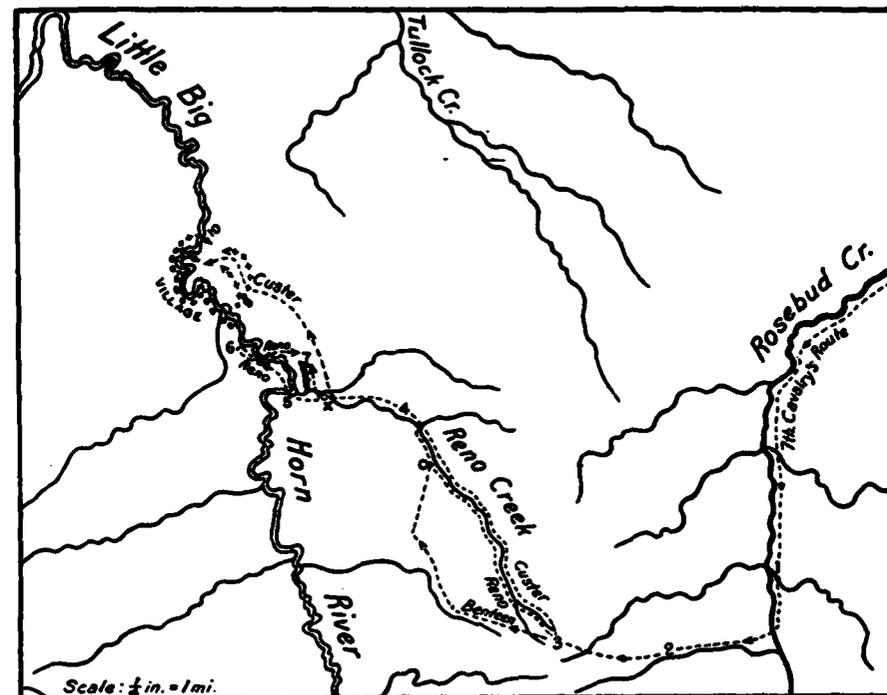
We did not see anything of Reno's column when we were up on the hill. I am sure the General did not see them at all, because he looked all around with his glasses, and all he said was that we had "got them this time."

He turned in the saddle and took off his hat and waved it so the men of the command, who were halted at the base of the hill, could see him, and he shouted to them, "Hurrah, boys, we've got them! We'll finish them up and then go home to our station."

* "While he was riding up" would better express Sergeant Martin's meaning. Evidently Custer did not speak directly to Reno, and the latter never was informed of the General's intention to bring Benteen up to attack in the center.—THE AUTHOR.

"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

Then the General and I rode back down to where the troops were, and he talked a minute with the Adjutant, telling him what he had seen. We rode on, pretty fast, until we came to a big ravine that led in the direction of the river, and the General pointed down there and then called me. This was about a mile down the river from where we went up on the hill, and we had been going at a trot and gallop all the way. It must have been about three miles from where we left Reno's trail.



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Bivouac, June 24. | 5-6. Reno's Advance, 3:15 p. m. |
| 2. 10 a. m., June 25. Custer at "Crows Nest." | 6-7. Reno's Retreat, 4 p. m. |
| 3. Across the Divide, 12:05 p. m. | 7. Reno Besieged, 7 p. m. |
| 3-a. Benteen's March, 12:15 p. m. to 4 p. m. | 8. Where Custer swung to the right, 3 p. m. |
| 4. "Dead Warrior Tepees," 2 p. m. | 9. Gall's Attack, 4 p. m. |
| 4-a. Reno's March to the River, 2:30 p. m. | 10. Crazy Horse's Attack. |
| 5. Reno's Crossing, 2:45 p. m. | |

The General said to me, "Orderly, I want you to take a message to Colonel Benteen. Ride as fast as you can and tell him to hurry. Tell him it's a big village and I want him to be quick, and to bring the ammunition packs." He didn't stop at all when he was telling me this, and I just said, "Yes, sir," and checked my horse, when the Adjutant said, "Wait, orderly, I'll give you a

message," and he stopped and wrote it in a big hurry, in a little book, and then tore out the leaf and gave it to me.

And then he told me, "Now, orderly, ride as fast as you can to Colonel Benteen. Take the same trail we came down. If you have time, and there is no danger, come back; but otherwise stay with your company."

My horse was pretty tired, but I started back as fast as I could go. The last I saw of the command they were going down into the ravine. The gray horse troop was in the center and they were galloping.

The Adjutant had told me to follow our trail back, and so in a few minutes I was back on the same hill again where the General and I had looked at the village; but before I got there I heard firing back of me, and I looked around and saw Indians, some waving buffalo robes and some shooting. They had been in ambush. /

Just before I got to the hill I met Boston Custer.* He was riding at a run, but when he saw me he checked his horse and shouted, "Where's the General?" and I answered, pointing back of me, "Right behind that next ridge you'll find him." And he dashed on. That was the last time he was ever seen alive.

When I got up on the hill, I looked down and there I saw Reno's battalion in action. It had been not more than ten or fifteen minutes since the General and I were on the hill, and then we had seen no Indians. But now there were lots of them, riding around and shooting at Reno's men, who were dismounted and in skirmish line. I don't know how many Indians there were—a lot of them. I did not have time to stop and watch the fight; I had to get on to Colonel Benteen; but the last I saw of Reno's men they were fighting in the valley and the line was falling back.

Some Indians saw me, because right away they commenced shooting at me. Several shots were fired at me—four or five, I think—but I was lucky and did not get hit. My horse was struck in the hip, though I did not know it until later.

It was a very warm day and my horse was hot, and I kept on as fast as I could go. I didn't know where Colonel Benteen was, nor where to look for him, but I knew I had to find him.

I followed our trail back to the place we had watered our horses, and looked all around for Colonel Benteen. Pretty soon I saw his command coming. I was riding at a jog trot then. My horse was all in and I was looking everywhere for Colonel Benteen.

As soon as I saw them coming I waved my hat to them and spurred my horse, but he couldn't go any faster. But it was only a few hundred yards before I met Colonel Benteen. He was riding quite a distance in front of his

* Boston Custer was a brother of General Custer and went with the column in a civilian capacity, as pack-master.—THE AUTHOR.

troops, with his orderly trumpeter, at a fast trot. The nearest officer to him was Captain Weir, who was at the head of his troop, about two or three hundred yards back. /

I saluted and handed the message to Colonel Benteen, and then I told him what the General said—that it was a big village and to hurry. He said, "Where's the General now?" and I answered that the Indians we saw were running, and I supposed that by this time he had charged through the village. I was going to tell him about Major Reno being in action, too, but he didn't give me the chance. He said, "What's the matter with your horse?" and I said, "He's just tired out, I guess." The Colonel said, "Tired out? Look at his hip," and then I saw the blood from the wound. Colonel Benteen said, "You're lucky it was the horse and not you." By this time Captain Weir had come up to us, and Colonel Benteen handed the message to him to read and told me to join my company.

He didn't give me any order to Captain McDougall, who was in command of the rear guard, or to Lieutenant Mathey, who had the packs. I told them so at Chicago in 1879, when they had the court of inquiry, but I didn't speak English so good then, and they misunderstood me and made the report of my testimony show that I took an order to Captain McDougall. But that is a mistake.

They gave me another horse and I joined my troop and rode on with them. The pack-train was not very far behind then. It was in sight, maybe a mile away, and the mules were coming along, some of them walking, some trotting, and others running. We moved on faster than the packs could go, and soon they were out of sight, except that we could see their dust.

We followed General Custer's trail until we got near the ridge where the General and I had first seen the village. We could see the fight going on in the valley, and Reno's command was retreating to the side of the river we were on. As we approached them, Colonel Reno came out to meet us. He was dismounted, his hat was gone, and he had a handkerchief tied around his forehead. He was out of breath and excited, and raised his hand and called to Colonel Benteen. We all heard him. He said, "For God's sake, Benteen, halt your command and help me. I've lost half my men." Part of his men were still coming up the hill, some mounted and some dismounted, and the Indians were firing at them from the hills and ravines near by. They were pretty much excited and disorganized when we got there.

Colonel Benteen said, "Where's Custer?" and Colonel Reno answered, "I don't know. He went off downstream and I haven't seen or heard anything of him since."

We heard a lot of firing down the river; it kept up for a half hour or maybe more. It sounded like a big fight was going on, and the men thought it was General Custer, and that he was whipping the Indians, and we all wanted to

hurry on and join him, but they wouldn't let us go. Captain Weir had some words with Colonel Reno, and I could tell by the way he was acting that he was excited and angry. He waved his arms and gestured and pointed down the river. Then we heard some volleys, and Captain Weir jumped on his horse and started down the river all alone. But his troop followed him right away.

The rest of us stayed there until the packs all arrived. The ammunition mules came first, in about fifteen minutes; but it was more than an hour before the last pack-mule was up.

Then we started down the river; but by the time we got as far as where Captain Weir had gone with his company, we had to stop, because the Indians had seen us and were coming up the river toward us by the thousand. The firing down below had all stopped by that time, except for an occasional shot, and we thought that they had stood off the General and that he had gone to join General Terry. We did not suspect then that he and all his men had been killed.

We got down about a mile, or maybe a little more, from the hill where we had found Colonel Reno, and then the Indians came on so thick and fast we had to fall back to the hill again.

By that time they were all around us, and more coming all the time, and we had a hot fight until it was dark.

The next morning it started again before daylight, and they kept it up until the middle of the afternoon. They killed a great many of our horses and mules, and a lot of men were killed and wounded, but we stood them off.

I was in America only two years then, and this was my first Indian fight. I had been in the Black Hills with General Custer in 1875, and we had seen plenty of Indians there, but did not fight them.

I admired General Custer very much; all the men did. He was a fighter and not afraid of anything. But he tried to do more than he could that day. They were too many for us, and good fighters, too. They had better weapons than we had and they knew the ground. It is lucky that any of us escaped alive. I don't think we would but for the fact that they heard that General Terry was coming.

I am an old man now and have served the United States a long time since I came from Italy in 1873. I enlisted in 1874 and was in the army for thirty years. My memory isn't as good as it used to be, but I can never forget the battle of the Little Big Horn and General Custer.

I have two sons in the army, and one of them is named for the General. I want them both to be as good soldiers as their father was.

It's a long time since I rode with Custer to his last fight—forty-six years—but I still have the old trumpet that I blew officers' call with the morning of that fatal day, and still have a lively recollection of, as I have a deep affection for, my old General.—JOHN MARTIN, *Sergeant, U. S. Army, Retired.*

"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

It is interesting, while reading Sergeant Martin's story, to review what transpired immediately before and after the time he was ordered back with the "Hurry-up" to Benteen and his battalion. Before daylight, the morning of the 25th, the 7th Cavalry, after a night march, had halted to make coffee. They remained where they then were until 8:45, when the march was resumed, until at 10.07 they arrived at a point about three miles from the top of the Divide between the Rosebud and the Little Big Horn, and from which the Indian scouts had reported, just after daylight, the Sioux village was visible.

Here Custer concealed his command in a deep and wooded ravine and went forward himself to the "Crow's-nest" to look at the Indian Camp, then intending to remain in concealment during the day and make his attack the next morning at daybreak, should the report of the scouts be verified. He returned in about an hour and a half, or about 11:30 a. m. George Herendeen, the scout who had been furnished him for the purpose of communicating with Terry, and Benteen and Reno also, says that when Custer returned to the command he said he "could not see any village, though the scouts and Mitch Bouyer (the half-breed Crow guide) all said they could see it, about fifteen miles off." Benteen and Reno further say that Custer expressed disbelief in the near proximity of any village whatever, at that time.

But during his absence events had transpired which forced him to change his plan to attack at daybreak.

Herendeen states (*New York Herald*, July 8, 1876) that while Custer was gone scouts had come in and reported that the command had been discovered by the hostiles; that two war parties of Sioux had stolen up and seen them and the news was even then on the way to the village. Hasty examination being made in a near-by ravine, fresh pony tracks were discovered. It was necessary to follow the trail at once or the Sioux would be on the move.

Custer thereupon had officers' call blown, as related by Sergeant Martin, and gave his orders.* The scouts were ordered forward, the regiment following at a walk, at 11:45. Upon crossing the Divide, Custer, apparently still skeptical about the location of the village, again halted at 12:05 p. m., divided the regiment, and ordered Benteen off to the left to a line of bluffs to scour the country and pitch into anything he might find. He was to go on into the next valley, and if he found nothing, then to the next. Benteen departed at once and was soon out of sight.

The rest of the command, at 12:12 p. m., followed the trail for about six

* It was during this halt that a sergeant of Yate's troop who had been sent back several miles on the trail to recover some articles which had been lost from a pack-mule the night before, returned to the command. He had discovered three Sioux, one sitting on a box of hard bread and examining the contents of a bag. Returning immediately, he reported the incident, which was at once related to Custer, then at the "Crow's-nest." It was now plain that the Sioux knew of the presence of the troops, and there was no longer any use of secrecy nor hope of surprise.

miles, evidently still at a walk, until shortly after 2:00 o'clock an Indian lodge was sighted; whereupon Custer bore down upon it at a trot. It proved to be the remains of a freshly abandoned Indian camp, all the lodges of which had been struck except this one, which contained the body of a warrior who had died from wounds received in Crook's fight on the Rosebud the week before. No Indians in any number had as yet been seen.

Near this dead-warrior lodge was a little knoll, from which one could look down the valley of the Little Big Horn, and there heavy clouds of dust were observed, apparently some five miles distant.

Girard, the interpreter, rode up on this knoll, and while looking at the receding clouds of dust in the valley discovered a good-sized party of Indians in flight between the troops and the river. He turned in his saddle and shouted to Custer, "Here are your Indians, running like devils." This was about 2.15 p. m., two hours after Benteen had left the column, and who was then probably some eight or ten miles away, to the left and rear.

Immediately Custer ordered the scouts to pursue. They refused; whereupon the Adjutant, at his direction, gave the order to Reno to "take as fast a gait as you think prudent and charge afterward, and you will be supported by the entire outfit," adding, as Reno moved out, "Take the scouts with you."*

Up to that moment it is fairly clear that Custer had formed no plan of battle. His information of the enemy was insufficient for him to have done so. He gave Reno no other instructions, and no further word was ever received from him by Reno,† who went in apparently expecting Custer to follow and support him from the rear.

It is quite possible, even probable, that this was Custer's intention at that moment, for he did follow Reno for a considerable distance.

The Adjutant, Lieutenant Cook, and Captain Keogh, both of whom were killed with Custer, rode to the river with Reno's command. At the river bank (about 2:30) the scouts saw the Sioux coming up the valley to meet Reno, and

* The order was oral and its exact language cannot be reproduced. The witnesses before the Reno Court of Inquiry in 1879 could only repeat its substance. Some said it was to "charge the Indians wherever you find them"; others, "charge the village." I think the first probably the more accurate, as the village was not yet visible. Another version of it was "to make for the dust." All agree, however, that the latter part of the order assured Reno that he "would be supported by the entire outfit." Reno's earlier statements indicate his belief that he was sent in to bring on an advance-guard action.—THE AUTHOR.

† I am aware that it has been claimed that an orderly carried a message from Custer to Reno, who received it while on the skirmish line in the valley. The claim is most improbable, for by the time Reno's skirmish line was formed no messenger could have gotten through. The Sioux were already on Reno's flank and rear, and Jackson, the half-breed scout whom Wallace wanted to send back to Custer to tell him of the situation while the skirmish line was fighting, refused to go, saying, "No man could get through alive." Wallace and Reno both testified at Chicago in 1879 that no word of any sort was received from Custer after the order to attack was given.—THE AUTHOR.

Girard, who had not yet crossed over, rode back, overtook Cook, then on his way back to Custer (who was still following), and reported to him that the Sioux were coming in large numbers to meet Reno. Cook said he would report the fact at once to Custer. This happened about 2:45.

It was at this moment, or very soon after, as it seems to me, that Custer's plan took form. The Indians were coming toward Reno, who would meet them on the plain. By dashing down the river, he would cut in behind them, and hit them from the rear, and he would send for Benteen and put him into action in the center, between Reno and himself.

It is impossible to believe, when he rode to the top of the ridge with Martin, as he did shortly after leaving Reno's trail and starting down the river at a gallop, that Custer thought the Indians were "asleep in their tents," for Cook must already have told him that they were streaming up the valley to meet Reno. He probably said, "We've caught them napping" or "asleep"—an expression which Martin, then a green Italian, unused to American colloquialisms, interpreted literally. But from the ridge evidently he did not see either the Indians or Reno's command. I assume that the timber below hid them from view. But he did see the village, and this, I think, was his first view of it. It was, apparently, deserted by its fighting men. What more natural, then, that he should cheer and shout to his men, "We've got 'em this time!" and dash for a ford, that he might cross and attack in the rear, and on the way send the "hurry-up" message to Benteen. He probably believed that *all* the Sioux were speeding to attack Reno in the valley, and did not know nor had any suspicion of what was in store for his own detachment. The greater part of the Sioux had *not* gone to meet Reno; but, before Martin was out of sight or hearing, attacked him in the ravine which led to the ford; and, as subsequent events show, in such numbers as to force him further down the river than he had intended to go. And there, still driven back by the hordes which cut him off from Reno, he was struck again by the crafty Crazy Horse, who crossed the river below him and attacked his rear. In the meantime Reno, finding the odds too great against him, routed, had fled back across the river. Hundreds of the Sioux under Gall had already left Reno, and dashing down the valley to the point where Custer, already hemmed in, was fighting for his life, they fell upon him like a thunderbolt, and in a short time the fight was over.

Benteen, after receiving the message carried by Martin, and misled, perhaps, by what Martin told him, had hurried on to join Custer, but instead he found Reno—broken, disorganized, routed. He did not know where Custer was. But Custer had five troops and could, presumably, take care of himself, while Reno was in *extremis*. He heeded the desperate plea for help—and halted.

Not even then, I think, had either detachment of the fated regiment at all realized the strength of the Sioux; and now it was too late. By the time Benteen reached Reno, Custer was hemmed in and doomed to destruction if not already done for.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Reno's ammunition was almost gone. His men had used it wildly, prodigally, and uselessly during the fight in the valley below. Benteen had one hundred rounds to the man—only enough to give his own and Reno's men fifty rounds apiece, when divided between them.

What to do? Did Reno not reason thus?

Custer was five troops strong; he, Reno, now had six, but had lost almost the strength of a troop in killed and wounded; therefore their forces were equal. Custer had all his ammunition, while he had little more than fifty rounds to the man.

If he pushed down the river at once, he must leave the pack-train in the air, at the mercy of the Sioux. And the packs carried all the extra ammunition, 24,000 rounds. He was burdened with wounded; to leave whom was out of the question, and whose presence made fast progress impossible. Surely Custer, with his five troops, could hold his own until the packs were up and the extra ammunition available. It was inconceivable that he was in distress. The thought that Custer could be in danger of destruction never crossed his mind.

So, Hare, on the freshest horse at hand, is sent on the run for the packs; and he, finding them still a mile and a half away, cuts out the ammunition mules and lashes them forward, the rest of the packs coming on/as fast as possible, guarded by McDougall's troop.

Reno had attacked about 3:15 p. m. He fought in the valley about a half hour, perhaps forty minutes, and then fled the field, reaching the hills about 4 p. m. About 4:10 Benteen joined him. It must have been at least 5 o'clock, or later before the ammunition mules arrived. What was Custer's situation then?

He had left Reno's trail about 3 o'clock; he started Martin back about 3:15; he had been first attacked, according to Martin, about 3:20. It was now after 5 p. m., more than an hour and a half since the Indians had first fallen upon him.

Gall had left Reno's front about the time Reno withdrew his line into the timber, or 3:30. He had not more than a twenty-minute ride to Custer, which allows more than an hour of his participation in the attack on Custer before Reno had the extra ammunition.

While Hare was gone for the ammunition mules, Weir and his troop moved down the river in an attempt to communicate with or to join Custer. He succeeded in getting about a mile before he was compelled to stop because of the ever-increasing number of Sioux in his front. In the meantime Reno was on the way to join him. Before Reno reached Weir the struggle below was over and the Sioux were coming back. Weir had moved down the river about 4:30 to 4:45 p. m.; Reno followed about 5:30. The Indians checked Weir about the time Reno started, and the retreat up the river to his first position began about 6:00. By 6:30 most of the command was back on the hill; by 7:00

"COME ON! BE QUICK! BRING PACKS!"

p. m., all of it, and as the covering company (Godfrey's) made its last dash to safety, Reno was surrounded by thousands of yelling Sioux.

At what time was Custer's fight over? Could it have continued long after 5:00 p. m.? I doubt it very much.

Had Reno moved down the river *at once* when Benteen joined him, at 4:10, he might have covered the four intervening miles before Custer was completely wiped out. But whether, encumbered as he was with wounded and possessing insufficient ammunition, such a move would have resulted in anything but greater disaster is a question which will bear thinking about. By the time the extra ammunition was available, was it not too late?

The fighting strength of the Sioux that day was at least six to one; better armed, better prepared, and as well, if not better, led. Was it possible, think you, for Custer to have won?

The tactics of the Indians on that day resulted in their doing to Custer exactly what Custer had planned tactically to do to them. And they were able to do it because they had the leaders, the arms, and the overwhelming forces, none of which facts were known or appreciated by the 7th Cavalry.

Their numbers had been underestimated; their leadership and fighting capacity undervalued; their superiority in arms not even suspected. The 7th Cavalry paid the penalty for national stupidity.

NOTE.—The time of the various movements is fixed, in so far as is possible, by the official itinerary kept by Lieutenant Wallace, which recorded the halts and marches up to the time of the division into battalions at 12:05. Wallace looked at his watch about the time Custer called Reno across to the right bank of the little tributary they were following. It was then 2:00 p. m. The dead-warrior tepee was sighted immediately after. The others are estimates based upon testimony, map distances, and all available evidence. They are necessarily approximate, but, I believe, very nearly correct. /

COMMENTS BY GENERAL E. S. GODFREY

Colonel Graham's contribution to the history of "Custer's last battle" will be greatly appreciated by contemporary and future historians, as well as by writers of stories of that many-sided event, an event that was epochal in the history of the great Northwest, the beginning of the end of the century-old frontier life of the army.

The mystery of the passing of the spirit of the noted and brilliant cavalry leader of the Civil War, of the indefatigable and hitherto-successful Indian campaigner, viewed from all sides and any angle, ends just where it began—in conjecture. There were probably only two men in Custer's entire command who, had they escaped, could have cleared up the mystery of his intentions and his plans—Captain Tom Custer, his brother, and Lieutenant Cooke, his adjutant; but they and their gallant comrades passed on to the Great Beyond with

their hitherto-indomitable leader. The commanders of the detached battalions were his irreconcilable, bitter enemies and critics; but he trusted to their regimental *esprit* and soldier honor for loyal and efficient support.

One orderly alluded to by Colonel Graham states that he carried and delivered a written message from Custer to Reno. While this testimony may be of doubtful value, who knows but that this message contained important instructions, hastily glanced at, that were pocketed, ignored, destroyed, and never revealed?

Colonel Graham, when seeking in the dusty archives of the War Department, came across the proceedings of the Reno Court of Inquiry held at Chicago in 1879, became interested, and has sought and brought to light much information from newspapers of that period and elsewhere—from wherever he could get a lead; from original official documents and from survivors of the expeditionary forces. I have reason to believe that his investigations have been made with an impartial, judicial frame of mind, not only deserving praise, but helpful assistance. It is to be hoped that we may have further contributions on this and kindred subjects from him.

Colonel Graham's time periods of events and movements, his deductions or conjectures, for they can only be conjectures, as to the plans and intentions of General Custer, are about the best that have been suggested.

I confess to considerable surprise that Reno and Benteen had testified at the Court of Inquiry "That Custer expressed a disbelief in the near proximity of any village whatever at that time." A number of us were already grouped when Keogh came up and told of the incident of Sergeant Curtis and the lost pack. Tom Custer jumped up and said that he was going to report that to the General. He and the General soon returned and officers' call was sounded. At the conclusion of his talk the General ordered us to return to our troops, inspect them, and report when we were ready for the march; and he said that the troops would take their places in the column of march in the order of reports. As we dispersed, Benteen and I walked toward our troops together. We had proceeded not more than fifty yards when, to my surprise, Benteen faced about and reported his troop ready. Benteen was beside me at the officers' call. I relate this to show that what one could hear the other could hear. I feel perfectly sure that such an expression of disbelief from the General would have made an unforgettable impression on my mind.

The difference in vision from the "Crow's-nest" on the Divide may be accounted for. The scouts saw the smoke at the village and the pony herds moving in the bottom when the vision was at the best, through a clear, calm atmosphere, with the early morning sun at their backs; General Custer's observations at the same place were made at near midday, with a high overhead sun; he had a hazy atmosphere from the heated earth. At all events, the General must have accepted the scouts' point of view, because he made their location of the village his objective. /

Our observations in locations of large Indian villages had shown that, for grazing their pony herds and perhaps for sanitary reasons, the village would consist of a series of groups or bands, separated by considerable distances. It is quite probable that General Custer had this in mind when he ordered Benteen's battalion to the left front to scout as far as the valley of the Little Big Horn, to pitch into anything he found, and to report. The fatigue of crossing ridges and valleys heavily distressed our horses, many falling behind. Lieutenant Gibson, with a detail, was sent on to the ridge, where he had a view of the valley of the Little Big Horn. He signaled, "No enemy in sight," and Benteen resumed the march, heading toward the trail of the main command, which we struck just ahead of the pack-train. On our march to the left I had glimpses of General Custer's command moving at a trot.

In recent years some newspapers have given space to self-styled "Last Survivors of the Custer Massacre" to proclaim their trashy, unbelievable tales of adventures and heroisms. I think there are now about twenty of these frauds, fakers, and impostors on the rolls.

As to many of the so-called Indian versions of the battle of the Little Big Horn, it must be remembered that the Indian in battle is an individualist; he is not anchored to a unit; he rides furiously in a circle or back and forth, as the spirit moves him, hoping for a chance to make a *coup* or get a scalp. Only the commanding personality of the war chief can hold him to a fixed or set purpose. In this battle, Gall, the noted Huncpapa Sioux war chief, when he learned that Custer's troops were approaching the village on the flank, called his warriors from the attack on Reno and assembled them in a deep ravine on the flank held by Keogh and Calhoun. He sent a detachment to attack and stampede the led horses; others he posted under cover, awaiting the opportunity for the rush and charge. Apparently there was no guard left with the led horses and the stampede was soon accomplished; that seemed to be the opportune moment and Gall gave his war whoop; the charge was made, overwhelming first Calhoun and then Keogh (troop commanders with Custer).

Crazy Horse, another noted war chief, when he learned that Custer was approaching, left Reno's front and rushed down the valley through the approaching warriors and through the village, calling, "All who want to fight, follow me." He assembled his warriors on Custer's flank, under the cover of a ridge. He sent a detachment to Custer's rear, and at the opportune moment he gave the war whoop for the charge that destroyed Custer's command.

EDITOR'S NOTE.—General Godfrey wrote a full account of "Custer's last battle," which was published in the *Century Magazine* in 1892. A reprint of this article was made and published in 1908, and still another reprint was done in 1921. We are informed that this is no longer obtainable, although General Godfrey has kindly given a copy to the U. S. Cavalry Association.

A Cavalry Commander in the Saddle

A REMINISCENCE OF GENERAL VON POSECK

BY

Colonel HENRY C. WHITEHEAD, U. S. A., Chief of the Remount Service

THE author of *The German Cavalry in Belgium and France* is not only one of Germany's distinguished cavalry leaders, but he is also an outstanding horseman. For the three or four years immediately preceding the World War he commanded the 2d Regiment of Dragoons, stationed at Schwedt, on the Oder, just 100 kilometers north of Berlin, where only a few months before the war the 225th anniversary of the regiment was celebrated in a series of ceremonies, pageants, sports, and social events, which pictured the organization, traditions, war and peace records, the loyalty and patriotic devotion of the grand old regiment in the beautiful setting of the capital of old Brandenburg, which had been its home station for 225 years.

A host of former officers and dragoons returned to honor the regiment in which they had served with pride and devotion and many with distinction. Von Poseck, on his Hungarian thoroughbred charger, was a commanding figure in the parades and mounted ceremonies of reunion week. But he was not merely a parade rider; like any good horsemaster, he rode hard and straight in proper season. He was well and suitably mounted. In pink coat, following the regimental hounds, one day on a big chestnut Hanover mare and the next on an iron-gray Irish hunter, he rode with ease and assurance in any kind of country. Three times a week, all through the season, he rode behind the M. F. H. and led a large field of officers, reserve officers, non-commissioned officers, and ladies and gentlemen of the neighborhood over as good courses as one expects to find on a well-laid drag. The fourth horse in his stable was a handsome old charger of good quality, beautifully trained, which was Frau von Poseck's mount.

Von Poseck found time to ride the other three horses daily. He was able to do that because during working hours he was on the exercise field with the troops. He was a hard student and a well-qualified staff officer, who had served a number of years on the staff; but he was not a desk soldier and could not abide a swivel chair.

The regimental headquarters office consisted of two rooms—one for the adjutant and one for the sergeant major and two or three clerks. In the adjutant's office were one desk and one chair, used by the adjutant, and a plain board table top against the wall, where the regimental commander stood to sign the papers prepared for his daily visit of half an hour. Papers not ready

GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE

at that time were signed with a fountain pen on the drill field or in the riding hall, where he was sure to be found. His own office was in his house and his hours were long and dark. Papers that required his personal attention were carried to his quarters every evening and returned to the adjutant the following morning.

Von Poseck was almost in a class by himself, in that he was the riding instructor for his regimental officers. From October 1 till March 31 he had his officers in the riding hall from 11 to 1 daily, while the troops were caring for their horses and getting their dinners. Each officer rode daily in the class the two chargers that he was required to keep, one hour to each horse.

Not infrequently the regimental commander took the backward young horse of some inexperienced lieutenant in one of the riding halls before 7 in the morning to keep it up to the class-work. During the winter months he worked his own mounts in the hall before 7 or after 5 o'clock, because the riding halls were fully occupied between those hours.

To one who has had the pleasure of knowing General von Poseck, it is particularly gratifying to note that the first published account of the work of the German cavalry in the World War is the result of his labors. There is probably no man living who is better qualified to expound the lessons taught by the cavalry operations in Belgium and France.

German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France

IN THE work by General von Poseck, "German Cavalry in Belgium and France in 1914," which has just been published in English by the U. S. Cavalry Association, in his description of the operations of the 1st Cavalry Corps on September 6, 1914, the following passage occurs:

"The 1st Cavalry Corps, in the course of the night, had received orders to undertake, with separate detachments, the reconnaissance toward Paris, and to advance with the main body and cross the Seine further toward the south and cut the railways there.

"In consequence, Lieutenant General Baron von Richthofen, at 6 o'clock in the morning, held the Guard Cavalry Division at Chartranges ready to advance by Provins and the 5th Cavalry Division at Montceaux ready to move on Villers St. Georges.

"Further changing orders at first kept the Cavalry Corps from moving until mid-day, when fresh orders arrived to continue the pursuit with all energy up to the Seine and to destroy the railways there. With this object in view, five patrols of the Guard Cavalry Division, provided with explosives, were sent against the Melun-Les Ormes railway line."

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In a footnote General von Poseck adds:

"Among these were Lieutenants von Wedemeyer (3d Uhlans of the Guard), von Schierstaedt (Gardes du Corps), and Count Strachwitz (Cuirassiers of the Guard), of whom the two last were captured by the French and, against all the laws of war, were sentenced to severe terms of imprisonment."

As this seemed a very serious accusation against the French Army, the editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL thought the matter worthy of further investigation. He accordingly addressed himself to Colonel Dumont, the Military Attaché of the French Embassy in Washington, who kindly undertook to send the statement of General von Poseck to the Minister of War in Paris.

The result of this step has been the following official communication from the Department of Military Justice of the French Army, giving the true story of the capture and trial of the German officers in question. It not only disproves General von Poseck's charge of unjust and arbitrary treatment of those German officers, but proves how admirably the archives of the Department of Military Justice were kept, even under the stress of a war such as that of 1914. The extreme care exercised in the case of Lieutenant Baron Detloff von Schierstaedt is a proof that no inhumanity or injustice was shown. His case, as will be seen, even received the special consideration of a Council of the French Ministry at its sitting of September 7, 1915. It would be difficult to imagine a Council of the Ministers of the Kaiser taking the trouble to pass on the case of a simple lieutenant of the French Army if a prisoner of war in Germany.

REPUBLIQUE FRANCAISE, MINISTRY OF WAR,
DIRECTION OF MILITARY JUSTICE,
PARIS, October 23, 1922.

NOTE

By a judgment dated October 1, 1914, the special court-martial of the 9th Army sentenced the following German subjects:

1. VON SCHIERSTAEDT, lieutenant of the Cuirassiers of the Guard, to five years' penal servitude, to military degradation, for plundering in a band and under arms and for instigation to plundering.

2. VON STRACHWITZ, lieutenant of the Gardes du Corps; MAUER, non-commissioned officer of the Gardes du Corps; PETZ, non-commissioned officer of the Cuirassiers of the Guard; JENKIES, trooper of the Cuirassiers of the Guard; BOTTGER, trooper of the Gardes du Corps, each of them to five years' imprisonment and to military degradation, for plundering in a band and under arms.

These sentences have been pronounced by application of Articles 250 and 189 of the Code of Military Justice.

All the legal forms were observed in this judgment, and the facts which were the grounds for these sentences are the following:

GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE

On September 6, 1914, two cavalry patrols, commanded by the Lieutenants VON SCHIERSTAEDT and VON STRACHWITZ, in the forest of Fontainebleau. The two officers saw that they had lost themselves. Leaving a part of their men and horses to rest, they went off with the two non-commissioned officers, MAUER and PETZ, and two troopers, JENKIES and BOTTGER. They lost themselves once more and could not find the men they had left, and as they heard rifle shots they decided to leave the forest. They wandered over the country, hiding by day and marching by night, in the hope of rejoining the German troops.

For their food they first consumed the rations they carried with them; then gathered fruits, pulled up potatoes in the fields, seized food they found in deserted houses, or entered farms still inhabited and procured food, always (they declared) offering to pay for it, but nearly always obtaining for nothing what they demanded.

It must, however, be noted that they took care to represent themselves as belonging to the English Army. One day they stole some loaves of bread. They kept their arms and cartridges up to the day when a precipitate flight before a French patrol forced them to abandon part of them.

Their presence was reported on several occasions. On September 26 they were discovered by another patrol at the extremity of a wood near Bury, and, called upon to surrender, they succeeded in escaping, leaving in the hands of the French detachment three revolvers with cartridges, three pairs of boots, an officer's uniform, two maps, a field-glass in its case, and other parts of equipment.

The officer's uniform belonged to Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT, who succeeded soon afterwards in procuring, from a peasant, civilian clothes, which he was still wearing when he was obliged to surrender.

By this time all were in a state of great fatigue. VON SCHIERSTAEDT was wounded in the thigh. They could no longer hope to escape if they should not succeed in procuring a carriage.

Accordingly, in the night of 26-27 September, they did not hesitate at Vouzy to enter a stable and take possession of a small furniture wagon and a horse. All of them were mounted in this wagon when, on September 27, they were arrested at Bussy-Lettrée by a military post guarding the lines of communication.

Lieutenants VON SCHIERSTAEDT and VON STRACHWITZ, the non-commissioned officers MAUER and PETZ, and the troopers JENKIES and BOTTGER were sent, for plundering in a band and under arms, before the court-martial of the 9th Army and sentenced, on October 1, 1914, to the penalties above indicated.

Their guilt was proved by the evidence, notably by their own declarations and by notes made by Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT in a notebook found in his possession.

The court-martial, taking into account the conditions under which they had been led to commit the offenses laid to their charge, admitted the existence of extenuating circumstances in their favor. Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT, who in his quality of head of the troop could have incurred a capital sentence, as laid down by Article 250 of the Code of Military Justice, was sentenced to the minimum penalty applicable—

that is to say, five years of penal servitude—while the other prisoners were sentenced to imprisonment.

It should be added that in taking off his military uniform and putting on civilian clothes Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT could have been considered, not as a combatant but as a spy, and punished as such. According to the principles laid down in the German Manual on the Laws of Land War (*Kriegsbrauch in Landkriege*, page 71), information obtained by the acts of a combatant wearing his distinctive outward insignia and acting openly constitutes a perfectly regular action, but if, on the contrary, the act is committed by him "in a clandestine manner, by hidden means, it becomes espionage and as such is liable to particularly severe means of repression and intimidation and mostly punished by the penalty of death."

Further, in terms of the Convention of The Hague, only soldiers in uniform can be regarded as belligerents.

Though it is true that Lieutenant VON SCHIERSTAEDT was justly sentenced, it must also be admitted that as a prisoner under sentence he was treated with all possible consideration.

As prisoner under sentence to penal servitude, he should have served his sentence at the prison of Saint Martin de Re. Nevertheless, as a measure of humanity, it seemed possible to impose upon him a penitentiary régime less rigorous than that of the ordinary convicts and to authorize him, as a measure of exception, to undergo his punishment in a military establishment. He was, therefore, after having been successively kept in the Prison of Montpellier, in the Central Prison at Riom, and at the depot of Saint Martin de Re, imprisoned, on March 31, 1915, in the Military Penitentiary at Avignon.

The same favor was accorded to Lieutenant VON STRACHWITZ, who was transferred to the same military establishment on March 30, as well as the two non-commissioned officers and the two troopers, who were transferred there on May 3 following.

This measure of grace was spontaneously taken by the French Government. At the Penitentiary of Avignon, these prisoners of war were treated as prisoners condemned to an ordinary prison sentence and not as convicts or men condemned to solitary confinement. They benefited by a special régime; they ate the usual military rations, but separately; they had the right to smoke; they wore the clothes they wore on arriving and not the ordinary prison dress; they were excused from all work and all fatigue duties; they were authorized to correspond more frequently with their families than the other prisoners, and they slept in separate rooms and not in the prison dormitory.

VON SCHIERSTAEDT, after being reported as having been attacked by mental troubles or of simulating these, was placed under observation in the Departmental Lunatic Asylum at Montdevergues (Vaucluse). He entered this establishment on April 11, 1915, and was treated there as an officer. At first he was very calm, but toward the 24th of April he commenced to show signs of delirium. The doctor in charge of the Asylum of Montdevergues, in a certificate dated May 8, 1915, declared: "VON SCHIERSTAEDT is a mystic and his temperament is paranoiac, as they call it in Germany, and places him on the border-line of madness." He added that "without being able to say whether VON SCHIER-

STAEDT was mad or not when he indulged in the acts of violence reported by the commandant of the penitentiary, he has certainly ceased to be so and his only desire is to leave here and obtain the revision of his trial."

In conclusion, the doctor certified that "VON SCHIERSTAEDT could leave the asylum in the special conditions of a prisoner of war." On May 15, 1915, this officer was retransferred to the Penitentiary of Avignon.

VON SCHIERSTAEDT was, however, transferred on July 18, 1915, to the Val de Grace Hospital at Paris, to be submitted to the examination of Doctors Ballet, Dupré, and Roubinovitch, who, on September 2, 1915, made a report of which the conclusions were as follows:

"1. On different occasions, in the early months of 1915, the German Lieutenant Baron Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT, prisoner of war, suffered from delirious crises, characterized by excitement, illusions, erroneous interpretations, mystical tendencies, and ideas of persecution.

"2. At present one cannot observe veritable psychic troubles in Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT, or at least troubles which would be incompatible with ordinary life, and, in particular, with military life.

"3. On the other hand, one can observe mystical tendencies, probably due to family, social, and ethnical conditions in the education of VON SCHIERSTAEDT. The mystical interpretation which he gives to certain facts of a common-place or accidental nature denotes, on the other hand, a certain debility of judgment.

"4. If Detloff VON SCHIERSTAEDT should be replaced in the conditions in which his crises of delirium have already manifested themselves on several occasions, one could look for a return of the same psychic troubles in this officer."

At the Cabinet Council held on September 7, 1915, it was decided to exchange VON SCHIERSTAEDT on the first exchange of wounded prisoners. This German officer was accordingly repatriated on September 20, 1915.

It should be added that in letters taken on him, some in ordinary German script, others in German stenographic script, VON SCHIERSTAEDT avowed the thefts with which he was accused. He admitted that he had taken off his uniform and dressed himself in civilian clothes; that he had passed himself off as English; that he was armed at the moment of his arrest, and, finally, that he had simulated madness only to escape the consequences of his condemnation. In these letters he boasted of having played the comedy of madness in masterly fashion and of having "taken in" the French authorities.

In case the General Staff of the Army should be desirous of knowing the fashion in which the other prisoners were treated, the Direction of Military Justice has the honor to request it to address itself to the General Service of Prisoners of War.

The Direction of the Section of Military Justice,
(Signed) FILIPINI.

A South American Cavalry Charge

VENEZUELA'S history pivots upon the exploits of Simon Bolivar; so it is natural that Tito Salas, the now world-famous Venezuelan painter, should have taken an episode from the career of his country's patriot hero as the subject of his latest canvas. *The Battle of Araure*, reproduced herewith through the courtesy of the Bulletin of the Pan American Union, is described in the following passages, taken partly from F. Loraine Petre's *Simon Bolivar* and partly from a translated excerpt from the historian Vicente Lecuna, as given in the *Pan American Bulletin*:

On the 28th November, 1813, Bolivar marched for San Carlos, where, on the 1st December, he found himself in command of 3,000 men. He could get no information in a country which was now once more entirely royalist, and, believing Ceballos to be at Barquisemeto, he made for that place. On the way, he heard that Yanez had seized Araure, on his left rear, and Ceballos also had moved thither. He at once turned back in that direction after them, leaving some cavalry to protect his communications with San Carlos against raids by the royalist guerrillas, who swarmed in the country. Passing the river Coyede on the 3d of December, he was before Araure on the 4th, in sight of the 3,500 men of Yanez and Ceballos. On the morning of the 5th they were gone, and Bolivar sent Manrique to regain contact with them with the advance guard and 400 cavalry. Manrique, who had orders not to hazard an attack, discovered Ceballos drawn up at the foot of some wooded heights, his front covered by a lake and his flanks protected by woods. Disregarding his orders, Manrique attacked, with the result that he was utterly defeated before Bolivar arrived with the main body. When Bolivar came up he renewed the battle.

The battle rages along the whole front, and two platoons of cavalry, supported by part of the infantry, wrest from the enemy some of its guns, using only the spear and the bayonet. The left Spanish wing, composed of cavalry of the plains, goes forward to envelop the first republican line on the right, which has advanced, firing. Bolivar sends the second line of horsemen against the royalist plainsmen and, seeing our men are losing, he puts himself at the head of the reserves and charges with them against the front of the powerful enemy army, while the second line attacks again the flank of the foes. The latter yield and disappear from the field. At that moment the enemy infantry, in the center of the line, seeing itself without support, retreats in demoralization. Bolivar orders a general charge of bayonet, and the royalist infantry is dislodged from its position. . . . The pursuit is made with the characteristic vigor of Bolivar's pursuits, to the point where the Liberator himself outsped the fleeing enemies, and in the night of the same day took as prisoners, 30 kilometers from the field of battle, those who were left. The Spanish chiefs had to escape alone.



"THE BATTLE OF ARAURE"

The most recent work of Tito Salas, representing a historical charge of cavalry led by General Bolivar



TRAINING A MACHINE-GUN UNIT OVER OBSTACLES

Training Machine-Gun Organizations at Obstacles

BY

First Lieutenant PAUL M. ROBINETT, Cavalry

MACHINE-GUN organizations are generally conceded to be a great hindrance to the mobility of a cavalry command, even on favorable ground. On unfavorable ground their mobility is thought to be practically lost, the only resource left such an organization being a long detour around the obstacle. If such opinions continue to prevail, the present cavalry organization will fail when brought face to face with actual conditions in the field.

If proper methods of instruction are employed, the machine-gun organization can be trained to pass all ordinary obstacles that a rifle organization can reasonably be expected to pass in the field. These obstacles which a rifle organization should be able to pass in the field are assumed to be the equivalent of a three-foot jump, a four-foot ditch, or ordinary slides. It is not at all too much for one to expect the machine-gun organization, with the present equipment, to successfully pass all such obstacles, and this holds good even if the organization has pack-mules instead of pack-horses.

Training methods should be progressive; the training of the pack-horse should go along with the training of the trooper and his mount. The trooper's mount and his led horse should be schooled in the same manner through the chute, the Hitchcock pen, or on the longe. After the horses have made suitable progress, the training of the trooper himself begins. At the same time, the training of the pack-horse in the chute continues, first with the aparejo alone and then with the entire load. When the trooper has acquired a reasonable degree of proficiency at the jumps, he is required to lead the pack-horse over the jumps, at first without aparejo, later with aparejo, and finally with aparejo and load. The trooper is instructed to conduct the pack-horse at the jump with rather a short rein, which is allowed to lengthen out as the horse gets within five to ten yards of the jump. As a general rule, the tendency is for the pack-horses to go too slowly at the jumps rather than too fast. In this respect the pack-horse behaves very much like the horse at liberty; for, according to Major H. D. Chamberlin, cavalry (page 170, *The Rasp*, 1922), "the horse at liberty is inclined to go too slowly rather than too fast, as a general rule."

The training at the slides is also made progressive. The trooper and his mount are first trained, and then the training of the pack-horse begins. The pack-horse, without aparejo, is at first led down gentle slopes, then down steeper

slopes, and finally down the slides. This training is continued with the pack-horse equipped with the aparejo alone and eventually with the entire load. The trooper is instructed to lead the pack-horse up to the slide with a short rein, and as his own horse goes over the slide, gradually allow the reins of the pack-horse to slip through his hand, while at the same time maintaining sufficient pressure to cause the pack-horse to follow. In case the led horse pulls back or his own horse goes forward at the run, the trooper is instructed to drop the reins of the pack-horse, so as to allow the latter to come down the slide at liberty. After a little practice the entire troop can be taken down the steepest slopes quietly and without excessive loss of time.

The troopers themselves take a great deal of interest in this work and soon become very expert in handling their pack-horses. A good machine-gun driver takes pride in his ability to conduct the pack-horse over obstacles and would rather hit the ground than lose one.

Instruction in passing obstacles should form a regular part of the training of all machine-gun organizations, and all troops should be expected to pass all ordinary obstacles likely to be encountered in the field.

Horseshoes and Military Equipments of Duralumin

BY

Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. Army, Retired

TESTS have recently been made by the 3d Cavalry at Fort Myer, Va., the Cavalry Board at Fort Riley, Kans., and by the 1st Cavalry Division in Texas, of duralumin horseshoes. These tests were made with a view to ascertaining the advisability of using them as the spare shoes carried by the trooper.

Due to the cost (about \$1.25 each) and difficulty experienced in some of the tests in fitting these shoes cold, it was decided not to adopt them as spare shoes.

The tests, however, demonstrate the value of these shoes on race-horses, for horse-show purposes, in endurance rides, on gentlemen's riding horses, and generally under conditions where a very light shoe is desired.

The duralumin (17 S alloy) used has one-third the weight of steel, yet has approximately the same strength characteristics; so that while a No. 3 steel front shoe weighs twenty ounces, when made of duralumin it weighs but seven ounces.

As to *durability*, the results were decidedly more favorable than was anticipated. Fort Myer reported the durability to be about two-thirds that of the regulation shoe; Fort Riley reported that about half of the shoes showed the same amount of wear as the issue steel shoe, the remainder showing more wear than the regulation, while the Cavalry Division reported the durability as "satisfactory," the wear being about the same or slightly less than with steel shoes.

The reports showed that they had been worn generally for periods varying from twenty to thirty days or more, on garrison duty, and on practice marches over distances of from 86 to 300 miles.

It is interesting to note that the report from Fort Myer shows that the duralumin shoe does not slip on a smooth or wet pavement to the same extent as does the steel shoe.

Duralumin (17 S alloy) very much resembles aluminum in appearance and takes a high polish, which in ordinary atmospheres is permanent. In this copper-aluminum alloy the copper runs about 4 per cent. It contains some magnesium and is heat-treated.

The tests above mentioned have been made possible through the generous co-operation of the Aluminum Company of America, Pittsburgh, and the U. S. Horse-shoe Company of Erie, Pa., in supplying the necessary material and manufactured articles for this purpose.

The function of the horseshoe is to protect the hoof when the horse is at work, as occurs on the march, where the wear is much greater than when the horse is on the range. In order to accomplish this without unnecessary expenditure of effort, the shoe should be sufficiently strong and rigid to answer this purpose *and no more*.

To form an approximate idea of the saving in effort by the use of a duralumin (17 S alloy) shoe, let us take the following data, using the regulation No. 3 shoe (which comprises 44 per cent of all issued). The No. 3 front, with the heels cut off ready for shoeing, will weigh 20 ounces. The duralumin shoe weighs 7 ounces.

The hind shoes weigh a trifle less, but we are well on the safe side in assuming an average *saving* in using the 17 S alloy to be 12 ounces per shoe. In other words, if a 7-ounce duralumin shoe will answer all the requirements of hoof protection, the 12 ounces in excess now carried is *unnecessary weight*.

In this connection the manager of the *Horseshoers' Journal* (Detroit) has called the writer's attention to certain calculations made by Bouley, a celebrated French veterinarian and horse expert, whose method of demonstrating the waste of energy where an unnecessarily heavy shoe is used is set forth in *Russell's Scientific Horseshoeing*, from which we quote freely. We also adapt to our purpose Bouley's method of calculating the wasted energy.

"Light shoes proportioned to the weight of the animal and the nature of his work are infinitely preferable to heavy ones, for these latter are a burden

at best and a constant tax on the energies of the horse as is implied by the familiar saying: 'an ounce at the toe means a pound at the withers.'

"It is not surprising therefore to find that the majority of our horses are at the decadence of their powers when they should be at their prime, and a prolific source of such disability is the habitual pounding along on hard roads, with over-weighted, ironclad feet."

Calculating that a horse going at a fair trot lifts his feet all round 60 times a minute and this with each shoe unnecessarily heavy by 12 ounces, the amount of effort uselessly expended is easily calculated for a period of, let us say, one hour.

Lifting one foot 60 times a minute; for four feet, $60 \times 4 = 240$. Lifting 3 lbs. each time, in one minute he will lift 180 lbs., and in one hour 10,800 lbs. or $5 \frac{2}{5}$ tons. Assuming 24 miles as the day's work, the needless expenditure of energy for that distance if performed at the trot would be $16 \frac{1}{5}$ tons.

If this $16 \frac{1}{5}$ tons per hour, resulting from 48 ounces lifted unnecessarily, be eliminated, certainly the horse will travel farther or come in fresher at the end of a day's march than if not obliged to lift it. What relief this will be we leave to the reader's conjecture.

It is interesting to point out an analogy with a marching infantryman. If in an infantryman's shoe a 12-ounce leaden insole is placed, thus increasing the weight carried on his foot from 27 ounces to 39 ounces, an increase of nearly one-half, the infantryman will not march long in such shoes before he expresses an opinion. The troop horse can express no opinion; he does his best with whatever he is shod, be the shoe heavy or light.

In the past year the writer has also experimented considerably with a view to ascertaining the adaptability of duralumin for use in the manufacture of certain articles (other than horseshoes) of the soldiers' equipment. It was found that cups and mess tins when made of duralumin had, when tested at the Bureau of Standards, from 25 per cent to 75 per cent more rigidity than the regulation aluminum articles. With spoons, the advantage was still greater, while shelter-tent pins had as high as six times the rigidity of aluminum pins. Duralumin plates tested at Frankford Arsenal indicated that even the metal helmets could be made of it and have weight for weight rather greater resistance to shrapnel than the regulation steel helmets worn in the A. E. F.

As more skill is developed in working the alloy and as improved methods of manufacture make it less expensive, we may confidently predict that at no very distant future it will, in those articles of equipment carried on the person, displace aluminum, just as aluminum only a dozen or more years ago displaced tin, iron, and steel.

Editorial Comment

OUTLAWING WAR!

AN APPEALING SLOGAN, this: "Outlaw War." Professor Butler, of Columbia, recently remarked that it is the talkers (not the doers or the thinkers) who rule the roost today. We are inclined to think that it has ever been thus, and that this fact can account for many of the ills that have fallen upon the world. This is an interesting sample of the talkers' method, this clever association of words, both rich with connotations which would seem to embody a splendid idea, but which when seriously regarded is discovered to embody nothing but its nine letters.

Outlawry has been obsolete for a century. Outlawry is—or was—an act of war itself. It was a declaration of war by the community upon one who defied its constituted authority. It put its victim outside of protection of the law. Outlawry became obsolete when it was perceived that it was predicated upon unsound principles. We cannot place our brother outside the pale of social cognizance. We are our brother's keeper. That has been accepted by Christianity for two thousand years.

Outlawry, even when practiced, depended upon two fundamental conditions: constituted authority and power to enforce that authority.

How sublimely ridiculous, then, is this proposed outlawry of war! All praise to the efforts of those who aspire to create even a vestige of constituted authority among nations. After all, a greater or less degree of faith and hope is the measure of distinction between League of Nationists and Anti-Leagueurs. But what can be said of him who, in face of the existing lack of any general and effective constituted international authority and the existing total absence of any power to enforce such authority if it do exist, cries out fatuously for outlawry of war?

If war is a crime, as it is commonly termed, how outlaw it? When outlawry was practiced, it was the criminal who was outlawed, not the crime. The criminal was deprived of all legal protection. The *crime* has no legal protection of which it can be deprived. We speak of and study the laws of war, but war itself is extra-legal.

Perhaps it is more logical to regard war as a ravaging disease which has not been eradicated. A disease cannot be outlawed. It can be conquered, but only as the increasing intelligence of the world—all the human atoms of the world, of which the doctors represent in this respect only a slightly super-average element—brings the necessary knowledge and control. It takes more than a Pasteur to make the world free from infection of disease. It takes more than a pacifist to make the world free from the infection of war.

That nation that is involved in the throes of war, shall it be regarded as a criminal, and shall the unorganized world, in some unexplained fashion, outlaw it?

Was our country criminal in '76? Was the North criminal in '61? Was the South? Was Belgium criminal in 1914? Criminality, where not obviously ruled out of court, is throughout history, in most instances, a matter of dispute.

When one regards a nation at war, not as a machine stupidly manipulated by a clever Machiavellian ruling class, but as an aggregation of human beings swayed by human emotions, responsive to every wave of mistrust, fear, exaltation, at once agonized and heroic, pitiable and sublime, all this talk of crime and criminal and of outlawry becomes miserably inapplicable and inane.

"Outlaw war," a shifty shibboleth!

War is a terrible fact! As a counter-fact, only one principle has ever been known. Just as disease is best prevented by sanitation or the organization of society in physical health and strength against the attacks of disease, so is war prevented only by the sound and healthy organization of society to withstand the attacks of war.

When a nation is so organized and is known to be doughty and strong, it is enough to say when assailed, as Charles Francis Adams said to England in 1863, "It would be superfluous to point out to Your Lordship that this is war."

CAVALRY ROAD SPACE

WE HAVE SEEN diagrammed cavalry columns in march around the edge of a text-book page. They impress us about as forcefully as a line of Morse code. We can translate statistically, but the thing has no life.

On a map of the vicinity of Washington in the Chief of Cavalry's Office has been posted, in conspicuous diagram, a cavalry division on the march, with its advance guard; farther back along the road, the trains; also an infantry division is shown in march, with its trains following. This map so treated impresses one with several significant things. A few miles blocked out on the roads of a map representing ground unfamiliar to one may mean very little to the average observer. A few miles blocked off on roads with which he is entirely familiar are immediately transformed into a vision for him. He sees certain units of actual familiar landscape filled with troops and all their gear. He sees the checks and halts and blockades and confusion that actually attend the movement of troops; the space that separates the commander from some of his units becomes more apparent. If another marching column like our infantry division is shown on a converging or crossing road, he is reminded of the checks that Sordet's Cavalry Corps was subjected to in trying to get over to the left of the retreating line across retiring British infantry columns.

There is no surer way of fixing things in the mind (next to actual experience) than by visual process. It is probable that much use can be made of this posted-map idea. A division camp, a bivouac, might be plotted on the map; a dismounted regiment deployed for dismounted attack. These things, presented graphically on a map of familiar terrain, arouse interest, fix the attention, and enlist the powers of memory. It is suggested that a map of the vicinity of each cavalry garrison be so embellished, in striking colors and symbols, and hung in a conspicuous place. One thing certain, the man who works on the map will impress some road distances and details of army organization on his own mind. Any one may experiment with this. The exercise, to be profitable and interesting, must be done on a map of thoroughly familiar terrain.

PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST WON BY CAPTAIN B. F. HOGE, CAVALRY

THE RESULTS of the recent prize essay contest were very gratifying. Thirteen essays were submitted and were referred to a committee of judges composed of Colonels Herbert B. Crosby, Hamilton S. Hawkins, and George E. Mitchell, all of cavalry. This committee made the following awards:

First prize essay: "Cavalry Marches."

Second prize essay: "A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in Reconnaissance."

Third prize essay: "Cavalry Combat."

These essays proved to be written by the following authors: Captain Benjamin F. Hoge, cavalry; Captain Edward M. Fickett, cavalry, and Major Karl S. Bradford, cavalry.

The judges also made mention of two other essays, which proved to be written by Colonel Kirby Walker, cavalry, and Major General William H. Carter, U. S. Army, retired, and regretted that more prizes were not available to be awarded them. The prizes were money prizes; the first, \$150.00; the second, \$75.00, and the third, \$25.00.

Only the essay which was awarded the first prize, "Cavalry Marches," is published in this number of the JOURNAL. The other essays will appear in subsequent numbers.

THE FIFTH CAVALRY AT GAINES' MILL

American Military Paintings

ATTENTION IS INVITED to the handsome frontispiece, which is a reproduction of a painting by W. T. Trego, representing the charge of the 5th Regulars at Gaines' Mill, June 27, 1862.

This action is described by a participant, Lieutenant-Colonel A. K. Arnold, 1st Cavalry, in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of December, 1889, in an interesting article of eight pages, illustrated by a diagram map.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The 5th Cavalry were represented in this action by Troops A, D, F, H, and I, and was commanded by Captain C. J. Whiting. This force numbered about 220 sabers and, together with 250 sabers of the 6th Pennsylvania Lancers and 125 sabers of the 1st Cavalry, was drawn up in support of the batteries that were attempting to hold back Pickett's infantry, following up the rout of Porter's army. When the batteries were finally out of ammunition and had to limber up, General Cooke, commanding the cavalry, ordered Whiting to charge. Colonel Arnold says:

"Captain Whiting, after waiting a few moments, gave the command to move forward. The sabers of the men were in their scabbards. I partly turned to my men and ordered them to 'draw saber,' and this command was taken up along the line.

"Our position was so close to the enemy that, almost as soon as we were in motion, we took the gallop, increasing the speed as much as possible as we proceeded onward; but, as we did not have sufficient space in front to take the charging gait, we could not reach his line in full career. Arriving near the line, we were received by a heavy fire from the right and front, the effect of which placed all the officers except one *hors de combat*, and quite a number of men, thus destroying the cohesion of our front. A part of the command passed forward and through the ranks of the enemy, while fragments turned to the right and moved to the rear.

"Our casualties were great. Lieutenant Sweet was killed; Captain Chambliss, Lieutenants Arnold, Watkins, and Maley wounded, and Captain Whiting injured by his horse being killed and falling upon him. Three enlisted men were killed, 25 wounded, and 24 missing; total commissioned and enlisted killed, wounded, and missing, 58. Twenty-four horses were known to have been killed.

"When that portion of the command which was intact struck the enemy, his line wavered and was broken here and there, and it was some little time before its continuity was restored. If the charge had been followed up by the other portion of the division, it would have probably resulted in crushing the enemy's extreme right, as everything was made favorable to that end by the charge of the 5th U. S. Cavalry. Even after the enemy had recovered from his confusion, he failed to move forward to take possession of the guns that remained, but waited, as if expecting another attack. But the 6th Pennsylvania had been withdrawn (to support Robertson's battery, which retired safely) just as we were making the charge, and the 1st U. S. Cavalry, although its brigade commander had been ordered to support us, and charge if necessary, had ordered it to the rear just after we struck the enemy, thus leaving this little detachment of 220 sabers to do battle against fearful odds.

"The battle closed with the charge of the 5th U. S. Cavalry. Most of the retreating troops were rallied on the plateau near the river, under the protection of our remaining batteries and cavalry. The enemy, observing reinforcements coming up, did not press forward, but contented himself with firing a few shots from his artillery, and, night approaching, both armies remained quiet in position."

EDITORIAL COMMENT

An interesting note describes how Colonel, then Lieutenant, Arnold was himself wounded and caught under his horse, and later attempted unsuccessfully to jump a fresh mount over a ditch, in which he was thrown and remained for some time stunned.

This beautiful painting is one of the originals of the illustrations used in a publication by George Barrie's Sons, entitled "The Army and Navy of the United States." This folio is probably familiar to a number of our readers. Mr. Robert Barrie has written recently to the Secretary of War, offering these paintings, many of which have been on exhibition in the library of the U. S. Military Academy, for sale at very reasonable prices.

The 11th Cavalry has purchased "Commissioned Officers and Privates, Cavalry, 1802-1810," and has presented it to the Chief of Cavalry, to be hung in his office. This is a thoughtful and praiseworthy action on the part of the 11th. Colonel Jenkins writes:

"Inasmuch as George Barrie's Sons are disposing of their exhibit from the Library at West Point, which are all of the mounted service, it is believed that the other regiments of our arm will assist in keeping the paintings in their rightful place, which we consider to be the office of our chief."

Other paintings of a cavalry interest include "Cavalry Charge, 1863," in oil, by W. S. V. Allen, priced at \$150.00; "Light Horse Skirmish of Outposts, 1777," \$100.00; "Captain and Troopers, 1861," \$100.00; "Troopers Mounted, 1889," \$100.00; "Dragoon, 1846," \$75.00, and "Dragoons, 1821-1832," \$55.00, all in water color, by Allen, and "The Rough Riders at Las Guasimas," in water color, by Ditzler, for \$100.00. The oil painting reproduced on the frontispiece of this number of the JOURNAL is priced at \$200.00.

Any regiment or individual interested in these paintings may communicate to the CAVALRY JOURNAL or direct to George Barrie's Sons, Philadelphia.

THE CAVALRY FUND

AS THIS NUMBER of the JOURNAL goes to press the books of the Cavalry Fund show that \$1,185 has been contributed. Of this amount \$752 was contributed as a response to the special request for funds for the Olympic Team and will, of course, be so appropriated. In fact \$653.50 has already been turned over to Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., Secretary-Treasurer of the Special Army Horse Show Committee. It is felt that this contribution from cavalry officers is an earnest of their interest in the success of the Army Olympic Team and will help materially to induce civilian friends of this project to give liberal financial or equine support.

The fund still lacks a little of being sufficient to furnish the Cavalry Association's donation as sponsor to the Endurance Ride, but it is fully expected that it will be considerably added to during the next few months.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Cavalry organizations have also contributed about \$694.00 toward the Army Polo Team, which makes the amount thus far contributed by cavalry officers and organizations for general purposes \$1,879.

The largest amount received from any source is a contribution of \$482.50 from the officers at Fort Riley. In addition, that post is pledged to the extent of another \$100 for Army Polo. The 3d Cavalry makes the next best showing, with \$229 contributed to the Cavalry Fund (including Olympic Team) and presumably half of \$400 sent in to the Central Polo Committee. These contributions come from the two posts of Fort Myer and Fort Ethan Allen, and a battalion of field artillery at each post is partly responsible for the \$400 polo contribution.

The 12th Cavalry, at Fort Brown, has contributed \$120 for the Army Polo Team; the 8th, at Fort Bliss, has sent in \$51 for the Olympic Team; the 4th, at Fort McIntosh, has sent in \$50 to the Central Polo Committee; the 13th, at Fort D. A. Russell, has contributed \$15 for the Cavalry Fund, including the Olympic Team and a share in the donation from that post of \$39 for Army Polo. The 10th has contributed \$100 to Army Polo, and the 14th has sent in \$52 for the Olympic Team. The 5th has contributed about \$50 to the Olympic Team and Army Polo and small contributions have come in from the headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Brigade at Fort Clark and the 1st Cavalry. Officers on duty in Washington have contributed over \$50 to the General Cavalry Fund and have made generous support to the Olympic Team. About \$300 has been contributed by individual officers elsewhere serving away from cavalry units.

The 6th Cavalry has promised \$300 for the Cavalry Fund and an equal amount for Army Polo. The 11th and 14th have each promised \$200 for the latter object.

It is felt that a very praiseworthy response has been made to the requests for funds for these general purposes, and the only thing more that could be desired is that all officers and organizations that have not yet joined in this support for approved general cavalry activities do their part to make the cavalry support unanimous.

A SERVICE THE CAVALRY JOURNAL CAN RENDER

DO YOU HAVE A HOBBY?

It may be a sport—chess, horse-racing, dogs; or a study—geology, economics, some branch of history; or you may be interested in a particular line of literature, or of modern progress in some art or science. The possibilities included in the term "hobby" are too infinite to enumerate.

The Cavalry Association can easily render a special service to its members in this respect. Through our office come notices of practically all the new publications as they come out. In addition, we have catalogues listing the old.

EDITORIAL COMMENT

Where these will not suffice to exhaust a given field, we have the tremendous resources of the Library of Congress close at hand, as well as the War College Library and special libraries.

If you will inform the CAVALRY JOURNAL in what particular subjects you are specially interested (with as definite specifications as practicable), your needs will be kept on file, and as publications appear that may be of interest to you notice will be sent you. This service is offered to you as a member of the Cavalry Association and will not obligate you in any degree.

Since you are a member of the Cavalry Association, why not profit by all the service it is in a position to afford you?

APPRECIATION OF THE JOURNAL

WE HAVE refrained from publishing many pleasant things which have been said and written about the JOURNAL, although these comments have been a source of immense gratification. The following, recently received, is an interesting sample:

"We like the JOURNAL as well as ever. It is the paper a cavalryman needs, not because it needs his support, but because it is the best place to find things he wants to read. Is one getting up a field meet and wants some jumps that are different, consult the JOURNAL. Is he puzzled by having more horses than men, read the JOURNAL and learn how it was done in the First. Is any one looking for live tactical problems taken from real life, keep an eye on the JOURNAL. Does he want to know what the other regiments are doing, and how, keep up with the JOURNAL."

U. S. M. A. 1884 CLASS BULLETIN

THE LIBRARY U. S. M. A. lacks the following numbers of the 1884 Class Bulletin and would be very glad to receive these issues in order to complete set: Numbers 5, 10, 14, 19, 21, and after.

SUBSCRIPTIONS

IT IS PLEASANT to announce that the 3d, 4th, 12th, and 13th Cavalry have a 100 per cent paid-up subscription list among their troops and officers. This, of course, should obtain in every regiment, and until it does the Cavalry Association and CAVALRY JOURNAL will not function with the maximum beneficial results. Each regiment will be 100 per cent when its officers envisage the Association and JOURNAL as a part of national defenses to such an extent that they will think it worth the dues of \$2.50 per year to belong to the Association of their arm. THE JOURNAL is inherently worth the price as a magazine of a technical nature. That is, aside from all argument as to duty. Due to the rapid decrease in the authorized number of cavalry officers, the time is fast approaching when the continuance of publication of a cavalry journal will depend directly on the subscription of every regular officer. Let us anticipate this necessity. Get the 100 per cent now.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

It is the earnest desire of the management of the CAVALRY JOURNAL that all will co-operate in the methods being used to keep up the subscription list of the JOURNAL and membership in the Cavalry Association. Experience has taught that the present arrangement of having representatives in the units is the *only* way in which the JOURNAL can be kept running. Some one must see officers *personally* and get them into the Association, and then, when their subscriptions expire, *some one* must get their renewals. If the management waited for renewals and new subscriptions to come in without this solicitation, it would not be possible to continue.

As explained in the last issue, several notices of expiration are sent to the individual through the mails *before* the efforts of the JOURNAL representative are enlisted. The management is extremely desirous that no official pressure be brought to bear on officers in this matter, and it believes that no such pressure is being used. It is hoped that commanding officers try to sell the JOURNAL to their officers on its merits, and in this it is felt that true co-operation is being had. Commanding officers may quite properly present the fact that officers of rank and experience maintain their membership in the Association and keep up their reading of the JOURNAL. This will persuade eligibles to come in and *stay* in. Further than moral persuasion, nothing is asked or desired of commanding officers or JOURNAL representatives.

The management is always ready to receive helpful suggestions concerning the operation of the Association's business, and in each case endeavors to adjust matters to the satisfaction of the individual member, tempered with justice to the Association as a whole. The field is so small that every cavalry officer is actually needed in the Association. If officers who have had or are having trouble about their JOURNAL will frankly advise the Association, matters can in every case be straightened out.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL REACHES THE R. O. T. C.

Captain Gereen, Assistant P. M. S. & T. at the University of Georgia, writes:

"I wish to call your attention to the interest taken in the JOURNAL by the Cavalry R. O. T. C. students at this university. While only three subscriptions have been sent in during the past month, I feel that there will be more later.

"These subscriptions are simply obtained by passing my copies out to those that are interested, with a little information explaining the merits of the JOURNAL and its up-to-date articles of cavalry action during the late war; also the other articles pertaining to cavalry.

"It is believed that the JOURNAL is one means of instilling interest and imbuing the Cavalry R. O. T. C. students with the cavalry spirit, because they see and grasp the practical side of cavalry from the practical and interesting experiences of the writers. It is hoped that more students from the university will subscribe for the JOURNAL later."

Topics of the Day

ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM PREPARATIONS

MAJOR JOHN A. BARRY is now in London sizing up the situation. When he returns he will find most of the candidates for the team already busily at work at Fort Myer, where the team will be prepared. A few candidates for the team have already arrived and they have a string of 16 prospects to commence work with. These are promising government horses, with a few private mounts, and it is believed that out of the lot three or four satisfactory team mounts can be made.

The committee, consisting of Major Beard, Messrs. R. E. Strawbridge, F. S. Von Stade, J. Watson Webb, and L. E. Waring, which is entrusted with the selection and purchase of horses for the team, have not yet, at this writing, made any purchases, but have been attending a number of horse shows, and report that they have some prospects lined up.

The funds thus far raised include not only the \$750 from cavalry officers and amounts from officers of other branches, but also several donations from civilian backers of the project, notably \$1,000 each from Mr. C. C. Stillman, Mr. John McE. Bowman, Colonel R. H. Williams, Jr., Mr. H. F. Sinclair, and Mr. Price McKinney.

CHIEF OF CAVALRY HONOR RIFLE TEAM

BY PERMISSION of the War Department and beginning this year, the Chief of Cavalry will select annually, from among the soldiers of all cavalry regiments, an honor rifle team. It will be called "The Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team." The names of its members will be announced to the cavalry service and each member will receive a suitable bronze medal. This team will not actually assemble as such, but will correspond, in a way, to what is known in athletic circles, for example, as the "All American Football Team," etc.

The team will be composed solely of enlisted men, and only those will be eligible who fire the regular record course with their respective regiments and who have not qualified at any time as Distinguished Marksman or shot on the Cavalry Team or other service team.

The team will consist of one man from each regiment which fires the regular qualification course. In each regiment, subject to the conditions above stated, that man will be selected who makes the highest individual score in record practice.

At the end of the season, as soon as regimental commanders send to the Chief of Cavalry the names of the successful competitors, the team will be announced and handsome silver medals awarded.

NATIONAL MATCHES

IN PREPARATION for the National Matches, the competitors for the Cavalry Team have been assembled at Fort Des Moines. Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson is the team captain again this year, with Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin as his assistant. Major J. O'Hara has been designated coach. In addition to these officers and a supply officer, 39 officers and 51 enlisted men, a total of 90 competitors, are engaged in the preliminary firing.

The following matches will be held at Fort Des Moines on such dates as may be selected by the team captain, with the approval of the commanding officer, Fort Des Moines, provided that the matches will not be commenced until all competitors shall have twice fired the National Rifle Team Course, 1923, at Fort Des Moines:

No. 1—Cavalry Regimental Team Championship:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1923.

Open to one team of three competitors from each regiment.

Prizes: The team making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy, and a bronze medal will be awarded to each member of the team.

No. 2—Cavalry Individual Championship Match:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1923.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy and a gold medal; second place, silver medal; third place, bronze medal.

No. 3—200-yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 200 yards, offhand.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the Cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded a silver medal; second place, bronze medal.

No. 4—1,000-yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 1,000 yards. No sighting shots.

Open to all officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the cavalry.

Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Fort Bliss Trophy and a silver medal; second place, bronze medal.

The individual making the highest aggregate score in the Individual Championship Match, 200-yard Individual Championship Match, and the 1,000-Yard Individual Championship Match will be awarded the Holbrook Trophy and a gold medal.

The Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy will be retained by the winning regiment and the other trophies by the organizations to which the winners belong, for one year or until the next competition. Should the winner of any trophy not be a member of an organization, the custody of the trophy will be subject to disposition by the Chief of Cavalry.

All medals awarded will become the permanent property of the winner.

No individual may be a member of a regimental team who has been a shooting member of the Cavalry or the Cavalry-Engineer Team in more than one of the Cavalry Team matches of 1920-21-22. No such individual will be permitted to participate in the individual matches herein mentioned.

A greater effort is being made this year than ever before to win the national matches and high hopes are entertained.

The cavalry stood second in 1906, fourth in 1907, third in 1908, fourth in 1909, third in 1910, sixth in 1911, first in 1913, third in 1915, seventh in 1918, third in 1919, and seventh in 1920; the Cavalry-Engineer Team stood seventh in 1921 and took fifth place last year. This year the engineers have their own team.

HORSESHOEING IN ORGANIZATIONS

MAJOR WILFRID M. BLUNT, cavalry, suggests:

In conjunction with regimental and post field days, horse shows, or other occasions, would it not be possible to incorporate a horseshoeing contest, possibly giving appropriate prizes? For example, a disinterested officer might go through the animals of each organization the day before and select a horse from each needing shoeing for each horseshoer of that unit. In order to make the test as fair as possible, these animals should be quiet animals, with normal feet. They could be shod in their respective shops the afternoon or morning immediately preceding the field day, horse show, or other occasion. This would automatically limit the time which could be spent on shoeing to half a day (or less, if so desired) and permit their being judged along with other events. Some such scheme as outlined above would promote interest in horseshoeing both in organization commanders and horseshoers.

COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

THE FIVE DAYS' annual Colorado Endurance Ride will start from the Broadmoor Hotel, Colorado Springs, on July 30. The total distance will be approximately 300 miles, the maximum riding time allowed being 50 hours. The weight of rider, saddle, and equipment is required to be a minimum of 225 pounds (bridle and halter excepted). The prizes are: First prize, \$600; second prize, \$400; third prize, \$300; fourth prize, \$200; fifth prize, \$150; sixth prize, \$100. An individual cup is awarded to the winner of the first prize.

NEW CAVALRY DISTINGUISHED MARKSMEN AND PISTOL SHOTS

IT IS GRATIFYING to note that the following cavalry personnel were in 1922 transferred to the class of distinguished marksmen: Captain Roderick R. Allen, 4th Cavalry; First Lieutenant Samuel P. Walker, Jr., 7th Cavalry; Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Troop F, 4th Cavalry, and Sergeant Jerry Kubovy, Troop G, 1st Cavalry, all of whom fired on the Cavalry or Cavalry-Engineer teams at the national matches, winning therein either gold or bronze medals. In the same year Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander H. Davidson, 8th Cavalry; Captain Joseph Yuditsky, 14th Cavalry; First Lieutenants George A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry, and Samuel P. Walker, Jr., 7th Cavalry, and Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Troop F, 4th Cavalry, were transferred to the class of distinguished pistol shots, having all fired on the Cavalry-Engineers team in the national matches and having won either gold or bronze medals. These officers and men also won between them in the national individual matches with the rifle one gold and one silver medal, and with the pistol one gold and five bronze medals.

THE ARMY AND THE BOY SCOUTS

THE FOLLOWING LETTER from General Pershing to Mr. James E. West, Chief Scout Executive of the Boy Scouts of America, points out the opportunity for army officers to perform a notable service in connection with the training of the youth of the country—a service for which they are well qualified in the main:

MY DEAR MR. WEST:

I have received a copy of a resolution recently adopted by the National Council, Boy Scouts of America, in which the hope is expressed that Army and Navy men may take a greater interest in the organization. You ask my co-operation in bringing this to the attention of the Army with a view to encouraging active participation by a greater number of Army men.

The Scout program being non-military in character, it is true, as suggested in the resolution, that some Army officers have hesitated to take active part in scouting, fearing it might create misunderstanding; but I am sure, from the information you have presented to me, that making known this resolution, expressing the earnest desire of the leaders of the Boy Scout Movement for a greater degree of co-operation, will serve to remove this misunderstanding.

After carefully reviewing the activities of the Boy Scouts of America, their program, objectives, leadership, and actual accomplishments, I do not hesitate to say that I should be very glad to see members of the Army everywhere take such active part in scouting as official duties and local conditions permit.

That the Boy Scout Movement has already recruited a group of over 130,000 men giving volunteer service in character-building and citizenship training, and that over 2,000,000 boys of America have been

helped by this program is a remarkable accomplishment. I feel that the work is one with which any soldier should be proud to be associated.

Such association would be of benefit in many ways. The leadership of boys develops qualities which aid in the leadership of men, and active Scout service would give valuable experience to many of our officers which they might not otherwise get in time of peace. Moreover, the responsibility of setting an example to boys who have adopted a standard as high as that expressed in the Scout oath and law must react on the leader in a manner entirely to his benefit and to that of those with whom he associates.

Having kept in close touch with the work of the Boy Scouts, I thoroughly approve of its object for the good it does the boy; and, further, I approve of it as a soldier for the good it does to those who may be called upon to serve as our future defenders; and, finally, as an American citizen, I approve of it for the training it gives in preparing the boy to be a worthy citizen of his country.

I feel that it is a distinct recognition of the high qualifications of Army men to be asked to participate in a movement which has accomplished so much for the youth of the land and which has so much of promise for the future.

The Secretary of War, with whom I have discussed the matter, joins me in hoping you may find many Army men who will appreciate and take advantage of this opportunity to become useful workers in a great undertaking.

Very sincerely yours,
(Signed)

JOHN J. PERSHING.

SCREW-WORMS IN FISTULOUS WITHERS

By Captain R. V. Morledge, U. S. Army, Retired

THE FOLLOWING may be of interest to some cavalymen and to the research branch of the Veterinary Corps:

In October, 1920, the 12th Cavalry made a march from Del Rio, Texas, to Camp Travis. At that time I was commanding Troop F, 12th Cavalry. We drew a number of remounts at the Camp Travis Remount Depot and took them with us on the return journey.

The second day from Camp Travis I noticed a swelling on the withers of a large, good-looking remount. This was massaged regularly and the horse was not ridden, but the swelling increased in size; so that shortly after reaching Del Rio the veterinarian opened it, so as to give drainage to the abscess. Most cases of fistulous withers are tedious and discouraging to treat, and this was no exception. This horse received careful and scientific treatment from the regimental veterinarian, but when his withers appeared to be healing, pus would reform and the swelling would remain. In May, 1921, the discharge of pus had ceased, but the swelling still remained. About this time orders were received to turn all surplus animals out to pasture; so, thinking the grass and exercise would do this horse good, I turned him out with the others. I

visited him a week later and he appeared about the same as usual. The following week I visited him, and when within a hundred yards of him I could see that he had screw-worms—and he had them in large numbers; there was a hole in his withers the size of a walnut and blood was dripping to his hoof. He was immediately taken to the veterinary hospital, where the veterinarian said he did not know "whether to treat him or shoot him," but decided to treat him. The worms were destroyed by chloroform. The way that this horse recovered was remarkable. No pus formed; the wound was completely healed in two weeks, leaving only a noticeable scar. This horse was not used in ranks, as there was a close mate for him in the same troop which was herd-bound; so these two were used as the light wagon team.

I was ordered to Fort Riley in September, 1921. The regiment marched to Brownsville in October, and I have been informed that this horse made the trip in excellent condition. When I questioned the veterinarian as to the reason for this rapid healing, he stated it might be due to the fact that the screw-worms ate infected tissue before eating normal tissue, and they might have destroyed the infected parts completely, leaving a clean wound to heal. This horse was No. 8, Troop F, 12th Cavalry.

In the year 1909, when my family lived at Cumberland, Ohio, a well-to-do farmer, George Crow, of that place, owned a fine Morgan mare which had a bad case of fistulous withers; she had this abscess for more than two years. Mr. Crow would have killed this mare, but she was a great favorite of Mrs. Crow, who insisted that the mare be treated.

My family moved to Pennsylvania in 1909, and I had not heard of this animal until May, 1922, when I visited Mr. Crow. He showed me this same mare, and told me that at the time they had almost decided to kill her they found a large number of "maggots" in the wound, which they destroyed. The wound healed rapidly and the cure was permanent. She is now thirty years old and is serviceably sound and is used by Mr. Crow, who is now past eighty-five years old, for his personal transportation.

Screw-worms and maggots are closely related, one being the larva of the blow-fly, the other the larva of the common house-fly.

A TEXAS ENDURANCE RIDE PROPOSED

CAPTAIN H. M. GREGORY writes:

"Don't you think that there is room for a good long ride in Texas? We certainly have enough regiments there to assure good support from the cavalry. If rides or races are to be organized in various districts of the country, then our regiments should certainly find some conspicuous way to support them. Not so much would this be done because of the value of our support as because of the need of our showing appreciation of any public interest in horses.

"If officers in a regiment should secure prospects for an endurance

ride about a year before the ride and put them into preliminary training, they might select one or two candidates some time before the race and give them every encouragement to train to win. Of course, to be successful the plan would have to receive united support from the members of the regiment. Might not the regiment as a whole bear a large part of the expense incidental to the race itself and in return receive a good share of any cash prize won? We certainly need to work out some plan whereby a young and active officer may be able to get into things of this kind."

CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ACTIVITIES

IT IS INSPIRING to note the increasing activity of our R. O. T. C. units. In every section of the country they are popularizing the horse, the cavalry branch, and the R. O. T. C., and are doing a lot to insure that the R. O. T. C. is here to stay and to develop itself as a main prop and source of the Organized Reserves.

A press notice from Corvallis, Oregon, advises that four class teams and one officers' team have been playing the first schedule of polo games that has ever been played on the Oregon Agricultural College campus, and that a tournament with Stanford University is contemplated; also, the same college beat its nearest rival by more than 200 points in a recent rifle contest. At a gymkhana held May 11 the cavalry units won over the field artillery by a total score of 42 to 18. The program included races, relay races, and jumping. One event was the Gretna Green Race, in which three teams were entered, each consisting of man and girl from each unit. The men, mounted, start at starting point and lead saddle horse to point where girls are stationed. Each man dismounts, assists lady in mounting, and both ride to starting point holding hands.

On May 29, 4,700 spectators witnessed the Tenth Annual Military Tournament. A magnificent sham battle was staged, in which the cavalry participated along with the other units. The cavalry put on a mounted exhibition which was favorably commended.

From the University of Arizona came a telegram late in March announcing the victory of its polo team over Stanford by a score of 8 to 3.

Coming further east, interest centers upon the University of Illinois, where a great cavalry gymkhana was held April 28. This occasion was attended by nearly 1,000 spectators, and consisted of mounted pyramid races, Roman races, pony express races, mounted wrestling, and jumping.

In the same quarter another big R. O. T. C. unit gives evidence of the right cavalry spirit. On Memorial Day the corps of cadets at Michigan Agricultural College staged their first horse show for the benefit of their military band and the college polo association.

Saber Cuts, issued every once in a while by the military department of Norwich University, keeps the friends of that institution informed of the progress of polo, which has developed remarkably at Norwich during the past

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

few years. Norwich and V. M. I. were both represented by polo teams in the Intercollegiate Tournament held at Fort Hamilton during May. In the course of this tournament the Norwich Cadets defeated Harvard University 12 to 2 and lost to Yale a few days later by a score of 25 to 2.

The month of May also witnessed a fine horse show at Massachusetts Agricultural College, Amherst. A number of members of the State legislature were present to witness this demonstration of the work of the R. O. T. C. and the show was well attended by the people of the vicinity, who are becoming more and more interested in the military work at this institution. It is also worthy of comment that polo is being rapidly popularized throughout this region and a number of civilian polo clubs have been formed. The illustrations shown opposite page 370 illustrate the character of the Amherst "Aggie" horse show. Attention is invited to the particularly attractive lay-out of the show field, the preparation of which was skillfully managed under an appropriation of only \$300.00. The triple-bar jump is the performance of a cadet in the first year advance course cavalry unit.

"ALL the pure and noble arts of peace are founded on war; no great art ever rose on earth but among a nation of soldiers. . . . There is no great art possible to a nation but that which is based on battle. . . . When I tell you that war is the foundation of all the arts, I mean also that it is the foundation of all the higher virtues and faculties of men. It is very strange to me to discover this, and very dreadful; but I saw it to be quite an undeniable fact. The common notion that peace and the virtues of civil life flourished together I found to be wholly untenable. Peace and the vices of civil life only flourish together. We talk of peace and learning, of peace and plenty, and of peace and civilization; but I found that those were not the words which the Muse of History coupled together; that on her lips the words were peace and sensuality, peace and selfishness, peace and death. I found, in brief, that all great nations learned their truth of word, and strength of thought, in war; that they were nourished in war, and wasted by peace; taught by war, and deceived by peace; trained by war, and betrayed by peace; in a word, that they were born in war, and expired in peace."—*John Ruskin*.

(From Ruskin's address entitled "The Crown of the Wild Olive," delivered at the Royal Military Academy at Woolwich, in 1866.)

New Books Reviewed

THE FRONTIER TRAIL, OR FROM COWBOY TO COLONEL: A narrative of forty-three years in the Old West as cattleman, Indian fighter, and army officer. By Colonel Homer W. Wheeler, U. S. Army, Retired. Times-Mirror Press, Los Angeles, Calif., 1923. 21 illustrations, 334 pages. (Price, \$3.00.)

It seems entirely appropriate that this interesting personal narrative of the experiences of a cavalry officer on the plains of the great West a generation ago should be noticed in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*.

Our old cavalrymen, a majority of whom are now retired, will find many chapters intensely interesting, especially in those where their trail has crossed that of Lieutenant Wheeler.

We speak of him as *Lieutenant* with a purpose, for Wheeler was forty-five years of age when he attained his captaincy in 1893, after nearly eighteen years in the grade of first Lieutenant, during which period most of his hazardous service was performed, after the perusal of which the reader must conclude that this particular lieutenant fairly earned his double bars.

In fact he had earned his original appointment as second lieutenant through his valuable services as a civilian volunteer on sundry scouts, the last being in the engagement of Sappa Creek, Kans., in April, 1875, where his gallantry attracted the attention of army officers to such an extent that they recommended him for a commission, and the first that Wheeler knew of this was the receipt in the mail of an envelope addressed to Second Lieutenant Homer W. Wheeler, 5th Cavalry, inclosing his appointment.

This narrative throws interesting and valuable side lights on many noted characters whose names on the plains a generation ago were household words. Obscure features of several important engagements with Indians are likewise cleared up.

Colonel Wheeler, like all of his contemporaries in the service, has a strong admiration for the Indian character, his faith in which is amply justified by his splendid work in training an Indian troop.

To those interested in the Indian question, as well as the work performed by our cavalry in the development of the Great West "The Frontier Trail" is cordially recommended.—*Reviewed by Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. A., Retired.*

OPERATIONS OF THE 29TH DIVISION. Compiled by Major W. S. Bowen, C. A. C. The Coast Artillery Journal, Fort Monroe, Va., 1923. 6 x 9¼, 410 pages. (Price, \$1.25.)

This volume, which is a compilation of official battle reports, orders, and messages, is a splendid source book for the military student.

In addition to the reports of all the units, from that of the division commander down to and including those of all the platoon commanders, this book contains the messages sent from and received at division headquarters, the army and division field orders, and a specially prepared 1/20,000 French *Plan Directeur* which embraces the front occupied by the 29th Division.

In many of the reports officers rendering them have included instructive comments upon the operation, tactics, equipment, etc. The book is unique and reflects credit upon its compiler and publishers.

PRINCIPLES OF COMBAT. By Major R. E. Jones, Infantry. Riker's, Booksellers, Des Moines, Iowa. (Price, \$1.00.)

The reader will consume it in an hour. He will find it full of the ideas with which he is familiar and with which he is in full accord. The need of discipline, the means of securing

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

it, behavior toward superior, toward subordinates, military efficiency—all these are matters of common consideration. And there is nothing startling or novel or radical in Major Jones's presentation. But there is a little of genius in his manner of marshaling these thoughts and—in direct and convincing sequence and words—"driving them home." It is a helpful little book for any commander, for any commander's helper, for any commander's subordinate. He will find its perusal an hour of considerable profit.

General Holbrook says regarding it:

"I have taken great pleasure in reading this book from cover to cover. I am confident that it will be of interest and benefit to all into whose hands it may fall. The brief and clear-cut way in which you set forth many principles of command becomes all the more impressive by reason of the method adopted in stating them. Psychology is at last being recognized as a subject worthy of most careful study. You have well classified the knowledge requisite for command or leadership. If to this knowledge is added personal character, which establishes confidence, the leadership is assured. I am very glad indeed that you are thinking for the benefit of the service, and that you have given expression to your thoughts in a way to make them available to those ambitious to command."

HISTORIQUE DU CORPS DE CAVALERIE SORDET. By Colonel Boucherie. Charles Lavauzelle, Paris. 100 pages. (Price, \$1.90.)

The first day of the war this cavalry corps crossed the Belgian frontier and advanced to meet the enemy. The author claims that from August 5 to 15, east of the Meuse, it indicated the apparent enemy contour from hour to hour; it reported the march of the enemy armies, it warned of the battle of Dinant twenty-four hours ahead; the following days, on the Sambre, it re-established liaison with the Belgian army, kept contact with the enemy armies between Namur and Louvain, and covered and afforded intelligence to the 5th Army.

On the left wing of the 5th Army it assured liaison with the English Army and held for it the crossings of the Sambre. On the left wing of the English Army, from August 26 to 28, it rendered such brilliant services to the British, by counter-attacking the German columns which tried to envelop them, that both General Smith-Dorrien and Marshal French later declared that it had saved the English Army from a disaster.

During the retreat, continues the author, the cavalry corps covered and furnished information to the exterior wing of the 6th Army, with its exhausted divisions, while with its least-done-up troops a provisional division was constituted which maintained liaison with the English and stopped with tireless obstinacy the enemy advance guards at Pont-Sainte-Maxence and at Verberie.

After enabling the 6th Army to retreat in safety, and after having marched over 100 kilometers in 36 hours, the Sordet Cavalry Corps joined in to the offensive of the Marne and operated against the enemy's flank and communications.

In spite of insufficient material, lacking aviation, with a reduced complement of artillery, almost always without infantry supports, constantly in contact with the enemy, the Cavalry Corps fulfilled all the missions assigned to it.

This account is accompanied by sketches which enable the reader to follow the operations. It is believed that no English translation of this book is available.

WINNING AND WEARING SHOULDER STRAPS. By Lieutenant-Colonel Charles F. Martin, Cavalry, U. S. Army. Macmillan Co., 1918. 105 Pages. (Price, \$0.50.)

This is a study of the art of command. The main divisions of the treatise are "Military Efficiency," "Essential Military Qualities and Habits," "Discipline and Morale,"

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

"Leadership and Command." The work is expository in method and, being in no sense argumentative, is very readable and pleasing. A new subhead greets the reader every several pages, a delightful manner of keeping the interest. The style is almost conversational. The matter is presented in a very stimulating way, and this is, perhaps, the most valuable attribute of the book. One can hardly read it without some introspection and resolution to correct some of his deficiencies.

SPECIAL BOOK NOTICE

It is desired to remark upon the large demand which has been aroused for two books in which the Cavalry Association is especially interested: "The German Cavalry in Belgium and France 1914" and "A History of Cavalry." "The Desert Mounted Corps" has also been distributed in large numbers and is still in demand. In supplying these three books so extensively to the cavalry service the Association is supplying our officers with a remarkably complete ground-work of professional reading. The History of Cavalry covers the whole field very satisfactorily up to the late war and the history of the German Cavalry and the British Cavalry in Palestine afford a fairly extensive knowledge of the interesting and important cavalry work of the World War.

The Cavalry Association has a special interest in the first two mentioned books, as it is the publisher of the English edition of the first and has acquired the entire stock of and rights to the second. Its action in these directions has been amply justified by the large number of sales of these deservedly popular and very important cavalry books.

PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.



Foreign Military Journals

Charge of Cavalry Mass Stood Off by Infantry

The CAVALRY JOURNAL has presented to its readers many instances of successful cavalry action during the World War. It would be harmful not to present also the instances of unsuccessful cavalry employment, so that the mistakes which these illustrate may be impressed upon the mind and avoided by our own cavalry.

A striking example of the futile employment of cavalry in a mounted charge of masses against good infantry in position is afforded by an account in *Militär Wochenblatt, Merck, 1923 (Nr. 27)*, which is translated here in full.

ATTACK OF RUSSIAN CAVALRY MASSES AGAINST GERMAN INFANTRY

By Lieutenant a. D. v. Clausius

The Brusilov offensive had brought the Austrian Army of Puhallo to a stand west of Lutsk; German divisions were brought from all theaters of war to the Kovel region.

The attack was continued on the 2d. Night patrols reported strongly fortified enemy positions east of Polodes, which were exceedingly hard to distinguish in the high fields of grain. Artillery fire (including fire of mortars) co-operated efficiently, and the battalions, beginning from the right flank, worked their way forward. Toward noon the Russian front appeared to be well shaken. Individual Russian soldiers were seen emerging from the positions which were being pounded by the heavy artillery fire and seeking safety in the fields. The command, "Fix bayonets," was given, and there were no further halts. Foremost of all, Corporal Vogel, of the 83d Reserve Regiment, leader of a telephone squad, reached the Russian position ahead of his fellows, and with his coil of wire fetched 43 Russians out of a shelter.

As the pursuit was commencing the air report reached the battalion, "Strong Russian cavalry on the march from Lutsk toward Radomysl." Right in our sector! The maintenance of liaison in the high grain fields was very difficult. Above all, the artillery could not follow. About two kilometers in front of us lay an extensive stretch of woods, which we made haste to reach in order to reorganize our formations. We pressed at once through the woods, a matter of two kilometers, and reached the edge toward the reported enemy. Here the formations were re-established, ammunition brought up, the machine-guns assembled in the firing line, and the 2d Battalion of the 83d (reserve regiment) drawn up close behind the front line. Here we awaited the arrival of our artillery. Rifle pits were soon thrown up in the soft ground.

Beyond the foreground, which was hilly and covered with high crops, small mounted groups and wagon columns could be seen in the distance, apparently moving hither and thither without any design. Then out of a wood lying half left from us came several lines of advancing infantry, which upon receiving our fire withdrew again into the wood. The utmost attention was aroused; distances were estimated to points in front; the assembled 16 machine-guns were all ready to open fire; observers in the tree-tops had good fields of view. Unfortunately, an observer from the artillery reached us with the information that the batteries were still in march. About 6 o'clock of the afternoon an observer reported, "The Russian cavalry is riding toward us in strong masses."

Shortly after, the approaching lines could be made out indistinctly in the high grain. The Russian cavalry, in attacking, lean their bodies forward upon their horses' necks, covered with unusually thick manes, so that the rider is scarcely to be distinguished.

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

At about 1,000 meters an intense rifle and machine-gun fire was opened upon this far-sung charging mass, eight lines deep, with sights set at 700. At 600 yards the attack broke up. At first, single troopers, then large bodies, broke to the side and then to the rear, carrying the last lines back with them. In spite of the heavy, well-directed fire, small detachments (of the strength of a platoon) approached us at top speed, which, as they reached our immediate front, were discovered to be without riders, who may have been shot down or have gotten away.

The charge was brilliantly ridden. The great masses of cavalry appeared suddenly and came in an extended gallop, utilizing by extraordinarily skillful maneuvers the cover afforded by the strongly undulating ground, advancing toward our lines with wonderful fearlessness. Our men sprang out of their shelter trenches with enthusiasm and shot at the approaching wave of horsemen. Some shot standing, others kneeling. Only on the left flank of the 1st Battalion of the 83d did the cavalry succeed in discovering a gap and getting through. In the lead a Russian colonel—apparently the commander of the regiment—stormed through the gap, saber swinging high, making a turn in the woods in order to roll up our line, which rested part on the edge of the woods and part in front of it. With his sixty or so horsemen he got as far as a farm lying in front of the woods and held by half a platoon of the 1st Battalion. The platoon commander, Lieutenant D. R. Linke, recognized the danger in time and executed a wheel. Lieutenant Linke tried to shoot down the onrushing Russian colonel with his own carbine, but the carbine missed fire. However, in the same moment a non-commissioned officer, standing near him, brought the brave colonel down from his horse dead, so that he fell against the platoon leader. The cavalymen turned about and only a few succeeded in making the gap. The regimental staff, which throughout the attack had remained close behind the front without any cover, upon the telephone report from the 1st Battalion of the situation on its right flank, had moved the battle headquarters speedily to the position of the regimental reserve, and so was able to meet a sudden surprise attack with superior strength.

According to the declaration of a captain, shot down close in front of our lines, 12 Russian regiments received the command to break through our front by a charge. It cannot be ascertained if all the regiments actually charged. In any case, this is the only instance in the course of the whole war of a charge of strong cavalry masses on a large scale. Thanks to excellent leadership and the calm and steadiness of every man, it was brilliantly stood off and the Russian attempt to break through baffled. The whole incident was kaleidoscopic. Like an apparition, it had come and disappeared. Jubilant shouts arose along the lines. By the report of the wounded—and intoxicated—captain of horse, the troops designated for the attack had been freely provided with French cognac, and were put to the charge with the information that they were attacking Austrian troops. When the captain recognized the spiked German helmets, however, he realized that the charge was bound to fail.

The charging force was the so-called Trans-Amur Border Cavalry Corps, which had just arrived at the Russian western front, after a march of three months, from eastern Asia, where it had been raised in the spring of 1916, to be elite troops in the expected break through. And they served in this manner on June 2, 1916, when they succeeded in breaking through the Austrian position. The troops were equipped with lance and saber, in addition to bayonets designed to fix to 6-millimeter carbines, which the front rank fired during the charge. It is interesting to note that in the case of the riderless horses that penetrated our line, the large part, even in spite of the most severe gunshot wounds—in breast and belly—kept the gait of the charge and held together, passing through our line in the same instant. Great heaps of dead riders and horses lay in our front; a number of horses, part of them wounded, were caught up in the woods behind us.

The regiment suffered the following losses in this engagement: 15 dead, 83 wounded.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

We captured one officer, 250 men, one machine-gun, about 60 useful horses, and a mass of horse equipment, arms, and ammunition.

Sixth Cavalry Brigade in the Battle of Shaikh Saad

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, January, 1923.

In this number appears an account of the Battle of Shaikh Saad, an incident of the campaign in Mesopotamia in 1915-1916. The troops engaged included the 6th Cavalry Brigade and the 16th Cavalry Regiment, and the operations of the cavalry throughout the course of the attempt to relieve the British troops besieged in Kut-el-Amara are given in some detail.

In this same number is an interesting article by General Androski, former commandant of the Russian Staff College, on the possibilities of conflict between America and Japan, with some shrewd observations on comparative available forces and probable trend of operations. It is of interest to note that the author concludes that the Washington Conference on Limitation of Armaments, which was in progress while this article was written, represents a clever diplomatic stroke, by which America covers her present inadequate preparation by arranging for a continuance of the *status quo* in the Pacific.

For students of the cavalry work in the final Balkan campaign in 1918, an article by Major Ponsonby, on "The Final Phase of the War in the Balkans," furnishes an excellent account of the operations on this front as a basic setting for such study, although very little reference is made in this article to that cavalry work.

In an article covering the examination for admission to staff college, the following paragraph is noted:

"It is well to begin the more or less detailed study of campaigns now, and the following campaigns are suggested:

"1914-18, in France (especially first two months and last four months).

"1915-18—Mesopotamia.

"1915-18—Palestine

"1806—Ulm.

"1806—Jena.

"1815—Waterloo.

"1861-64—Shenandoah Valley."

It is interesting to note that the war of movement in France is emphasized, and that the interesting campaigns in Palestine and Mesopotamia are included in so short a list; also that although the Franco-Prussian War and Russo-Japanese War are omitted, the American Civil War comes in for a place. Incidentally, it may be remarked that there is an abundance of cavalry history included in these several campaigns.

Major C. D. Noyes contributes an interesting brief study on "Characteristics of Great Leaders."

Where Cavalry Intelligence Was Not Utilized and Need of Cavalry Was Felt

Revue Militaire Générale, October, 1922.

In an interesting and detailed account of a meeting engagement at Neufchâteau, August 22, 1914, which continues through the numbers for September, October, November, and December, this comment on the cavalry is included:

"This battle was a tactical surprise in all the force of the term.

"Yet our 4th Cavalry Division had fulfilled its reconnaissance mission in this region. It had reported enemy forces in the neighborhood of Neufchâteau; it had even reported on August 21 that the crest to the east of Petitvoir was strongly occupied. But the battle was fully joined before the information was transmitted to General Goulet. The mixed brigade fulfilled its rôle. It marched upon the enemy which it was ordered to attack, but which, relying on official intelligence, it believed to be still at a distance. Its

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

dispositions were judiciously made, in conformity to the orders received and to the regulations—and the column was brutally crushed by the enemy masses.

"What was at fault was the service of security. Twenty-five poorly instructed and poorly mounted reserve cavalymen proved to be not only incapable of providing for a mixed brigade in march the zone of protection of a dozen kilometers, absolutely necessary to secure its advance guard against the enemy field artillery, but even incapable of keeping the liaison with neighboring units."

In the 14th chapter of his continuing discussion of the French doctrine of war, "Lucius" holds that while cavalry must, in the future as in the past, precede the large units and indicate the apparent contour of the enemy line and determine his flanks, the cavalry, in spite of its increase in fire power and other means, will not be able to penetrate behind this "contour," and cannot assure that this line of fire is not merely a simple screen, without strength, designed to conceal the enemy dispositions. To penetrate this curtain, infantry and artillery will be required.

Revue Militaire Générale, December, 1922.

By General Rostovtzeff an account of the Red Army of Russia. He discounts the value of the army strength figure, cited at about 700,000. He says Toukhatchevskii characterizes the Red Army thus: "Everywhere there is slovenliness, negligence, indiscipline." Toukhatchevskii was formerly commander-in-chief of the western front and is now Director of the Academy of Workmen and Peasants of the General Staff. One does not gather from this article that the Red Army will be likely to figure largely in the political course of Europe or of the Near East.

Divisional Cavalry

In the concluding remarks on the hotly contested battle of Neufchâteau, in this number, Commandant Grasset urges that "it is indispensable to assign sufficient elements of security troops to columns in order that they may protect themselves by their own means. Without doubt, two or three squadrons, vigorously commanded and well mounted, are necessary for a division or mixed brigade."

Usefulness of Cavalry

"The rôle of cavalry in battle has changed less than one would believe," says "Lucius," in his chapter on the new regulations which is contained in this number; "in any case, the cavalry is far from having failed, as is so often stated. It is, in fact, the arm *par excellence* of exploitation of success, and it has demonstrated this: as in the work of the Marwitz cavalry in Flanders in 1914, the Schmettow corps in Roumania in 1916, the British cavalry in Palestine, and the French cavalry on the Saloniki front in 1918. If, on our (French) front, it was not employed on this mission, that is either because it was prevented by its exhaustion, as at the Battle of the Marne, in 1914, or because the breaches in the enemy line were insufficient to afford passage to the cavalry.

"However, in continuation of a certain number of break-through offensives, cavalry units would have been able to play an important rôle had they been thrown into the breach created, as, for example, at Verdun (February 24, 1916), on the Somme (July 4, 1916), in Picardy (March 24, 1918), on the Aisne (May 28, 1918).

"It is, therefore, very reasonable that our 'Instructions' have not ceased throughout the war to consider the rôle properly played by cavalry in the phase of exploitation. Now, in order to fill this rôle, this arm must keep its distinctive qualities—mobility and speed. These same qualities permitted it to give the greatest service in the defensive phase of the spring of 1918 in covering the breaches made by the Germans on the 24th of March and the 28th of May. It is necessary to keep these qualities, at whatever cost, and not to reduce the maneuvering capacity of cavalry on the pretext of augmenting its fire power. With the armament with which our cavalry was equipped at the end of the war, it was fitted to fight on foot and could, nevertheless, be maneuvered with all the rapidity necessary, and could even fight mounted. It is not a question of transforming it into mounted infantry. Besides, in open warfare, it is quite as useful as ever, while

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

if the occasions for its use in position warfare are less frequent, on that day which sees the need for it, nothing can replace it.

"The Germans lost sight of that fact. They sacrificed their cavalry to the necessities of position warfare and the critical need for effectives. Their cavalry adopted progressively the organization and methods of infantry combat and lost its own distinctive qualities. When the day arrived when it should have been used, in the great battles of the spring of 1918, it no longer existed as cavalry. The voluminous instructions of Ludendorff for the offensive of 1918 say not a word of the rôle of the cavalry. At that time the German army had only three cavalry divisions still mounted, and they were on the Eastern front.

"Let us maintain a spirited cavalry—fast, animated with offensive spirit, and able to act, according to circumstances, either on foot or mounted."

It is of interest to note that this French opinion (which seems to be a pronouncement of some authority, since this study by "Lucius" has been running through more than a dozen numbers of *Revue Militaire Générale*) is considerably at variance with the trend of French thought upon and modification of cavalry during the first four years following the war. It is difficult to reconcile this author's "cavalry policy" with the present French organization, equipment, and cavalry training, which has stressed *puissance des feux* above everything.

Revue Militaire Générale, February, 1923.

Cavalrymen will find a stirring narrative in this number, entitled "*Comment Perit le 20^e Chasseurs a Cheval*." This is an account of the manner in which this fated regiment acted as cavalry escort to a mixed brigade which, after the evacuation of Lille, was ordered on the rather desperate mission of re-establishing the French grip on that city pending the arrival of the British. The country to be traversed was full of German mounted patrols and larger advance units, with which the Chasseur squadrons had some bloody encounters. A portion of the brigade and some of the cavalry penetrated into Lille and were besieged there. A remnant were forced to surrender upon the exhaustion of ammunition, but only after this devoted force had held up 60,000 German troops for two days.

The Battle of Lodz

The student of the battles of the World War will find one of the most interesting of them described in considerable detail in this number. The Battle of Lodz, with first the Russians and then the Germans nearly caught in the enemy's enveloping maneuver, has been long considered an illuminating study. Its complexities are largely dissipated by this account, of which the most serious defect is lack of adequate maps and diagrams, and a minor fault is the loose fashion of referring by similar abbreviations to organizations of different degrees.

As the Germans used both Frommel's and Richthofen's Cavalry Corps, five cavalry divisions altogether, in the course of this battle, and the Russians got Novikoff's Cavalry Corps engaged before it was over, the study of this operation is of special interest to cavalrymen.

At the outset, Richthofen marched his cavalry corps in between two infantry corps, overcame the slight resistance met, and succeeded in getting in rear of a Russian Army Corps. Count Egon von Schmettow, commanding the 6th Cavalry Division, decided to make a night attack on the town of Kutno with his division. He penetrated into the place from several sides and got possession after desperate street fighting. In the course of which the division took 1,200 prisoners. Then at daybreak the same division continued its course in rear of the enemy, and seven miles east of Kutno the advance-guard squadron captured the automobile of the civil governor of Warsaw, whom it sent back under escort to Thorn. This turning movement of the cavalry alarmed the Russian infantry and they retreated.

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

On the Russian side the cavalry were active in hedging in the von Scheffer force of more than an army corps, which was so nearly caught in a bag and only extricated itself by the most obstinate efforts and miraculous luck. Novikoff's cavalry, on the south, was doing its best (evidently not good enough) against Richthofen's Corps, while to the north the advance guard of the Germans was hurled back by a charge of dragoons and Cossacks.

This account comprises 21 pages and is well worth the student's attention.

The Cavalry Journal (British), January, 1923.

The article entitled "Progress" is a pleasing dissertation on post-war cavalry. Among its several excellent points may be noted particularly a plea for better training in horse-mastership.

This number contains Chapter XXIV of Colonel Osborne's serial study of the operations of the mounted troops of the E. E. F. in Palestine. This chapter covers the pursuit of the Turkish armies after the break through by the coast, and the masterful maneuver by which the cavalry blocked the Turkish retreat.

A striking example of the work of a British cavalry brigade is presented in "The 9th Hodson's Horse at Cambrai, 1917."

Other interesting articles in this number include "The Duke of Wellington's Charger, Copenhagen," an account of the cavalry in the Revolution of 1745 (which is described so entertainingly in *Waverley*), a history of the development of standards and guidons, and an installment of a serial entitled "First Stages of the Training of the Young Horse to Jump."

Cavalry Journal (British), April, 1923.

The leading article in this number is a noteworthy chapter in the cavalry history of the World War. It deals with the final phase of the operations in Mesopotamia and illustrates a typical and important use of cavalry, the cutting off of the enemy's retreat. In the last days of October, 1918, the Turks made a strong stand on a range of hills that crosses the river Euphrates 70 miles or so below Mosul. While the British infantry stormed the position in front, two cavalry brigades, by difficult marches through the mountains and over almost waterless country, got in upon the enemy's rear, bagged the whole army as it was pushed along by the infantry, and captured a large force of reinforcements before a juncture was effected. Both obstinate dismounted occupation of a position and mounted charges characterized the combat.

"Standards and Guidons" is concluded in this number.

Colonel Osborne's serial account of the "Operations of the Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force" describes in this number the results attending immediately upon the September, 1918, offensive and the drive of the cavalry up the coast into the Turkish rear. With all means and all possible energy, the exploitation of the success was developed to the utmost. It is particularly interesting to note that the cavalry which got across the enemy's line of retreat were not permitted to sit tight and oppose a passive resistance to his further retreat. The cavalry was led vigorously against the enemy's leading troops and thus made the annihilation of the enemy more sure and rapid. This contribution includes a highly interesting account of the attack of the 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade, just at dawn, upon a strong and obstinate Turkish garrison at Semakh, on Lake Tiberias. A mounted charge in the dark was a remarkable feature of this action, which is made more instructive by means of an excellent sketch map.

Colonel E. D. Miller contributes a few points on the selection of polo ponies. Major Paterson's article on training young horses in jumping is concluded in this number.

Polo

NO POLO FIELD

I've read the Scriptures, Old and New,
The Hymnals, Psalms, and just a few
Of the world's best works on creed.
But not one word of cheer I find
For the day when I must leave behind
Boots, spurs, saddle, and steed.

I read of pearly gates and wings,
Of golden streets and many things
That may appeal to you;
Of snow-white robes and halos bright,
Of angels, harps, and wondrous light,
And nothing much to do.

But not a word can my search yield
Of stable, horse, or polo field,
In Heaven or in Hell.
And horsemen will not care to go
Where they can't ride and play polo;
Oblivion is as well.

Across the Styx one prophet looks
And sees green fields and shaded brooks,
But hopes are soon repealed;
For another writer says he thinks
Those fields so green are just golf links,
And not a polo field.

So I reject the white man's creed,
And the more of his beliefs I read,
The less I seek his goal.
Much more the savage Red Man knows
Of God, and where the spirit goes,
And gives his horse a soul.

The Happy Hunting Ground for me,
For on those plains there'll surely be
A place to hit the ball.
With boots and spurs and saddle clean,
With whippy cane and pony keen,
I'm waiting for the call.

—F. B. H. in "Saber Cuts."

POLO

THE POLO PONY—CARE OF THE FEET AND SHOEING

By Frank G. Churchill, Senior Instructor in Horseshoeing, the Cavalry School

This subject is an important one and one that is inclined to be overlooked by most horsemen.

The polo pony requires considerable speed, stamina, and, most of all, sound feet and strong leg tendons.

The shoeing practiced on the polo pony is with the object of attaining the greatest assistance to the pony in speed, starting and stopping. Little consideration is given to the horn structures of the hoof. The average polo shoe (rib steel) is not of sufficient weight and strength to properly protect the foot, resulting in a shattered condition of the wall of the hoof and frequently contraction of the heels to a greater or less degree, following a season's work. Too frequently this same method of shoeing is continued throughout the year, to the detriment of the feet.

During the playing season the following points with reference to shoeing should be noted:

Preparation of the feet: The feet should not be trimmed as low as for normal shoeing.

Commercial rib steel makes a very desirable material for the shoes. It can be procured in the bar form or in the finished shoe. The rib or rim gives the pony a firm footing, which enables him to make quick starts and stops and sharp turns without slipping.

For the front feet it is desirable to make a light bar for this style of shoe, as the material is very light and the strain on the shoes and nails during severe polo-work is liable to spring or spread the heels of the shoe off of the buttress and shatter or weaken the wall to which the shoe is attached. The bar may be made very thin and light by removing the rim. Frog pressure on the bar can be had if desired. By leaving the rim on the bar a very decided grip is obtained for use in stopping the pony suddenly.

The shoe may be turned with the rim either on the outside or inside edge of the shoe. Personally, I prefer the shoe with the rim on the outside of the shoe, for by this method the weight is more evenly distributed on the wall of the foot, and the footing is made more secure by having a larger ground surface to the shoe. With the rim on the inside edge, the greatest weight falls over the white line and outer border of the sole; the ground surface of the shoe is small in circumference and induces a lateral rocking of the foot as well as a too rapid breaking over of the foot at the toe; the pony is liable to be thrown off his gait and to stumble or even fall.

For the hind feet: An open shoe (rim on the outside of shoe) with turned heel calks, the calks slightly inclined to the front, instead of being perpendicular to the shoe; the calks about three-eighths of an inch in height.

When the outside season is over, examine all feet very carefully and remove all shoes from ponies that can stand it. There are sure to be contracted heels. The ponies having sound feet should go without shoes the entire off season if they do not get tender. The others should go barefoot for about one month and then be shod—with a bar shoe if frog is healthy and contraction slight, with a bevel-edge shoe if frog is not healthy and heels much contracted. It may be necessary with some of the worst feet to shoe with that shoe immediately. Ponies used for indoor polo will play either barefoot or with service shoe. Calks may be necessary behind, according to footing.

It is my contention that no other shoe will equal the results obtained (in a given time) by the proper use of the bevel-edge shoe.

The bevel-edge shoe: This shoe is an open shoe (plain pattern), fitted as the normal shoe, with exception of a little greater expansion at the heels, and the bearing surface of the shoe, from the bend of the quarter to the point of the heel, beveled toward the

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

outer edge, starting with a minimum amount of bevel at the quarter and increasing the bevel as the heel is approached. When using this shoe, great care should be exercised in preparing the foot; it is not a difficult job but a painstaking one. The feet must be kept soft. Watch closely the expansion of the heels, as with this style of shoe the heels of the foot spread rapidly and necessitate changing the shoes at short intervals.

Preparation of the feet: First procure a level bearing surface (normal preparation), then bevel the inner bearing surface of the wall from and including the buttress to a point near the bend of the quarter, distance to correspond with bevel on the shoe. The latter part of the preparation should be performed after the shoe is fitted to the outline of the foot. The bevel on the bearing surface of the foot is the reverse to the bevel on the shoe, so that the quarters and heels of the foot are resting upon the outward beveled surface of the shoe.

Principle of this method: The quarters and heels of the foot, resting upon the beveled surface of the shoe, are constantly being forced outward by the weight of the animal upon the foot when standing or in motion. The spreading of the heels permits of greater freedom of the horny frog in developing and acquiring its normal size and condition.

This shoe is of my own design and I have used it successfully for the past fifteen years.

The weight of shoes used during the off season, irrespective of design, should be of a much heavier pattern than those used during the playing season. The additional weight affords greater protection to the feet against concussion, and with slow work strengthens the tendons by carrying the additional weight.

By this method it is believed that the polo pony will show greater speed and have stronger tendons, with feet in better condition to follow the game throughout the season.

A COMPLIMENT TO THE ELEVENTH CAVALRY POLO TEAM

The following letter was addressed April 23 to the commanding officer of the 11th Cavalry, Presidio of Monterey, California, by the chairman of the Pacific Coast Polo Subcommittee:

MY DEAR SIR:

I wish to congratulate you upon the fine sportsmanship, the excellent polo, and the exceptionally good turnout of the team recently playing in the Pacific Coast Championships from the 11th Cavalry, captained by Major Chandler.

They made many friends for the army all up and down the coast, as well as many converts to the idea that polo is excellent officer training.

It is to be regretted that your team has such serious illness in its mounts early in the season. I have no doubt that if it had not been for that they would have made a much better showing.

I have been personally very much interested in army polo, and if there is ever anything that comes to your attention in which I can be of assistance in promoting it, I trust you will let me know.

Yours very truly,
(Signed)

JOHN B. MILLER,
Chairman, Pacific Coast Subcommittee.

TWELFTH CAVALRY

Interest in polo has not waned during the quarter, in spite of the target season and the fact that three officers have gone to the cavalry rifle tryout at Des Moines. From eight to ten officers have been turning out for practice three or four times a week at Fort Brown, where the players have been receiving some splendid instruction from Captain Earl K. Breen, formerly of the Wild Horse Team, which included Major Dudley Edenborough, of the Black Horse Team, and Captain Philip Messenger of Scot's Greys. Captain

POLO,

Breen, who is now residing at Brownsville, is teaching the Buckmaster system used by the English international team. Captain Messenger will visit Captain Breen shortly, and will also assist the Fort Brown players while here. At Fort Ringgold the cavalry officers have been turning out for a game every Sunday morning.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

Polo activities are progressing in spite of the fact that range work is interfering to some extent. Thirty-three horses, some only partially trained, are in the polo stables, and an effort is being made to increase this number.

Round robins are being played each Sunday afternoon before good crowds from the post and from Cheyenne.

Plans are now under way for a tournament, to be held from June 30 to July 8, with four or five teams participating, and it is expected that there will be some good polo during the encampment of the Wyoming, Utah, and Idaho National Guard cavalry regiments during July.

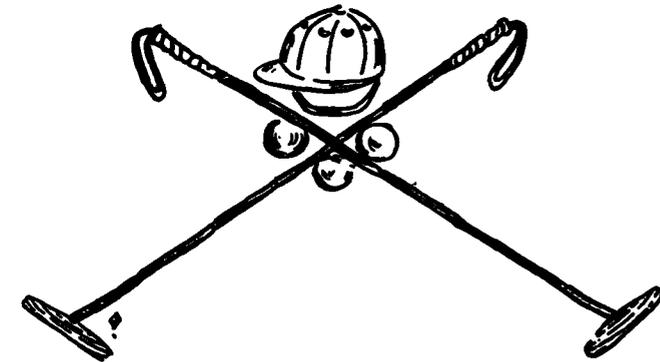
The regimental team had to regret to fully decline an invitation to the tournament to be held in Boise, Idaho, during May.

BROADMOOR

Polo at Broadmoor promises big this season. The army will probably be well represented by teams from Fort Riley, Fort Leavenworth, Fort Sill, and Fort D. A. Russell. Denver poloists will be represented by Major C. F. Cusack, J. F. Campion, R. D. Brooks, Ira B. Humphreys, and V. Z. Reed. Colonel W. P. Draper, of Hopedale, Mass., who recently completed a course at the Cavalry School, is expected to attend and bring with him a string of fifteen ponies.

POLO PONIES IN THE PHILIPPINES

There is a lack of ponies in the islands. The 26th Cavalry, while well mounted at present, are riding old horses and the next two years will see a great change in their string, since they have very little raw material from which to develop new ponies. There seems to be an impression in the States that good ponies are numerous in the Islands, and many officers on being ordered to the Philippines have been discouraged from bringing ponies. This erroneous impression should be corrected and officers should be encouraged to bring good horses where possible.



The Cavalry School

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier-General Edward L. King, Commandant

Brigadier-General Mallin Craig has been relieved as commandant of the Cavalry School and assigned to command of the Coast Artillery District of Manila, P. I., and Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins has been relieved as assistant commandant and assigned as colonel of the 3d Cavalry, to command Fort Myer, Va. Both of these officers carry with them the best wishes and sincere admiration of the Cavalry School for their high personal and professional attainments. Brigadier-General Edward L. King is the new commandant; the new assistant commandant has not yet been appointed.

Major-General Patrick, Chief of the U. S. Air Service, and Brigadier-General Dorey, of the 7th Corps Area, visited the post in April and inspected the air activities, which are commanded by Major C. L. Tinker. Major-General Helmick, Inspector General of the Army, visited the post in May.

The flying field at Fort Riley has been designated Marshal Field in honor of Colonel F. C. Marshall, of the office of the Chief of Cavalry, who lost his life in an airplane accident last December while on a flight from San Diego, Calif., to Nogales, Ariz. Next year will probably see a battalion of field artillery stationed at Fort Riley, which, with the Observation Air Service Squadron and the company of Mounted Engineers already here, will allow the solution of combined problems with those branches of the service most likely to serve with cavalry in war.

Several riding exhibitions were given during the past quarter, among them being two jumping competitions by six officers from each platoon of the Troop Officers Class on selected jumpers, a remount competition by four officers from each platoon of the Troop Officers Class, and a jumping exhibition of the Second Year Class and one of the Advanced Class.

The Fort Riley Polo Team, consisting of Captain Gerhardt, Major Patton, Major J. K. Brown, and Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown, has recently played two games with Fort Leavenworth, both of which Fort Riley won—the first, played at Fort Leavenworth, by the score of 9 to 3, and the second, played at Fort Riley, by the score of 9 to 5. A polo ball was given on May 26 for the benefit of the polo fund. An amateur show, the Riley Revue, was given by the Troop Officers Class for the benefit of the *Rasp*.

Major-General Holbrook, the Chief of Cavalry, was present at Fort Riley for the graduation exercises and was greatly interested, especially in the equestrian events. During the week dances were given by both the Advanced Class and the Troop Officers Class.

The first event of the graduation week was a contest in horseshoeing, contestants being required to inspect the shoeing of a number of horses against time, noting faults in shoeing and indicating those which should be classified as important and those as minor faults. The winner was Captain Holt; second, Major T. K. Brown.

The next event, which was held on Saturday morning, was a point-to-point race of about five miles over a flagged course, including obstacles of height and width. The contestants were required to start at intervals and ride the course without watches. Points were deducted for refusals and run-outs at the obstacles, and for finishing the course either over or under a fixed time. This event was open to members of the Advanced Class only and was won by Major Nalle; second, Major Cowles. The afternoon event for the best schooled remount, open only to members of the Troop Officers Class, was won by Captain Baird; second, Captain Waters.

Monday morning was devoted to pistol and saber work. A squad competition was held between a selected squad from each of the four platoons of the Troop Officers Class, in which each squad was required to make three runs in close order at a line of overhead targets (3 shots) and three runs in extended order at a line of ground targets (3 shots). The competition was won by the squad from the 4th platoon, with a score of 94 hits out of a possible 148; second, the squad from the 1st platoon, with 91 hits. The same squads then competed in saber work, each member of each squad making one run over the qualification course, total scores of the eight men of each squad to count. This was won by the squad from the first platoon; second, the squad from the 4th platoon. Then followed a demonstration of a pistol and saber attack by a composite platoon, which was characterized by great dash and spirit and elicited the warm approval of the Chief of Cavalry. In the afternoon a jumping competition for members of the Advanced Class was won by Lieutenant-Colonel Turner; second, Major Garr. Following this a schooling event on trained horses and remounts, open to members of the Second Year Class only, was won by Captain Coe; second, Captain Padgett.

Tuesday morning the Platoon Cup, presented for individual excellence, over the regulation saber course against time, open to the 15 members of the Troop Officers Class who had made the 15 highest scores with the saber, was won by Captain Morris in the remarkable time of 58 seconds. Captain Hood was second. A combined pistol and saber event against time, in which the contestant was required to fire five shots at silhouette targets, take a jump, change magazines, fire five more shots at silhouettes, and attack several dummies with the saber, was won by Major Reese; second, Captain Stewart. In the afternoon the first phase of the Cavalry Pentathlon, a new event, was held. The contestants, numbering about 75, each one armed with a rifle, a polo stick, a polo ball, a pistol, and a slip of paper bearing his name, were marched to a squad of horses, chose horses at random, and at the command *Go*, mounted, rode about a mile to the polo field, knocked the balls the length of the field, rode a half mile to the rifle range, fired at bottles assigned to them until they broke them; then rode a half mile to a barrel, in which they dropped their names; then back to the pistol range, where it was necessary to hit other bottles, and finally to a finish point. This phase of the event, which was extremely exciting and brought forth much bold riding and not a few falls, was won by Captain Mandell; second Captain Ednie. The next night, after dark, the second phase was held. This consisted in indicating to the contestants, by map co-ordinates, the location of horses one-half mile away and of a finish point about three miles away. At the command *Go*, the contestants rushed to the horses, mounted, and raced to the finish. This phase was won by Captain Herman; second, Captain Ednie. By the system of scoring adopted, the whole event was won by Captain Ednie; second, Captain Mandell.

Wednesday morning a troop officers' jumping contest in the stadium was won by Captain Earnest; second, Captain Jones; and a second-year-class contest by Captain Davis; second, Captain Coe. Thursday morning a troop officers' jumping contest in the riding hall was won by Captain Colwell; second, Major Bradford; and in the afternoon the Remount Cup, for the best trained remount, including schooling and both indoor and outdoor jumping, was won by Captain Pattison; second, Captain Taylor.

Thursday night the night ride over an unknown course of 46 miles was held. With the idea of preventing racing over good roads, in an effort to beat Captain Gerhardt's remarkably fast time of last year, which was the avowed intention of every contestant, the course was laid over the sparsely settled country south of the river, the four control stations being situated at obscure points. One half of the contestants was sent over the course in one direction, the other half in the opposite direction. The night was dark, the network of roads extremely confusing, and the maps inaccurate. Only about 35 of the contestants finished, the winner turning up in Captain Jones, with Captain Cramer

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

in second place. The time was about six hours. It is safe to say that the average distance traveled was about 65 to 70 miles, although casualties and cases of exhaustion among the horses were practically negligible.

Saturday morning General Holbrook made an interesting talk, presented prizes and diplomas, and the school year was over. It is fitting to mention here with gratitude the great generosity of the citizens of Junction City in presenting cups each year for the various graduation events, which adds so greatly to the interest taken in them by the students.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

On April 1 the regiment commenced its regular target practice.

On April 3 and 6 the regimental commander held his annual tactical inspection of the command. An estimate of the comparative excellence of the rifle troops was compiled, with the following results: A, F, G, B, C, and E.

April 8, Major-General Robert L. Howze, Division Commander, and Major A. R. Chaffee, G-3, 1st Cavalry Division, arrived at Marfa and visited the outpost at Presidio, Texas, on April 9, and on the two following days inspected the command at Camp Marfa. His inspection was not confined to the tactical efficiency and appearance of the garrison, but included an inspection of stables, barracks, hospital, quartermaster activities, and other buildings of the post.

April 11 an elaborate luncheon was tendered General Howze by the Marfa Chamber of Commerce, all officers of the garrison and prominent citizens of Marfa attending. General Howze interested his audience by an outline of the anticipated training and concentration of the division.

April 20-21 the garrison was honored by a visit from Major-General Eli D. Helmick, Inspector General of the Army. General Helmick made a minute inspection of the general appearance, tactical and administrative efficiency of the regiment, and of all buildings and utilities at the post. He expressed himself as being well pleased with the appearance and progress of the command.

Major-General Mason M. Patrick, Chief of Air Service, visited the camp on April 13. Due to urgent matters which required the General's presence in El Paso, his stay here was of very short duration.

The social activities of the regiment have been somewhat curtailed during the past two months, due to target practice. Weekly informal hops are held at the "Black Hawk" open-air pavilion, an annex to the Officers' Club.

The regiment has had several new officers assigned during the quarter, including Colonel Le Roy Eitinge, who is to assume command upon the relief of the present regimental commander in the near future.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

The routine work of the regiment during the months of April and May consisted in demonstration work and instruction in marksmanship. Troop stables were used for gallery practice, and shooting was thus carried on regardless of weather conditions.

First National Bank

Junction City, Kansas

The only United States Depository for Disbursing Officers' Accounts adjacent to Fort Riley.

Over Thirty Years' Experience
with Army Accounts

The Bank of Courtesy and Service

OFFICERS

Thomas B. Kennedy, *President.*

James V. Humphrey, *Vice-President.*

O. O. Clark, *Vice-President.*

W. F. Miller, *Vice-Pres. and Cashier.*

E. J. Denver, *Assistant Cashier.*

The B. Rockwell Merchandise & Grain Co.

JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Established 1865.

Incorporated 1892.

WHOLESALE GROCERS

RETAIL GROCERS

Fresh Meats

Dry Goods

Women's Wear

Shoes

Luggage

Bargain Basement

Grain

57 YEARS' CONTINUOUS SERVICE
TO THE ARMY

EISENHOWER'S

622 North Washington St.
JUNCTION CITY, KANSAS

Drugs

Eastman Kodaks

Developing and Finishing

Fountain Service

Fine Candies

Perfumes

(Will always cash a check for a Cavalry Officer)

Announcement

BREAKING AND RIDING

By FILLIS

HAS JUST BEEN REPRINTED

\$7.50

Order from

The U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H St. N. W.

Washington, D. C.

Good Eats Cafe

607 N. Washington St.

Junction City, Kansas

The Junction Cafe which caters to

Army trade

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

April 9 to 25 the Pioneer Section, Staff Platoon Headquarter Troop, took part in a demonstration showing the erection of wire entanglements and single and double-lock bridges. A double-lock bridge 45 feet in length was constructed in fifty-two minutes and transportation passed over.

April 10 the Communications Platoon demonstrated a brigade radio net in operation.

April 18 Troop B gave a demonstration with war strength machine rifle platoon and on April 28 gave a horse show in East Riding Hall.

April 16 the entire regiment took part in an experiment in aerial observation, involving aerial photography, showing a troop acting as advance guard for a regiment and demonstrating comparative visibility, disregarding cover and with use of cover. The regiment was reviewed April 30 by Brigadier-General Edward L. King.

From May 4 to 8 Troop B and Headquarters Troop took part in May Day events in Manhattan, Kans. These troops pitched a model camp in the city park and took part in a street parade and maneuver with the R. O. T. C. units. A horse show was given the afternoon of May 7 in the Kansas State Agricultural College Stadium, which was witnessed by over five thousand spectators. Cups and cash prizes were donated by business men and the Chamber of Commerce of Manhattan, Kans. A noteworthy feature of this show, causing great excitement among the spectators, was the jumping by non-commissioned officers in McClellan saddles. Six men tied for first place, having cleared 4 feet 8 inches. The following note appeared in *The Manhattan Mercury*: "The general conduct of the soldiers also came in for a liberal amount of praise from the public and the various committees in charge of program. Each and every man conducted himself in a soldierly manner, and not one complaint against the presence of the troops was heard—a fact commendable and a credit to the 2d Cavalry to which unit the participating service men are attached."

The following demonstrations were given during May:

Squad, platoon, and troop in all phases of musketry training.

War strength troop in advance-guard work over varied ground, including combat.

Aerial observation problem, demonstrating use of panels and aerial route photographs.

The contents and packing of troop pack outfits (kitchen pack, picket line, and pannier and ration). These packs are specially designed for durability and ease in packing without employing diamond hitch.

Squadron in combined action against infantry.

May 19 the regiment was reviewed by General Eli A. Helmick, Inspector General, followed on May 21 by inspection of barracks and stables. The annual inspection of the entire regiment by Colonel Samuel McP. Rutherford, Inspector General, Sixth Corps Area, was made from May 19 to 22.

The Regimental Day was celebrated with a mounted field day the first days in June.

The list of events were as follows:

Class 1—Mounted tug of war.

Class 2—Best trained troopers' mount, privates.

Class 3—Privates' jumping.

Class 4—Best four-line team to escort wagon.

Class 5—Best trained troopers' mount, N. C. O.

Class 6—Non-commissioned officers' jumping.

Class 7—Best two-line team to light wagon.

Class 8—Officers' jumping (all officers in regiment entered).

Class 9—Open jumping, open to winners of first, second, third, and fourth places in classes 3 and 6.

Class 10—Mounted rescue race.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

THIRD CAVALRY—Headquarters and Second Squadron, Fort Myer, Virginia Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The annual Society Circus, for the benefit of the post athletic fund, was held on April 4. The feature event was the mounted drill given by 32 Washington debutantes—past, present, and future—under the command of Second Lieutenant William J. Crowe.

The squadron took part in the review for Major-General Henry T. Allen, April 13, at the Washington Monument grounds, given upon the occasion of General Allen's retirement.

As a part of a series of exhibitions given to the public by the various organizations comprising the District of Washington, on April 25 a platoon of Troop G, commanded by First Lieutenant David A. Taylor, demonstrated a combined mounted and dismounted attack against an enemy strong point and machine-gun nest.

The monthly post hop, held April 27, was in honor of Colonel and Mrs. Hawkins and Miss Nancy Hawkins. A number of the officers stationed in Washington were on hand to welcome them.

From May 15 to 19 every one's attention was centered on the National Capital Horse Show, either as an exhibitor or as a spectator. Captain Arthur P. Thayer on *Red Wing* and *Allemande*, Captain Charles Wharton on *Careless*, and First Lieutenant M. E. Jones on *Gaylord* were winners of one or more ribbons in the individual events, the latter winning the blue and a handsome cup in the heavy-weight charger class. Second Lieutenant H. C. Hine placed fourth in the endurance ride on *Baldy*, who also placed in the open jumping class. Private Patterson, Headquarters Troop, riding; Sergeant Patton, Troop G, on *Groucho*, scored in the same event. The Army Challenge Cup was won for the fourth time by a Fort Myer team. As the cup became the permanent possession of the post last year, we now have a leg on the new cup. The team which won was composed of Major C. P. George, 16th Field Artillery, on *Morgan*; Captain Charles Wharton on *Custer*, and First Lieutenant D. W. Sawtelle on *Guiscumont*.

May 19, Regimental Day, coming at the same time as the horse show, the memorial ceremony was held the following (Sunday) evening, when Chaplain W. R. Scott held a special service in the Service Club. The program consisted of an illustrated service on "The U. S. Army in Art and Story," "Third Cavalry Historic Scenes," "Army Hymns and Battle Songs," an address, "The Third Cavalry," and "Honors to the Regimental Colors."

The intertroop baseball series was won by Troop E, which is now contesting with the artillery winner for the post championship.

Track has also occupied the attention of the officers and men this spring. Two meets have been held on the post; the first, a cavalry meet, May 4, being won by Troop E with 67 points, while a week later, in the post meet, Headquarters Troop and Squadron Headquarters, combined, with 20½ points, finished third, the first two places going to the artillery.

May 26 the Fort Myer track team walked away with the District track and field championship with 68 points, while its nearest competitor, Fort Humphreys, made 47 points. Second Lieutenant F. R. Pitts, with first in the mile, second in the 880 yards, and third runner on the winning mile relay; Private Chavez, Troop E, first in the pole vault, and Private Sheppard, Troop E, first man on the relay team—were the point winners from the cavalry in this meet.

Polo has been in full swing since the middle of April, there being three full teams in action. Games are held frequently with the 1st Battalion, 16th Field Artillery, stationed at this post, and the War Department team in Washington.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

March 17 was Horse Show Day at Fort McIntosh. This show was one of the best held by the 4th Cavalry in many years. The 12th Cavalry contributed greatly to the success, as that regiment had entries in practically all events and carried off several prizes. In connection with the Horse Show, a polo tournament was held with the 12th Cavalry. Games were played on the 16th and 19th, with results as follows:

First game won by 12th Cavalry—score, 7 to 5.

Second game won by 4th Cavalry—score, 10 to 7.

Tournament won by 4th Cavalry—score, 15 to 14. Both games were hotly contested from start to finish and the winner of the tournament was not decided until the last stroke of the gong.

The Corps Area Commander, Major-General Lewis, inspected Fort McIntosh on April 6. General Eli Helmick, Inspector General, inspected the post on April 27.

During the months of April and May the entire time and attention of the 2d Squadron, Headquarters, and Service Troops was directed to the annual target season. The first relay of troops from Fort McIntosh completed their target practice on the 14th of May with highly satisfactory results. The second relay departed for the target range, 9 miles east of Fort McIntosh, on the 15th.

First Squadron—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

Major Robert M. Cheney, Commanding

March 6 the following places were won in the Second Division Horse Show by members of the squadron:

Officers' Individual Jumping: Second place, Lieutenant Henry I. Hodes. Third place, Lieutenant John I. Gregg.

Enlisted Men's Individual Jumping: Second place, Sergeant Arthur Power, Troop B. Third place, Private Elvin R. Crist, Troop C.

Championship Jumping: Third place, Lieutenant Henry I. Hodes.

Saber contest, for members of squadron only:

1st. Sergeant Anthony J. Chimelewski, Troop C.

2d. Private Oscar A. Dewaele, Hq. Det.

3d. Corporal Nelson Perry, Troop B.

April 10 a formal inspection of the squadron was made by Brigadier-General Benjamin A. Poore and Lieutenant-Colonel Daniel Van Voorhis, cavalry.

The squadron participated in the "Battle of Flowers" Parade in San Antonio on April 20 and was highly commended by Brigadier-General Dennis E. Nolan, commander of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston, for its fine appearance.

April 28 the squadron participated in a review of all troops of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston for Major-General E. A. Helmick. The squadron was inspected by General Helmick on April 30.

April 15 to 29 the following Cavalry Reserve Officers were attached to the squadron for active duty:

Major H. B. Rhodes, Dallas, Texas.

Captain Olin Culberson, Hillsboro, Texas.

First Lieutenant Everett E. Shaw, Oklahoma City, Okla.

Second Lieutenant J. C. Driver, Dallas, Texas.

At a squadron parade on May 3 a silver loving cup was presented to Troop A for having qualified the highest percentage of men at dismounted pistol firing.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

May 8 the squadron marched to Camp Bullis for its annual target practice. Rifle firing has been completed, with an average of 89 per cent qualified. Sergeant Weslie J. Reed, Troop B, made a total score of 336 on the record course, which beat by four points the range record held by Captain F. V. Berger, Quartermaster Corps.

Polo

San Antonio Polo Club annual polo tournament:

April 15—Headquarters, 8th Corps Area, 22; 1st Squadron, 17 (local handicap).

April 22—15th Field Artillery, 4; 1st Squadron, 11 (without handicap).

April 25—Second Division, 12; 1st Squadron, 9 (without handicap).

Two non-tournament games, played with the 15th Field Artillery in the latter part of April, resulted in scores of 13-6, 12-4, both in our favor.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel William D. Forsyth, Commanding

On May 28 Troop B returned to Fort Clark from the subpost of Camp R. E. L. Michie, at Del Rio, having been relieved by Troop C. Troop E returned to Fort Clark on May 30 from duty at the subpost of Camp Eagle Pass, having been relieved by Troop F. It has been reported that Camp R. E. L. Michie is to be abandoned, for which we are duly thankful, as it will give us one additional troop at Fort Clark.

The regiment is busily engaged mornings with target practice and in the afternoons with construction work, necessitated by the recent increase in the garrison of the Headquarters 1st Cavalry Brigade, Brigade Headquarters Troop, and the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron.

To date, four lettered troops and the two squadron detachments have completed record rifle firing and all qualified at least 80 per cent. Despite the large number of recruits received since last fall, we hope to qualify at least 80 per cent in all organizations.

Master Sergeant S. H. Middaugh, retired, who served in the regiment for twenty-seven years, is back with us again, engaged in writing the regimental history from the date of organization of the regiment to December 31, 1922. We hope to complete the work soon and to publish the history in book form.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel R. J. Fleming, Commanding

The regiment has been scattered in three different States for the summer training period—Troop C, Captain Renn Laurence commanding, being at Camp Knox, Kentucky; First Squadron, less Troop C, Captain W. G. Simmons commanding, at Fort Oglethorpe, and the regiment, less First Squadron, Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins commanding, at Camp McClellan, Alabama.

Previous to departing for Camp McClellan, the Second Squadron, Major C. W. Foster in command, spent three weeks on the range. This time was inadequate to complete the target season, but good records were made by all troops, particularly when weather conditions, lack of sufficient time, and the number of men who fired are considered. Headquarters Troop, Captain Arthur Truxes commanding, preceded the Second Squadron on the range, completing the target season, and returning with a mark of 98 2/5 per cent qualified (one man failing to qualify) for the other troops to shoot at.

On April 24, 1923, three days after the return of the troops from the range, the three different components of the regiment bade farewell to each other for the summer, Troop

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

C departing on a ten-day march to Camp Knox, and the regiment, less the First Squadron, leaving on its march to Camp McClellan. Due to the soft condition of the animals, most of which had been on the range with insufficient exercise to place them in proper condition for such service, the progress of the regiment on the march was of necessity rather slow, an average of about 25 miles per day for the five days being made. The total distance covered en route was about 130 miles, halts being made and camps being pitched for the night at Trenton, Ga.; Allen, Ala.; Collinsville, Ala., and Glencoe, Ala. The trip was completed with animals in good condition and men in high spirits.

Prior to arrival at Camp McClellan, the regiment paraded through Anniston, Ala., where it was very popular during its stay here last summer, and was given an enthusiastic welcome, being met in the suburbs by the mayor and a special committee and escorted through the city. Colonel J. Henry Edmondson, of Anniston, honorary colonel of the regiment, and his staff also joined en route and welcomed us.

The time since arrival in camp has been spent in getting settled and in preparation for the various duties which will be required of the regiment during the training camp period. Quite a bit of fatigue and general police work has been necessary, though not so much as last year. Much of the personnel, both commissioned and enlisted, has been placed on special duty through camp headquarters. A provisional troop has been organized for demonstration and escort purposes, each troop of the Second Squadron furnishing one platoon. Captain W. G. Ingram is in command of this troop.

May 4 the regiment celebrated Regimental Day, the 62d anniversary of its organization, with a barbecue and a full holiday. After a bountiful feast on barbecued pork and beef, with all proper accessories, short but interesting talks were made by Brigadier-General Edward B. Winans, camp commander; Colonel R. J. Fleming, 6th Cavalry; present camp executive officer, Lieutenant-Colonel D. D. Tompkins, Chaplain Henry N. Blanchard, former Governor Kilby, of Anniston, and others. The barbecue was attended by many guests from the 22d and 8th Infantry Regiments, now in camp, and from Anniston and the near-by vicinity. The anniversary celebration was brought to a close by a dance in the evening, given by officers of the regiment at the Anniston Country Club. As the opening social event of the camp, it was a brilliant one, and was attended by many officers and ladies of the camp and local and out-of-town guests.

A class in equitation has been organized for the benefit of officers of the camp and civilians in the locality. Captain W. G. Ingram is the instructor for the class, which meets on three days of each week.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Walter C. Short, Commanding

April 1st to 11th, inclusive, was devoted to problems in employment of cavalry, including troop, squadron, and regimental problems.

The First Cavalry Division Horse Show was held on April 12th, 13th, and 14th. The following is a list of the 7th Cavalry winners: Class 1—Polo mounts, Captain J. A. Hettinger won first place. Class 2—Best pack-horse, Staff Sergeant Patrick J. Devine, Headquarters Troop, won first place and Corporal Jones Flagg, Headquarters Troop, won second place. Class 5—Best turned out officer's horse, Captain A. W. Roffe won third place. Class 8—Recruit class, Private P. Myrover, Troop E, won first place, and Private John Welsh, Troop G, won third place. Class 11—Officers' chargers, Major S. W. Winfree won first place. Class 14—Bending race, Captain A. W. Roffe won first place. Class 17—Best wheel draft mule, Private E. A. Rossen, Service Troop, won second place and Private F. P. Wasko, Service Troop, won third place. Class 18—Radio Section, 1st Squadron Detachment won first place and Headquarters Troop won second place. Class 21—Best cavalry

REGIMENTAL NOTES

horse, Staff Sergeant William L. O'Brien, 2d Squadron Detachment, won first place. Class 22—Best turned out enlisted man's horse, Staff Sergeant Patrick J. Devine, Headquarters Troop, won first place and Sergeant R. L. Church, Headquarters Troop, won second place. Class 26—Automatic rifle horse, Corporal W. C. Schaefer, Troop C, won first and Private Harlow, Troop G, won second place. Class 27—Enlisted men's mount, Sergeant G. B. Lewis, Troop G, won first place. Class 31—Championship jumper, Captain A. W. Roffe won first place. Class 33—Horses suitable to become polo mounts, Captain J. A. Hettinger won first place. Class 35—Best turned out band trooper, Corporal J. A. Caffot won first, Private Joe Rosillo won second, and Private F. C. Hill won third, all of Service Troop.

April 15 preliminary rifle practice and dismounted pistol instruction was taken up, and on May 5th the 2d Squadron and one-half of the Headquarters and Service Troops marched to Dona Anna target range, 28 miles north of Fort Bliss, for range practice. Rifle record practice was completed by these troops on June 2d, 12 officers and 245 enlisted men firing the course, all officers and 240 enlisted men qualifying. A total of over 98 per cent qualified. The First Squadron and remainder of the Headquarters and Service Troops departed for Dona Anna target range on June 8th and expect to beat the record made by the 2d Squadron. Should they be successful, the total percentage for the regiment will establish a new record for the cavalry in qualification attained in rifle practice.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major Joseph F. Richmond, Commanding

The baseball season opened auspiciously on May 1 with a parade of the baseball teams of the 2d and 9th Cavalry, led by the bands of both regiments, and a very successful season is now in progress.

The Inspector General paid us a visit last month and found the regiment in excellent shape. The Chief of Cavalry inspected the troops and remained for dinner with the regiment on May 28 and expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the regiment.

The painting and calcimining of the troop barracks was completed last month, and now the regimental carpenters are rebuilding the porches and stairways and repairing the floors. The paint squad has moved out to Rileyville, and First Sergeant William Smith's spotless town is getting a new coat of Montgomery, Ward and Company's paint. The general effect is excellent.

Staff Sergeant William Harris, Staff Sergeant Richard W. Peters, and Sergeant Henry Moore were retired on May 26th and June 4th respectively, with appropriate ceremony, followed by a reception and dance in their honor at the 9th Cavalry Club, with refreshments from the regimental mess.

The night of June 1 the Cavalry School dinner was served at the 9th Cavalry mess, with the Chief of Cavalry as the guest of honor. Covers were laid for three hundred guests, including fifty business men from Junction City. The 9th Cavalry band furnished the music.

Memorial Day was fittingly observed with services in the cemetery and at the 9th Cavalry Club.

Applications for enlistment continue to come in from all sections of the country, but, due to overstrength, at present none can be accepted.

Target practice for the regiment began June 6. Captains W. R. Stickman and Frank C. De Langton, Sergeant Cleveland Morrow, Troop "G," Private Hubert Wiley, Headquarters and Service Troop, and Private, First Class, Thomas Hawker, Troop "A," left on May 31 for Des Moines, to represent the regiment at the rifle competition there.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona Lieutenant-Colonel Hu B. Myers, Commanding

In March Major-General Edward M. Lewis, commanding the 8th Corps Area, inspected the post and regiment. The following month the regiment was inspected by Major-General Eli Helmick, the Inspector General.

Much work has been done by the regiment during the past few months in improving the buildings and grounds of the post. The summer training camps that are impending demanded considerable construction. Lumber for these improvements was salvaged from condemned buildings at Camp Jones, at Douglas, and hauled to the post by wagon train. In spite of this necessary work, preliminary instruction in rifle practice has been carried on and a group of the 1st Squadron has already completed the record course. Much time has also been devoted to try-outs for the Cavalry and Corps Area rifle and pistol teams, and from the scores made it is thought the regiment will be able at least to be strong contenders for the Corps Area rifle and pistol trophies.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold, and Sam Fordyce, Texas Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

The regiment completed its saber and pistol practice during the past quarter with satisfactory results, qualifying in saber practice every officer and man armed with the saber, except five. However, an additional sixty-five men, authorized but not required to run the course, also qualified, making a total of 406 qualifications, divided as follows: expert, 40; excellent, 165; swordsman, 201.

In the mounted pistol course, 409 officers and men qualified and only two were disqualified. Of the 99½ per cent who qualified, there were 446 experts, 16 sharpshooters, and 7 marksmen.

The regiment made an excellent record in dismounted pistol practice, qualifying 90 per cent of its officers and men. Headquarters and Service Troops and the First Squadron qualified 97.91 per cent of the personnel of these five troops. The regimental qualifications included the following: expert, 128; sharpshooter, 171; marksman, 138.

Captains Oron A. Palmer, Herman F. Rathjen, and John P. Scott, First Sergeant August C. Hendricks, and Sergeants Selmer Gustaves and Edward Yeszski have gone to Des Moines to engage in the cavalry tryout for the national match. The regiment's representatives in the Corps Area pistol, rifle, and automatic rifle competition leave on June 9 to participate in that event.

The 1st Squadron and the band, together with all officers of the regiment stationed at Fort Brown, assisted the Brownsville post of the American Legion in the observance of Memorial Day. The troops and members of the Legion marched from the post to the cemetery, where a short program was conducted by the Legion. A small detachment was sent to Mercedes to assist the American Legion post at that place in its observance of the day.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

The first of a series of regimental dinners was held at the Regimental Club February 28, with 100 per cent attendance. An excellent dinner was served, followed by cards and dancing. Music was furnished throughout the evening by the regimental orchestra.

March 28 the Regimental Commander was the host at the dinner, the same program prevailing. The excellent attendance indicates the popularity of these affairs and gives promise of their becoming a fixture in the affairs of the regiment.

On March 24 a gymkhana, which was open to civilians from Cheyenne, as well as to the personnel of the post, was held in the post riding hall. The committee in charge

REGIMENTAL NOTES

had spared no pains to make the show a success, and as a result the large attendance of members of the garrison and civilians went away highly pleased.

Following is a list of events, with the winners:

Enlisted Men's Jumping Class—Master Sergeant James A. Grady, 13th Cavalry.

Officers' Charger Class—Captain Frank L. Whittaker, 13th Cavalry.

Best Lady Rider—Mrs. Walter H. Niel.

Novice Jumping Class—First Lieutenant Theo. E. Voigt, 13th Cavalry.

Musical Chair Race—Private Gerald Capes, Troop E, 13th Cavalry.

Best Artillery Gun Team—2d Platoon, Battery C, 70th Field Artillery.

Free for All High Jump—Captain Frank L. Whittaker, 13th Cavalry.

Best Four-line Team—76th Field Artillery.

Harnessing Race, Four-line Team—13th Cavalry.

Three officers of the regiment are contemplating entering horses in the Colorado Endurance Ride, to be held at Colorado Springs during August, 1923. This ride is conducted along the same lines as the Eastern Endurance Ride, and gives the officers who are unable to make the trip East an opportunity to compare their horses with those that are entered in the eastern event.

Captain Herbert E. Watkins will enter his thoroughbred *Norfolk Star*, which won the event last year. Captain Donald S. Perry will enter his half thoroughbred, *Commodore*, a very good type for the test, and Lieutenant Theodore E. Voigt will enter a Government-owned three-fourths thoroughbred, *Boise*. This latter horse won the officers' charger class at the Western National Horse Show at Denver, Colo., this year, and should give a creditable performance in the endurance ride. These officers have started work on their mounts with a view to having them in the best possible condition for the event.

Target practice began May 1 and is progressing well.

Troop G marched, about June 1, to Fort Douglas, Utah, to be present for the summer training camp to be held there during July and August.

National Commander Owsley, of the American Legion, was the guest of the two posts of the legion in Cheyenne, May 26 and 27. The regiment took part in his entertainment.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa Colonel H. La T. Cavanaugh, Commanding

Preliminary instruction for annual target practice began on April 1 and continued throughout the month. The troops went on the target range on May 1 and were engaged in practice in rifle marksmanship from that date until June 1. This part of the work has been progressing very satisfactorily and the organizations have shown good results from the preliminary instruction. The 2d Squadron has nearly completed its record practice and to date has qualified 100 per cent.

Major-General Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, visited the post on May 20 and 21. He inspected the troops in the barracks and received a review. Following the review a tactical exercise was held, demonstrating several fundamental principles of the use of cavalry. On Sunday afternoon, May 20, a polo game was played on the post polo field, after which Colonel and Mrs. Cavanaugh entertained the officers and their families and a number of civilian visitors at a tea given for General Holbrook. During his visit here the Chief of Cavalry was entertained at a luncheon in Des Moines given by the Greater Des Moines Committee, after which he addressed the gathering upon the subject "Preparedness." His talk was well received and filled with interest for all who heard him.

Following the visit of the Chief of Cavalry we were visited by Lieutenant-Colonel George E. Goodrich, Inspector General for the 7th Corps Area, who made the annual inspection of the post and command.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

On Memorial Day the 2d Squadron, Major Rush commanding, paraded in the city of Des Moines. Colonel Cavanaugh commanded the 1st Division of the Memorial Day parade on this occasion. The appearance of the troops was excellent and they made a most creditable showing in every way.

As these notes are being forwarded, the members of the cavalry rifle and pistol team are beginning to arrive. Lieutenant-Colonel Alexander H. Davidson, recently assigned to the 14th Cavalry, has arrived and again will have complete charge of the work of the team here this summer as he did last.

Rivalry in the post baseball league is very keen and every team is fighting hard for its "place in the sun."

TWENTY-SIXTH (SCOUT) CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

We have organized an athletic council to serve in an advisory capacity on all proper matters. That has made work more satisfactory. It is not so necessary to experiment in field meets to find out what is a pleasant variation.

We keep a plan worked out for several months in advance. This is controlled in its chief characteristics by a department order prescribing certain contests at definite times and providing for a field and track meet nearly every month. Each month we publish a particular program for the next meet long enough ahead of time to give every one ample time to train. We also get out a dope sheet for the meet coming six or eight weeks in the future. This has brought gratifying remarks from members of the command. As no successive meets are alike and no two meets exactly alike, we hear such pleasing remarks as: "How soon are you going to have another — event?" One might think that a cavalry post would have at every show an officers' performance jump, but we put an event under that name in our program only about once in three months. Last month it was Officers' Pairs (6 at 3 feet and 3 feet 6) and four 4-foot jumps. This month it was a five-barred broad jump. Next time it will probably be five miles and six hard jumps, for speed, performance, and condition.

Our April meet is a two-day affair featuring the Pentathlon. Hereafter it will also feature the annual Polo Pony Show, the first of which was held this morning.

The program for this included conformation; speed, straightaway; driving the ball for distance on one stroke; carrying the ball, up and back; running and turning, four fifty-yard laps; driving for accuracy, 80 yards to a goal (I believe this should have been 60 yards); and bending. There was a cup on each event and a trophy for the winning regiment, all of which were provided by business houses.

In order to keep things moving and have something doing all the time, a series of interludes was arranged. These were run off more or less in between the events of the Pony Show. They included the broad jumping, ladies' jumping, non-commissioned officers' gaiting and platoon demonstrations, both in military exhibitions and mass athletics.

This morning's events gave the cavalry a chance to clean up. In the Polo Pony Show, Captain Delmore Wood brought us home four cups and Captain Norman Waldron another one, one artillery officer, Lieutenant H. D. Reed, taking the two remaining cups. Two cavalry girls took second and third in the ladies' jumping, Lieutenant Fidel Segundo, P. S., 26th Cavalry, won the broad jump, making 24 feet, and cavalymen took second and third in the gaiting.

We are all as pleased as can be with the way the new regiment is turning out. None of us were very enthusiastic last summer, before the change was made. A month after we started working on the scouts the views concerning the venture were obviously changing. Ever since that time officers have been acquiring more and more enthusiasm for the Regiment of Scout Cavalry. It has been complimented by various commanding officers—post, division, and department—and by other visiting officers.



R. O. T. C. HORSE SHOW AT MASSACHUSETTS AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE, AMHERST, MASS., MAY 5

FORTY YEARS OF WISCONSIN CAVALRY



Oconomowoc, Wis. 1886



Camp Douglas, Wis. 1907



Camp Douglas 1908
find two future Colonels



Fort Sheridan, Ill. 1915



Mexican Border 1916

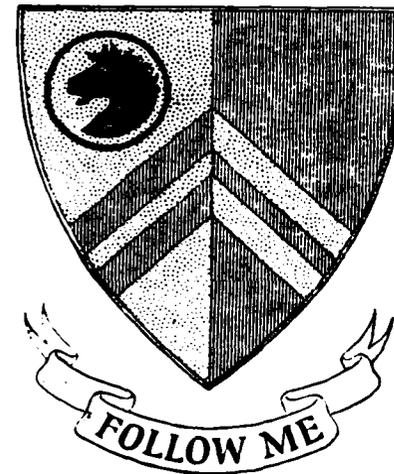
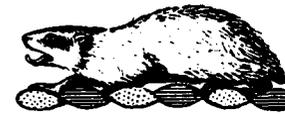


Milwaukee, Wis
1922



France 1918

National Guard



105th CAVALRY COAT OF ARMS

WISCONSIN CAVALRY

THE Wisconsin Cavalry is a focal point of the National Guard interest, and, in view of the large part which the guard plays in the National Defense Plan, it deserves the attention of the whole Army of the United States and all citizens who are supporters of their army. Early in the spring the lower branch of the Wisconsin State Legislature, by a vote of 64 to 14, abolished the National Guard in that State.

The answer of the Wisconsin cavalymen, sturdy upholders of a State sovereignty that these neosolons would pervert into a futile mockery of paper pretension based on half-baked hopes and puerile speculations, like a clear trumpet note, unhesitating, was:

"The true cavalryman will stick to his outfit through these troublous times as in others. With our heads up and our heels down, we'll attend to our horses and our soldiering." This was the answer published in the last number of the Badger Trooper, an excellent service paper, which has just discontinued publication.

The Governor and a fine lot of people, with sound heads and true hearts, came out solidly in opposition to this radical measure, and the bill was killed in the State.

This bucketful of cold water received by the cavalymen of Wisconsin has not diminished their ardor one whit, and, even though it seems likely that the work of the State troops will be handicapped by inadequate appropriations, they intend to "carry on." In view of these unusual circumstances, the CAVALRY JOURNAL invites attention specially to the splendid activities of the 105th Cavalry.

105TH CAVALRY GETS NEW COAT OF ARMS

The recently approved coat of arms of the 105th Cavalry displays the traditional Wisconsin badger perched "couchant" upon a "wreath" or twist of the colors, gold and blue, the latter commemorating the fact that Wisconsin was a part of the Louisiana Purchase from imperial France.

Following is an extract from the letter of the Secretary of War officially awarding and describing the arms:

"1. The Secretary of War approves the following coat of arms for this regiment:
"Crest—That for a regiment of the Wisconsin National Guard: On a wreath or and azure a badger couchant proper.

"Shield—Per pale or and gules, two chevrons counterchanged; in dexter chief a horse's head erased, within an annulet sable.

"Motto—Follow me.

"Name—105th—1st Wisconsin—Cavalry.

"2. Description—Light Horse Squadron, organized in 1880. Redesignated Troop 'A,' 1st Wisconsin Cavalry, 1880. Troop 'B' added, 1916. Both troops mustered into Federal service and served on border in 1916 and spring of 1917. First Regiment, Wisconsin Cavalry, organized and drafted into Federal service July, 1917. Converted into 120th Field Artillery September, 1917. Served on four fronts with 32d Division in France. Decorated with Croix de Guerre by French Government. Reorganization as 1st Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, started in August, 1919, and completed early in 1920. Redesignated as the 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, April 1, 1921.

"Yellow (or) for the Cavalry Service, impaled with the scarlet for the regiment's conversion into field artillery during the World War. The two chevrons, represent the two chevrons of a year's overseas service. The ringed horse's-head device is that of the Light Horse Squadron, organized in Milwaukee in 1880, in which the regiment had its origin. The motto, 'Follow Me,' is the keynote of modern cavalry tactics."

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

In use, the new regimental coat of arms will take the place of the U. S. arms on the regimental standard, and its gold and red colors will show up most effectively against the yellow silk of the banner. The shield design itself will be placed on the breast of the eagle and the motto, "Follow Me," will appear on the ribbon shown in the eagle's beak. Above the eagle will be the badger crest, instead of the U. S. cluster of stars. On the scroll under the eagle will appear "One Hundred Fifth—1st Wisconsin—Cavalry."

WHAT A GUARD CAVALRY REGIMENT CAN DO

The 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard

The 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin National Guard, is making for itself an enviable record in all phases of its training. In the recent indoor competitions held throughout the military services, under the auspices of the National Rifle Association, the team representing the 105th Cavalry, picked from only three of its troops, made the remarkable record of placing sixth among the various regular-service regiments that competed in this match. Considering that the 105th was the only cavalry regiment to enter this match, and that indoor competitions and competitions of any sort with fire-arms had never been entered into by any one of the members representing the regiment, this is indeed a remarkable record. This enthusiasm toward shooting does not extend only to the favored few who were lucky enough to make the regimental team, but the entire organization is imbued with the desire to become first-class marksmen. As a good example of this enthusiasm and spirit of competition, there were 26 entrants in the national individual indoor rifle competition from the three troops stationed at Milwaukee. Furthermore, the selection of team members to represent the regiment was based solely on performance of the individual.

Leading up to the regimental match, each troop stationed in Milwaukee (A, B, and Headquarters) entered teams in the company team match open to all companies throughout all the services. Headquarters Troop won the regimental championship and placed sixth among the other services in the final standing. Again, considering that every man on this team was new to competition shooting and the majority of them shooting the rifle for the first season, this makes a record that is hard to beat anywhere. This keen inter-individual and inter-troop competition was instrumental in developing a team that defeated the Century Rifle Club of Milwaukee, composed of old National Competition shots, in two of its three shoots. This team further defeated the Neenah, Wis., team, considered the best in the State, in two straight meets. Nor is the regiment dependent upon a few good shots to uphold its record in shooting. As a matter of fact, it is very difficult to pick a team from the score or more excellent shots, and no team has had the same personnel on it throughout the dozen matches fired in this season.

Nor does the regiment base its efficiency alone on rifle shooting. Each troop has a platoon composed of the men who are able to devote more than the ordinary number of hours to drills and exercises. These platoons are made into the crack drill platoons of the respective troops. In a recent competition between the platoons of troops at Milwaukee, Troop A won with an exhibition of dismounted drill, close order, including the manual of arms, that is seldom equaled or beaten by any troops. The precision of the movements, alignment, distances and intervals, appearance and neatness, were faultless. This same platoon performed for the Inspector General recently, after the troop had undergone an inspection that would have been a credit to any organization. He rated this organization one of the finest in its performance he had ever witnessed. Now that the mounted season has opened, each organization has organized mounted drill platoons for further work of the same nature mounted. To foster and encourage these organizations, the Regimental Commander, Colonel J. J. Quill, has caused to be issued the following memo:

NATIONAL GUARD

Subject: Annual Platoon Competition and Field Officers' Cup

1. The field officers of this regiment are offering a trophy, to be known as the "Field Officers' Cup," which is to be awarded annually, at camp, to the troop of the 105th Cavalry winning the competition platoon drill.

2. The cup will be brought to camp annually and competed for until won three years in succession by the same troop.

3. In order that preparation for the contest may be uniform, the attached program, prepared by Captain A. N. Norton, Cavalry, U. S. A., is published in advance as the official program for the 1923 competition. It will be noted that dismounted and mounted subjects are valued at 40 per cent and 60 per cent, respectively. All subjects will be based on latest training regulations, and any question of interpretation of these regulations required in advance may be secured from Captain Norton, in writing. The latter will make a file of these decisions, available to the judges.

4. The judges will be selected from without the regiment, if possible.

5. The contest is open to all troops, including Service and Headquarters Troops. No more than one platoon per troop may be entered. A platoon will consist of not less than 24 men or more than 32 men in ranks, with not less than two file-closers in addition.

Program of Platoon—Competition Drill—1923

DISMOUNTED DRILL

Appearance, uniforms, and condition of arms—value, 5

DISMOUNTED DRILL, CLOSE ORDER

Value, 15

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Form platoon. | 11. By the right and left flank. |
| 2. Column of fours. | 12. To the rear (twice). |
| 3. Column of twos. | 13. Line. |
| 4. Column of troopers. | 14. Platoon, right turn. |
| 5. Column of fours (platoon halt). | 15. Platoon, left turn. |
| 6. Column right. | 16. Double time, quick time. |
| 7. Column left. | 17. Double rank. |
| 8. Troopers left oblique. | 18. Line. |
| 9. Troopers right oblique. | 19. Stack arms, take arms. |
| 10. In place, halt. | |

MANUAL OF ARMS, ETC.

Value, 5

DISMOUNTED DRILL, EXTENDED ORDER

Value, 15

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Take distance. | 5. Squads in line, 40 yards, interval, double time. |
| 2. Assemble. | 6. Line of squad columns, 40 yards' interval. |
| 3. Take intervals to the left, assemble. | 7. Halt, kneel, lie down, rise. |
| 4. Squads in line, 10 yards, distance. | 8. As skirmishers. |

The following to be given by signals only:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Down. | 6. Increase range 100 yards. |
| 2. Range (select any convenient range). | 7. Fire faster. |
| 3. Are you ready? | 8. Rise, to the rear. |
| 4. Commence firing. | 9. Line of squad columns. |
| 5. What range are you using? (To be signaled to each squad leader, who will in turn reply, by signal, the range in use.) | 10. Assemble, column of fours. |

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Mounted Drill, Close Order

GENERAL APPEARANCE OF MEN AND ANIMALS, CARE AND ADJUSTMENT OF EQUIPMENT

Value, 10

CLOSE ORDER DRILL

Value, 30

NOTE.—Arm and whistle signals will be used in all movements after which "sig." is placed; otherwise oral commands will be used.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Form platoon. | 10. Column of twos. sig. |
| 2. Prepare to mount. sig. | 11. Column of fours. sig. |
| 3. Mount. sig. | 12. Troopers right and left oblique. sig. |
| 4. Form rank. | 13. Fours right, left and left about. sig. |
| 5. Column of fours. sig. | 14. Line. sig. |
| 6. Trot. sig. | 15. Double rank. |
| 7. Line. sig. | 16. Column of troopers. sig. |
| 8. Right turn. sig. | 17. Line, halt. sig. |
| 9. Left turn. sig. | |

Repeat above with sabers at carry.

MOUNTED DRILL, EXTENDED ORDER

Value, 20

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Form platoon, mounted. | 10. Squads assemble in line. sig. |
| 2. Forward march. sig. | 11. Assemble in column of fours. sig. |
| 3. Squads extended (40-yard interval). sig. | 12. To fight on foot, action right. sig. |
| 4. Line of squad columns. sig. | 13. Horses back. sig. |
| 5. To the rear. sig. | 14. Bring up led horses. sig. |
| 6. Trot. sig. | 15. Mount. |
| 7. To the rear. sig. | 16. Disperse by squads. |
| 8. As foragers. sig. | 17. Assemble in line. sig. |
| 9. By the left and right flank. sig. | 18. Halt. sig. |
| | 19. Draw saber. |

Repeat above with sabers at carry.

1. Saber manual and exercises. Time limit, 5 minutes.
2. Assemble.
3. Return saber.
4. Raise pistol.
5. Conduct platoon to favorable distance, by successive increases of gaits execute a short (50 yards) charge with pistol.
6. Rally, count fours, fours left about, return pistol, draw saber, and execute a like charge back over same ground with saber, and retire in column of fours.

It will be noted that all movements are based strictly on the regulations, and that no trick or show movements are included. Great interest is already being displayed by these organizations and many inquiries are being received relative thereto.

Specialists' schools are being conducted along a systematized course. Twice weekly, in addition to the regular drill periods, sketching and scouting classes are being conducted for the intelligence sections of the Headquarters Troop and Squadron Detachments. Remarkable progress is being made and excellent sketches are being turned in.

The officers are imbued with the spirit of progress. Throughout the long winter months map problems and war games have been the subjects of discussion. Almost all conceivable situations wherein cavalry may act have been used as bases for map problems and war games. Some rare flashes of leadership and cavalry tactics have been displayed at nearly all the games. One game in particular, after having run four weeks (attack and defense of a convoy), was completed at 2 a. m. and was the subject of discussion many days thereafter.

NATIONAL GUARD

Beginning with May 1, the outdoor class for officers began with equitation, saber and pistol exercises, and, best loved of all, polo. The various officers have succeeded in whipping into very good shape quite a string of the public horses and have developed a fairly fast string of good polo mounts. Every Saturday afternoon and Sunday is occupied by the officers in polo, and the enlisted men, under an officer, go for long road rides.

The officers, about 25 in number, have organized a club with a percentage of all federal pay received as dues therein. The purpose of the club is to promote all social and unofficial relations of the officers of the regiment and provide the necessary funds for all social functions, athletic expenses, and other expenses that could properly be charged to the club.

A large number of the officers of the regiment and about twenty enlisted men are pursuing the standard instruction contained in the army correspondence courses and very good progress and grades are being attained.

Given six weeks in which to harden both men and animals, it is believed that this regiment would be able to take the field and render first-class service under all conditions.

ESSEX TROOP HORSE SHOW

The third annual horse show of The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association was held at the Armory, in Newark, N. J., on May 4 and 5. It was very successful, both in respect to the number of excellent entries and also from the social point of view. The show has become an institution now and is looked forward to each year with a great deal of interest by horse lovers in New Jersey and New York. A show ring was built in the center of the riding hall, which was gaily decorated with flags and bunting. A broad promenade surrounded the ring, and along one side stretched forty boxes, which became the rendezvous of New Jersey society. The show was preceded by a dinner of The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association in the grill, which the Governor and numerous civil and military dignitaries of the State attended. The army was also represented by officers from the New York National Guard, Governors Island, and Fort Hamilton.

The saddle classes and jumping events were distributed proportionately over Friday and Saturday nights, while Saturday afternoon was devoted mainly to the children's classes, harness entrants, and several military events. The civilian classes were unusually good, the close competition causing the judges no little difficulty to pick the ribbons. In the jumps the field was led by *Sandy* and *Black Watch*, owned by Michael J. Devaney, of Brooklyn, and *Going Up*, owned by Fred Wettach, of Elberon, which horses clearly outclassed anything else in the show. The competition in the military events narrowed down mainly to a regimental affair, with a sprinkling of horses from the First Division, Fort Hamilton, and 110th Field Artillery.

Three performances were given—Friday night, Saturday afternoon, and Saturday night—and they were all well attended. The boxes and reserve seats were sold out early and the promenade was well filled. The New Jersey Cavalry Horse Show Association feels that in its annual horse show it has established a rather high mark at which to shoot, and that it has stimulated and revitalized in New Jersey a waning interest in the horse.

PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.

The Organized Reserves

NOTES OF THE SIXTY-THIRD CAVALRY DIVISION

Lieutenant-Colonel Henry Dickinson, Cav., T. N. G.

And they sound the "Boots and Saddles,"
Then we mount up and away.—*Fiddlers' Green.*

Those of you who had sense enough first to "jine the cavalry" and then had old Dame Fortune smile on you through the War Department, and took advantage of "1. Authority has been obtained to train a limited number of reserve officers of the 63d Cavalry Division, in various grades (with their consent), April 1st to 15th, inclusive, at government expense." will never live to regret it.

There were eighteen fortunates who were met by Acting Adjutant L. D. Carter, on Sunday, April 1, 1923, at Fort Oglethorpe, Ga., where the Old Sixth Regulars hold the Fort in a regular way. They were all men of the South: Colonel Fair, of the Old North State; Major Collett, from the State where they sing, "There is nothing finer than a day in Carolina," and believe it; Major Wilson, Captain Dickinson, and First Lieutenant Garmony, from the Volunteer State; Captains Williams and Doyle and Lieutenant Hilbert, from New Orleans, with the "Sky Pilot," Captain Chaplain Tucker, from Baton Rouge, and all the rest; Captains H. E. Dyer and Wideman, First Lieutenants Cockrell and Ballard and Second Lieutenants Alley and Samuel Allen Marshall, late of the V. M. I., from Florida, because they said it was a nice place to go back to when they had dried out "up Nawth"; then First Lieutenant Mott, of the "Delta, Sir." The "Delta" seems to be somewhere in Mississippi.

We were all assigned quarters in the Officers' Club, on the south side of the parade ground, nice, roomy quarters, with never more than three of us to each bath-room.

At our first meal, Sunday, April 1, the reserve officers began to get acquainted. Any one with half an eye could easily see that we were all pleased with everything up to that time and were looking forward to a most delightful and beneficial schooling for the ensuing two weeks.

Sunday afternoon the officers of the 6th had a polo game. Polo, to one who has watched it, is an intense pleasure; to one who has never seen a game, it is a revelation. Age and rank in a polo game? Nosuchadamthing. The game was played in a slashing, dashing cavalry style. The non-coms were betting that Captain Wilkie Burt would have an accident, and he did. Horse and rider rolled over in the middle of the field; but both arose and shook themselves, the noble steed got under the dashing captain, and the game went on as if nothing had happened; and nothing had, for usually Burt bursts bones. Oh! what shall I say, beautifully? That is the word. Well, one side beat the other, that was sure, and I found out afterwards that Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins' Irish Nightingales had beaten the Baltimore Griddles—at least they wore yellow rompers, and were captained, very ably too, by Major Kimball. You see, they elect the lieutenant-colonels and majors captains, but that's where rank stops, because I overheard the Colonel tell the Major while in a race after the ball, "The ball is mine, and would the Major please desist from hitting it" (well, that's what he meant, even if he didn't use those exact words), and the Major's reply had the effect of making me know that I was back in the army, for it was couched in the same polite language and informed the Colonel that he would handle the ball, while the Colonel was ordering ice drinks and cold towels elsewhere.

By the end of that polo game we were "home again and happy." Later, supper and an evening to while away as we pleased. I had the good fortune that night of finding

THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

the commanding officer, Colonel Fleming, at home. During that short call all my doubts, if I had had any, were dispelled and I knew that we reserve officers had been accepted as brothers in arms with the regulars, and that's some feeling, if you know what I mean. Courtesy without condescension will do more to raise and hold an officer's morale than anything else.

Our real training began Monday morning at 7 o'clock. All the officers of the regiment and the reserve officers were present. After a short address of welcome by the commanding officer, the school was turned over to Captain Halstead, to conduct us through the intricacies of the automatic pistol, the service rifle, and the new machine rifle. Captain Halstead is human, and from the very beginning of his demonstration all of us realized that Kipling's words, "Don't call your martin a cross-eyed old bitch, for she's human as you are, and you treat her as sitch," are words of great depth and meaning. We began to learn and enjoy learning right there, and not for one instant did we cease either learning or enjoying it. Followed arms and equipment, the school of the trooper, by Lieutenant Shirley; ride, stables, officers' meeting, care of the horse, musketry, by Captain Simmons; estimate of the situation and small problem mounted, by Captain Lawrence. Tuesday, the school of the trooper and squad, ride, and stables. In the morning. Tuesday afternoon, a little more advanced, the same as Monday. Plenty of riding on nice, gentle old troop horses, my orderly always to the contrary notwithstanding.

Wednesday, guard duty, school of the platoon, and officers' meeting. Afternoon, nothing doing and nothing done. Thursday began with something new to most of us, cavalry weapons, and the day continued with small problems, but always well considered advances in all the subjects, with "composing orders" during the afternoon. There's where we met some new army diplomacy. Captain Simmons corrected just one order, and then, with a benign smile, "Gentlemen, just pass your orders to the one on your left and correct each other's." We never heard of that lot of orders again. Many good officers have been shot for composing a better order than mine was.

Friday brought something new—military courts and discipline, troop messing, and history and origin of cavalry, all interesting subjects, well taught by Captains Wadleton, Lawrence, and Shell. Do not think, dear reader, we were allowed to forget what we had learned, because we were not. Neither were we allowed to forget our old troop horses, gentle though they were. It had been suggested that "Allen's Foot Ease" was also good for what ailed us.

Saturday came and was our big day. It was the first day that some of us had ever participated in a cavalry parade, inspection, and review. Of course, one can give only his own impressions on such a day. Some of us had a troop, some a platoon, and some a squad. Each had the rightful commander of that unit at his left hand, and it made me feel like Horatius at the bridge when he saw Lars Porsena in the offing and heard those kind words, "I will stand at thy left hand." But even that didn't do my morals much good when I found I had a new horse. Now naturally, being of a retiring and timid temperament, I made inquiries. Says I to orderly, "Is he gentle?" Says orderly, "No, sir. I asked Sergeant Williams not to send this 'un, 'cause when that empty scabbard rattles, he'll buck, sir; and when he bucks, sir, you had better hold the scabbard away from his flanks."

X—
Field Orders
No. 15.

TRUOP C. 6TH CAV.,
FORT OGLETHORPE, GA.,
7 Apr., '23, 9 a. m.

1. Enemy located directly south our position . . . consisting one bucking polo pony, with evil disposition. Our troops consisting one large body infantry with two legs and two hands.

2. Place our body directly over enemy, flanking him to right and left. Establish close contact and hold position as long as possible.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

3. Grasp reins in right hand, placing hand on pommel of saddle. Place left foot in stirrup, assisting with left hand, if necessary; grasp mane with left hand; if none, grab neck. Mount slowly, throwing right leg to offside enemy without kicking enemy. Sit down gently (if enemy permits). While enemy stands still, probably gently chewing a straw, change reins to left hand. With right hand reach entirely around your main body and the enemy's left torso, draw saber from somewhere out of sight, near enemy's left flank. Enemy still standing gentle chewing straw—maybe.

X.—When enemy bucks hold empty scabbard away from enemy's flanks. Be prepared at all times, standing, at walk, trot, or canter. Give necessary orders to troop to salute reviewing officer, always keeping close contact with the enemy.

4. Hospital train will follow close in rear.

5. Send messages collect to wife.

Distribution

All over the 2" map.

DICKINSON,

Captain.

There was one good thing the orderly's confidence did me. I didn't have any buck fever about that review. I never expected to get that far. The parade, review, and inspection went off according to schedule, with Lieutenant-Colonel Fair as reviewing officer and Major Collett commanding the squadron. One could easily persuade oneself that a general was reviewing his crack regiment. The regulars, both officers and men of the 6th, would not allow a few reserve officers to throw them off. Here let me compliment the reserve officers, because I heard the Colonel tell almost all of them that they acquitted themselves like regulars.

Saturday afternoon we were off duty, so that some of us availed ourselves of this opportunity to accept the hospitality of the Polo Association and knock the ball around. This was thoroughly enjoyable, as all the ponies were well trained and it was pleasure to practice on them.

Sunday, led by Colonel Fleming, we had a cross-country ride that was enjoyed by every one but the chaplain. We got in too late to listen to (as I heard afterwards it was) a most pleasing and elevating sermon. Monday began an altogether different thing, viz: Captain Lawrence commanding; column of twos; walk, trot, and lead; trot, walk, and lead, 14 miles to Catoosa Springs, for pistol and rifle marksmanship. Finally we got there, high in spirits if sore in body. At Catoosa we found the second squadron of the 6th, Major Charles W. Foster, commanding. On the following Thursday they were to begin firing for record. We had all the time before that to learn how, practice, and Thursday, fire for record. Imagine yourself as I was, a former air service officer, who had not fired a Springfield since 1917, getting ready to shoot for record in two days. Captain Lawrence and his able assistant, Lieutenant Reybold, had patience, and they could demonstrate, and they made us practice, and you would be surprised how well we learned and how often some of us hit the bull's-eye.

Thursday dawned a beautiful day and all of us merrily hied to the range. First 600 yards, then 500 yards, then 300 yards, most of us rolling up fine scores; then rain and more rain; back to barrack, dinner, and more rain. At 3, horses and rain, at 3:01 p. m. mounted, wet saddles, and rain. At 3:12, trot and rain. Back to Fort Oglethorpe, representing a squadron; must get there at 4:56 p. m. same day. What pace should be set? Trot. Yes; we trotted and the heavens wept on all of us and for some of us, I hope, but Captain Lawrence got us there on time.

We enjoyed Catoosa and I learned a lot, and, what is better, we learned from a good teacher, so that I feel that we can return to our outfits at home and teach them.

Friday we had lectures on riot duty by Lieutenant Fletcher, squadron drill, troop administration, and history of the 6th Cavalry. All very interesting and instructive; so instructive that since my return from the camp I have successfully passed an examination for major of cavalry, Tennessee National Guard, and it is safe to say that I could not have touched it if I had not had the two fine weeks at Oglethorpe.

THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

The saddest words we heard there were that the horse show and polo games for the next day and Sunday had been called off on account of rain. That meant that we were through Saturday noon, April 14.

We found the officers of the 6th Cavalry, from the commanding officer down through the second lieutenants, as fine gentlemen, as hard workers in the interest of our government, and as conscientious in the performance of their duty as any body of men, no matter how selected, that could be found in this or any other country; and for the reserve officers who attended the School at Fort Oglethorpe I wish to take this opportunity of thanking the commanding officer, Colonel Fleming, and Lieutenant-Colonel Tompkins, and all the rest of those officers of the 6th for the helpful and intelligent manner in which they taught us and the pleasant time they gave us.

THE 305TH CAVALRY

The following officers of the 305th Cavalry made entries in the Officers' Charger Class of the Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show, held at the Squadron Armory, on 32d Street, Philadelphia, from May 2 to 5: Major Edward Hay, Major R. R. D. McCullough, Captain George V. Strong, Captain William S. Brogden, Captain E. P. Rutan, and First Lieutenant Robert M. Patterson. Major McCullough won the blue ribbon in the class, which comprised 18 entries, and Captain Brogden won the red ribbon. The yellow ribbon went to Captain Samuel Evans, 103d Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard.

The regular monthly luncheon of the regiment was held at the Racquet Club on May 17, with twenty-four officers of the regiment present. Colonel Groome presided. Colonel Groome spoke on the efforts on the part of certain men and women in the United States to undermine our system of national defense passed by Congress in 1920. He said these sinister influences have already reduced the Regular Army of the United States from 280,000 to 125,000, and have cut the appropriation of the National Guard to a point where in many States they are barely able to function. They are now bending every effort to do away with the least expensive component of this system, the Reserve Division.

Major Horace Hare spoke on the Citizens Military Training Camps. Major Hare, who is the Civilian Aide to the Secretary of War for the C. M. T. C. in Pennsylvania, said that the non-support of these training camps would in a few years put the Reserve Division out of existence, and the men and women in our State who are opposed to any form of defense find that in opposing the training camps they have a fair chance of gaining their objective without coming into the open with an attack on the National Defense Act of 1920.

The officers of the regiment, as citizens of the United States who are voluntarily giving their time to help carry out the laws of this country and support the government, decided to send a resolution to Congress protesting against the activities of the misguided individuals and organizations who are strenuously opposing the Reserve Corps and the training of the young men of this country.

At the meeting Major Smalley announced that eleven officers of the regiment had requested training at Fort Myer during June, at their own expense.

PRIZE FOR NEW SUBSCRIPTIONS

To every member of the Cavalry Association who sends in before September 1 two new paid-up subscriptions to the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be sent a copy of Dennison's *History of Cavalry*.

else's expense. No. On the contrary, there is involved rigid training, instruction, and discipline, supervised by experienced Regular Army officers detailed for long periods for that purpose. All cost of equipment, uniforms, etc., is defrayed by the Federal Government. That all required of the community is to provide a suitable armory and storage place for the company, for which rent will be paid, and to give A GENEROUS AMOUNT OF MORAL SUPPORT, FRIENDLINESS, AND ENCOURAGEMENT.

That the Guard personnel represents 100 per cent young American patriotic blood of the community and all that that stands for. That the organization further stands for good morals, healthy exercise, and a useful training; that it is a tangible, concrete, and practical expression of patriotic citizenship and fits the young men to render service of incalculable value when law and order is violated and the country and State needs them.

That with a reasonable amount of moral and very little financial support the armory of a properly conducted military company can be made an attractive, homelike, club-like, social and entertainment community center, and thereby an agency for decent and refined associations, good morals, and a desirable rendezvous for soldiers and citizens.

In time of flood or other calamity, the armory immediately becomes available as the proper center for organizing and conducting the many civic military activities necessary for the relief of the stricken community.

Colonel Faulkner advocates the institution of an honorary membership which should include the most influential citizens of the community, and also of a Women's Auxiliary Society. National Guard Veteran Associations should be fostered as well.

The report goes on to suggest a method for getting the most enthusiastic and systematic effort of the personnel of the organization toward betterment activities. It is proposed to organize a Company Co-operative and Betterment Club with a number of committees; one for the improvement of the armory (reading-room, gymnasium, indoor target range, etc.); one for recreation and entertainment, to arrange smokers, dances, bazaars, amateur theatricals, boxing, competitive drills, etc.; a committee for propaganda and advertising; one for recruiting, etc.

Finally, the report urges the appropriate decoration of the armory, permanently and for special occasions, use being made of flags, foliage, historic pictures, battlefield relics, warfare matériel, colored electric lights, potted plants, etc.

ONE HUNDRED THIRD CAVALRY—Pennsylvania

The indoor polo season is over, after a very successful season. As soon as the Headquarters, Service, and C Troops receive their mounts, no doubt the games will be better attended and a larger competitive enthusiasm will be instilled.

April 29 a competitive exhibition drill was given by the 103d Cavalry for the benefit of the Girl Scouts. The program included: Troop drill, by Troop A; shelter-tent pitching, won by Headquarters Troop; mounted tug of war, won by B Troop; running at heads, won by B Troop; rough riding, won by B Troop; team jumping, won by B Troop; Girl Scout, Troop No. 69, exhibition semaphore drill and pledging allegiance to the Flag; Troop No. 1 of the Brownies, flag drill; mounted wrestling, won by Service Troop; best trooper fully equipped for the field, won by B. Troop; Polo, won by B Troop—8 to 5.

The attendance was the largest that the armory has ever seen for any single event outside the indoor horse show.

The athletic officer is planning a squadron baseball team to play other units in the National Guard this summer.

The Ten-Year Club of the Second Troop, P. C. C., has challenged the active members to a rifle match, which has been accepted. Plans are now under way for a rifle contest between the 102d Cavalry and the 103d Cavalry.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY
JEROME W. HOWE
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

COPYRIGHT, 1922, BY
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional.

Book Department, U. S. Cavalry Association

1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C.

EACH ONE OF THESE BOOKS WE RECOMMEND BECAUSE THEY WILL APPRECIABLY ADD TO YOUR LIBRARY

The book department exists to *serve*. We get what you want or tell you why. Any book, magazine, or paper obtainable we can supply, foreign or domestic, military or otherwise. Send the *U. S. Cavalry Association* all your business and help to make a better CAVALRY JOURNAL.

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY, by Colonel Denison. 467 pp., index, 11 maps. \$4.50.

The only book of its kind. Complete story of development of Cavalry. All important battles and wars described. Traces changes in weapons and armor, as well as showing development also of Infantry. Copious quotations from original sources. Marks left by every great leader set forth—an epitomized biography of each great captain of Cavalry. This book won prize from Russian Emperor for best history of Cavalry. First edition, 1877; second, 1913. Most scholarly military book we have offered for many months. Read the fascinatingly written tales of the battles of the Cavalry from the dawn of history! No Cavalry officer's library can be complete without this particular book.

THE DESERT MOUNTED CORPS, by Lieut.-Col. the Hon. R. M. P. Preston, D. S. O. With introduction by Lieut.-Gen. Sir H. G. Chauvel, K. C. B., K. C. M. G. Price, \$4.50.

The Cavalry did wonders in the World War. By its victories in Palestine it rendered the defeat of the Central Powers inevitable. Read how the British Cavalry charged Infantry out of its trenches, took more than its own numbers in prisoners, in eleven days marched over 200 miles, took more than 60,000 prisoners, 140 guns, and 500 machine-guns in the Damascus campaign alone, and how in the Aleppo advance two Cavalry divisions went 367 miles, captured over 23,000 prisoners and 20 guns—about seven times its own strength. Read this book and be able to prove what you believe. No understanding of modern Cavalry can be complete without a thorough knowledge of this part of the war.

OTHER BOOKS ON THE PALESTINE CAMPAIGN

By W. T. Massey, official correspondent with the London newspapers with the Egyptian Expeditionary Force: **DESERT CAMPAIGNS**, illust., \$2.50; **HOW JERUSALEM WAS WON**, illust., \$3.45; **ALLENBY'S FINAL TRIUMPH**, illust., \$2.00.

This last book is a narrative of the final operations only of the Palestine campaigns after the capture of Jerusalem. "Three Turkish armies were wholly destroyed by the Cavalry passing around the flank to the rear and sitting astride every road the enemy could take to the north."

THE DIARY OF A YEOMANRY M. O., by Capt. O. Teichman, D. S. O., M. C. Describes the battles of Rafa, Gaza, Beersheba, Huj, and other operations in which the Cavalry bore an important part. \$3.50.

THE ADVANCE OF THE E. E. F. British official account with operation maps and Allenby's final reports. \$3.00.

EQUITATION, by H. L. de Bussigny, with photographic illustrations. \$7.50.

A pupil of Baucher and an old campaigner in the French Cavalry, this skilled riding master and horse trainer at age 76 publishes the results of a lifetime of experience and observation of the horse.

MODERN HORSE MANAGEMENT, by Major R. S. Timmis, D. S. O. 500 photos. \$5.00.

AS TO POLO, by W. Cameron Forbes.

The standard book of the game. Fourth edition. \$3.00.

THE STRATEGY ON THE WESTERN FRONT, by Col. H. H. Sargent. \$2.50.

A masterpiece written by a military strategist of acknowledged reputation. While its title refers to one front, it is actually a survey of the strategy of the whole war on all fronts, a thoughtful survey presented in such clear, concise fashion as to make the World War intelligible.

AS TO MILITARY TRAINING, arranged by Major John F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry.

An up-to-date manual especially adapted to the needs of the Mounted Service. 267 pages, illustrations, and maps. \$4.50. Special prices on lots.

"A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the Mounted Service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."

W. A. HOLBROOK,
Major-General, U. S. Army, Chief of Cavalry.

English edition of **THE GERMAN CAVALRY IN BELGIUM AND FRANCE: 1914**. By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector of Cavalry, German Army. Maps. Price, \$4.00.

ALMOST READY

The U. S. Cavalry Association has undertaken the publication of this important story of the German Cavalry's activities in 1914 on the Western Front. This is the part of the War so many people neglect to study. In almost all battles where Cavalry took part it usually began and ended the action. The war on the Western Front was one big battle. The German Cavalry began that battle. Initial maneuvers, concentrations, meeting engagements, services of security and information, patrol work, skirmishes and combats are reported. Read why the German armies could advance so rapidly at the beginning of the War. Most of the actions are described by participants. General von Poseck concludes his book with some valuable observations on Cavalry.

EDITION LIMITED—ORDER YOUR COPY NOW

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1922

VOL. XXXL No. 129

	Page
OBSERVATIONS ON THE RECENT INSPECTION.....	349
Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry.	
THE 50-60-MILE NIGHT RIDE.....	353
Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, Cavalry.	
THE FRENCH CAVALRY RAID IN THE BATTLE OF THE MARNE.....	356
General A. D. v. Kuhl, Chief of Staff of the 1st German Army, September, 1914.	
"M. I. D." AND HOW IT WORKS.....	361
Major Marlborough Churchill, General Staff Corps.	
THE BATTLE OF DARA.....	370
Captain J. M. Scammell, R. C.	
THE MODERN PENTATHLON IN THE OLYMPIC GAMES.....	374
Major Harold M. Rayner, Cavalry.	
THE RÔLE PLAYED BY THE SERBIAN CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR (continued)	376
Captain Gordon Gordon-Smith, Royal Serbian Army.	
JUMPING AND RACING IN THE A. F. G.....	390
Major John K. Herr, Cavalry.	
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA (continued).....	395
Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT:	
MILITARY DISCUSSIONS AND PUBLIC SPEAKING—OFFICERS OF THE ARMY AND PATRIOTISM—ONE WAY TO REACH YOUR COMMUNITY—BATTLE OF THE JADAB—OUT OF THE DOLDRUMS—BRASS POLISH AND ELBOW GREASE—CAVALRY COATS OF ARMS	403
TOPICS OF THE DAY:	
THE ARMY RELIEF SOCIETY—CAMP PERRY AND THE MARINE TROPHY—GOOD SHOOTING OF THE SECOND MACHINE-GUN SQUADRON—AIR SERVICE AND OTHER AUXILIARIES FOR CAVALRY—THOROUGHbred WINS IN THE COLORADO 300-MILE ENDURANCE RACE—MEMORIAL CROSS TO BE ERRECTED BY THE ARGONNE UNIT OF THE AMERICAN WOMEN'S LEGION—APPRECIATION OF THE HORSE AS A VITAL FACTOR IN WAR.....	409
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED.....	416
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS.....	421
POLO	423
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES.....	433
REGIMENTAL NOTES	435
THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT.....	444
THE NATIONAL GUARD.....	448

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Colonel WILLIAM C. RIVERS, Cavalry.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.
Colonel FRANCIS C. MARSHALL, Cavalry.
Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel JULIUS T. CONRAD, Adjutant General's Department.
Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBURG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel GEORGE VIDMER, Cavalry.
Colonel GEORGE E. MITCHELL, Cavalry.
Colonel STUART HEINTZELMAN (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry, Reserve Corps.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for \$2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXI

OCTOBER, 1922

No. 129

Observations on the Recent Inspection

BY

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry

TACTICAL TRAINING

TACTICAL training in some regiments was excellent, in others very good, and in some poor. Schools, as a rule, were satisfactory. In the best-trained regiments the mimeograph sheets from the Cavalry School and training memoranda from the office of the Chief of Cavalry were in constant use.

There was a marked difference as to the knowledge possessed by non-commissioned officers of different regiments in such matters as outposts, advance guards, patrolling, horsemastership, etc., which was considered to some extent indicative of the instruction they had received in these matters and an index as to the efficiency of the regiments.

It was gratifying to note that specialists were being developed in radio and other means of communication. In most regiments several radio operators were able to receive or send from 10 to 20 words per minute. Message centers were receiving desired attention.

The tactical use of the automatic rifle had not generally been developed. Most regiments now have improvised packs for these rifles, and it is believed that proper attention will hereafter be given to their tactical use. Every effort is being made to hasten the manufacture of machine rifles for supply to cavalry units.

Group targets were, as a rule, used to represent the enemy, but flank groups were not. It is believed important that unit commanders should be taught to search out possible cover in which flanking groups might be concealed.

Advance scouts were insufficiently instructed and failed to govern their advance by the physical characteristics of the ground. In many cases they

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

apparently had not been taught to advance by bounds or to vary their distances from the advance party according to variations in terrain.

Further practice is needed in maintaining liaison with lateral units; liaison in fire distribution between adjacent units also needs further attention.

MOBILITY

Greater attention should be paid to methods of feeding. More importance should be attached to keeping feed boxes free of grit. In regions subject to dust storms they should be upturned after each feeding. This is easily done by hinging one side of box with two staples.

Many junior officers are not thoroughly grounded in proper gaits and rates of march.

Several regiments have no cross-country courses. Some colonels do not appreciate the great value of this kind of instruction and its psychological effect upon their regiments.

Rusty nails were found in most corrals—in some cases were found in great abundance. At one post the veterinarian reported that he had five cases on sick report for this reason alone. Particularly in stables of temporary construction great and constant effort should be made to remove snag-nails from all woodwork around stalls.

IN GENERAL

Sufficient attention had not been paid to the adjustment of buckles and straps in order to prevent unnecessary wear on the equipment (saddle blanket, gun boot, saber scabbard) and to give to the enlisted man the maximum comfort in the saddle. It is believed that the importance of this has been recognized and duly corrected. Greater care should be given to proper biting and to smartness of appearance of horses and equipment.

Troop officers should know the horses of their troops. Every troop commander should be required to ride every horse in his troop at least once, and every platoon commander should be required to ride every horse in his platoon once. The officer then will have a more exact knowledge as to what correction is to be made when one is required. Even in this case it produces a far better impression on the man, and on the unit as a whole, if the enlisted man dismount and the officer demonstrate the correction.

It is essential that every troop officer ride the McClellan saddle with the enlisted man's equipment one day a month in order that he may appreciate how adjustments may be made in the equipment to give the maximum comfort to the man and how to take the proper seat in the saddle.

Troop officers should have a definite knowledge of every little detail about their troops: the weights of the different parts of the equipment, how it should

OBSERVATIONS ON THE RECENT INSPECTION

be packed, etc. Many troop commanders were found who did not have even an approximate idea of the weight of their field cooking outfit.

The Chief of Cavalry is gratified that so many of the colonels are recognizing the fact that it is their duty to be models in neatness and in dress, as well as to exemplify physical energy and activity. Most of them appreciate that every cavalry garrison should have at least a three-mile cross-country course with jumps not under three feet nor over three feet six, and that they should lead their officers over this course and over rough and varied ground. This, more than anything else, inculcates in the young officer a lack of fear, boldness of spirit, will to overcome obstacles, which qualities are so necessary for the successful cavalry officer.

The way in which the officers of some regiments were turned out was particularly fine—uniforms neat; hats identical in color and appearance; belts all alike in cut and color; every article of equipment placed exactly as prescribed; the whole setting a high standard of smartness greatly to be desired.

In some regiments there was excellent attention to detail in the matter of the dress of enlisted men—hat cords sewed on exactly as ordered, chin straps attached in a uniform manner, identification tags in place, etc. Regiments showing excellence in dress and equipment also, as a rule, showed good instruction in drill.

It is believed that high standards can be profitably set for recruits immediately on entering a troop. For example, the recruit may be shown a locker arranged exactly as prescribed and then be required to pack his own locker in that way and keep it so. Some regiments were able to secure immediate results in that way, while in others it was explained that the recruit had only been in the regiment a month or so and had not learned how as yet.

Horse-shows are being held in nearly every regiment, and standards in equipment, grooming, etc., are thus being established. Little details, such as ends of leather straps lying close to the horse's head, of keeping horses in the shade to protect their coats, polishing horses' hoofs (which it is desirable to require for at least one formation per week), etc., are impressed upon the command and are bound to have a desirable influence in matters of smartness.

In at least one regiment all officers were turned out with boots of the same color and appearance and, I might add, beautifully polished. In other regiments there was a noticeable lack in the matter of such details. Leggings were sometimes, though rarely, worn at mounted drill, to the detriment of uniformity and smartness.

In all regiments polo was being played with enthusiasm, a very large percentage of officers at each station participating.

At many stations encouragement is given civilians in equitation by the organization of classes for their benefit. There seems to be increasing interest shown by civilians in horsemanship, and at Des Moines, Iowa, large stables are

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

being built at the Country Club for stabling horses. It is believed decidedly worth while to encourage riding throughout the country in order to create a market for horses which will insure breeding of suitable saddle animals.

THE CAVALRY DIVISION

The personnel of the 1st Cavalry Division is working with enthusiasm to make of that organization something worth while. It gives high promise of becoming a most valuable and powerful influence in the training and development of the cavalry arm. The Cavalry Division, as was hoped, is rapidly becoming a school of instruction for specialists and for higher command. Officers privileged to serve with the division are fortunate, indeed, because of the opportunity for professional advancement there afforded them. The proper use of cavalry operating alone and in conjunction with its auxiliaries is demonstrated to the great benefit of participants and observers.

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

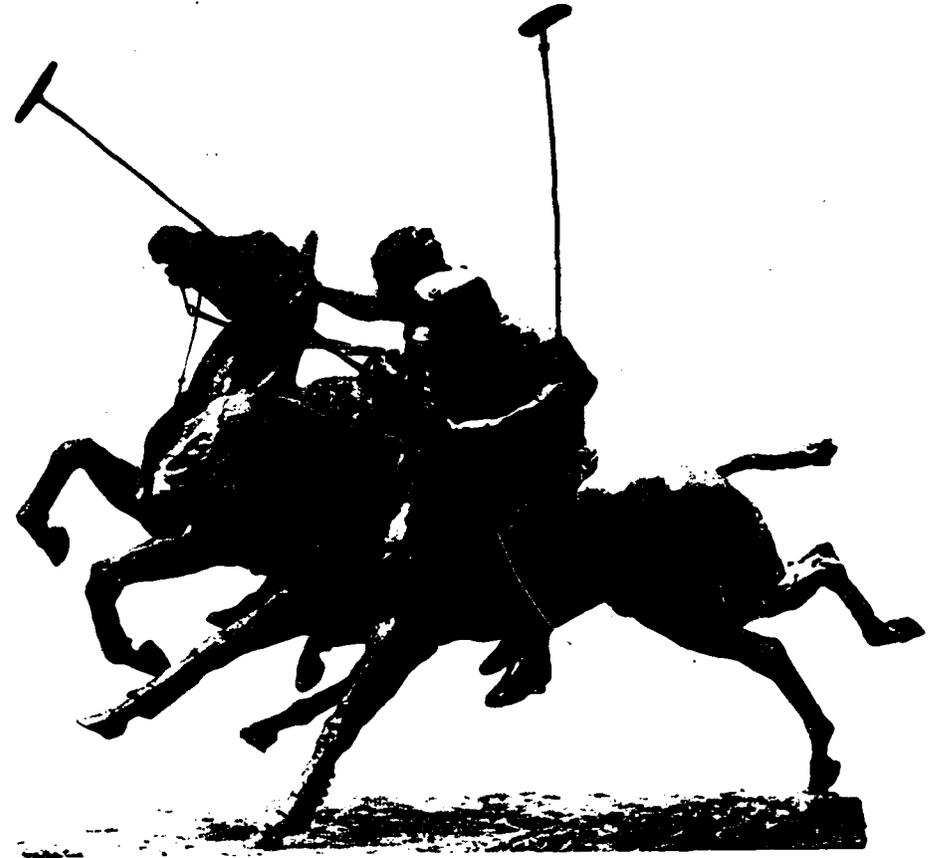
The Cavalry School is performing its mission in a most excellent manner. It was gratifying to hear its graduates so favorably mentioned and to note the enthusiasm and zeal with which all were carrying on at the school. It is hoped that the school may be allowed to operate to capacity until all our officers shall have graduated from one or more of its classes. There is no officer on the active list too young or too old to benefit by a tour of duty there.

RIDING OFF

"Riding Off," the striking bronze statuary group, an illustration of which appears opposite, was done by Herbert Haseltine, an American sculptor of note. This admirable piece, which will be appreciated by all lovers of polo and by horsemen generally, received honorable mention at the Salon des Artistes Francais in 1906.

During the war Mr. Haseltine was attached to the American Embassy in Paris. When America came into the war he joined the American Army, where he was one of the first organizers of the camouflage section.

Mr. Haseltine also executed recently an international polo trophy for the Hurlingham Club, a replica of which was presented to the four members of the American International Team and to the four members of the English International Team that engaged in the international match of 1921.



RIDING OFF



Photograph of Bob Leach, who was ridden by Lieutenant Colonel Martin in the 50-60-mile night ride at the Cavalry School and finished fifth, taken the day following the ride.

The 50-60-Mile Night Ride

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. MARTIN, Cavalry

THE Department of Horsemanship of the Cavalry School has just ventured forth and taken several more chances in the field of practice, the outcome of which has been very satisfactory, I believe: One a 21-mile ride by the basic class on their remounts (training colts); course unknown by riders, who follow the markers; riders allowed watch; time allowed, two hours; another, a ride for field officers over an unknown course and rate of speed unknown to riders until at starting point; rider follows staked course, not known to him, without watch or compass; the third, a 50-60-mile night ride over a course of country roads, not designated to rider until time to start; compass, map, and watch allowed. This ride was for field officers' and troop officers' classes.

Some of the horses were pretty well used up in the remount ride and in the 50-60-mile night ride, but it is remarkable how few suffered any ill effects when it is considered what was accomplished.

These rides were planned and adopted as a means of instruction, and, as a matter of fact, in consideration of all the experience they afford the student from beginning to end, they furnish the individual with a basis upon which to form a standard which he can use in his future work, both in peace and war. The adoption of such rides or similar ones, in regular schedules of instruction, would be an improvement and another step forward. Of course, such work must be preceded by careful training and arranged for by officers who have had experience along these lines.

When the record made on this 55-mile night ride becomes known (55.5 miles in 5 hours, by Captain Charles H. Gerhardt, on *Dolomite*), some officers without experience, and not familiar with the conditions, are apt to follow their noses and come to grief, attempting to duplicate the ride in point of time and distance, but very probably under less favorable circumstances. Some of the peculiar conditions attending this ride are here noted.

Most of the horses were in good condition for the ride as a result of their daily work up to the time the ride took place. We had had a great deal of rain, and constant work in the mud developed and hardened their muscles, and at the same time their wind and breathing was improved.

At the time of the ride the rain had ceased, the roads had hardened and smoothed out, and the horses went along a maximum distance with a minimum of effort at each stride.

The first part of the ride was on low ground along the river valley through Ogdan, thence north to Keats. The early part of the evening was warm (ride started at about 9:50 p. m. June 8), and a slight breeze of about the same

rate at which we were traveling was blowing in the direction of our march. This caused the horses to sweat and become winded and had a tendency to keep the speed down in the beginning. This is a good rule to follow, as a general thing, but it probably would not have been done in this case had weather conditions not been to the advantage of the riders. Beyond Keats the course turned and lay in a northwesterly direction to Riley Center. With the course at this part of the ride on higher ground, the night growing cooler, and the breeze striking the horses and riders on the flank, both speeded up without effort. From Riley Center the course turned directly south to Junction City. The night had grown cooler all the way. We were on high ground and the wind was now in our faces. The horses, which had been spared by their riders the first part of the ride, as a result of the weather conditions in the early part of the night, seemed to grow stronger and move faster the farther they went.

All dismounting was discontinued, schedules were abandoned (the highest rate considered by me before starting the ride was 9 miles per hour—6 minutes trotting at 10 miles, 3 minutes galloping at 12 miles, 3 minutes leading at 4 miles, and repeat), and the last 25 miles were made by those who came in within the first five by alternating a fast trot with the gallop.

Riders were in good condition and displayed esprit and enthusiasm. Everybody had been participating in various riding competitions and felt prepared to exert themselves and horses to advantage.

Horses available at the school from which to make selection have been accumulated after a great deal of eliminating from year to year of horses that are not considered best suited for the work there. Also, the horses from which the students were allowed to choose were designated by officers who have participated in at least one Olympic game and who have had the advantage of experience, which tends to enable to better determine beforehand, so far as the eye can see, the most likely horse for this work.

Although the ride was made at night, there was a bright moon, so that the horses could move rapidly with very little difficulty as regards light.

The salient points just mentioned, peculiar to the ride, should be borne in mind by those who may consider the record made.

The 55-mile night ride (as well as the others mentioned above), which was initiated by the Department of Horsemanship and approved and encouraged by the Commandant, was an advance step which was carried through by faculty and students in a manner which should result in increased efficiency along these lines in the cavalry.

The following is a description of my mount during this ride, *Bob Leach*, who came in fifth, in a class of 70 riders:

Jumper Class, the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kans.; bred in Virginia—a half bred; brown gelding; age, 11 years; weight, 950 pounds; height at

withers, 15 hands 1½ inches (barefooted); height at croup, 15 hands 2¼ inches (barefooted); girth, 67½ inches; belly measurement, over loins and around flanks, 67 inches; cannon, fore leg, just below knee, 8 inches; upper forearm at elbow, 19¼ inches; top of withers to point of shoulder, 27 inches; poll to withers, 36 inches; withers to point of croup, 34 inches; point of hip to point of buttock, 22 inches; point of hip to point of hock, 37½ inches; circumference of bearing surface of foot (front), 16½ inches.

Time used in making the ride, 5½ hours, 10 miles per hour.

Total weight carried, 188 pounds.

He was used in the Troop Officers' Jumper Class and was not ridden by me until three days before the ride. He was strong and responded instantly to the slightest sign to increase the speed to the end of the ride.

Bob Leach has a good walk, very fast natural trot, and a wonderfully long, smooth, and elastic stride at the gallop, is as game as a rattlesnake, and asks no favors of anybody. I consider him a good type for messenger service, where it is desired to carry a minimum load at a maximum speed.

PUBLIC SPIRIT

"The nation is sound at heart, but individuals are too often prone to neglect their obligations to give serious thought to matters of grave national import. Let us invoke the public spirit and the patriotic enthusiasm of our noble ancestry, and realize that it becomes the duty of every earnest citizen who believes in the permanence of our Republic to assume a more active participation in affairs of the nation. Let us openly fight against those evil tendencies, often insidiously supported by propaganda, which if neglected must eventually undermine and destroy us. As in the early days of the nation, eternal vigilance is ever the price of liberty."—*From General Pershing's Speech at Marion on Independence Day.*

The French Cavalry Raid in the Battle of the Marne*

BY

General A. D. v. KUHL, Chief of Staff of the 1st German Army,
September, 1914

BEFORE about a thousand hearers, among them two marshals of France and about fifty generals, the French General Pelecier, former commanding general of the 12th Army Corps, delivered a lecture on "A Cavalry Raid"; which lecture has since appeared in print. From this advertisement one might expect a presentation of value to military science. The audience, however, evidently set less value on military history than on an amusing entertainment by General Pelecier, who, according to the foreword by General Fonville, has quickly developed from a commanding general into an instructor of the first rank.

It is worth while for us to concern ourselves with this lecture in order to understand how military history will be developed in France. The lecture will at the same time have a cheering effect.

In the preface this question is put: Is the rôle of cavalry, in this age of aircraft, of machine-guns, of trench warfare and barbed wire, played out? General Fonville justly denies this and points to the fact that on March 23, 1918, only by the use of three cavalry divisions was it possible to close the breach between the English and French at Noyon-Montdidier-Moreuil until the arrival of French infantry. Up to that time a dreadful anxiety prevailed. What might have resulted if two or three German divisions had been thrown into this gap! †

General Pelecier, however, hangs his view of the importance of cavalry upon the raid of the 5th Cavalry Division in the Battle of the Marne, in 1914. After the French Cavalry Corps Sordet that had marched into Belgium August 5, 1914, was turned back, it was already completely used up. *The mistake had been made of riding patrol with a whole cavalry corps.*

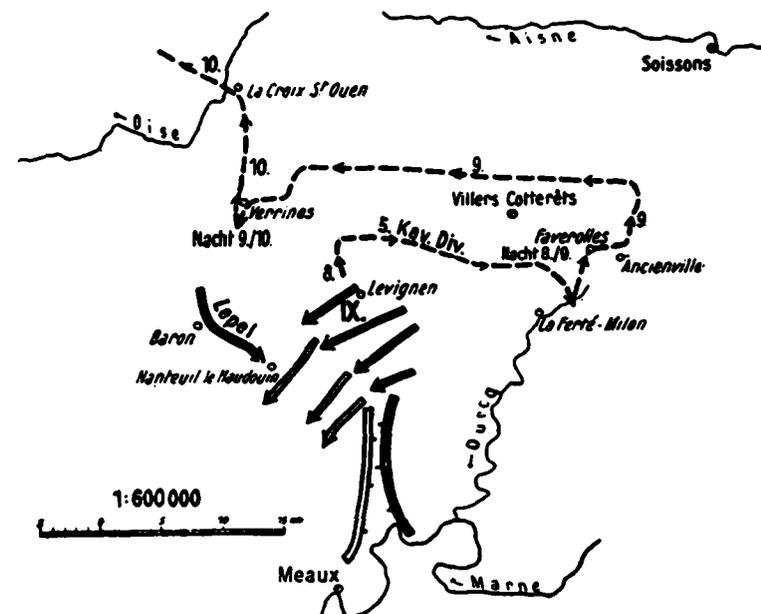
On September 8, 1914, the Battle of the Marne found it on the extreme left flank, with the Army of Maunoury, which attacked the German Army of von Kluck in flank. Since the 5th of September the Battle of the Ourcq had been in progress. The situation of the Army of Maunoury, menaced by a violent, extensive attack of the 1st German Army, became critical. The 5th Cavalry Division, under General Cornulier-Lucinière, received the order, in

* *Militär-Wochenblatt*, August 13, 1921.

† See "The Offensive of March," 1918, by Commandant Toussan, in July, 1922, *CAVALRY JOURNAL*.

FRENCH CAVALRY RAID IN THE BATTLE OF THE MARNE

spite of its fatigue, to take the direction of La Ferte-Milon and strike the opponent on the Ourcq in the rear, to bring its artillery into action, and to endeavor thus to cause an enemy withdrawal. It can be readily perceived what difficult circumstances Maunoury was in when resort to such means of relief was made. The hope of causing a retreat of the 1st Army by a thunder of guns in their rear was a forlorn one.



SITUATION AT THE BATTLE OF THE OURCQ AT NOON OF SEPTEMBER 9TH

The course of the undertaking is long since well known through the account by General de Cornulier-Lucinière, published under the pseudonym Hethay. Therefore we are only interested here in the observations of General Pelecier on this operation.

The 5th Cavalry Division left Levignen September 8, attacked a German aërodrome in the neighborhood of La Ferte-Milon, and bivouacked near Faverolles. September 9, after some marching and countermarching, it was decided to withdraw toward Verrines, and on the 10th the division proceeded by La Croix St. Ouen back over the Oise; and with that the whole operation was ended. The horses were completely done up. Rations, oats, and ammunition were exhausted. The losses, according to the statement of Pelecier, were considerable. Now what was effected?

Pelecier believes that the activity of the cavalry must have contributed to the decision of General von Kluck to retreat September 9. Indeed, it must be

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

remembered that von Kluck had turned "quick and decided" against the menace of Maunoury's flank attack and was on the point of enveloping Maunoury in turn. The French left wing had some "anxious hours." While, on the evening of September 8, they were ready by Nanteuil le Haudouin to hold out and to sacrifice, if need be, there, suddenly, "to the greatest surprise and with indescribable joy," it was observed that they had only enemy rear guards against them. The cannon thunder of the 5th Cavalry Division in his rear and the danger to his communications led von Kluck to retreat! He has it from a war correspondent that even the army headquarters was threatened by the French cavalry division.

Another occurrence, which von Kluck has not related, that happened in Ancienville and was narrated by a French witness: General von Kluck and his staff appeared (it seems) at Ancienville at 10 o'clock in the morning. A dinner for 42 persons had been prepared. The mistress of the château charged von Kluck vehemently with the destruction undertaken in the place by the Germans. During the meal reports continued to come in to the General. Suddenly the General and his whole staff decamped, left the dinner, and hurried off. This procedure was also, according to General Pelecier, occasioned by the activity of the 5th Cavalry Division. Instead of this, von Kluck attributes the cause of his retreat solely to a communication of Lieutenant-Colonel Hentsch over the condition of the adjacent 2d Army.

What, now, is the truth in these stories? It is true that the army headquarters nearly fell into the hands of the French Cavalry Division at La Ferte-Milon on the afternoon of September 8. The army headquarters was on the way toward the right flank, where, at 9 a. m., the decision through the envelopment of the enemy, should be reached, and to obtain information from the farthest forward point possible, La Ferte-Milon. Our 9th Army Corps, marching on this point, had not yet arrived, however. As our long lines of motor lorries approached the place, we heard the report of cannon and judged that enemy cavalry was near. The officers of the staff deployed for a fight on foot; several rode forward on reconnaissance. The enemy, however, in spite of the proximity, had not observed us. In the evening the heads of the columns of the 9th Corps arrived, with which we marched into La Ferte-Milon. Thus the army headquarters was saved from a ticklish situation in which it was caught as a result of getting in advance of its own infantry. The French cavalry let slip the rare opportunity of bagging an entire army staff in the middle of the crisis of battle. The incident was without any effect on the dispositions of the army headquarters, however.

The affair at Ancienville, which General Pelecier adorns in the style of the historian and fiction writer, Hanotaux, is wholly invented. General von Kluck and his staff never were there. Rather, on the forenoon of September 10, they were traveling from the La Ferte-Milon on the direct road toward Villers-Cotterets, where a halt was made. As I was with the General uninter-

FRENCH CAVALRY RAID IN THE BATTLE OF THE MARNE

ruptedly, there can be no possibility of error in this statement. The whole staff can testify to it, moreover. The fanciful hostess of the Château Ancienville, if she actually told this story to General Pelecier, labored under a great delusion, at least.

The activity of the 5th French Cavalry Division had no influence upon the decisions of the headquarters of the 1st Army at the Battle of the Ourcq. Specifically, the decision to retreat on the 9th was made upon entirely other grounds.

In conclusion, it may be said that the raid was fruitless and was badly carried out. On September 9 the division arrived at the extreme northern wing of the battle, where each of the opposing sides had successfully outflanked its opponent. While on our side the 9th Army Corps, hurried up by forced march, attacked early on the 9th in decisive manner, the French had become wholly exhausted. They had no more reserves to dispose of. So much the more necessary was it to hold the whole Cavalry Corps that day on the flank against the threatened envelopment, instead of turning loose a division to roam around in the woods, the doings of which we hardly noticed. Only on the evening of the 9th a report of the inspector of the line of communications reached us to the effect that enemy cavalry had interrupted ammunition and supply columns from Villers-Cotterets.

Above all, the task of the French army cavalry should have been to stop the German Brigade Lepel marching past Baron toward Nanteuil le Handouin, in the French rear. But this it did not do.

After the 5th Cavalry Division was sent out, first it let slip the opportunity to pick up the German Army Headquarters near La Ferte-Milon, and then spent the night of September 8/9 at Faverolles, 6 kilometers from that army headquarters.

When, on September 9, General von Kluck decided upon a withdrawal toward the Aisne in the direction of Soissons and to the west of there, the 5th French Cavalry Division was actually in the German rear. But here also they did not understand how to take advantage of a stroke of good luck. Precisely on this day they marched toward the west and left the German avenues of retreat open. They could have hurried to the Aisne and disputed the crossing. This is exactly what we feared. The first measure taken by the headquarters of the 1st Army, upon the decision to withdraw, was to send the weak 4th Cavalry Division to the Aisne to secure the crossings. The withdrawal was effected, however, without any interference of the enemy cavalry.*

* Major L. Chenevix-Trench, R. E., British Army, author of a brief of this article in the October, 1921, *Royal Engineers' Journal*, comments as follows upon General Kuhl's criticisms:

"It is, however, difficult to see how the 5th Division could, without the most extraordinary good luck, have known of the proximity of von Kluck's headquarters or be blamed for not going for the Aisne crossings, when a general German retreat was the last thing any one was expecting."

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The strong enemy cavalry had, it will be seen, important tasks on the French left flank. None of them were fulfilled, although we had only a little cavalry to oppose to them. The sketch shows how the 5th Cavalry Division, at the decisive moments of their tasks, cleared out of the way.

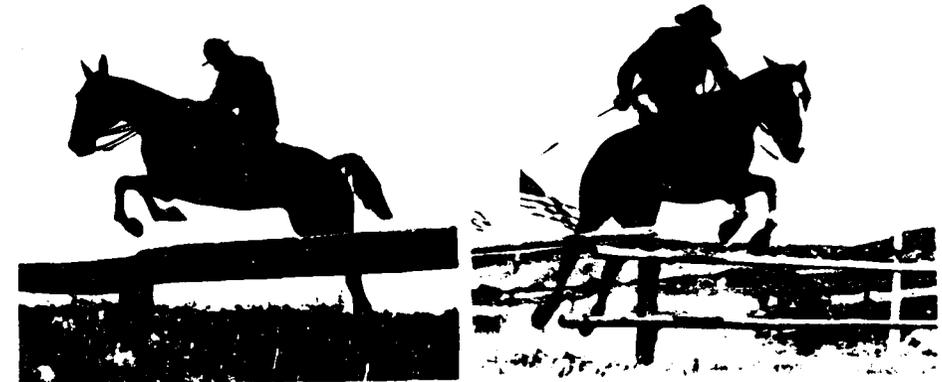
Unfortunately, our army cavalry was not suitably distributed from the beginning. The 3d and 4th Cavalry Corps, sent to the left wing of the army in Lorraine and to the Maas, respectively, found no proper field of action in those regions. A strong cavalry corps should, on the other hand, have been put at the disposal of the right wing. It might have had a deciding influence on the Battle of the Marne.

Neither opponent succeeded in assembling on the decisive extreme flank of the Marne Battle, where the rare opportunity offered of the most effectual employment of large cavalry masses, a strong, efficient army cavalry.

THE AUSTRALIAN WALER

ADAPTED FROM DESCRIPTION BY WILL H. OGILVIE IN "THE FIELD,"
THE COUNTRY GENTLEMEN'S NEWSPAPER

Pre-eminent among long-distance horses of the world,
Stamped with courage and remarkable endurance,
Sired by the thoroughbred many times over,
Perfected by rough exacting education,
Tried severely in pluck throughout his career,
Ridden to utmost limit of his strength, comes home leg-weary but game;
Galled by hard leather girths,
Cut by sweat-roughened and badly stuffed saddles,
Tied for hours in the scorching sun, ridden long hours without water,
Pastured at night in drought-stricken prairies,
Tortured by mosquitoes and sand-flies,
Enveloped most times by the dust of mobs of cattle and sheep,
Engulfed in the mud of the flooded plains,
Yet he never falls.
Flinches only a little when the cold saddle touches the raw,
When the sharp-edged girth renews the torture of yesterday's gall.
He canters through the scented sandal-bush at noon, tireless and free;
Comes home at sunset with bridle-slapping walk, high-headed and unbeat;
Swings merrily to town of a Saturday night,
Wins his race, game always, thoroughly keen;
Such the stock-horse of Australia. . . .



THE DEWEY TROPHY COMPETITION AT THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

THE WINNER OF THE FIELD OFFICERS' POINT-TO-POINT RACE
Major Thomas taking one of the jumps

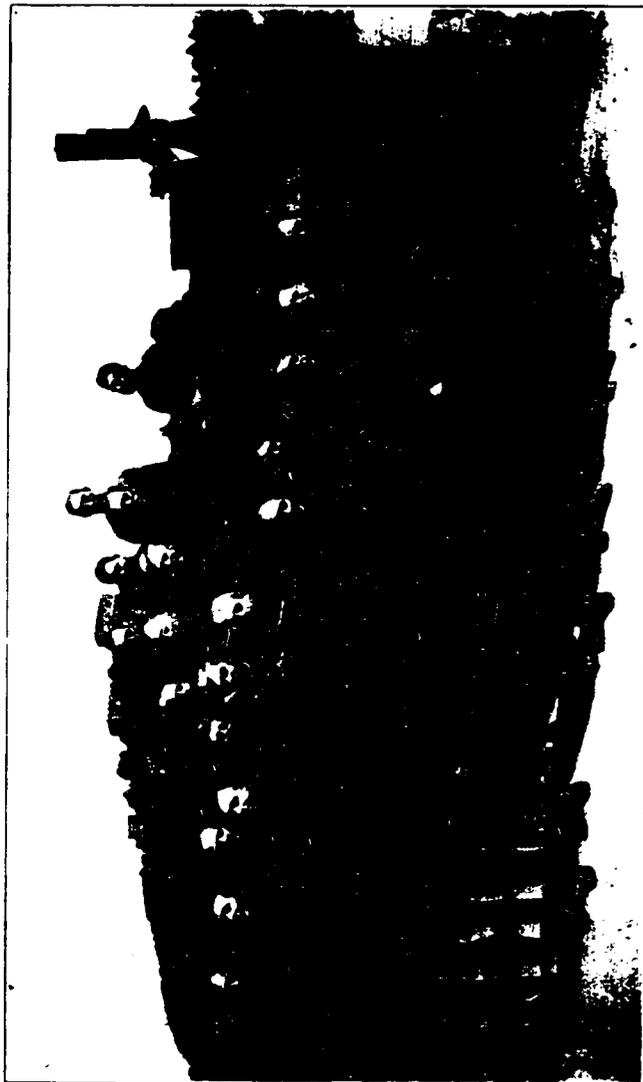
POINT-TO-POINT RACE FOR FIELD OFFICERS
Lieutenant-Colonel A. B. Coxie coming in over the Russian Ride Course

A DIFFICULT JUMP

Black Kettle, Captain Walker up, taking the jump which eliminated many of the other contestants for the Dewey Trophy. Four feet of water before the rails caused many refusals

WINNERS IN THE COMPETITION FOR THE DEWEY TROPHY

Major-General John L. Hines pinning the blue ribbon on Chester, Captain Malcolm Byrne up; 2d. Black Kettle, Captain I. G. Walker up; 3d. Blount, Captain Harry Branson up; 4th. Round Up, Lieutenant W. T. Fletcher up



MILITARY ATTACHE CONFERENCE AT COBLENZ, JUNE, 1921

Top Row: Lieut. BOOTHBY (M. I. D.), Second Row: Major BERRY (G. 2, A. F. in G.), Major GIBB (Belgium), Major COLVIN (Sweden), Major VILLAM (France), Third Row: Lieut. Col. BRUCE (Austria), Lieut. Col. ALLEN (G. 2), Lieut. Col. CASTLE (Turkey), Fourth Row: Major BOUMER (Sweden), Major ELLIS (Hungary), Major HODGWAY (Belgium) and Battle Practises, Fifth Row: Major VAN NATA (Switzerland), Lieut. Col. MANN (Czechoslovakia), Lieut. Col. COX (Turkey), Lieut. Col. THOMAS (Belgium), Col. JONES (Italy), Lieut. Col. DAVIS (Germany), Lieut. Col. FORTSON (Romania), Lieut. Col. CURRY (Germany), Lieut. Col. GIBSON (Switzerland), Major SHALLENBORN (Greece and Jugoslavina).

"M. I. D." and How It Works*

BY

Major MARLBOROUGH CHURCHILL, General Staff Corps

NO private corporation can ever successfully conduct business unless its managing directors are in the possession of correct information. In a similar way the business of our Government cannot be carried on without waste, delay, and loss of prestige unless governmental decisions are predicated upon facts and not upon theories. To obtain this essential information accurately and promptly and to prepare it in usable form, every Federal governmental agency must collaborate and co-operate with every other. The officers of all executive departments must realize that no one single department unaided by the others, will ever be able to obtain a comprehensive view or complete understanding of any broad or complicated question. In the interlocking system of governmental information each department must play its part, and all must work together.

Before the Great War, to a regrettable extent, the State Department, the War Department, the Navy Department, the Department of Commerce, and the Department of Justice occupied adjoining water-tight compartments. The Great War broke down the bulkheads joining these compartments, especially in the matter of obtaining and interchanging information. Today they are all working together, and the co-operation is becoming better every day.

Since 1917 the Military Intelligence Division of the War Department General Staff, known within the War Department as G-2, or the Second Division of the General Staff, but commonly referred to outside the Department as M. I. D., has gradually come to play its part in this governmental co-operation.

A BLIND PRIZE-FIGHTER

An army without an efficient intelligence service is like a prize-fighter without ears or eyes. However, in spite of this well-accepted axiom, our neglect of military intelligence in the years which immediately preceded the Great War was well-nigh incredible. The service evolved during the Civil War soon dropped back to nothing and remained at zero until 1885. In that year a simple inquiry from the Secretary of War as to the strength of a foreign army brought forth the fact that not a single officer in the War Department was charged with the collection, evaluation, and dissemination of military information.

* From the *American Consular Bulletin*, March, 1922.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

This incident led to the creation of a Military Information Division in the office of the Adjutant General. In 1903 the General Staff was organized by Secretary Root, and the information service of the Adjutant General's office was transferred to it. But, on account of the small number of General Staff officers and also because of the regrettable lack of appreciation of the importance of intelligence in time of peace, it was never properly organized or supported. In 1908, due to a faulty reorganization of the General Staff, it dropped into insignificance. As a result, we went into a war with Germany with a Military Intelligence Service consisting of two officers and two clerks in Washington and a few military attachés and military observers in foreign countries. The officers in foreign countries were left almost without supervision, direction, or support and often "carried on" with help of their own personal funds. The appropriation for the fiscal year 1917 reached the ridiculous figure of \$11,000! This state of affairs left our Army blind.

WHAT PERSHING STARTED WITH

Even when General Pershing landed in Europe, in May, 1917, he had but three intelligence officers, who were faced with the task of furnishing him with information concerning the enemy and of groping through the baffling complications of European intrigue.

From these tiny beginnings there were quickly developed the highly efficient intelligence service of the American Expeditionary Forces known as G-2, G. H. Q., and the vast, globe-covering system directed by M. I. D. in Washington. These two services were parts of one well-knit, harmonious whole. This result, which played its part in the ultimate victory, was due to the ability and devotion to duty of Brigadier General Dennis E. Nolan, General Pershing's intelligence officer, and of Colonel Ralph H. Van Deman, the "father of American military intelligence."

The work these officers and their associates did and the system they built up were generally recognized as being essential elements of war-time national organization. To the success of their work both the Diplomatic Service and the Consular Service contributed much.

SINCE THE WAR

The peace-time necessity for continuing military intelligence work was not so generally accepted; and the present position of intelligence in the organization of the War Department General Staff and in the interlocking system of governmental information has not been attained without three years of struggle against prejudice and pre-conceived erroneous ideas. It has been particularly difficult to convince Congress that the \$11,000 appropriated for the primitive system of 1917 is not sufficient for the modern, comprehensive system of 1919, 1920, 1921, and 1922.

"M. I. D." AND HOW IT WORKS

Any army General Staff must be organized so as to supervise administration, to furnish information, to make plans, and to supervise and co-ordinate supply. Our Army has perpetuated the well-trying war-time general staff organization; and the General Staff is now organized into the first or Personnel Division (G-1), the second or Military Intelligence Division (G-2), the third or Operations and Training Division (G-3), and the fourth or Supply Division (G-4). On these four divisions General Pershing has wisely superimposed a fifth or War Plans Division, to handle major policies and to become a General Headquarters in time of war, which can be transferred to the field without disrupting the War Department General Staff.

The functions assigned to the Military Intelligence Division, or G-2, by General Orders No. 41, 1921, are as follows:

The Military Intelligence Division is charged, in general, with those duties of the War Department General Staff which relate to the collection, evaluation, and dissemination of military information. It is specifically charged with the preparation of plans and policies and the supervision of all activities concerning:

- (1) Military topographical surveys and maps, including their reproduction and distribution (except special situation maps prepared by G-3).
- (2) The custody of the General Staff map and photograph collection.
- (3) Military attachés, observers, and foreign language students.
- (4) Intelligence personnel of all units.
- (5) Liaison with other intelligence agencies of the Government and with duly accredited foreign military attachés and missions.
- (6) Codes and ciphers.
- (7) Translations.
- (8) Relations with the press.
- (9) Censorship in time of war.

One of the major functions assigned to G-2 is the furnishing to the War Plans Division and other divisions of the General Staff the correct military and geographic information essential to the efficient preparation of war plans. But another major function is that of collecting, evaluating, collating, and disseminating correct information as to the military, political, and economic situation in all parts of the world in order that the necessity for the initiation of war plans may be correctly foreseen and foreseen in time to be of value.

EVERY SIDE OF LIFE STUDIED

Before the Great War the majority of military men concentrated their attention upon the purely military factor in any given situation and left to their diplomatic colleagues all consideration of political, economic, and psychologic factors. The conflict with Germany taught us all that wars are waged not by armies and navies alone, but by nations; that they are brought

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

about by political events; that their continuance is often dependent upon the economic factor, and that final defeat or victory is generally involved in the morale or state of mind of the peoples involved—in other words, by the psychologic factor. The soldier must occupy himself with a study of the entire situation.

Recognizing these truths, the Military Intelligence Division has adopted the maxim that the situation in any given country is not comprehensively understood unless all four factors—combat, political, economic, and psychologic—are understood.

PRESENT ORGANIZATION

The various branches and sections of M. I. D. are organized and arranged so as to perform the five essential functions of any information service, viz., to administer, to collect, to evaluate, to collate, and to disseminate.

The various agencies necessary to the administration of the Division are grouped around the Chief of the Division, who, in War Department parlance, is known as the A. C. of S., G-2, and his executive assistant. The A. C. of S., G-2, is one of the five Assistant Chiefs of Staff of the Army and, on approved policies, has authority to issue orders in the name of the Secretary of War. This high authority is necessary to the prestige of the Division and to the prompt and effective transaction of business. If the War Department were a commercial concern, this officer would be known as one of the managing directors. The present incumbent is Colonel Stuart Heintzelman, General Staff, who during the war was a brigadier-general and Chief of Staff of the 2d Army, American Expeditionary Forces.

These administrative and executive agencies of the Division consist of five sections, known as the Administration Section, the Communication Section, the Training Section, the Press Relations Section, and the Military Attaché Section.

The Administration Section has the custody of the voluminous files of the Division and the administration of all matters connected with finance, supply, personnel, and office management, including the dispatch of mail and cables.

The Communication Section is charged with the formulation of War Department policies relative to codes and ciphers and with the supervision of all means of secret or confidential communication in the Army. During the war with Germany the work of this section carried it into a field of endeavor hitherto almost entirely unknown to the War Department or the Government of the United States as a whole. Early in the war it was realized that secret means of communication were essential to its successful prosecution and also that, in order to combat the means employed by a skillful and crafty enemy, a War Department agency was required in order to make an exhaustive study of this complicated subject and to put to practical use the results of such

"M. I. D." AND HOW IT WORKS

study. This study involved a knowledge of shorthand, codes, ciphers, secret inks, etc. During the late war this section successfully administered an extensive Military Intelligence code-room for the handling of the many thousand messages sent and received in code and cipher; but since the war all active administration of such matters has been centralized in the office of the Adjutant General of the Army.

The Training Section is charged with the formulation of policies concerning the intelligence personnel, active and reserve, of all units of the Army and with the supervision of their training and employment. Especial attention is given to the organization and efficiency of the Military Intelligence Section of the Officers' Reserve Corps, which will be called into active service in the event of another national emergency.

The Press Relations Section is the central co-ordinating agency of the War Department charged with the release to the press and the service journals of all items of information concerning the War Department and of all non-confidential information received from abroad. It is also charged with the formulation of policies concerning press correspondents in time of war.

THE MILITARY ATTACHÉ SYSTEM

The Military Attaché Section initiates the choice of military attachés, military observers, and language officers, supervises their training, administers their affairs, and sees that their reports are put in proper hands, acknowledged and criticised. The section also acts as a central, co-ordinating agency for liaison with the State Department in all matters in which the War Department and a foreign government are concerned. Other important duties involve liaison with foreign military attachés in Washington and the development of all sources of information in civil life.

The constant aim of this section is the development of the Military Attaché System into a useful Government agency. From 1889 until our declaration of war, in 1917, some of the ablest officers in the Army had served as military attachés and observers, but there was no system which provided them with appropriate guidance, support, or sympathetic administration, or which made certain that the information they gathered was properly used. In addition to these excellent officers there were unfortunately some chosen in a most haphazard manner, the choice sometimes being determined by personal acquaintance or solely by the fact that an officer had a private income which would enable him to live in a foreign capital. This branch is still restricted largely to officers who are not entirely dependent upon their salaries, because Congress has never appropriated sufficient money for extraordinary personal expenses. But the financial consideration is no longer the controlling one, and every effort is made to obtain officers for this duty who have a good basic professional training, the special personality required for duty

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

abroad, and, if possible, a knowledge of an appropriate foreign language. Above all, an attempt is made to detail officers who have a co-operative spirit and who can work wholeheartedly for the good of the country with their colleagues in the Diplomatic and Consular Service.

The Military Attaché System now comprises thirty-one military attachés in thirty-one foreign capitals, fourteen assistants, and six special assistants from the Air Service, who are stationed in London, Paris, Berlin, Rome, and Tokyo. By a grouping of countries made necessary by reasons of economy, fifty-five different countries are covered.

Outside of these administrative and executive sections, the two main working agencies of M. I. D. are the Geographic Branch and the Positive Branch. In these branches the information collected by the Military Attaché Section and the intelligence officers of combatant units is handled and prepared for use.

MAPS AND MILITARY GUIDEBOOKS

All geographic and map information is handled by the Geographic Branch, consisting of the Map Section and the Geographic Monograph Section. This branch is charged with the direction of the War Department policy with respect to maps and map-making, with all questions concerning maps of foreign countries, with the preparation of geographic monographs and zone handbooks, and with the custody of the General Staff map collection.

The Map Section is charged with the formulation of map policy for the War Department; with the custody of the foreign map collection of the War Department; with the procurement and issue of all foreign maps, and with the compilation of map information procured by M. I. D. The map collection now filed and indexed consists of over 450,000 maps (sheets), and is being augmented daily. Normal accessions during the past year numbered 53,503. Of these, 20,852 were catalogued and added to the collection; 33,251, mostly duplicates, were distributed, and 26,868 were issued for official use.

The preparation of zone handbooks and geographic monographs is charged to another section of this branch. The first output of this section was the series of Siberian Handbooks prepared for General Graves. The Murmansk and Archangel handbooks supplied a want not provided for by other allied intelligence services, were used by all allied troops, and reflected credit on our Army.

Zone handbooks are essentially tactical and deal with detailed information relating to cities, railways, other land routes, air routes, and water routes lying within a zone consisting of an objective and its approaches, whose boundaries are determined by tactical considerations. These books may best be described as military guide books or military Baedekers. They are designed to furnish combatant officers, as well as the planning and operating elements of the staff, recent and reliable information, vital to the success of our forces in the field.

"M. I. D." AND HOW IT WORKS

While it would be most desirable to cover the entire world with compiled zone handbooks, the magnitude of the project and the limited personnel available not only to collate and evaluate the data, but to maintain it up to date, are practical conditions which constitute a bar. Hence the work must be restricted to selected regions or countries which are considered as actually or potentially sensitive.

THE POSITIVE BRANCH

Outside of geographic and map information all information received by M. I. D. is handled by the Positive Branch, consisting of the Information Section, the Foreign Influence Section, the Publication Section, the Planning Section, and the Translation Section.

The Positive Branch derives its name from the fact that during the war there was another important branch of M. I. D. known as the Negative Branch, whose function it was to thwart or "negative" the attempts of the enemy to obstruct our military effort. This Negative Branch was concerned with such war-time matters as investigation of suspects, censorship, contre-espionage, passport control, etc., whereas the Positive Branch was concerned, as it is today, with the positive effort of obtaining and making available military information.

WHAT IS THE SITUATION AND WHAT WILL IT BE?

The most important section of the Positive Branch is the Information Section. The underlying principle of this section is that, for the entire world, M. I. D. should attempt to be ready to answer the questions, "What is the situation today?" and "What is the future situation likely to be?"

This does not merely mean that, if called upon, officers and clerks can be set to work to prepare a memorandum or prepare an opinion on the situation in a given country. It means that the Positive Branch has a normal product designed automatically and instantly to answer all reasonable inquiries, provided the inquirer is familiar with this normal product. This normal product consists of (a) the situation monographs; (b) the current estimates; (c) the original sources or supporting data upon which (a) and (b) are based.

The primary function of the Information Section, or M. I. 2, as it is designated, is to weigh and digest information, to interpret it, to prepare the result in usable form, and to place it in the hands of those who should use it. M. I. 2 would be useless if it were simply a storehouse of information; it must also be a salesroom and distributing center.

The prepared detailed information is in the form of four monographs, Combat, Political, Economic, and Psychologic, maintained for every country in the world. It is periodically summarized in the Current Estimates, which are in loose-leaf volumes distributed throughout the General Staff, the State Department, the Department of Commerce, and to embassies and legations abroad.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

DISSEMINATION

On the recommendation of the United States Minister at The Hague, made in 1921, that he be furnished with all Current Estimates, it was decided to furnish each military attaché with a complete set for the use of his chief of mission. This has been accomplished. This means that each of the thirty-one embassies and legations at which we maintain a military attaché is as accurately advised on the general current situation in each country of the world as M. I. D. is. Revisions of all Estimates go forward automatically as they issue. The military attaché is specifically instructed to do two things in connection with these estimates: First, to bring them to the attention of every American official (diplomatic, naval, consular, and commercial) whom they can possibly serve; second, to bring competent criticism to bear on these estimates in order that their accuracy may be ever increased. The estimates improve in accuracy directly as our information improves.

Each military attaché is also furnished with the Situation Monograph (all four factors—military, political, economic, and psychologic) pertaining to the country to which he is assigned and in many cases to contiguous countries which may be charged to his supervision. The same rules applying to the estimates in the preceding paragraph relative to availability apply to the monographs. This means that our representative in a foreign country is actually as well advised on his country as M. I. D. is.

NOT A SECRET SERVICE

The Foreign Influence Section was, during the war, one of the principal sections of the former Negative Branch. Under war-time conditions it was charged with the investigation of charges of disloyalty made against individuals and groups, and worked in the closest liaison with Naval Intelligence, the Department of Justice, the State Department, the Treasury Secret Service, the War Trade Board, and all other agencies of the Government engaged in similar investigational work. In collaboration with these co-operating agencies and with the other sections of the old Negative Branch, M. I. 4, as it is designated, investigated nearly 500,000 cases of alleged disloyalty, etc. It became a veritable military secret service and did much to prevent the enemy from sowing dissension amongst the troops, from spreading pro-German and pacifist propaganda, from employing sabotage in munitions works, and from blowing up military works and docks, and thus thwarting our military effort. These activities of the Negative Branch were by many persons mistaken for the activities of the entire division; and the "Secret Service" idea concerning M. I. D. became deeply rooted in the minds of a public which never stopped to ask or think what the other branches of the Division were doing in a positive, constructive effort to collect information by open and scientific methods.

"M. I. D." AND HOW IT WORKS

As a matter of fact, all the "Secret Service" activities of M. I. 4 and the old Negative Branch ceased immediately after the armistice, because it was realized that a continuance of such activities carried on by the military service would be contrary to law and repugnant to public opinion. The only continuing allied function was the investigation of alleged graft and fraud in the Army, which continued only until July, 1920, when investigational work in M. I. D. stopped absolutely and has never been undertaken since. In spite of these facts, which can be substantiated by documentary evidence of the best kind, the sinister idea prevails that M. I. D. is still a secret service organization and still investigates individuals. No idea could be further from the truth; and the prevalence of such an idea necessarily prejudices M. I. D. in its legitimate, peace-time work.

The present activities of M. I. 4 are positive in character and are confined to a study of the data received from outside sources relative to subversive influences within the military establishment, to the study of data received from outside sources relative to radical propaganda, and to industrial unrest in the United States and foreign countries. No investigations are made, and the study is wholly an academic one, whose purpose is to forecast the points where industrial or other unrest may bring about a call for Federal troops.

The Publication Section (M. I. 3) conducts a press clipping bureau and prepares a weekly press review and a weekly review of editorial comment.

The Planning Section is a purely military agency designed for the purpose of furnishing the War Plans Division of the General Staff with authentic information to be used as the basis for the preparation of war plans or the formulation of military policies. When a war plan is once inaugurated, this section has the very important duty of "representing the enemy in our midst," or of bringing criticism to bear on the plan, from the point of view of the enemy. The section acts as a connecting link between M. I. D. and the War Plans Division.

The Translation Section serves not only M. I. D., but acts as a central translation bureau for the entire War Department. During the war the section served thirty-nine departments or bureaus of the Government. Under present conditions the personnel of this section is competent to translate eleven foreign languages, and, by utilizing the services of temporary translators, sixteen additional languages can be translated.

In conclusion it is perhaps pertinent to point out that M. I. D. in its present form did not begin to exist until after the armistice with Germany. Necessarily it is imperfect. No one knows its imperfections better than the officers who devote their time to an attempt to eliminate the imperfections. But it is believed that, in spite of its imperfections, it is an essential cog in the machinery of the governmental information system and one which desires and merits the sympathetic co-operation of its colleagues in other executive departments.

The Battle of Dara *

BY

Captain J. M. SCAMMELL, R. C.

AT DARA, Belisarius won his first great victory. This city was a stronghold the Persians designed to capture, and Belisarius there effected a junction with Hermogenes. Pezozes, the Persian mirranes, or commander-in-chief, drew near in superior numbers. Both armies were largely cavalry, the Persian being better disciplined and accustomed to victory.

The army given Belisarius was dispirited by constant defeats, and composed largely of half-mutinuous mercenaries. There was no support to be counted upon. His alternatives were three: 1, to retreat; 2, to defend the city from behind the walls; 3, to accept battle. To retreat would have been to abandon his mission, which was the defense of Dara; to stand a siege was hardly advisable in view of the low morale of his troops. Belisarius decided to create a feeling of self-confidence throughout the army and to engage under the most favorable circumstances possible.

His infantry being the weakest, he decided to bolster their morale and protect them against the cavalry by means of a trench. This trench was dug along the center of his front in an irregular trace. The sketch of it given by Oman in his *Art of War, the Middle Ages*, shows the center refused and the flanks thrown forward. This interpretation is neither warranted by the text of Procopius nor suitable to procure any tactical advantage. This discussion, however, will be deferred to the end as a note.

The accompanying sketch shows the plan of battle and the advantages resulting from the blunt salient. An attack upon this position presented three awkward alternatives:

1. To hold the line of battle intact upon a level with the advanced segment; this gave the Romans the advantage of holding a long line at bay with but the weakest part of their line, the infantry.
2. To attack in echelon; to break their own line and attack each segment separately; this would subject the right and left echelons to flank fire and their interior wings to a cavalry attack.
3. To envelop the salient on three sides; this maneuver would break the close-packed Persian ranks where the line bent and offer an opportunity to the

* Editor's Note.—The Battle of Dara was fought A. D. 530, in the reign of the Emperor Justinian. The city of Dara was a principal outpost of the Byzantine Empire against the incursions of the Persian armies, and was situated in what is now known as Mesopotamia, between the rivers Tigris and Euphrates. Belisarius had been placed in command of this fortified place a very short time before the battle here related took place.

THE BATTLE OF DARA

Roman Cavalry to break through; it would also tend to suck in the exterior flanks and subject them to outflanking.

Pezozes looked the situation over the first day and could make nothing of it. The Persians faced the Romans from sunrise to sunset. The Romans refused to stir out of their trenches and gained in confidence at the Persian hesitation. The net result of this day's work was an unimportant skirmish on the Roman left, and the encounters of champions and parleys, which no doubt covered careful reconnaissances. The Persian mirranes then retired to his camp to think over the situation. His address to his troops the next day, and the fact that he summoned reinforcements during the night, display his uneasiness at the trench and the unwonted steadiness in the Roman ranks. Like a would-be conqueror of more recent date, so great had been his confidence that he had ordered his bath and lunch prepared in the city he expected to enter.

On the following day both sides once more marshalled their forces and again prepared for battle. Up to noon, however, no change took place save that Pharas, in command of a squadron on the Roman left, obtained the permission of Belisarius to station his cavalry* in ambush behind a hillock in prolongation of the left flank.

The Persians organized their forces for the attack, in depth, one phalanx attacking with the other in support; when the first line was disorganized or exhausted, it was withdrawn to reorganize and was held in reserve. A fire fight with arrows opened the engagement, when the Persian right charged suddenly and routed the Roman left. Then Pharas, from behind his hillock, fell upon the victorious Persian flank and rear, and the left flanking squadron from the angle of the trench charged the other flank, driving them off in complete disorder.†

* Editor's Note.—The following describes the armament of the Roman cavalry: "Our archers are mounted on horses which they manage with admirable skill; their head and shoulders are protected by a cask or buckler; they wear greaves of iron on their legs, and their bodies are guarded by a coat of mail. On their right side hangs a quiver, a sword on their left, and their hand is accustomed to wield a lance or javelin in closer combat. Their bows are strong and weighty; they shoot in every possible direction, advancing, retreating, to the front, to the rear, or to either flank; and as they are taught to draw the bowstring not to the breast, but to the right ear, firm indeed must be the armor that can resist the rapid violence of their shaft."—*Procopius*.

† Editor's Note.—Lord Mahon, in his life of Belisarius, gives the following account of this phase of the battle: "In front of the city, toward the side of Nisibis," which was to the northeast, "he had drawn a deep trench, turning inwards at the sides, and then again extended in lines parallel to the first, nor was it devoid of intervals or bridges at regular distances to afford a passage for the Byzantine soldiers."

. . . "The cavalry was on the wings."

. . . "Herullian horse under Pharas judiciously stationed by Belisarius behind a hill rushed forward with so unexpected and vigorous a charge as to turn the tide of victory against the Barbarians."

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

At this juncture Belisarius observed a concentration on the Persian left and reinforced his right flanking squadron with fresh troops from his reserve. This precaution saved the day, for, while the Roman right was driven off the field before the onset of this formidable Persian mass, the shock of the charge left the latter too disorganized to withstand the charge of the flanking squadrons. To be sure, they gallantly turned and faced it and held their own, but in doing so were unable to meet the counter-attack of the rallied Roman right wing. Set upon from two sides, the Persians finally retired in disorder away from their main body, whose exposed flank was next assailed by the victorious Roman cavalry, while the infantry moved forward to hold it by a frontal attack.

This ended the action,* for the prudent Belisarius, aware of the ability of the Persians to rally after a defeat, had no confidence in the discipline of his troops. In a vigorous pursuit they were likely to get out of hand and undo the work already accomplished. When we consider the tactics of the day, the frequency of ambushes, the rallying power of the Persian cavalry, and the almost mutinous state of the Roman army, and bear in mind also that the Persian force was cavalry, while Belisarius had a considerable force of infantry, his caution appears to have been warranted.

As a matter of fact, there is little to criticize in Belisarius' conduct of the battle. His original disposition was cleverly conceived to cover his weakness in numbers and the quality and composition of his army, and conforms strictly to Napoleon's maxim:

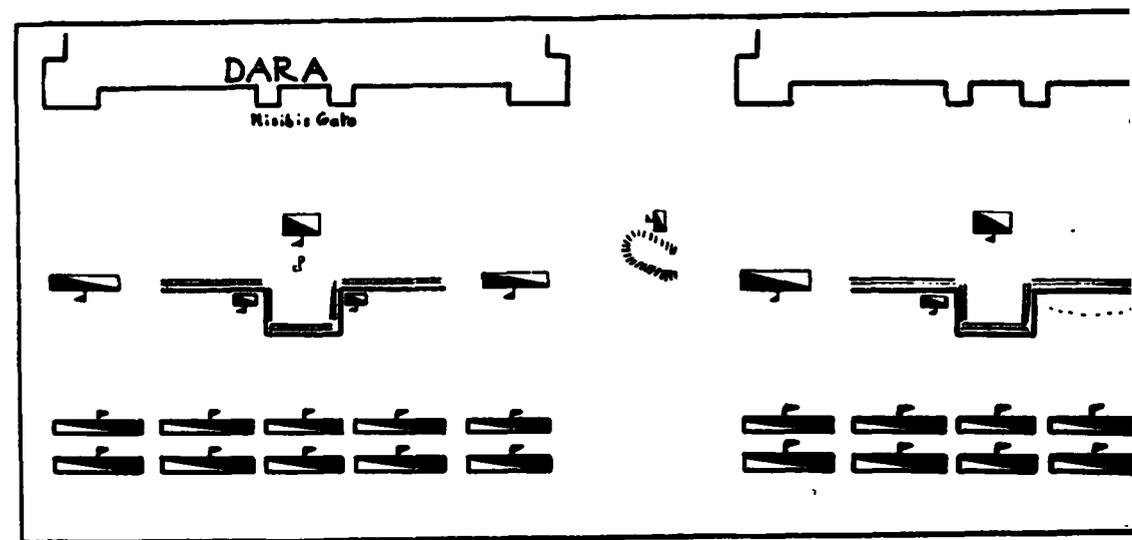
"L'art de la guerre consiste, avec une armée inférieure, à avoir toujours plus de forces que son ennemi sur le point qu'on attaque ou qui est attaqué."

His subsequent conduct follows another principle enunciated by the master:

"Tout l'art de la guerre consiste dans une défensive bien raisonnée, extrêmement circonspecte et dans une offensive audacieuse et rapide."

* ENROS'S NOTE.—"The mirranes of Persia advanced, with forty thousand of her best troops, to raze the fortifications of Dara; and signified the day and the hour on which the citizens should prepare a bath for his refreshment after the toils of victory. He encountered an adversary equal to himself, by the new title of general of the east; his superior in the science of war, but much inferior in the number and quality of his troops, which amounted only to 25,000 Romans and strangers, relaxed in their discipline and humbled by recent disasters. As the level plain of Dara refused all shelter to stratagem and ambush, Belisarius protected his front with a deep trench, which was prolonged at first in perpendicular, and afterwards in parallel lines, to cover the wings of cavalry advantageously posted to command the flanks and rear of the enemy. When the Roman center was shaken, their well-timed and rapid charge decided the conflict; the standard of Persia fell; the *immortals* fled; the infantry threw away their bucklers, and eight thousand of the vanquished were left on the field of battle."—Gibbon: *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*.

Lord Mahon states that this victory, the first gained over the Persians by the Imperial armies for a long period, produced a great moral effect and decided the fate of the campaign.



PHASE 1—LINE OF BATTLE

PHASE 2—ATTACK ON 1

THE BATTLE OF DARA

As for Pezozes, he appears to have had no definite plan of action. He attacked piecemeal and allowed his center to be contained by inferior numbers. The Roman right was weakest, not only because it rested upon no obstacle, but also because the right flank, not having the cover of the shield, would give way more readily. Had he extended and reinforced his left in the beginning and attacked all along the line at the time of his charge on the Roman right, such a disposition would have given Pezozes every chance of success.

NOTE

Concerning the manner in which the trench was constructed, Procopius says (I, xiv) :

“κατὰ μὲν τὸ μέσον βραχέα τις ἐγένουε εὐθεία,” etc.

Regarding the stationing of the two flanking squadrons:

“ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ αὐτῶν τῆς τάφρου ἔκτος,” etc.

Now κατὰ μὲν τὸ μέσον βραχέα τις ἐγένουε εὐθεία may be rendered: “In the middle it was straight for a *moderately short stretch*.”

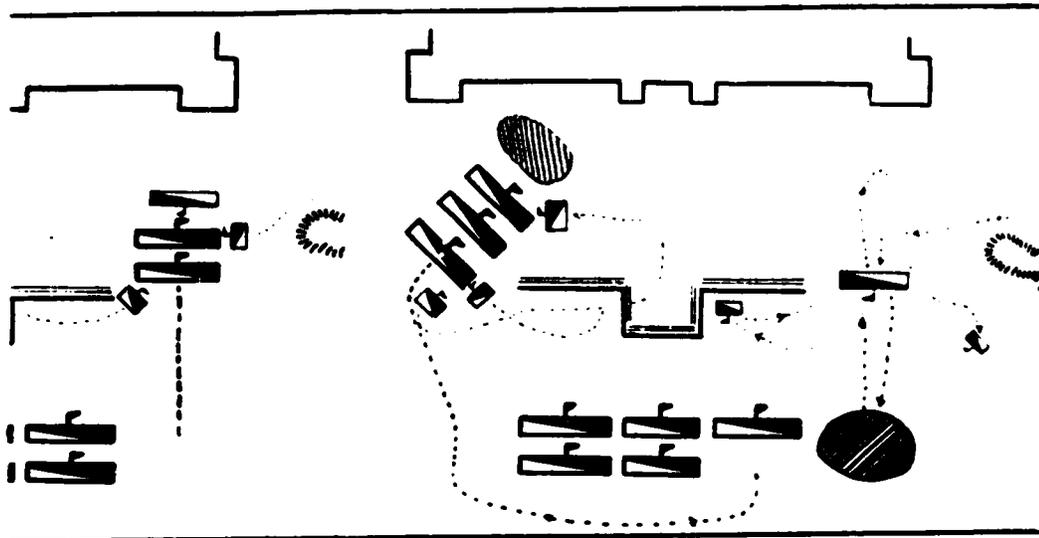
In the second quotation and in a latter passage we find a body of 600 cavalry stationed in each of the angles made by the change of direction in the trace. Even allowing for a formation of eight deep, the maximum depth, including merely an interval for maneuvering, the front of the cavalry would cover 150-200 yards; even so, they would be cramped. Considering also that only the infantry was thus entrenched, could this segment in relation to the whole front be called “moderately short”? The entire army was only 25,000, of which at least two-thirds were cavalry.

But even so, allowing a formation of eight deep and only maneuver interval, it is hard to reconcile this with Procopius' description, which certainly implies that they were separate forces, occupying distinct portions of the line and charged with separate, if similar, missions.

Moreover, in speaking of their function, the historian says that they were designed to charge *εὐχερῶς*, which means suddenly and *with facility*. Even were the enemy no closer than bow-shot, any attempt to make a sortie against a hostile flank could only be a difficult, hazardous, not to say disastrous, move, while, during a close attack they would be hedged in, surrounded on three sides by trenches and on the other by the enemy. It is hard to see how they could be expected to fulfill their mission under even the most favorable circumstances in such a position.

Finally, since we learn (I, xiv, 35) that the armies were engaged in an archery duel at the time of the successful charge of one of these squadrons, it seems as though we can do nothing but reject Oman's conception.

The positive advantages of the blunt salient, as shown above, are numerous and convincing.



TACK ON ROMAN LEFT

PHASE 3—ATTACK ON ROMAN RIGHT

The Modern Pentathlon in the Olympic Games

BY

Major HAROLD M. RAYNER, Cavalry

IN the hope that some of the readers of this article may become interested in the above event, which has been so popular in the last two Olympiads, and of which so little is known in this country, I am submitting the following:

This event is called the Modern Pentathlon to distinguish it from the Ancient Pentathlon, which is restricted to track and field events. The five tests constituting it are so much of a military nature that it is commonly called the Military Pentathlon, and practically all of the contestants are army officers. The events are as follows:

Shooting with pistol or revolver, at 25 meters range, at a silhouette of a man standing.—The target is marked with a bull's-eye and concentric zones, ranging in value from ten to two. It is exposed to the firer for two seconds only, with a time limit of ten seconds between shots. Four groups of five shots each are fired in this manner, the target being scored and holes pasted between groups.

Scores are determined by grouping in one class all who make twenty hits. Their point total is then counted and their standing determined thereby. In the class immediately below these are all who make but one miss; then all with two misses, etc.

Any type of pistol or revolver may be used, the only restriction being that a hair trigger cannot be used.

Swimming.—This course is one of 300 meters, free style. It is not a race in the true sense of the word, but is made more difficult by having the contestants' time determine the result.

Fencing.—This event is with the épée, commonly called the dueling sword. It is a round-robin contest, each bout being for one point only, thereby simulating a duel as closely as possible.

Riding.—This course is of 5,000 meters over varied ground, on trained horses furnished the contestants. Unfortunately, no practice is allowed prior to the race on the horses to be used in the race. There are approximately six to eight jumps per mile. Penalties are assessed for failure at a jump (three refusals at any one eliminating the contestant), for knocking down an obstacle, or for the horse or rider falling at a jump. A penalty is also assessed for failure to finish within the time limit set for the course. Riders finishing with 100 per cent are classified by the time made by them over the course. The

THE MODERN PENTATHLON IN THE OLYMPIC GAMES

riders start five minutes apart and their time is taken for the distance. Horses are drawn for by lot and the course shown the day before the race.

Running.—This course is one of 4,000 meters over varied ground. The contestants start at two-minute intervals, and their time over the course determines their placement. The course is unknown to the contestants, but, as it is well marked by tape and lined with spectators, it is easily followed.

A contestant's place in each event determines the points made by him, viz: Winner in an event scores one point; second place, two points, etc. The contestant with the fewest points in the total five events wins.

Each nation is limited to four entries.

This event was contested by twenty-nine entries at the 1920 Olympic Games at Antwerp. Twenty-two finished. The type of contestant was very high, all being army officers from the various nations. Infantry, cavalry, and artillery officers predominated, in the order named.

The table which follows shows the result, and also shows that an average good performance in each event is necessary for a high placement:

Nationality.	Shooting.	Swimming.	Fencing.	Riding.	Running.	Total.
1. Sweden	6	2	2	6	2	18
2. Sweden	1	13	5	1	3	23
3. Sweden	4	1	16	5	1	27
4. Sweden	13	5	10	13	5	46
5. Denmark	12	7	3	7	18	47
6. United States.....	5	12	13	14	4	48
7. United States.....	3	8	9	11	20	51
7. Finland	10	3	21	9	8	51
9. Denmark	14	4	14	8	17	57
9. France	11	16	4	15	11	57
11. Great Britain	17	14	7	10	12	60
12. Denmark	8	20	15	3	15	61
13. Norway	2	10	18	19	13	62
14. Norway	8	9	20	22	6	65
15. Great Britain.....	15	11	17	16	7	66
16. France	19	22	12	4	10	67
17. Great Britain.....	22	15	6	17	9	69
18. France	18	21	8	2	22	71
19. France	20	18	1	12	21	72
20. Denmark	7	17	19	20	14	77
21. Great Britain.....	16	6	22	18	16	78
22. Italy	21	19	11	21	19	91

It is important to note here that in the 1912 Olympiad at Stockholm, Sweden, only one American, Major G. S. Patton, Jr., Cavalry, was entered, and he finished fifth. In the 1920 Olympiad at Antwerp only two Americans were entered, namely, Major Robert Sears, Ordnance Department, and Major H. M. Rayner, Cavalry, and they finished seventh and sixth respectively.

Due to the all-round nature of these events, it is hoped that they will arouse some interest. All cavalry, or, rather, all mounted officers have opportunities to shoot and ride, and they have had some little training in fencing. The running and swimming must be trained for, but, as swimming is such a pleasure in itself, concentration at this distance will develop a good average performance. Running is the least inviting of the five events, for it is so little indulged in by officers. Still a good performance can be obtained by several months' consistent work. It is a test that is not severe if the contestant is in good shape, and to my mind cross-country running is one of the best of the running events. It is very popular in the north of Europe, and especially so in England.

In conclusion it is hoped that the younger officers will become interested in this event, which I wish I could better describe. America should be well represented by its full quota of four officers at the next Olympic Games in 1924, and the only way it can be is for those interested to get started early. The class of contestants in this event is of the highest, so that the competition is sure to be severe, but this makes it all the more worth while for the young American army officer to try to win.

The Rôle Played by the Serbian Cavalry in the World War

(Continued)

THE FIRST AUSTRIAN INVASION, AUGUST, 1914, AND THE BATTLE OF THE JADAR

BY

Captain GORDON GORDON-SMITH, Royal Serbian Army

IN A PRECEDING article I described the organization of the Serbian army in general and the cavalry arm in particular at the moment of the outbreak of the World War. In it I also indicated the difficulty of the problem facing the Serbian Headquarters Staff. This was due to the uncertainty as to the direction from which the Austrian invasion would come, whether from the Save and Danube front or from the Drina front. This uncertainty forced the army of King Peter to take up an attitude of observation on a position equidistant from both. The three Serbian armies were accordingly placed on the Palanka-Arandjelovatz-Lazarevatz line, with strong outlying forces covering Uzitze and Valjevo. This concentration was completed by August 9.

On August 12 it became clear that the enemy had selected the Drina front as his line of invasion. On that day the Austrians succeeded in crossing the

Drina at six different points, extending from Shabatatz to Liubovia. Orders were at once issued for the whole Serbian army to move westward to oppose the enemy's advance. As the concentration on the new front entailed several days' march for the infantry, the Independent Division of Cavalry, which was lying at Osipaonitza, to the north of the First Army (General Peter Boyovitch) on the Palanka-Ratcha-Topolo line, on August 12 received orders to proceed to the Matchva plain, to observe the movements of the Austrians, delay their advance, and cover the westward march of the Serbian armies.

In order to make the operations in this campaign clear, I must first describe the terrain on which they took place. The most northeasterly point of invasion was Shabatatz, a prosperous, typically Balkan town of about 15,000 inhabitants, quite a respectable size for a country which contains no large cities and where the village community is the prevailing unit. For centuries Shabatatz had been a point of great strategical importance. The many islands on the Save facilitate the crossing. Here the Romans built a powerful camp and citadel, the Hun invasions had poured through it, and here the Turks had erected a strong fortress. Its value as a fortified town had, of course, disappeared with the invention of modern long-range artillery.

North and west of Shabatatz lies the great Matchva plain, bounded on the east and north by the Save River and on the west by the River Drina. It is a rich, fertile country, absolutely flat. It is, however, a difficult terrain for military operations, as it is much broken up by fields of maize and clumps of trees, so that a good field of fire can nowhere be obtained. To the southeast the undulating country is cut in two by the Dobrava River. Here first-class defensive positions were to be found, while to the south rose the great mountain chain of Tzer, which stretches from the Drina to the Dobrava River. Even the southbound road, which cuts the range, climbs up and down like a huge switchback.

The southern slopes of Tzer are less abrupt than those of the north side and run down gradually into the valley of the Leshnitza, from the other side of which rise the lesser heights of the Iverak range. Both Tzer and Iverak are well covered with fields of maize and orchards of plum trees intersected with clumps of woodland.

Running down again toward the south, the foothills of Iverak merge into a series of fairly important summits which flank the Jadar, a tributary of the Drina. From the left bank of the Jadar, from the point where it runs into the Drina, extends a great rolling plain, running south till it strikes the gigantic mountains of the Guchevo range, which, running in a southeasterly direction, hide the Bosnian hills from view.

Continuing southward, the country is extremely mountainous, even the main roads being cut out of the hillsides down which run mountain streams. These are almost dry in summer, but become roaring torrents when the snows begin to melt in spring.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

train with 1,500 infantry soldiers on board was arriving from Shabatz. After a short engagement the train steamed back to Shabatz without being able to detrain the troops on board.

The main body of the Independent Cavalry Division (six squadrons with two mounted batteries) halted for the night at Chulkovitch, while the 2d Cavalry Regiment held the Shabatz-Slepchevitch-Prnjavor road. The 4th Cavalry Regiment, with two squadrons of the 1st Regiment, held a line to the east of Bela-Reka. During the whole night the Independent Cavalry Division harassed the retreating enemy. The 3d Cavalry Regiment, which after fierce fighting in the streets of the village had captured Prnjavor, was later compelled to withdraw and suffered somewhat heavy losses.

During these operations in the Shabatz region a part of the Independent Cavalry Division was dismounted and fought on foot alongside the infantry of the Division of the Shumadia. In the course of this engagement these troops, armed only with their carbines and without bayonets, captured one of the enemy field batteries. The 4th Regiment of Cavalry attacked the village of Bela-Reka. This resisted with obstinacy till nightfall, but the enemy finally fell back, driven in on the right by the Division of the Shumadia, 1st "Ban," and on the left by the Independent Cavalry Division.

The effort made by the Independent Cavalry Division, from the moment it left Osipaonitza, on August 12, till its first contact with the enemy, on August 15, was considerable, as in that time it covered over 200 kilometers (about 135 miles).

After the engagement of August 15 the division moved toward Shabatz, sweeping the Matchva plain as it advanced. On August 20 it captured 4 howitzers, 10 field guns, 28 munition wagons, 7 field kitchens, and a large quantity of supplies of all kinds.

The result of the reconnaissance of the Independent Cavalry Division on the Matchva plain was of a somewhat startling character. It reported that it had observed enemy forces traversing the plain at points as far apart as Slepchevitch and Bela-Reka. Field-Marshal Putnik therefore abandoned all idea of an immediate attack on Shabatz and the Serbian extreme right wing, and the Independent Cavalry Division received orders that, at whatever cost, they must prevent the Austrians in the north from effecting a junction with those in the Jadar Valley.

In addition, it was learned for the first time that an Austrian column was advancing northward on Krupani. It was, however, reported to be relatively weak, and a small force of Serbian infantry, with a detachment of Komitadjis,* was sent to hold it in check.

So far the Austrian invasion of Serbia and their march on Valjevo had been

* The "Komitadjis" attached to the regular Serbian army had nothing in common with the bands bearing this designation which used to harry the Turkish frontier. They were merely men specially trained in mountain fighting.

THE SERBIAN CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR

practically unopposed, but while they were marching tranquilly along the Tzer and Iverak mountains they were unaware that, behind the fanlike screen thrown out by the Serbian cavalry, the main Serbian armies were hastening westward by a series of astounding forced marches.

The Austrians were now pouring into Serbia in a steady stream. The 4th Army Corps and the 29th Division of the 9th Corps were crossing at Shabatz; a flanking column coming from the Drina had reached Slepchevitch and the 8th Army Corps was marching with its left toward Bela-Reka, its center along the crests of Tzer, and its right down the Lesnitza Valley. The 36th Division of the 13th Army Corps had its left on Iverak and its right on the Jadar Valley. The 42d Division of this corps directed its left and center on Krupani, while its right, with two brigades of the 15th Army Corps, was moving north from Liubovia.

The first heavy engagement of the two armies took place on August 16 and had a most curious *point de depart*. On that day the Serbian left flank guard of the force working northward toward Shabatz discovered a strong Austrian column marching across the foothills of Tzer. When this discovery was made Major Djukitch, of the 4th Artillery Regiment, asked permission to go out and meet the Austrians with a single gun. He might, he admitted, lose his life and the gun, but he hoped to disconcert the enemy in their advance. He was allowed to take one gun out to a position on the Gusingrob (west of Slatina). Arriving there, an astonishing spectacle met his view. Austrian columns were advancing from every direction, so much so that he was embarrassed on which he should first open fire.

He decided to begin an indiscriminate bombardment on everything he could reach. His gun, therefore, came into action as fast as it could be loaded and fired. The result was astounding. The Austrians, completely taken by surprise, were thrown into panic and the greatest confusion prevailed. Meanwhile Major Djukitch had sent an orderly, post-haste, to report what was happening. The balance of his battery was sent forward at the gallop. The Independent Cavalry Division was ordered to proceed to the position at full speed to support the artillery, while an infantry detachment was pushed forward as fast as the men could march.

The Austrians now began to recover from their first surprise and to mass their forces along a line from Beli Kamen southward, while the Serbs deployed on the Slatina-Metkovitch-Gusingrob line. The battle, by 11 o'clock in the morning, was fully engaged and continued with ever-increasing violence the whole day. About 6 o'clock the position of the Serbs, greatly inferior in numbers, became critical in the extreme, but, fortunately for them, reinforcements arrived and they were able to resume the offensive. Their counter-attack ended in the complete rout of the Austrians, who fled precipitately, leaving behind them a large quantity of material of all kinds, as well as two field batteries. Their 102d Regiment was almost annihilated. The 94th Regiment

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

was also nearly completely wiped out. But even greater than the mere defeat of the enemy was the effect of the victory on the general strategy. This reverse immediately and finally cut off the Austrians in the Matchva plain from the chief theater of operations and freed the Serbian right wing for action against Shabatz.

Another point of the greatest importance was the fact that the Independent Cavalry Division, having brilliantly fulfilled its first mission, was now available for service in any direction which the march of events might render necessary.

The center of the Second Serbian Army—that directed against Tzer—arrived before Tekerish toward midnight on August 15. The undulating and wooded nature of the country rendered observation extremely difficult. The result was that the Serbian advance guard, just beyond Tekerish, “butted into” an Austrian column marching along the mountain slopes. The Serbs at once deployed along the Bornopolje-Parlog-Lisena front. Fierce fighting followed, and finally the Serbs had to fall back on the Krivaiska Kosa-Ragonitza Brdo-Kik line, where they dug themselves in.

Meanwhile the left wing of the Second Army had arrived against Iverak. The prompt and unexpected arrival of this division was the result of an extraordinary forced march, 52 miles being covered in 24 hours and in tropical heat. And yet the following day, at 3 o'clock in the morning, it continued its advance on Poporparlok, but had to halt en route, as news was received that that village had, as the result of a successful Austrian attack on the Third Army, fallen into the hands of the enemy. The division accordingly dug itself in on the Beglok-Kik line to oppose the further advance of the enemy from Iverak. This position was violently attacked the following day, but the enemy was driven off with heavy loss.

The position of the Third Serbian Army now began to be critical. After the capture of Poporparlok the Austrians developed a vigorous offensive with a view to turning the Serbian left and capturing the road to Valjevo. They therefore began a violent attack on Jarebitze. This they attacked on the front and left by a strong column which had come across the plain south of the Jadar River, taking advantage of the deeply cut road and the cover furnished by the numerous fields of maize.

The Austrian attacks were, however, all repulsed with heavy loss, and the position might have been held indefinitely if it had not been for the startling news received from Krupani. The Austrian forces moving on that town had been supposed to be only a company or two. They turned out to be three strong brigades of mountain troops. Krupani fell and the Austrians pushed forward toward Zavlaka. Valjevo was directly threatened by this advance. The Serbs therefore fell back to the Marianovitche vis-Ravnajaski vis-Groblje-Racievski Kamen-Schumer line, where a front could be offered to both the Austrian columns—to that advancing from Iverak and the other threatening Zavlaka.

THE SERBIAN CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR

The withdrawal of the Serbian troops was executed in perfect order and, strange to say, was not interfered with by the enemy. By 8 a. m. on August 17 the new line was occupied and extended to Soldatovitcha-Gaive by the detachments retreating from Krupani.

So far there had been no decided advantage for either side. The Austrians found their advance checked before they had, as they had hoped to do, reached their objective, Valjevo. At the same time they had successfully resisted the Serbian counter-attack.

The Independent Cavalry Division having successfully fulfilled its first mission, that of reconnoitering the Matchva plain and preventing the junction of the Austrian forces in the north with those in Tzer, was now given its second and still more dangerous mission, that of penetrating between the Austrian forces at Shabatz and those on the Drina. For this purpose its artillery was reinforced and it was given strong infantry support. It proceeded in very extended formation, its left flank being based on Tzer, while its right kept touch with the Serbian division operating against Shabatz.

It advanced with such dash and vigor that it not only pushed forward to Dublje and Prnjavor on the north, but it supported the attack on the Tzer by a violent bombardment of the Austrian position at Troyan. It maintained the liaison, both to right and left, in admirable fashion, and Colonel Branco Jovanovitch's troopers showed themselves as courageous and skillful when attacking or defending on foot as they were when mounted.

The extreme right of the Serbian armies passed the night of August 16-17 at Slatina, prepared to resume its advance on Shabatz. This town was, however, found to be very strongly intrenched with solid earthworks and barbed wire, backed up by powerful artillery. It was soon apparent that, with the forces at its disposal, this wing of the Third Army could not hope to attack successfully. It therefore contented itself, while awaiting the necessary reinforcements, with investing the town to prevent the egress of the troops holding it.

The center and left of the Second Army now undertook a combined movement against the mountains of Tzer and Iverak. Their first success was at Troyan, the most easterly and, after Kosaningrad, the most important peak of the Tzer Mountains. Not only did they capture this position by a brilliantly executed assault, but they also, advancing along the southern slopes, captured Parlog. This accomplished, the Serbs took a breathing space while guns and reinforcements were brought up for the attack on Kosaningrad, the giant of the range.

Seeing their perilous position after their three successive defeats, Beli Kamen, Troyan, and Parlog, the Austrians continued to drive home their advance on Iverak. This placed the left wing of the Second Serbian Army in a critical position, as it had necessarily become exposed by the retreat of the Third Army, which was menaced by the simultaneous advance from Krupani

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

and Jarebitze. At the same time the Austrian flank was menaced by the Serbian operations in Tzer and the Leshnitsa Valley. The Austrians saw that their best tactics would be to drive in the Serbian forces holding Iverak and push on to Zavlaka and Valjevo. Once these positions were in their hands, the Serbian possession of Tzer would be of secondary importance.

The Austrians therefore attacked on Iverak with vigor on the Beglok-Kugovitchi line, and by 11 o'clock in the forenoon the engagement had spread to the right wing. An hour later the Third Army again reported its position as critical and asked for reinforcements. These were sent, but furnishing them so weakened the force defending Iverak that it had to withdraw to the heights of Kalem. The Austrians, strange to say, did not press the retreating Serbs.

As already stated, the vigor of the Austrian attack on the Third Army had forced the Serbs to go on the defensive and to retire to the positions Marianovitché vis-Ravnajaski vis-Groblje-Ragievski Kamen-Schumer-Soldatovitcha, whence they could present a front against the Austrians advancing on Valjevo via both Jarebitze and Krupani. These, however, instead of capturing Jarebitze and making use of the main road to Zavlaka, tried to force the southern extremity of the Serbian line, so as to reach Oseshima. An attack by the whole 42d Austrian Division was made on the Serbian left; but the Serbs, though greatly outnumbered, resisted obstinately.

On August 17 the Serbs were on the strict defensive on the extreme north and extreme south of their line and on part of their center, while at the same time executing a vigorous offensive on Tzer. The Austrians were pursuing exactly the same tactics—they were trying to hold their whole line and execute a vigorous offensive in the south.

The Austrians saw that to break the Serbian resistance they would have to bring the troops shut up in Shabatz into action. But this was just as clear to Field-Marshal Putnik. He saw the next Austrian "push" would come from the wings. He at once reinforced his extreme left and ordered his right wing to dig itself solidly in, so as to resist any attempt of the army in Shabatz to descend.

The attack from Shabatz began early on August 18, but, though made in force and pressed with vigor, it shattered on the dogged resistance of the Serbs. This new offensive had, however, its effect on the operations of the Independent Cavalry Division. This had been in pursuit of the Austrians retreating toward Leshnitsa. As a successful attack by the Shabatz forces might have taken it in the rear, it was forced to fall back to the Metkovitch-Brestovatz line. Not only was it menaced by the Shabatz Army, but it learned that the Austrian force which had fallen back on Lipohist had there received the reinforcement of a whole brigade. It was therefore in a position to undertake a counter-offensive. As the Independent Cavalry Division had already in front of it the entire 28th Austrian Landwehr Division, with two groups of field artillery and

THE SERBIAN CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR

two howitzer batteries, these reinforcements gave the enemy such superiority as to justify the retirement of the Serbian cavalry.

The retiring movement of the Serbian cavalry was, however, viewed with profound distrust by the Austrians. They had had so many proofs of the skill and resource of Colonel Branco Jovanovitch that they feared that they were being led into a trap, and only advanced with the greatest caution, throwing out small advance guards, which went forward with the greatest care and promptly fell back the moment they sighted a Serbian squadron.

In the Tzer the fight was now for the Kosaningrad, the giant mountain of the range. The Austrians had also fortified the summit of Rashulatcha, which was so situated that the fire of the guns upon it could be directed either against Iverak or Tzer. The check the Serbian forces had received in Iverak had further the effect of exposing the flank of the Serbian force operating in Tzer. The reinforcements expected from the south could not be furnished. But in spite of this the Serbs advanced, powerful ox-teams dragging the heavy guns up the steep mountain slopes. Once these were in position, Kosaningrad was heavily shelled, and then a rush made with the bayonet and the hand-grenade. The first attack failed, but a second, delivered with even greater vigor, broke the Austrian line, the troops fleeing in disorder in every direction.

The next objective was Rashulatcha, which was now threatened by both the Serbian forces, those operating in Tzer and those in Iverak. The latter force on August 17 drove the Austrians from Kugovitchi and held their own against a vigorous Austrian counter-attack. On August 18 the enemy attacked the Proslop-Rozani line, held by a 3d "Ban" detachment from Liubovia. The first point attacked was Soldatovitcha Gaive, which was held by a detachment of divisional cavalry. This force, greatly outnumbered, was forced to fall back on the neighboring 1,227-foot summit, where they reinforced the troops holding the line between that height and the 1,050-foot summit. Against this the Austrians moved the whole 42d Division. More or less heavy fighting went on in the center of Third Serbian Army. In the course of the day the Austrians, having received reinforcements, made a violent attack on the Serbian right, drove it back and captured Marianovitché vis.

But the Serbs, too, received reinforcements, and a counter-attack was ordered and pushed home with such vigor that by sundown Soldatovitcha Gaive was recaptured. The Serbian Headquarters Staff felt that the time for a general forward movement had come.

The reverses on the Austrian center and the fact that their left wing was firmly held forced Field-Marshal von Potiorek to make a fresh attempt to drive southward with the army holding Shabatz. The attack was made with vigor, and as the Austrians greatly outnumbered the Serbs, they at first drove them back on to the right bank of the Dobrava River. This retreat had a double object. Firstly, the position on the Dobrava River was one of great natural strength, compensating the Serbs for their inferiority of numbers; secondly,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

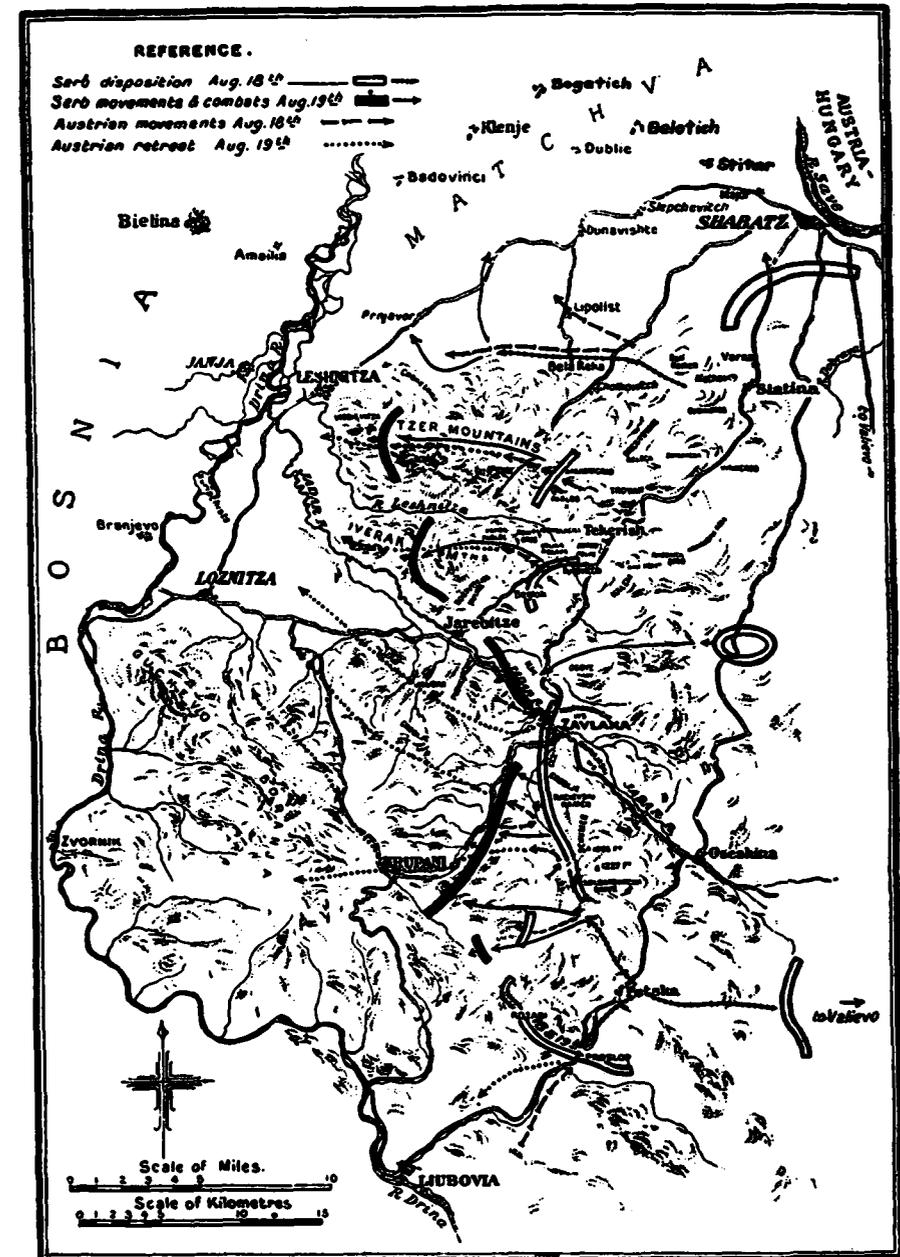
as long as they held this position the Austrians would run great risks if they pushed forward to attack the Serbs on Tzer in the rear, as they would thereby expose themselves to a flank attack from the division on the Dobrava. This the Austrians saw, and they made up their mind to delay the advance on Tzer until they had settled with the Serbs on the Dobrava.

This movement on their part had its effect on the operations of the Independent Cavalry Division, which, as I have said, was engaged with a strong enemy force, consisting of two regiments of infantry, one regiment of cavalry, and one battery of artillery, advancing from Lipolist. The Austrian advance from Shabatze threatened to take the Independent Cavalry Division in the rear. The division was further under fire from the troops of the Austrian left flank, operating in Tzer. Though greatly tempted to continue the pursuit of the Austrians toward Leshnitsa, Colonel Branco Jovanovitch deemed it prudent to remain on the Belega-Suwatcha-Vitingrob line. At the same time, with a view to future operations, which he saw were imminent, he asked for reinforcements, which were promptly sent him. His force, therefore, became a combined one, but its distinguishing feature still remained its extreme mobility.

To the south the Serbs pursued their victorious advance along the crests of Tzer. At midday on August 19 Rashulatcha was captured, the enemy driven back in confusion and closely pursued. All day long the Serbs drove forward, and by evening their advance guard arrived near Jadranska Leshnitsa.

Meanwhile on Iverak a furious battle was raging. The Serbs attacked with vigor and drove the Austrians before them with astounding speed. This, combined with the Serbian successes on Tzer, convinced the Austrians that they had no longer any hope of holding the position in the north. They therefore made one last desperate bid for victory in the center. But the Serbs would not be denied. At 11 in the morning they took Velika Glava by assault, but were momentarily checked by a heavy artillery fire from the summits of Iverak, west of Rashulatcha. By midday the battle was raging all along the line from Velika Glava to Kik. Shortly after 1 o'clock news was received that the enemy was massing near Kik to attempt a flanking movement, and that the right wing of the Third Army was threatened by an enveloping movement. A reserve division was promptly sent to relieve the pressure, and the right and center columns were able to continue their attack on Iverak. The Austrians, however, continued to make stubborn resistance; but when, at half past 4, the Serbs captured Reingrob, their position became critical. A last attempt of the Austrian rear-guard to hold back the Serbs failed completely, and it was clear that their defeat threatened every moment to turn to disaster.

The Austrians facing the Third Army put up a better fight. The Serbian left wing continued its advance from Soldatovicha Gaive, but the Austrians, who had been successful in their attack on Marianovitche vis, tried to pierce the Serbian line by a vigorous attack on the Proslap-Rozani line. This was, however, desperately resisted by the Serbs, who toward evening counter-attacked



THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

and recaptured Marianovitché vis, driving the Austrians back in complete confusion.

Field-Marshal von Potiorek now saw that he was facing irretrievable disaster. Tzer and Iverak were lost and even the Shabatz troops seemed to have abandoned all idea of further offensive; so that the Serbs were able to recross the Dobrava and take up positions on the left bank.

The Serbian success on the Tzer now freed the Independent Cavalry Division for energetic action. Colonel Jovanovitch let loose his squadrons on the fleeing enemy, and they soon transformed the retreat into a rout. The 2d Cavalry Brigade, with one battery of horse artillery, advanced in the direction Leshnitsa-Novo Selo-Prnjavor, while the 1st Cavalry Brigade, with one mounted battery, went in a more northerly direction through Chokechina.

All day long the pursuit continued, the enemy fleeing toward the Drina River, abandoning everything in their flight. The roads were covered with guns and limbers, field kitchens, munition wagons, ambulances, and strewn with rifles, knapsacks, and greatcoats thrown away by the fleeing Austrians. Their one desire was to put the greatest possible distance between themselves and the pursuing Serbian cavalry.

They rushed through Bela Reka, Prnjavor, and other villages shouting, "Where is the Drina? Where is the Drina?" The 1st Cavalry Brigade caught up with a strong infantry column retiring before the Combined Division, charged it, dispersing it in every direction. By evening there were no enemy units of any importance left on the Serbian front. All that was left of Field-Marshal von Potiorek's army was a routed rabble, whose one desire was to place the Drina between themselves and the victorious Serbs. It was only darkness and the complete exhaustion of the horses which put an end to the pursuit by the Independent Cavalry Division and the cavalry regiments of the various divisions.

Reconnoitering squadrons sent out to the right bank of the Drina and into the Matchva plain in the direction of Bogatich, Dublie, Belotich, and Stitar found no trace of the enemy in any direction. When night fell the 1st Cavalry Brigade, with one battery of mounted artillery, halted at Dunavishte and the 2d Cavalry Brigade, with one battery of mounted artillery, at Djajevatz (west of Chokechina).

The following day the Independent Cavalry Division continued its work of cleaning up the country on the northwestern and western fronts, pushing along as far as the mouth of the Drina and sweeping the Matchva plain. Here and there weak enemy detachments were encountered, which generally surrendered without much resistance.

The battle of the Jadar was over and won. The Austrians in Shabatz continued to resist for another forty-eight hours, but when the Serbs brought up the heavy siege guns, which had done them such good service at the siege of Adrianople in the Balkan War of 1912, and prepared for a bombardment

THE SERBIAN CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR

en regle, they found it unnecessary. The Austrians had evacuated the town during the night.

The Austrian invasion had thus come to an inglorious end. By August 25 there was not a single Austrian left on Serbian soil. The victory of King Peter's army was complete and decisive. Field-Marshal von Potiorek's army had recrossed the Drina a routed rabble.

The Serbian cavalry played, as I have shown, a notable rôle in this great drama. Its first mission had been to reconnoiter and hold back the enemy in the Matchva plain; and this it had accomplished with striking efficiency. Its second mission was to drive in a wedge between the Austrian army in Shabatz and the armies on Tzer and Iverak; and this task it had carried out with signal success. Its third mission was, by its energetic pursuit, to transform the Austrian retreat into a rout; and in this it was even more successful than in its other missions.

In this account of the operations of the campaign on the Jadar I have confined myself, as far as the rôle of the cavalry is concerned, almost exclusively to the operations of the Independent Cavalry Division. Each of the Serbian divisions had also its regiment of divisional cavalry which rendered quite as excellent service in scouting and attacking as the Independent Division, but the records of their operations are necessarily so scattered that it would hardly be possible to record them in detail. All I need say is that the divisional cavalry showed the same efficiency as their comrades of the Independent Division.

The cavalry with steeds and cars he placed
In front. A vast and valiant multitude
Of infantry he stationed in the rear
To be the bulwark of the war.—*The Iliad*.



Jumping and Racing in the A. F. G.*

BY

Major JOHN K. HERR, Cavalry

JUMPING

THE performances of the A. F. G. team during the present year have been so remarkable that I believe a description of their achievements will be of interest to the service.

In practically all competitions in Europe no opportunity is given the entries to practice over the course. A general description is furnished, giving the general character of the jumps in each event, together with the approximate heights of each. These jumps are so varied that it is essential that the horse must be trained to take with confidence any obstacle which may confront him. It goes without saying that the horses of the nation giving the competition have at one time or other practiced over the same obstacles, which gives them some advantage. After the course is set, however, which is before the arrival of the competitors of the other nations, it is closed until the actual day of the competition.

The A. F. G. Jumping Course at Oberworth Island, Coblenz, Germany, was therefore constructed with the view of including therein so many obstacles of a different nature that any horse which had practiced over the course would have the necessary confidence to attempt any manner of obstacle. The accompanying diagram shows the character and actual dimensions of each obstacle, as well as the normal sequence in which they are taken. Most of the obstacles are movable and may be varied at will.

In the A. F. G. Inter-Allied Competition, held over this course May 26 and 27, 1922, taking the jumps in numerical order, the results were as follows:

OFFICERS' INDIVIDUAL JUMPING

Entries: A. F. G., 14; other nations, 32. Maximum height of obstacles, 1 m. 35 cm. First place, American entry, *Don*, ridden by Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr., Cavalry. Second place, American entry, *White Sox*, ridden by Lieutenant Mark A. Devine, Cavalry. Third place, American entry, *Black Boy*, ridden by Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr., Cavalry. Fourth place, American entry, *Dick*, ridden by Major John W. Downer, F. A. Fifth place, American entry, *Si Parks*, ridden by Lieutenant J. K. Baker, Cavalry. Sixth place, American entry, *Joffre*, ridden by Major C. K. Nulsen, Infantry.

In this event all the best jumping horses of the French and British armies on the Rhine competed.

* Polo in the A. F. G., by same author, is included in section "Polo."

JUMPING AND RACING IN THE A. F. G.

A grand *Concours Hippique* was held by the French Army of the Rhine, at Mayence, Germany, June 8-15, 1922. The accompanying diagram shows the character and dimensions of all the jumps. This is a very difficult and varied course and should be of great interest to all officers of our mounted service. The principal events are noted in some detail, as follows:

PRIX DE KOSTHEIM

This class was an obstacle test for officers, for which prizes were offered totaling 2,500 francs. The course was over obstacles 1-2-8-5-9-4-14-10-11-12-5-15, as shown on the diagram. The obstacles were 1 m. 20 cm. high, and the water jump measured 3 m. 6 cm. A. F. G. had six entries, as against 90 from other nations. The first three places were won by American officers. Major C. K. Nulsen won first place (450 fr.) on *Joffre*; Captain Henry T. Allen won second place (350 fr.) on *Black Boy* and third place (200 fr.) on *Don*; Major John W. Downer won the tenth place (ribbon) on *Irish Lad* and eleventh place (ribbon) on *Dick*.

PRIX DE KASTEL

This event was a 1,100-meter course over obstacles 11-1-14-post and rail-8-6-10-7-12-11-13-15-16, as shown on the diagram. A. F. G. had five entries, other nations 81. Captain H. T. Allen won second place (450 fr.) on *Black Boy* and fourth place (200 fr.) on *Don*. Major Nulsen won fifth place (150 fr.) on *Joffre*, while Major Downer won tenth place (ribbon) on *Irish Lad* and eleventh place (ribbon) on *Dick*.

PRIX DU PRESIDENT DE LA REPUBLIQUE

The prize in this event was offered by the President of the French Republic. Individual prizes were offered by the committee. This event was to be held in two trials and (if necessary) a final. The entries were three teams from the three armies (British, French, and American), and each officer rode the same mount throughout. The time did not count. The length of course was 1,100 meters, over obstacles 1-14-13-8-in and out-10-11-12-3-9-15. After an intermission of a half hour, the course was repeated by each horse. The height of obstacles was 1 m. 30 cm.; water jump, 3 m. 60 cm. The American team won second place. It was composed of Captain Allen, on *Black Boy*; Major Downer, on *Irish Lad*, and Major Nulsen, on *Joffre*. Each member of the team received a piece of plate.

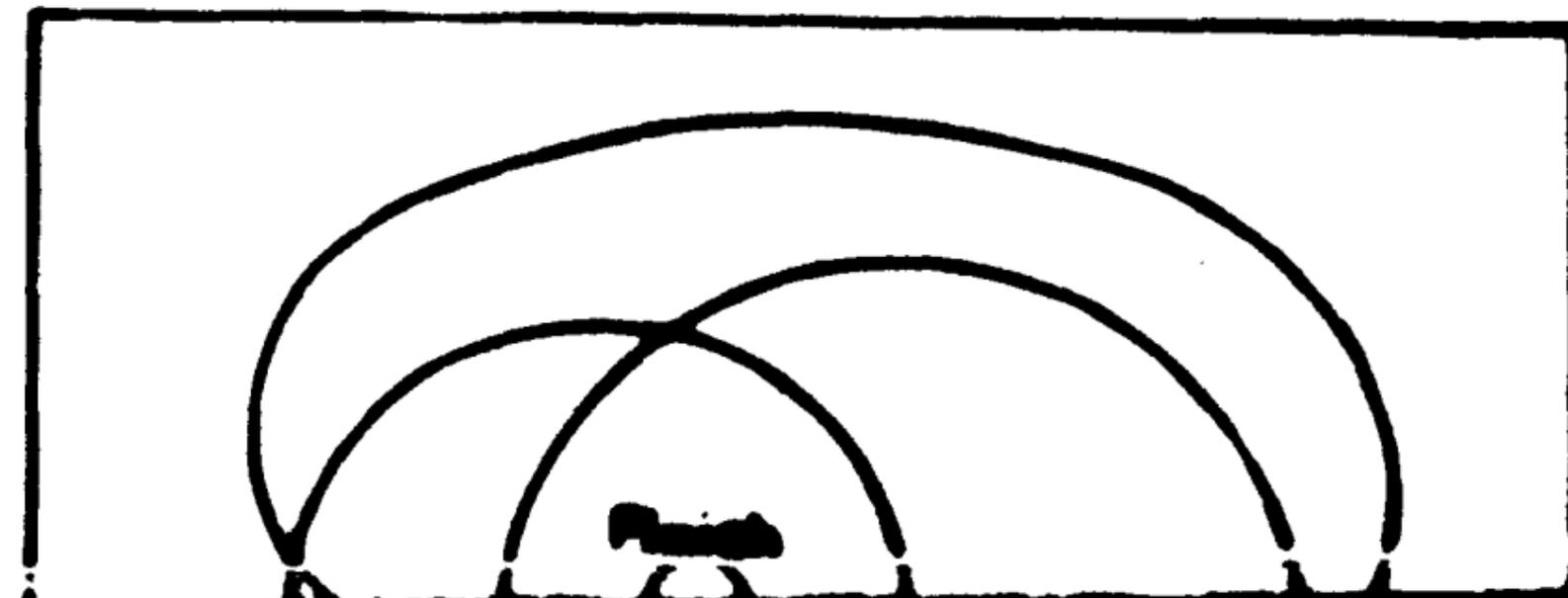
PRIX DE CONSOLATION

There were eleven obstacles in this event of height 1 m. 20 cm., with the water jump 3 m. 60 cm. The A. F. G. had two entries and other nations 38. Of the American entries, Major Downer won fifth place (100 fr.) on *Dick*, and Lieutenant M. A. Devine won twelfth place (ribbon) on *White Sox*.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Price 25 CENTS PER COPY

In this event there were, as indicated in most of the events, two series - one for horses who had never before won a place or prize of a certain value in similar competitions (2d series) and a higher class (1st series). In this event the 1st series was over a course of obstacles as follows: 1) 10-4-3-4 14-8-8-post and rail. Captain Allen was first place (200 fr.) on Black Bay and second place (100 fr.) on Red. Lieutenant Dutton was fourth place (25 fr.) on White Bay. The 2d series left the course and consisted of a ride 200 meters over



Jumping and Racing in the A. F. G.*

BY

Major JOHN K. HERR, Cavalry

JUMPING

THE performances of the A. F. G. team during the present year have been so remarkable that I believe a description of their achievements will be of interest to the service.

In practically all competitions in Europe no opportunity is given the entries to practice over the course. A general description is furnished, giving the general character of the jumps in each event, together with the approximate heights of each. These jumps are so varied that it is essential that the horse must be trained to take with confidence any obstacle which may confront him. It goes without saying that the horses of the nation giving the competition have at one time or other practiced over the same obstacles, which gives them some advantage. After the course is set, however, which is before the arrival of the competitors of the other nations, it is closed until the actual day of the competition.

The A. F. G. Jumping Course at Oberworth Island, Coblenz, Germany, was therefore constructed with the view of including therein so many obstacles of a different nature that any horse which had practiced over the course would have the necessary confidence to attempt any manner of obstacle. The accompanying diagram shows the character and actual dimensions of each obstacle, as well as the normal sequence in which they are taken. Most of the obstacles are movable and may be varied at will.

In the A. F. G. Inter-Allied Competition, held over this course May 26 and 27, 1922, taking the jumps in numerical order, the results were as follows:

OFFICERS' INDIVIDUAL JUMPING

Entries: A. F. G., 14; other nations, 32. Maximum height of obstacles, 1 m. 35 cm. First place, American entry, *Don*, ridden by Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr., Cavalry. Second place, American entry, *White Sox*, ridden by Lieutenant Mark A. Devine, Cavalry. Third place, American entry, *Black Boy*, ridden by Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr., Cavalry. Fourth place, American entry, *Dick*, ridden by Major John W. Downer, F. A. Fifth place, American entry, *Si Parks*, ridden by Lieutenant J. K. Baker, Cavalry. Sixth place, American entry, *Joffre*, ridden by Major C. K. Nulsen, Infantry.

In this event all the best jumping horses of the French and British armies on the Rhine competed.

* Polo in the A. F. G., by same author, is included in section "Polo."

JUMPING AND RACING IN THE A. F. G.

A grand *Concours Hippique* was held by the French Army of the Rhine, at Mayence, Germany, June 8-15, 1922. The accompanying diagram shows the character and dimensions of all the jumps. This is a very difficult and varied course and should be of great interest to all officers of our mounted service. The principal events are noted in some detail, as follows:

PRIX DE KOSTHEIM

This class was an obstacle test for officers, for which prizes were offered totaling 2,500 francs. The course was over obstacles 1-2-8-5-9-4-14-10-11-12-5-15, as shown on the diagram. The obstacles were 1 m. 20 cm. high, and the water jump measured 3 m. 6 cm. A. F. G. had six entries, as against 90 from other nations. The first three places were won by American officers. Major C. K. Nulsen won first place (450 fr.) on *Joffre*; Captain Henry T. Allen won second place (350 fr.) on *Black Boy* and third place (200 fr.) on *Don*; Major John W. Downer won the tenth place (ribbon) on *Irish Lad* and eleventh place (ribbon) on *Dick*.

PRIX DE KASTEL

This event was a 1,100-meter course over obstacles 11-1-14-post and rail-8-6-10-7-12-11-13-15-16, as shown on the diagram. A. F. G. had five entries, other nations 81. Captain H. T. Allen won second place (450 fr.) on *Black Boy* and fourth place (200 fr.) on *Don*. Major Nulsen won fifth place (150 fr.) on *Joffre*, while Major Downer won tenth place (ribbon) on *Irish Lad* and eleventh place (ribbon) on *Dick*.

PRIX DU PRESIDENT DE LA REPUBLIQUE

The prize in this event was offered by the President of the French Republic. Individual prizes were offered by the committee. This event was to be held in two trials and (if necessary) a final. The entries were three teams from the three armies (British, French, and American) and each officer rode the same mount throughout. The time did not count. The length of course was 1,100 meters, over obstacles 1-14-13-8-in and out-10-11-12-3-9-15. After an intermission of a half hour, the course was repeated by each horse. The height of obstacles was 1 m. 30 cm.; water jump, 3 m. 60 cm. The American team won second place. It was composed of Captain Allen, on *Black Boy*; Major Downer, on *Irish Lad*, and Major Nulsen, on *Joffre*. Each member of the team received a piece of plate.

PRIX DE CONSOLATION

There were eleven obstacles in this event of height 1 m. 20 cm., with the water jump 3 m. 60 cm. The A. F. G. had two entries and other nations 38. Of the American entries, Major Downer won fifth place (100 fr.) on *Dick*, and Lieutenant M. A. Devine won twelfth place (ribbon) on *White Sox*.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

PRIX DE L'ILE DES SPORTS

In this event there were, as indeed in most of the events, two series—one for horses who had never before won a place or prizes of a certain value in similar competitions (2d serie) and a higher class (1st serie). In this event the 1st serie was over a course of obstacles as follows: 11-10-6-3-4-14-9-8-post and rail. Captain Allen won first place (800 fr.) on *Black Boy* and second place (600 fr.) on *Don*. Lieutenant Devine won fourth place (300 fr.) on *White Sox*. The 2d serie left the course and consisted of a ride 200 meters over natural country in rear of Tribune; climb up steep hill; slide down; jump off 1 m. 40 cm. vertical wall; then over fence surrounding the course; then the following jumps in order: 4-14-15-16-13-11. In this serie Major Nulsen won third place (500 fr.) on *Joffre*. In this event the height of obstacles was 1 m. 20 cm.; water jump, 30 m. 60 cm. A. F. G. had six entries, other nations 36.

PRIX DU RHIN

This was a severe jumping test over six obstacles, as follows: 11-1-16-3-post and rail-15, the height of obstacles beginning with 1 m. 50 cm. and being increased in the course of the event. There were four A. F. G. entries and 18 from other nations. Lieutenant Devine, on *White Sox*, won fourth place (450 fr.); Major Nulsen, on *Joffre*, sixth place (200 fr.); and Captain Allen, on *Black Boy*, seventh place (ribbon).

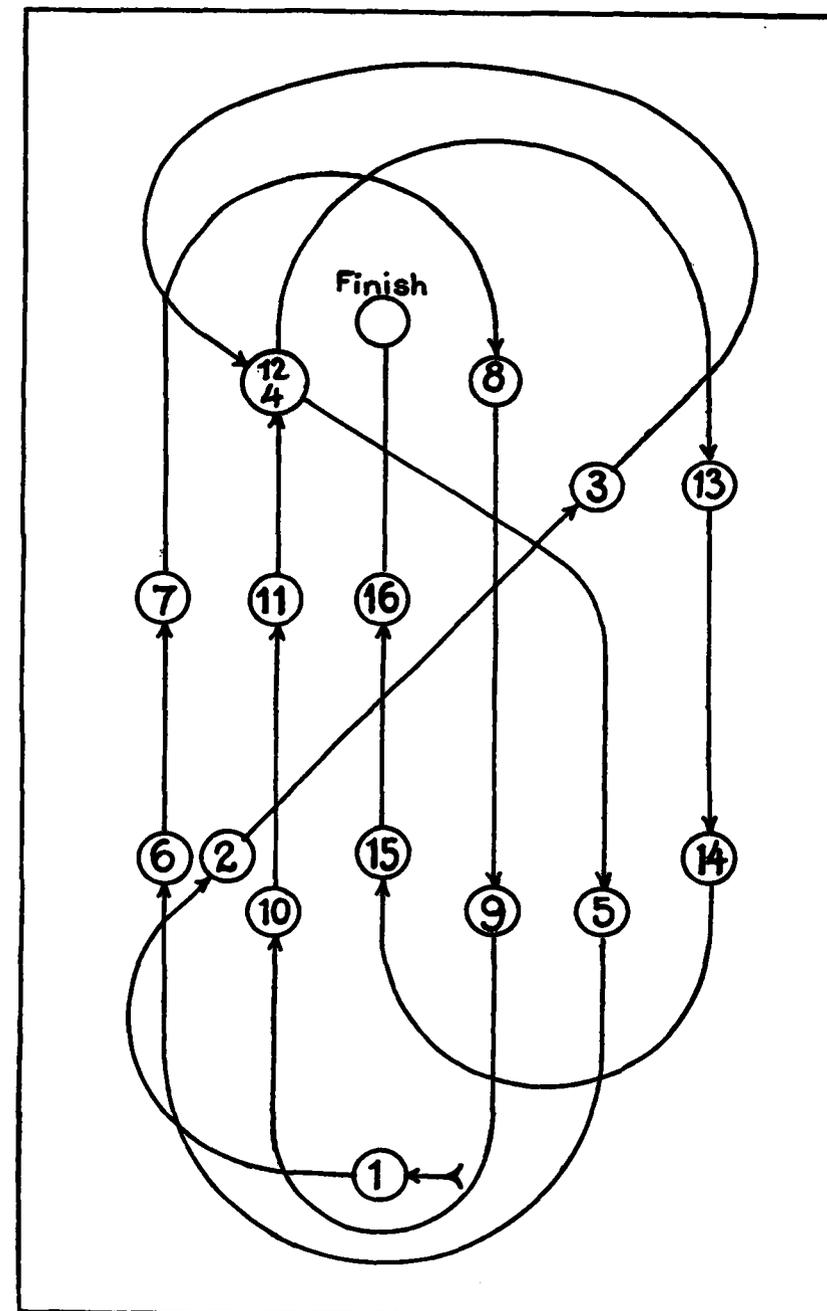
PRIX DU HAUT COMMISSAIRE DE LA REPUBLIQUE FRANCAISE

Six thousand francs in prizes and a challenge cup were offered in this event, which was otherwise known as the Mayence Cup Event. It was over obstacles 1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8-9-10-11-12-13-14-15-16, with height of obstacle about 1 m. 30 cm. There were six American entries and 31 of other nations. Major Nulsen won first place (2,000 fr.) on *Joffre*, Captain Allen second place (1,500 fr.) on *Don*, Major Downer sixth place (300 fr.) on *Irish Lad*, and Captain Allen twelfth place (100 fr.) on *Black Boy*.

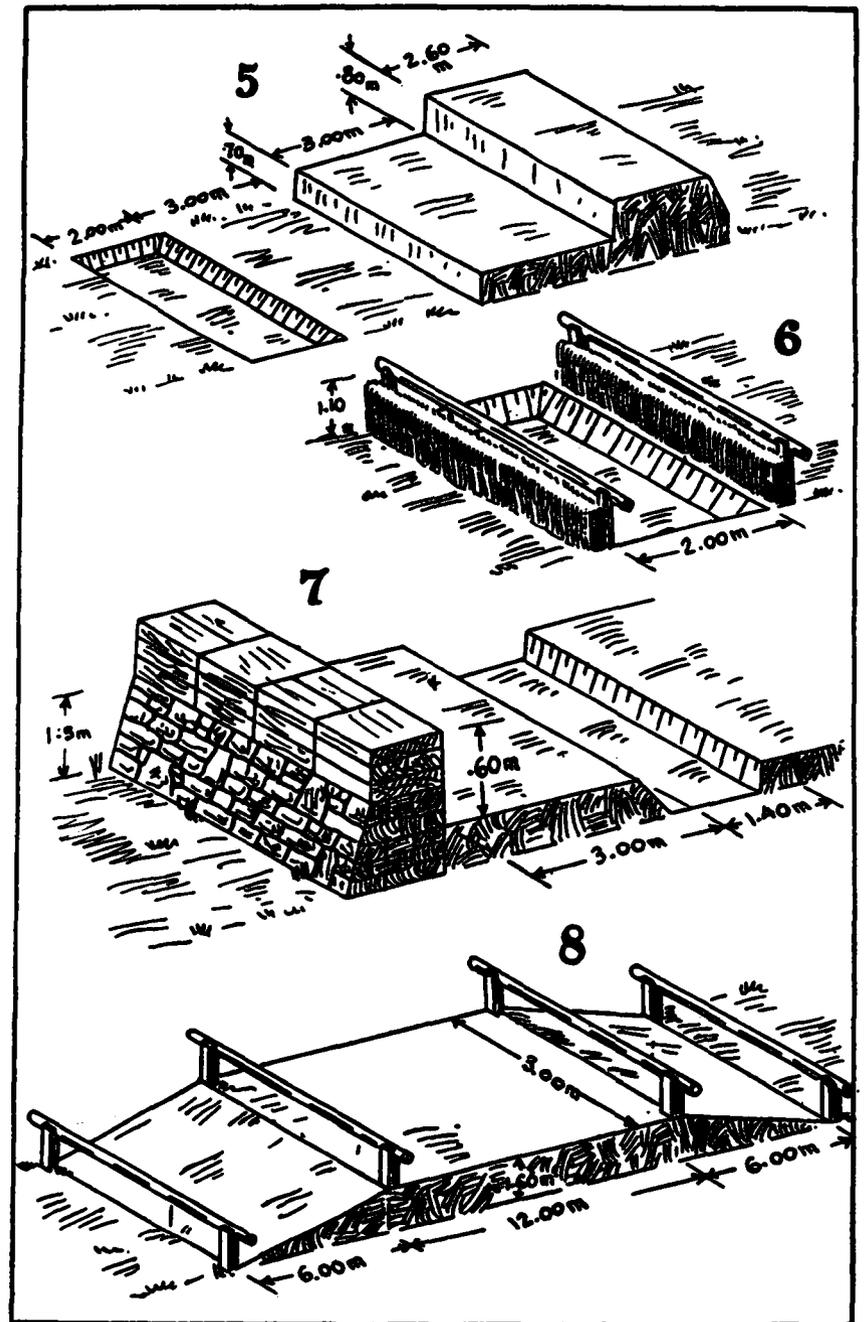
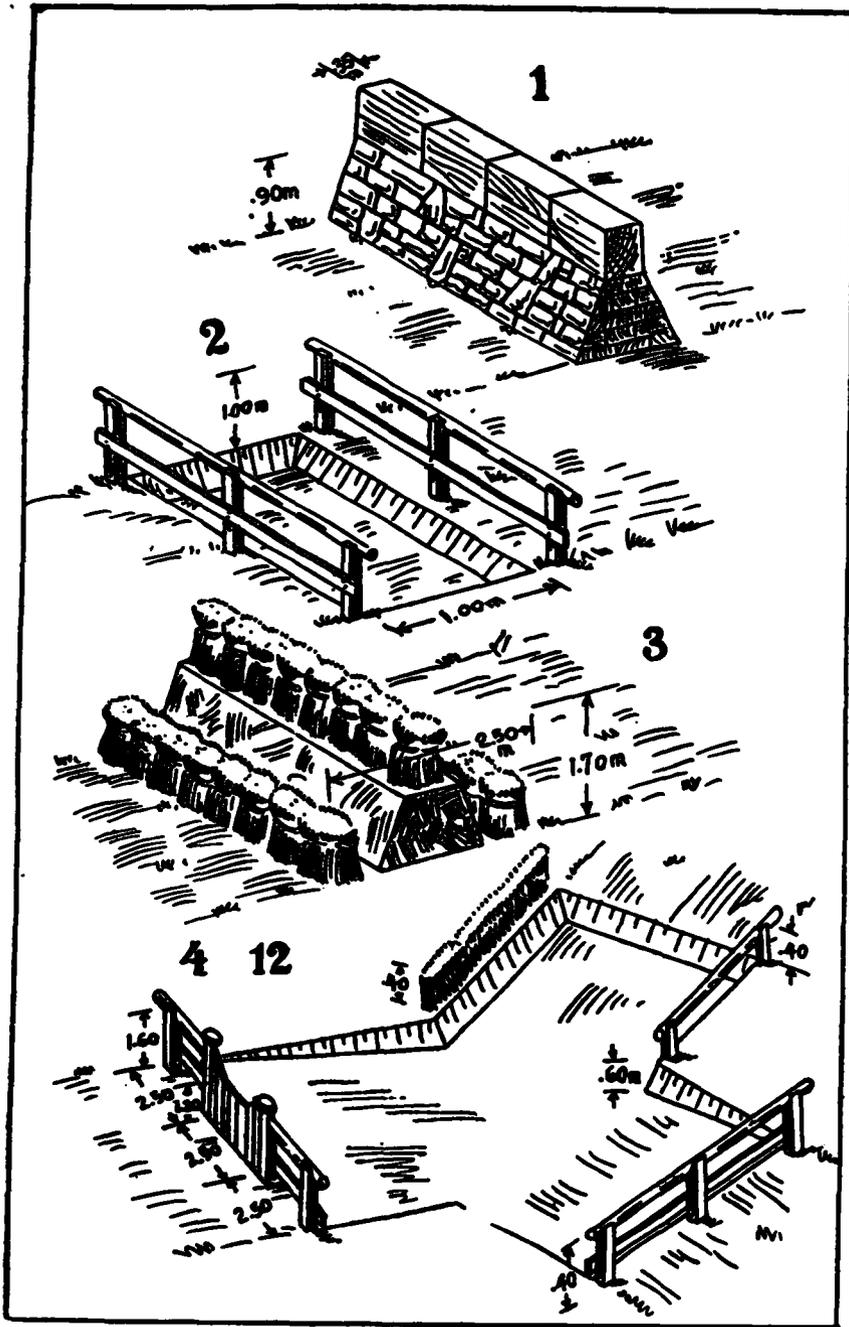
PRIX DU MAIN

This event was a competition for non-commissioned officers over obstacles 16-10-14-in and out-post and rail-hedge-in and out-8-post and rail-hedge-9-11, with obstacles about 1 m. 10 cm. high. Sergeant Lukozewski, of the American Army, took second place (300 fr.) on *Sam Browne*. A. F. G. had two entries and other nations 38.

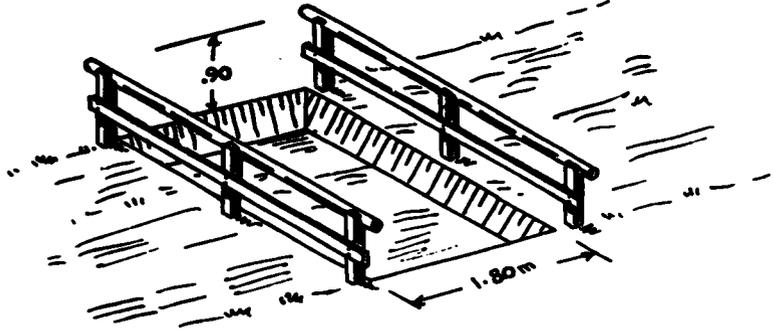
In the whole competition the American team entered only seven horses, for which the entry fees totaled 860 francs. The prizes won by them totaled 8,650



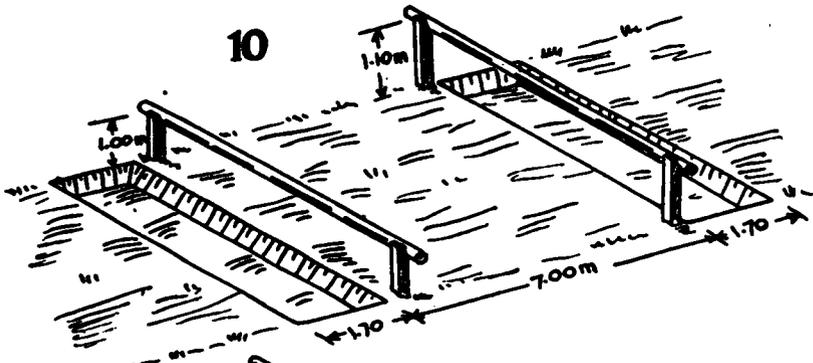
THE GRAND CONCOURS HIPPIQUE AT MAYENCE, GERMANY



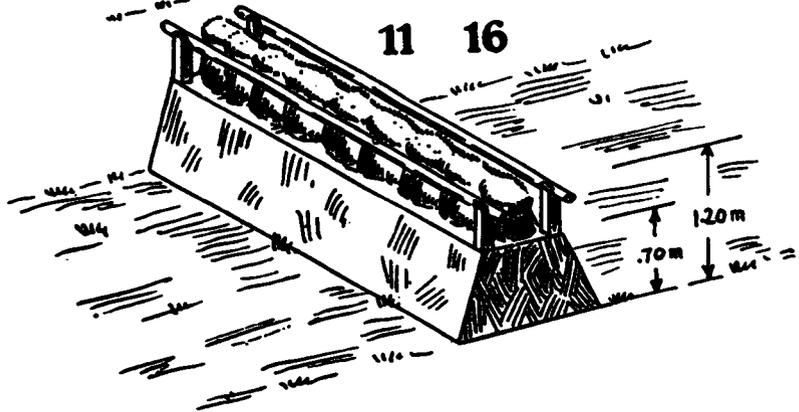
9



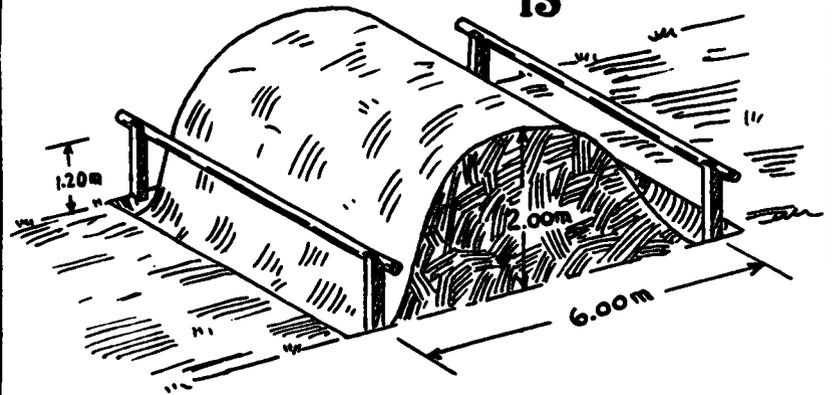
10



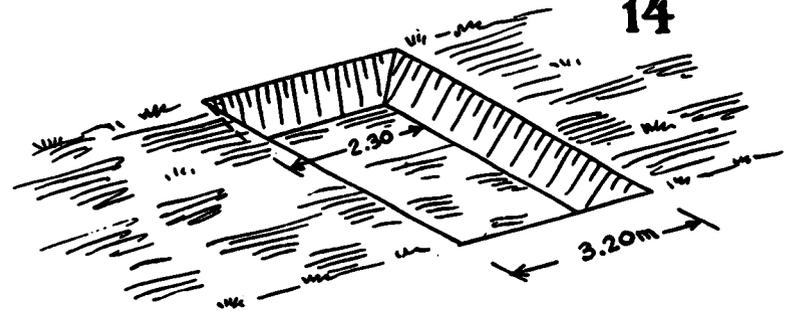
11 16



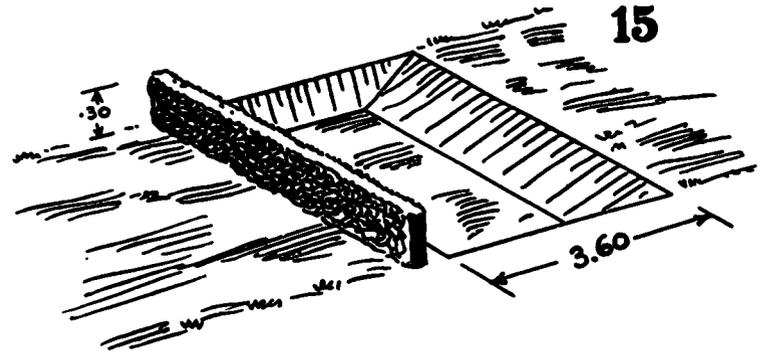
13

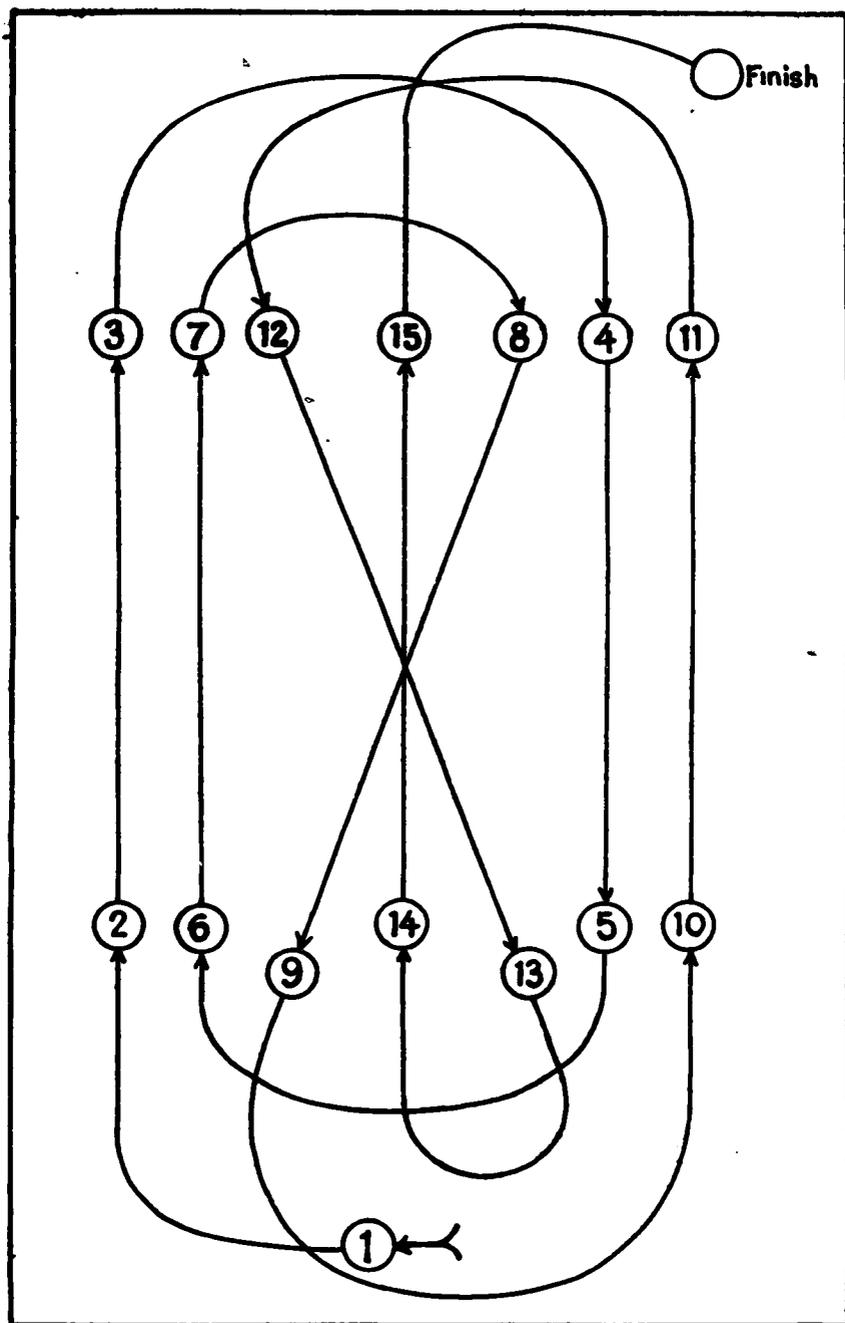


14

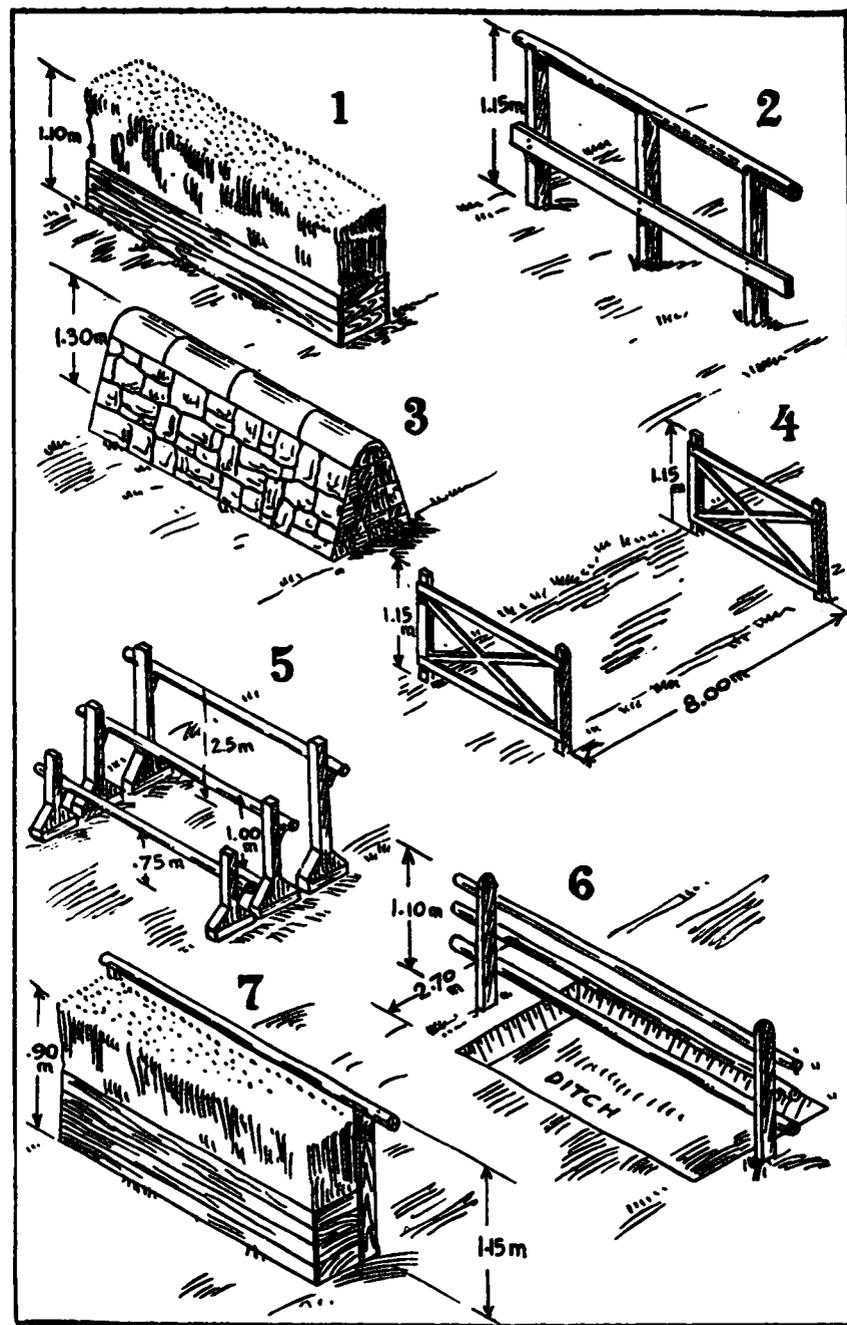


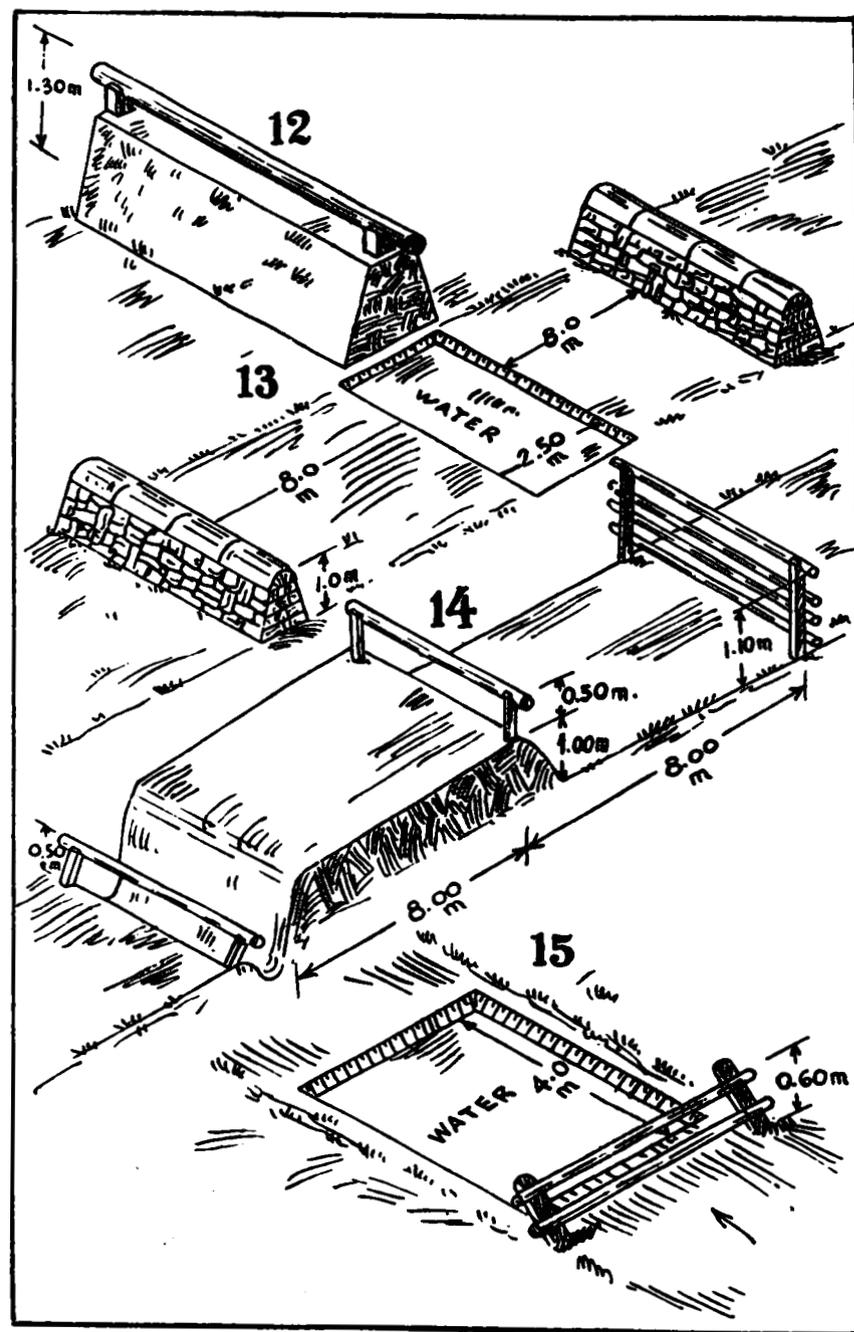
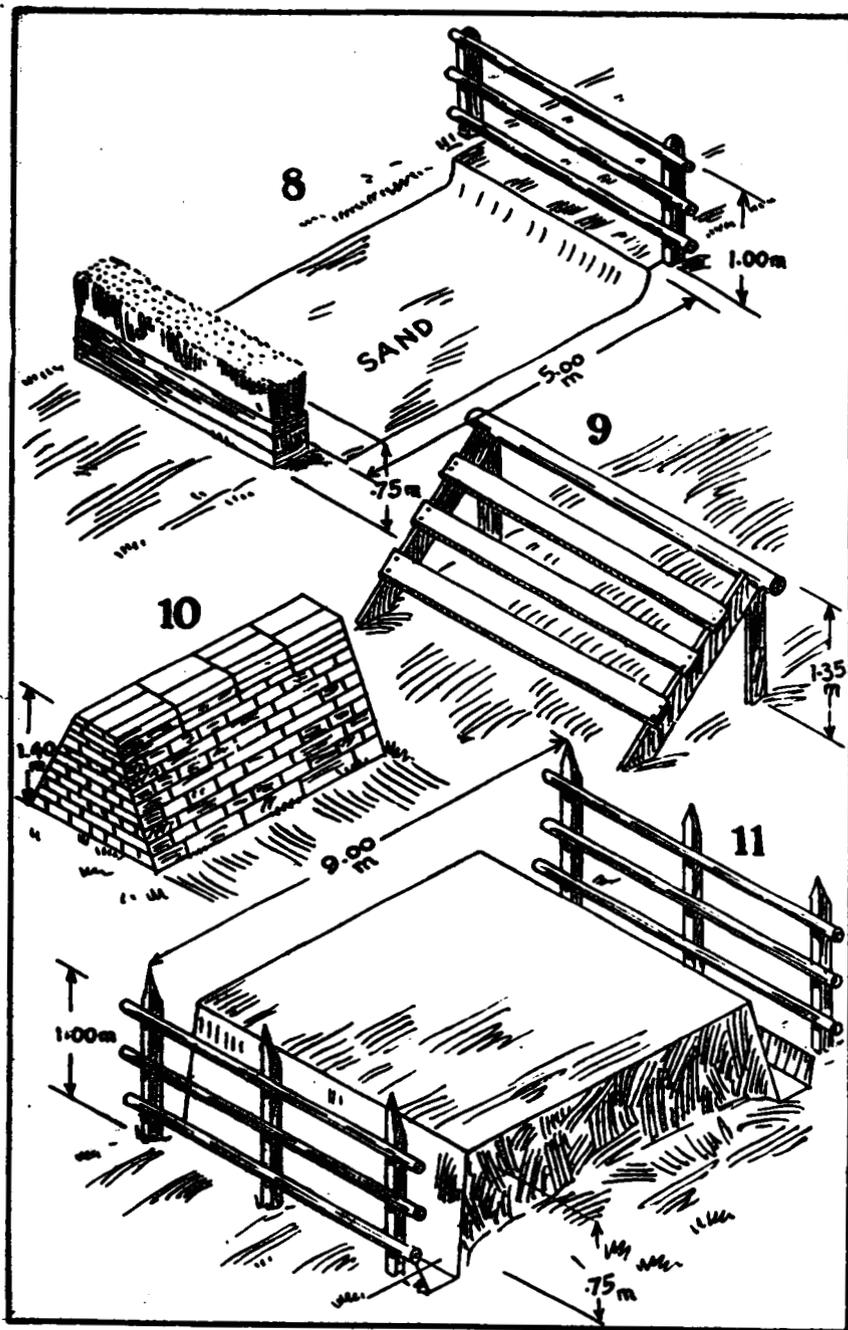
15





THE A. F. G. JUMPING COURSE AT COBLENZ, GERMANY





JUMPING AND RACING IN THE A. F. G.

france. It will be noted that the American team, with a comparatively small number of entries, was able to show a convincing superiority.

It is well to inquire into the cause for this very striking achievement, perhaps the best performance yet made by any team of the American Army. The success obtained was not because horses of a very superior class were available. All the horses in the A. F. G. were carefully picked over to secure horses to take part in the Inter-Allied games held in Paris in the summer of 1919, and upon the completion of these games they were shipped to the United States for use at the Cavalry School. In the spring of 1920 General Henry T. Allen directed Major John W. Downer, F. A., to assemble a group of officers and horses and place them in training with the view of competing in Inter-Allied competitions. In compliance with these instructions the best prospects were selected from what was left. As there were just two troops of cavalry and three batteries of field artillery to select from, it may be seen that the problem was a rather difficult one. Twelve horses and four officers were selected and systematic training of horses and riders was started. I will not go into the routine of this training, as it is described in length in an article written for the 1922 *Rasp* by Major John W. Downer, F. A. It suffices to say that the results obtained seem to prove the soundness of the methods followed and to show that the success of American riding teams is to be obtained by long and thorough preparation. It is believed that failure to obtain the desired results in Olympic competitions is not due to the lack of proper horse flesh, but to the lack of long and systematic preparation. It is believed that if the United States intends to enter a military jumping team in the 1924 Olympic games that the best available horses and men should be selected and a thorough and systematic preparation should be started at once.

The method of classification used in the Mayence competition may be of interest. Points were counted against contestants for faults as follows: For knocking over obstacle with fore quarter, 3; with hind quarter, 1; if the horse puts one or both fore feet in the water, 2; hind feet, 1; if the horse traverses an obstacle in width without jumping, 3; if he knocks over or displaces the hedge or bar placed before an obstacle in width (ditch or water), 1; refusal or swerving before an obstacle the first time, 2; the second time, eliminated; stopping or balking, otherwise than before an obstacle, the first time, 1; the second time 2; the third time, eliminated; if the horse leaves the inclosure, eliminated; fall of horse with or without rider, 4; fall of rider without fall of horse, eliminated; time of performance under time prescribed, for each 5 seconds or fraction thereof, 1. The minimum time was based upon the ordinary gallop, 340 meters to the minute.

RACING

In order to participate with any prospects of success in the Inter-Allied racing meets of the armies of the Rhine, which meets are held by the French,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

British, and American armies once each month during the racing season, it became necessary to establish a small racing stable. There were included therein such horses as were considered good prospects for racing. A number of these horses were bought in England during 1920. There were also one or two private mounts. This, in company with all other similar activities, was placed by the Commanding General under the direction of the Third Division, G. S. Lieutenant-Colonel J. M. Burroughs, retired, who happened to be residing in Coblenz, volunteered to take charge of the racing stable and, assisted by Captain W. McK. Dunn, A. D. C. to the Commanding General, assumed charge of the training and details connected therewith. The results achieved during the season of 1921 were quite fair. During the season of 1922 the systematic effort put forth has achieved marked success.

Potiphar, the crack racer of the A. F. G., has started six times during the season of 1922, winning once at Coblenz, twice at Cologne, and once at Wiesbaden. At the racing meet held at Wiesbaden on June 25, 1922, in the Inter-Allied Event, the Prix du President de la Republique (first prize, 15,000 francs), he won first place after a thrilling struggle with the very best horses of the French Army. *Potiphar* was ridden by Lieutenant Mark A. Devine, Cavalry.

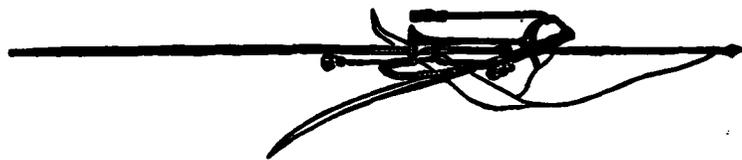
Prince Charming has run seven or eight times and has secured one first and three second places. He won first place at the racing meet held at Coblenz, Germany, July 9, 1922, over a mile and a quarter course, over the best flat racers of the French and British armies. He won two second places at Cologne and one at Wiesbaden.

Sarabande, private mount belonging to Major H. R. W. Herwig, Q. M. C., won first place at Kreuznach, second place at Coblenz, July 9, 1922; second place at Coblenz in the June racing meet.

Bourbon ran five times, winning first place at Coblenz and second place at Kreuznach.

Betsy Barn, private mount belonging to Captain W. McK. Dunn, A. D. C., won first place at Cologne, third place at Cologne, and third place at Coblenz.

All these horses except *Potiphar* ran in flat races varying in distances from five furlongs to a mile and one-half.



The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria*

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry

(Observer with the British Cavalry)

THE BRILLIANCY of all arms at Beersheba and the neatness of the victory caused a feeling of exultation and of great confidence throughout General Allenby's army. Along the entire front one sensed a feeling of exuberant strength and a keen impulse to dash forward. The cavalry had tested, with solid satisfaction, their fire power, advancing on foot against strong positions, supported by their machine-guns and horse batteries, while the mounted charge of the 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade, swiftly converting victory into success, aroused in other units renewed zest for mounted combat and a longing to conquer by the rush of steel and steed.

In this connection, it is now time to state without violation of confidence that the decision and the plan of the Cavalry Corps Commander at Beersheba was to make that charge with an entire cavalry division and the whole reason why it was made by only one brigade was that the two other brigades could not be assembled in time. The Turk's resistance during the phase of fighting on foot had been so stubborn that brigade after brigade had been absorbed and when the opportunity and the necessity for the mounted charge came, whatever was available had to be used at once and that just happened to be one brigade. The charge itself and all its attendant circumstances showed that a divisional charge would have been even more successful.

There are those who, still thinking of the old boot-to-boot charge, would write into our regulations that mounted charges will hereafter only be made by troops and squadrons, possibly by regiments. But the mounted charge, now delivered by deployed lines with an interval of four or five yards between troopers, has been proved practicable for brigade and divisions. Why not avail ourselves of the facts? The Babylonian architect, planning a palace, prescribed large yellow sun-dried bricks in the specifications because such were the materials of the day. The modern builder, recognizing modern materials, alters his specifications but "he gets there just the same." After all, the experienced modern cavalryman, acquainted with the fact that infantry, guns and trenches can be successfully assaulted by large units on horseback, will doubtless include all incorrect regulations among those things which must make way for victory whenever the safety of an enlightened nation is at stake.

*Continued from the July number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

But the advocacy of the really obvious is leading us away from our story. Let us return to the map and scrutinize the almost equilateral triangle BEERSHEBA-HAREIRA-EL DHAHARIYEH. For five days after the capture of Beersheba, the northern and northeastern part of this sandy, waterless and desolate region was the scene of daily and desperate combat, because the Turk instead of holding his reserves at a point north of SHARIA STATION, for example,—a point from which he could have effectively countered—rushed about three divisions to the TEL KHUWEILFEH region. He thought, incorrectly, that the British would make an attempt to advance by the road BEERSHEBA-DHAHARIYEH-HEBRON to JERUSALEM. Anxiety as to the great political set-back which would result from the loss of the Holy City seriously affected the judgment of the Turkish Higher Command at this time. After the war, when the writer of this article was stationed in Berlin as American Military Attaché, he became acquainted with the German Colonel Kress von Kressenstein, a liberal minded, pleasant gentleman and capable commander who, as a general in the Turkish Army, had been military chief of the Ottoman forces in Palestine. Being questioned as to the hurried employment of his reserves on his extreme left, instead of a more cautious use near the center, von Kress stated that he had always believed the British advance would ultimately be up the coast—as it was—but that the nervousness of the Turkish Supreme Command as to Jerusalem caused his recommendations to be overruled whenever there seemed to be indications of a threat in that direction. Incidentally, on another occasion, when the writer mentioned the name of General Chauvel,—the Cavalry Corps Commander,—to von Kress, the latter very pensively but with a sportsmanlike smile said: "Ah! He and his cavalrymen! They were indeed a foe to be reckoned with. Unfortunately I had no cavalry force adequate to hold them back!"

The fighting in the northeastern corner of the big triangle was, as far as the British were concerned, a defensive operation behind which they could proceed with the re-grouping of units preparatory to assaulting the strong defenses in front of the line HAREIRA-SHARIA, in the northwestern corner of the triangle. The plan was for the XXth Infantry Corps to overwhelm this system of defenses, shown on the map, and for the Cavalry Corps to push through by the infantry's right with the possibility of riding straight for NEJILE, HUI and DEIR SINEID to the northwest, far in rear of the Turkish garrison in Gaza and its eastern elements. That this plan was only partially successful in execution was due in reasonable measure to the traditional recuperative powers of Turkish troops, but the waterless nature of the entire regions thereabouts was the real obstacle, because it was this circumstance which rendered impossible the concentration of the cavalry as a corps, in time to strike at the psychological moment, on November 6th.

The Australian Division, having practically exhausted the water at Beer-

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

sheba on November 4th, had marched west to Karm, where water could be had and where it could protect the left of the Irish 10th Division of the XXth Corps, but it was twelve miles from the right of the latter corps. The Anzac Division, helping the Welsh 53d Infantry Division in the latter's great fight against three Turkish divisions at Khulweilfeh, had been watering its horses at points ten miles distant: as late as one o'clock in the afternoon of the 6th, its brigades were still in the hills along the north side of the triangle. The Yeomanry Division on November 6th had to take over the lines of the 74th Division, west of Khulweilfeh, in order that the latter unit could join in the attack of the XXth Corps; and the yeomanry had to water their horses back toward Beersheba. As a result of necessarily constant employment elsewhere, handicapped by lack of water, only six of the eleven cavalry brigades could be brought up to take advantage of the XXth Corps break through the Turkish line HAREIRA-SHARIA, and these six were about twelve hours late. Furthermore, when the great advance actually began it was frequently necessary to direct units on places, or via places, where sufficient water was thought to exist, instead of confining them to tactical objectives.

But in spite of all these handicaps, which denied a 100 per cent achievement, the result was a very great success. On November 6th and 7th the XXth Infantry Corps, with customary skill and gallantry, smashed through the Turkish line. The Anzac and the Australian Divisions of the Cavalry Corps started respectively for NEJILE and the line HUI-JEMAMEH, followed on the left by the 60th Infantry Division (known as "Shea's Foot Cavalry") headed for HUI. The red line on the map indicating the position November 7th shows at its center the great advance by the cavalry into the Turkish area on this date, the cavalry sectors being indicated by a continuous line and the infantry sectors by a dotted line. During the night November 6-7 the Turks evacuated Gaza, closely followed by the British XXIst Corps. By remarkable marching the Turkish units immediately east of Gaza, almost cut off by the advance of the Cavalry Corps from the southeast and the cavalry of the XXIst Corps from the west, succeeded in withdrawing fairly intact to the north. But the rapid advance of the cavalry had forced the Turk out of his deep-dug defenses, trench warfare of indecision was broken up, and movement battle of decision was to be the order of the day for many weeks.

The next great task of the cavalry was to take up the pursuit and keep it hot. We see by the map that the entire cavalry corps, all three divisions in line, had fully developed the pursuit by November 8th. In following the red line up the coast and across toward Jerusalem we are not, for present purposes, concerned with the exact daily positions of the troops, squadrons and regiments, nor, except occasionally, with the locations of brigades. These hillsides, vales and ridges, achieved in splendid valor and forever marked by the blood of the gallant dead, are rather shrines for those who grieve in far-off

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Britain, Australia, and New Zealand and among the remote villages of the enemy's domain—for the vanquished, too, has his memories.

One cannot be expected to eliminate from memory this human side of "locations." One day, after a rather severe engagement, the writer, turning a sharp corner of a trail around a ledge of rock on the battlefield, came suddenly face to face with a young Turkish soldier seated calmly on a natural bench of earth in the hillside, his rifle near his hand. Seldom has one seen a countenance so strikingly handsome or a physique so powerful, and these were accentuated by the suddenness of it all. But this man had ceased to be an enemy. He was dead. Perfectly life-like in attitude and in general appearance, a closer look, after the first surprise, discovered a wound, covered by his thick, black, curly hair, which had brought him down, but he had not fallen like the others. One could but reflect in passing that somewhere some little group of people hopefully awaited the return of this young warrior. So "locations" and positions in detail of units, however small, will all be somewhere studied in the yearning, searching scrutiny of broken hearts. For ourselves there remains a professional study of the methods and the means by which the conflict was carried north over the rolling plains of Philistia and into the rugged hills of Judea.

We see from the battle lines that the Cavalry Corps, as such, constituted the army's entire combat contact with the Turkish forces from November 8th to 13th, fighting and marching daily, assisted overhead by the Air Force. Owing to the small number of planes available, the air activity was directed by G. H. Q. and the Cavalry Corps had no planes of its own, as it did later, as soon as a sufficiency of planes made normal organization possible.

On November 13th we see the infantry has come up and taken its place in the center (this was the XXIst Infantry Corps), while the Cavalry fought on the flanks, but strictly as a part of the main battle, be it remembered, two divisions on the right of the infantry and one on the left. On November 14th began the movement which resulted in placing two cavalry divisions on the left instead of on the right: the army was to wheel to the right (east) toward Jerusalem and the fastest marching troops were consequently employed on the marching flank.

On November 18th and later, to include November 21st, we see the cavalry, as a corps operating on the left of the infantry, participating in the main battle now entirely among the steep hills, while a brigade of cavalry operates on the right in the specific rôle of "cavalry operating on the flanks." The entire advance was an illustration, among other things, that no mysterious theory precludes the employment of cavalry in the main battle as well as "on the flanks." All you need is the kind of battle we will generally have and the kind of cavalry we have already got.

The Corps Commander's directions covering the larger phases of the advance, transmitted through the three divisional headquarters and then on

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

through brigades and regiments, were converted into combat which, first here and then there, exhibited all the versatility of the cavalry repertoire. The entire corps would at times be fighting on foot; then a brigade might suddenly mount and charge a near objective while its own horse battery and machine-guns extended the aid of fire; a regiment or a squadron might likewise seize an opportunity to gallop a position, with or without fire support. The enemy's occasional retirement by choice from a position meant a fast ride forward to occupy it quickly—merely the assertion of mobility. Squadrons and troops had their bayonet encounters with the enemy, and squads their patrol experiences. Disliking digging, all hands nevertheless, sooner or later, resorted to the intrenching tool for protective cover, even though occupancy might be brief. So, with horse, rifle, saber, bayonet, hand grenade, and intrenching tool, the resourceful trooper advanced the army line. From our point of view the pistol might have figured successfully in some of those combat exploits, but the British do not believe in it as a weapon for general use, and so, in this respect, the campaign gave us no lessons or proofs.

Cavalry action, as such, began the very first day, November 7th, when the Anzac Division, moving toward the line NEJILE-JEMAMEH, found the Turks in strength on TEL ABU DILAKH, a high hill about 3½ miles due southwest of Nejile. Under enemy shell and rifle fire the 2d Australian Light Horse Brigade, with regiments in line of troop columns, galloped this hill and captured its lower slopes, suffering only moderate losses. The brigade was supported in this charge by the fire of two horse batteries. From the lower slopes the brigade gradually drove the Turk from the crest. The initial gallop had saved both time and casualties.

On November 8th occurred Lieutenant-Colonel Cheape's famous charge with twelve troops of Yeomenry, near HUI. The 60th Infantry Division, commanded by Major-General Shea, a cavalry officer, found its advance seriously hindered by a group of Turkish artillery, with infantry support. General Shea and Lieutenant-Colonel Cheape after personal reconnaissance decided upon a cavalry charge against the guns. Skillfully maneuvering under cover of a parallel ridge, the decisive impact of the troops against the enemy's main position was delivered by surprise in three converging groups moving at their utmost speed over an average distance of 800 yards. Thus, in from 1½ to 2 minutes after the troops were visible as a target, they were actually among the cannoners and the infantry escort, giving them the sword. The Turks fought desperately but were quickly finished. The cavalry had captured in this swift onslaught eleven pieces of artillery, four machine-guns, and about one hundred prisoners. They had also in these brief moments made possible the advance of the 60th Division without the several hundred casualties and the loss of some hours of time which would have been the price of a deliberate approach against this enemy group. The cavalry squadrons suffered severely,

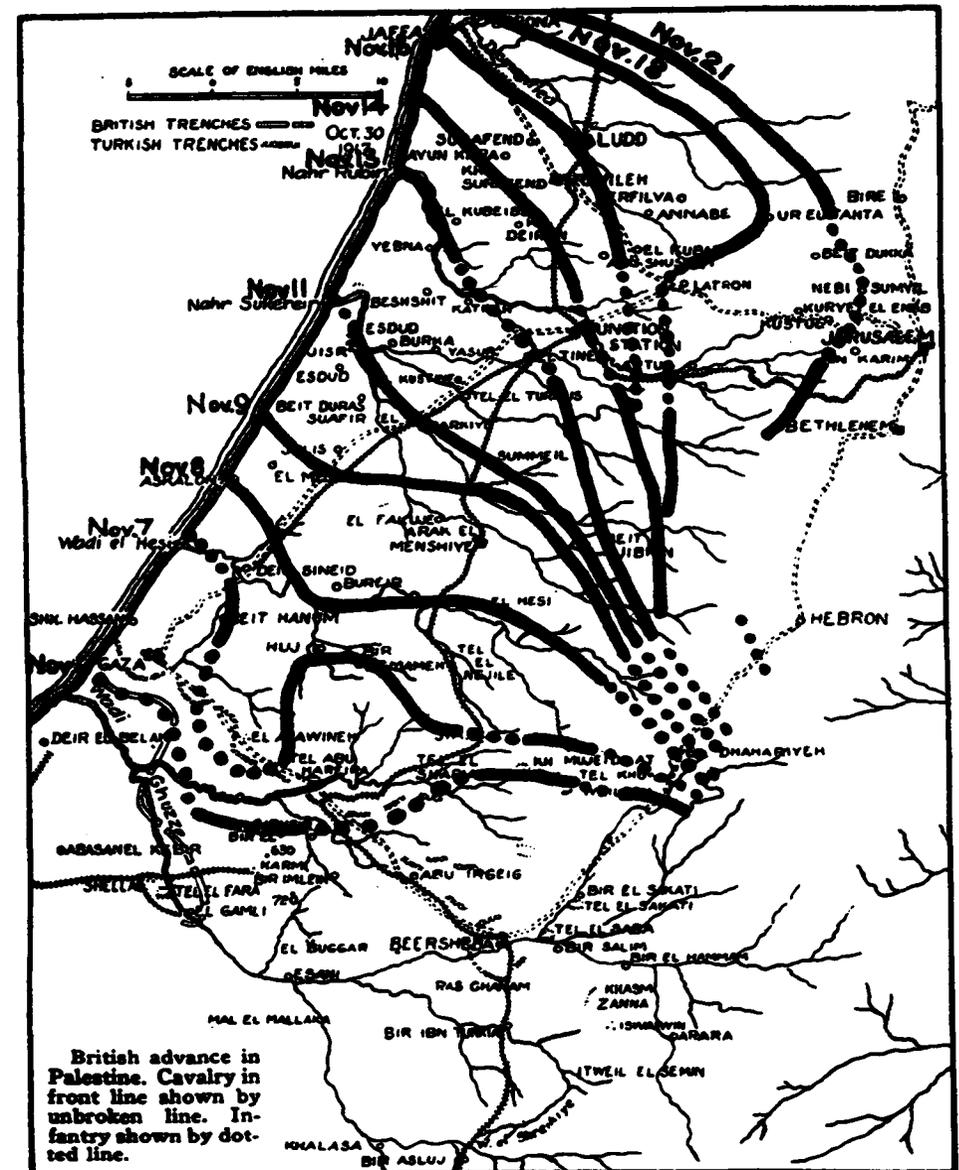
THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

losing in killed and wounded 75 per cent of their officers, 42 per cent of their men, and 60 per cent of their horses. This was an example of almost perfect offensive work and poorly thought-out defensive work. The Turkish infantry should not have been actually with the guns they were escorting, where they were subject to surprise, but should have held positions of advantage on the flanks and in front in order to render any such swift approach impossible. But in normal warfare, with many troop movements in progress over varied terrain, poor formations will always be found at times, in all armies, and it is up to the alert aggressor to take advantage of them.

On November 14th, Brigadier General Godwin, with the 6th Brigade of Yeomenry, charged at EL MUGHAR with about 800 sabers in the two attacking regiments. His objective was the Turkish line on a ridge, elevation 186 feet, about 3,500 yards from the dry creek bed out of which his regiments issued to the advance. In three lines, distance between lines about 300 yards, with troopers deployed at 4 yards interval, the attacking force covered the first half of the advance at the trot and the last half at the gallop, being all this time under artillery, machine-gun, and rifle-fire and being supported by one horse battery and six machine-guns. The audacity and swiftness of the attack, augmented by the excellent fire support and given finality by the deadly sword thrusting at the moment of impact, overcame the Turk, who yielded 1,096 prisoners, 3 pieces of artillery (Krupp 77's) and 14 machine-guns. General Godwin's brigade suffered a loss of 129 in killed and wounded. In addition to the brigade's remarkable victory in the immediate front, there was an additional result of great importance: the 52d Infantry Division, immediately on the right, which had been held up by the fire from EL MUGHAR, was enabled to advance without further losses from this direction. The field of EL MUGHAR would have permitted the mounted charge of a division just as easily as it did the charge of the 6th Brigade. Space, features of terrain for the approach, and the characteristics of the enemy's position, all would have permitted this. It merely happened that at the psychological moment a brigade, seeing the opportunity, made the charge. None of the circumstances afforded a basis for asserting that such charges will hereafter be confined to bodies of troops similar in size to this brigade. On the contrary, all the circumstances indicated that larger bodies could have done exactly the same thing.

The above and other mounted actions will receive more detailed treatment under the subject of "formations," which is reserved for later attention.

Back of the lines which advanced in a manner so inspiring, there had to be that inevitable drudgery of war, the bringing up of supplies. So large an army in such a region could not hope to "live off the country." In the cavalry, the getting up of supplies devolved especially on Corps Headquarters. By reference to the map we see rail heads south of Gaza at DEIR EL BELAH on the left and at EL GAMLI on the right. This was the situation when the



MAP OF PALESTINE

THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA

attack on Beersheba began, October 31st. (KARM was not opened until later.) When the Cavalry Corps began to move out preparatory to the Beersheba operations, "Army" was delivering supplies at EL GAMLI. We have already seen that "Corps" established a depot near ESANI, October 21st and, by using camels and wagons, forwarded supplies to divisional refilling points at KHALASA and ASLUJ during the period October 28th to November 1st. On this latter date rail head was closed at GAMLI and opened at KARM, from which place supplies were forwarded by camels, wagons, and caterpillars to Beersheba, which, having been captured October 31st, served as a depot during the fighting which cleared the Turk out of the big triangle to the north. Divisional refilling points in the triangle were reached by camels and wagons and the divisions themselves used camels principally, as the country was difficult for wheels.

When the line of November 6th was established, Beersheba depot was closed and IRGEIG was opened. Camel trains operated from Karm to Irgeig and motor trucks from Irgeig to divisional refilling points as the corps began its great push to the northwest. Then, as HUI was captured and the line of November 8th was reached, Irgeig was closed and the camels began to carry supplies from KARM to HAREIRA, while motor trucks went from here on to divisional refilling points, this means of supply continuing until November 11th, when the KARM rail head was abandoned by the Cavalry Corps and DEIR EI. BELAH adopted. Now, looking back at GAMLI and KARM and considering in sequence the supply objectives Khalasa, Beersheba, Irgeig, and Hareira, rail head is seen somewhat as the hub of a wheel and the corps supply line as the spoke of a wheel, following the cavalry corps as it advanced to the northwest. Consistent with this "spoke of the wheel" simile was the habitual employment of the slow camels as transport on the hub, or inside, end of the spoke, and the faster-moving motor trucks on the outer end.

From Deir El Belah rail head, camels were used to BEIT HANUN and motor trucks thence out to divisional refilling points. On November 20th rail head was established at Gaza, from whence camels were used to DEIR SINEID, and motor trucks from the latter place to JULIS and thence to divisional refilling points, divisional trains being used from these points out to brigades. An interesting example of supply is that pertaining to the cavalry end of the line of November 21st, shown on the map. The Yeomenry Division on this line received its supplies, by rail as far as Gaza, thence by camel to DEIR SINEID, by motor truck to RAMLEH, by horse-drawn wagons to ANNABE, by camel to UR EL TAHTA and thence to units in the line by pack-horses.

During the above period the old Turkish narrow-gauge railway to DEIR SINEID was still out of commission and the Navy had only just begun to land supplies in quantity at the mouth of the NAHR SUKEREIR and at the port of Jaffa.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

The supply of the Cavalry Corps during this advance was really a remarkable feat. Not alone had supplies to be forwarded, but during the period October 30th to November 7th drinking water had to be provided for most of the command, tank-trucks and camels being used for this purpose. Yet this great work was directed most unobtrusively by a comparatively small staff, the D. A. and Q. M. G. Brigadier-General E. F. TREW, C. M. G., D. S. O., giving the general control his tireless attention, while his assistant, Lieutenant-Colonel W. T. FARR, D. S. O., directing the actual progress of supply trains, repeatedly demonstrated what remarkable things can be done by a combination of real Australian personality and physique. The rapidity of the advance up the coast demanded the smoothest functioning and co-ordination of combat direction and supply service. This seemed to come about almost automatically, the British staff system, by its simplicity, being very appropriate to just this sort of warfare.

(To be continued.)

NOTICE

ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION.

The Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association will be held at Washington, D. C., on Monday, January 15, 1923, at the Army and Navy Club.

The election of officers and of members of the Executive Council will take place at this meeting.

All members of the Association who are not certain to be present in person are urgently requested to execute and forward to the Secretary a proxy, form for which is to be found below.

PROXY

I hereby constitute and appoint the Secretary of the United States Cavalry Association, or....., my proxy, for me and in my name and behalf, to vote at any election of officers and members of the Executive Council of the United States Cavalry Association, upon any and all proposed amendments to the Constitution of the said Association, and upon any and all other matters which may properly come before the annual meeting of the United States Cavalry Association in January, 1923, or any adjourned meeting thereof.

.....

Editorial Comment

MILITARY DISCUSSIONS AND PUBLIC SPEAKING

THE SECRETARY OF WAR has recently authorized public and private discussion on appropriate occasions by officers of the army in support of the military policy of the United States and the plans of the War Department in furtherance of the National Defense Program. The military policy of the United States is that which is embodied in the National Defense Act of June 3, 1916, as amended by the act of June 4, 1920. Obviously, this action was taken in order that officers of the Regular Army may play the part which opportunity presents to them in disseminating a knowledge of the present national defense program and of arousing a popular enthusiasm for it.

The War Department has announced: "One of the greatest needs in connection with the development of the Army of the United States is that the country at large be made familiar with the military policy—with the mission of the Regular Army, the National Guard, the Organized Reserves, and the functions of the R. O. T. C. and C. M. T. C. with reference to the three components of the Army of the United States. Short talks at civic gatherings by officers familiar with the subject will prove to be one of the most effective possible means of spreading knowledge of these subjects and creating interest in them."

A moment's reflection will serve to discover the dangers which lie in this liberty, which may easily be confounded with license. Some may talk too much. Some may talk rashly or to no purpose. There is only one safe course: this liberty should be interpreted very strictly as a duty, just as clear and well defined as any other military duty. Instead of being directed to impart a certain technical or tactical instruction to an R. O. T. C. or C. M. T. C. unit, we are invited and encouraged, in this instance, to inform the people who make up our particular communities about the new national defence policies and plans. This duty should be prepared for as well as any other. Like all instructional duties, it involves two phases of preparation. The subject must be thoroughly studied and understood in all its aspects; and the best methods of imparting this knowledge to others must be carefully considered, due observance being had of the fact that here our classes are not going to be of enlisted recruits or school-boys, but are to be the people of any community you please, and more particularly the busy people, the brainy people, the worth-while people of that community.

Further, this duty involves one problem which enters into no other military task. Each must find his own forum. To one the opportunity will come to enlist the interest of his golf antagonist; another will be able to reach considerable audiences. Fresh and unexpected opportunities will offer continually, if

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

we are alert to discover them. For the man who finds speech difficult, the pen is available, and the daily press or other local organ will afford a medium.

To each this duty will present different problems and opportunities. To every one, however, should come first the realization of this task as a duty demanding his intelligent and enthusiastic activity; next, the determination to inform himself thoroughly with respect to the whole subject. Among the recent expositions which will serve to supplement Upton's "Military Policy" may be mentioned the addresses of General Pershing and General Lassiter before the House Military Committee and the Senate Appropriations Committee respectively. The latter, delivered April 15, is especially comprehensive.*

The next step which it should occur to every officer to take is to analyze his powers of exposition, whether in oral delivery, conversation, or writing, with a view to presenting this subject attractively and convincingly. With its basis of military history, it can easily be made interesting and inspiring. Finally, every officer should search out opportunities for promulgating his theme.

OFFICERS OF THE ARMY AND PATRIOTISM

ALL ALONG with the duty of propagating a knowledge and an appreciation of our military policy, every officer should regard himself as an apostle of patriotism. With the country disturbed by industrial and political dissension to an uncomfortable degree, it is vastly important that those who hold a clear conception of true patriotism and are imbued with an unshakable loyalty to their country and its legal institutions should lift their voices in support of those institutions, and of orderly evolution, and against half-baked, visionary, revolutionary schemes; against discontent, against anarchy. Excellent examples have been set by our Secretary of War, Mr. Weeks, and the Assistant Secretary of War, Mr. Wainwright, in a series of occasional addresses delivered during the past summer. It is to be hoped that these addresses as reported in the newspapers have been read thoughtfully by the majority of officers. Certainly the ideas presented by these officers of the government in such able fashion should be reiterated and echoed over the country; chief among them this: that our good old Ship of State has sailed over some uncharted and violent seas in its century and a half of eventful and undeniably lucky voyage, and is now giving its passengers and crew a far more comfortable sail than some other S. O. S.'s that might be mentioned. So why rock the boat? The course might well, perhaps, be shifted a point or two to advantage—though which way seems to be a matter of much dispute—but let us not substitute tissue-paper theories for good old stout canvas of tested principles.

Much of the restlessness is fermented out of general conditions, by which token publicists and statesmen need to give much deliberate study to the remedies that are needed; but, after all, the conditions are in no respect perma-

* In this connection also Part I of Wall's *As to Military Training* is recommended.

EDITORIAL COMMENT

ment. They are, moreover, nowhere so unbearable as to justify revolutionary impatience. These things the army officer, aloof from the heat of the argument, can properly appreciate. If matters grow unfortunately worse instead of better and a considerable part of the army is involved in civil conflicts and disorders, so much the more necessary is it that its officers foster and emanate an uncompromising patriotism—a broad, intelligent, reasoning patriotism. There is no call to be disturbed unduly over such a possibility. Optimism is the order of the day; but patriotism is the need of every day.

ONE WAY TO REACH YOUR COMMUNITY

IF EVERY ONE who does not make a practice of saving his CAVALRY JOURNAL for his library (we presume a deplorably large number) were to mail his copies after careful perusal to a local newspaper editor, some of these would sometimes catch the eye of an editor on the war-path for filler material—heart stuff and otherwise—with the result that excerpts from the CAVALRY JOURNAL would find their way into the public press. Thus the popular acquaintance with our arm would be increased. If the Cavalry Association were to make an appropriation for this purpose, the result would be dubbed propaganda and would be frowned upon, if not more so. But you, fellow-cavalryman, if you believe in your arm and want for it the good-will of all good men, can do this little thing unostentatiously, and it will be—just a courtesy. How about donating your month-old JOURNAL to your Country Club?

BATTLE OF THE JADAR

IN CAPTAIN GORDON-SMITH'S contribution in this number will be found an account of a great battle staged on a terrain that embraces every kind of country, from river valley and sweeping plain to rugged mountain chain. As this battle passes through all the phases of the preliminary contacts, the local successes, the bitter struggle along extended lines, with victory undecided, and finally the giving way of one opponent and the retreat turned into a disastrous rout, it can be regarded as a rather more typical battle than any of those offensives which marked the struggle in France, and therefore a fruitful field of study. Moreover, in this battle the cavalry plays from first to last the rôle for which it was trained, and gives us a typical and splendid example of the employment of cavalry, *first* in reconnaissance; *second*, participating in the main battle as circumstances direct; *lastly*, pursuing the defeated and routed enemy to the utmost limit of endurance.

OUT OF THE DOLDRUMS

AFTER THE general depression consequent upon the reduction of the Army, the uncertainty of the pay legislation, and the reduction of the officer personnel, the gradual but certain concretion of the National Defense Policy and organi-

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

sation of the Army of the United States, with its three component forces—Regular Army, National Guard, and Organized Reserves—the passage, in the late spring, of pay legislation, more adequately planned and considered than any which has ever preceded, and finally the passage of the Anthony bill, with its considerable measure of relief from the most drastic effects of the officer-reduction legislation of the summer—all combine to afford a bright prospect, which should be taken on the fly. The Anthony bill is, moreover, a symptom of a change of heart in Congress, reflecting the true attitude of the country with respect to the Army, and it is evident that the Army has passed through its bitter season of solicitude and can safely look forward to a period of enthusiasm and development.

Those who are selected to go, in order that the officer personnel may be reduced to the 12,000 for which Congress has seen fit to provide, are going, it is to be hoped, without bitterness toward the Army. The officer personnel of that Army got bigger, it seems, after the War, than the country desired, after second reflection, and some have had to go. The relief that has come through the later legislation does not make the situation less grievous to those who are eliminated. The Army, bidding them adieu with all friendliness, does so with the hope that these officers will go like fighting gentlemen, as with such controlling temper they will, beyond any shadow of doubt, find useful and successful careers.

For those who remain, there is only one character to assume. The fogs have lifted and a clear dawn shows what field lies before us. The training camps of the past summer have shown how eager is a large part of the country's young men to receive that partial military training which it is now our happy duty to provide. Each officer should gird himself to that task, the officer on duty with regular troops no less than he who is already assigned to Organized Reserve or National Guard duty. The Regular Army must itself be brought to the highest pitch of excellence, if it is to be an adequate nucleus of the nation's military strength and a keystone of the edifice of national military preparation.

BRASS POLISH AND ELBOW GREASE

THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY remarked, on the occasion of a recent inspection, an instance of a regiment in which all officers appeared with boots of uniform color and uniformly brilliant polish. That was certainly cause for comment, quite as noteworthy as Ouy-Vernazobres' entry in his *Diary of a Cavalry Officer*, in which he cites the unusual example set by a general of brigade who, at a time when the habitual aspect of the troops was ragged, half bearded, and rarely washed except by the rain, appeared always brushed, shaved, waxed, and polished.

It is truly deplorable that a regiment of anything, especially of cavalry, should, except in the exigencies of field service, appear otherwise than uniform

EDITORIAL COMMENT

and burnished and polished and smart. A smart turnout excites admiration; an inferior, slatternly appearance breeds doubt and dissatisfaction.

The officer who appears in unpolished, ill-fitting boots, dragging spurs, and tacky uniform will inevitably invite an estimate of his character, military and otherwise, in keeping with his clothes. He will fail equally in acquiring the commendation of his superiors, the respect of his comrades, and the admiration and confidence of his men. His command will emulate, at least it will never surpass, his own appearance.

Beyond the effect of a smart appearance upon the beholder, however, the reflex effect must be recognized. Activity breeds its own kind. The officer who bestows thought and care upon his own appearance and upon that of his troops, to the smallest details of buckle and strap end, will find it natural to watch the feed-boxes in his stable, to supervise the details of administration, to read every word in a field order. And, moreover, an upstanding irreproachable appearance irresistibly endows its possessor with optimism, cheerfulness, energy, and enthusiasm. A neat military appearance may not always be a sign of military competence, but it is one of the primary steps and may even sometimes be a satisfactory substitute. It is better to be a good sign-post than a rut in the road.

When General Kornilov came to Petrograd to take command over the revolutionary troops in the capital, he was asked by one of his soldiers why he did not order a parade. "Parade! Do you suppose I am going to show off this rabble of ruffians to Russia as *troops*?" A parade is an exhibition of military smartness and is the function and the privilege of disciplined troops. Let's have parades! And, cavalrymen, don't put all the burden of making a fine show upon your horse!

JUMPS AND MORE JUMPS

THE COLONEL who commanded one of our regiments not long ago and is now happily chief of staffing for one of our reserve cavalry divisions—the reference is to Langhorne—directed in the course of some training in riding that each officer of the regiment should contribute one jump. The result was an adequate number of jumps. The variety was, however, not all that was desired. Now the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*—at no little expense—has presented the service with pictures and dimensions of a great variety of jumps. They accompany the data with respect to the A. F. G. mounted activities which Major Herr contributes to the number, and there is a jump for each officer of the regiment—including the chaplain.

CAVALRY COATS OF ARMS

THE OTHER day a new ornament appeared on the walls of the Chief of Cavalry's office, where framed panoramas of cavalry posts and enlarged photographs of jumping feats share the visitor's attention with cases of cavalry equipment. The newcomer is a beautiful reproduction in color of the new coat

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

of arms of the Sixth Cavalry, which has been donated by that regiment. It is to be hoped that this example will be followed by the other regiments, as their new coats of arms are approved. The panel of coats of arms of the fourteen regiments will be a striking and most interesting ornament. Moreover, if all can be collected together in this manner, it is probable that the office of the Chief of Cavalry will be able to have a plate prepared reproducing all the coats of arms in black and white, with a suitable description and historical account, so that each regiment, and perhaps individual officers, may have a copy. In this manner a general knowledge of the coats of arms of our cavalry regiments will be spread. Inquiry develops that these colored reproductions can be procured for \$12.50, and the CAVALRY JOURNAL will be glad to receive the commission from other regiments to have their coats of arms reproduced for presentation to the office of the Chief. It will not be necessary to forward the coats of arms in possession of the regiments, as the one on file in the War Department can be obtained for this purpose.

The Sixth Cavalry coat of arms, approved March 3, 1921, is described as follows:

Arms: Azure, a unicorn rampant or.

Crest: On a wreath of the colors an Imperial Chinese dragon rampant or lined azure, grasping in its dexter claw four arrows sable, armed and feathered gules.

Motto: Ducit amor patriæ (Love of country leads us).

Historical: This regiment was organized in 1861 and took part in the Eastern campaigns of the Civil War. The outstanding feats in its history were at Williamsburg, 1862, its first engagement, when it assaulted entrenched works, and at Fairfield, Pa., July 3, 1863, where it engaged two enemy brigades of Cavalry, completely neutralizing them and saving the supply trains of the army, in doing which it was literally cut to pieces. This is symbolized by the unicorn, a mythical animal held to represent the knightly virtues, and in the rampant position a symbol of fighting aggressiveness, combined with speed and activity. The shield is blue, the color of the Federal uniform in the Civil War. This was the first organization to enter the Forbidden City of Peking in 1900, which is shown by the Chinese dragon, the four arrows representing the four Indian campaigns.

Just as this number is going to press, information is received that the Fourth Cavalry has presented the office of the Chief of Cavalry with its new emblazoned coat of arms. Which regiment will be the next?

Topics of the Day

THE ARMY RELIEF SOCIETY

THE ARMY RELIEF SOCIETY, founded in March, 1900, for the purpose of providing relief for the widows and orphans of the officers and enlisted men of the Regular Army, has in the past twenty-two years accomplished, through small donations, much good to many worthy widows and orphans of the officers and enlisted men of the Regular Army. Their work is done in such a quiet and unostentatious way that very few citizens and very few members of the Army itself have knowledge of what the Society is doing.

The president of the Society is Mrs. Henry L. Stimson, wife of a former Secretary of War, and its list of officials includes many men and women prominent in Army and civilian life.

The following letter, addressed to Major-General C. J. Bailey, contains much information that will be of interest to those who have at heart the welfare of the Army:

"120 East 36th Street, N. Y., June 9th, 1922.

"MY DEAR GENERAL BAILEY:

"I beg to acknowledge with many thanks, the receipt of your kind note of June 2d, enclosing three checks, totaling \$2,357.25, the net proceeds of the championship boxing contests of the 3d Corps Area for the year 1922. This splendid gift to the Army Relief Society is most welcome and is highly appreciated.

"The demands upon our funds are greater than ever before. Our budget for the coming year calls for a disbursement of \$48,000. We are starting the year with a balance in the bank of \$32,041.57. To this may be added about \$11,000, the income receivable during the year from our investments. That will bring our total to \$43,041.57, leaving about \$5,000.00 yet to be raised if we are not to curtail our work. You will therefore readily see what a help this fine contribution from the 3d Corps Area will be in meeting this deficiency. Last year the Army Relief Society disbursed \$47,552.73. All but \$858.85 of this sum was spent in actual aid. The \$858.85 covered the expense of printing and distributing three thousand annual reports, so that you see practically all the money contributed goes to help the widows and orphans of the Regular Army, as we have no office or overhead expenses. Our list of beneficiaries at present comprises an equal number of the families of officers and enlisted men, and we have met every demand for aid. At the time of the terrible accident at Langley Field in the aviation a request by telegraph to the Society from the commanding officer for \$2,000.00 to be used in behalf of the widows of the men who were killed was made available for their use within twenty-four hours.

"I find often so little is known in the Army of the details of our work that I have taken the liberty of telling you about it, at the risk of repeating what you may know already. But we do appreciate

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

and value so much the co-operation of the Army in our work, not only by contributing to our funds, but by giving us the opportunity to help in emergencies, that I hope you will express to all those who were instrumental in raising the money you have so kindly given the hearty thanks of all the officers and Board of Managers of the Army Relief Society.

"Believe me, my dear General,

"Very gratefully yours,

"MABEL W. STIMSON (MRS. HENRY L.),

"President of the Army Relief Society."

CAMP PERRY AND THE MARINE TROPHY

WHILE UNUSUAL INTEREST centers this year in the training camps for civilians and reserves, the highly important work at Camp Perry should not be lost sight of. As this number of the JOURNAL is being prepared, teams and contestants are still gathering for the big matches, which will be over by the time it reaches most of its readers.

The Cavalry-Engineer team consists of 8 officers, one warrant officer, and 10 enlisted men, under the direction of Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson, Cavalry, team captain.

The executive officer of the National Matches this year is Lieutenant-Colonel M. C. Mumma, Cavalry, a rifleman of long experience, and Colonel C. E. Stodter, Cavalry, long identified with rifle and pistol shooting, is an active officer of the matches in his capacity of Director of Civilian Marksmanship.

The range, which looks out over Lake Erie, is over a half mile in length. The ranges come in succession from the thousand-yard range down to the ranges of fifty and twenty-five yards. The range is manned by more than a thousand men, all trained for the work. Back of the firing lines are range officers, each one an excellent shot and judge of shooting conditions.

It will be recalled that the National Matches of last year were marked by an accuracy of shooting that far surpassed any that had been seen in previous years—a result due to improvement of ammunition as well as to increasing interest in shooting. The accuracy was such that, in order to win the individual matches, the leading competitors had to continue to shoot one bull's-eye after another for an incredible number of shots. This not only introduced an element of variable weather and light conditions to an undesirable degree, but put an undue strain upon the leading competitors. This year's targets have been made with rings within the bulls-eye to obviate this difficulty.

While there are a number of matches in which individuals compete, the wider interest centers in the championship Regimental Team Match, the United Service Match, which was won once by the Navy, once by the National Guard, twice by the Army, and four times by the Marine Corps; the A. E. F. Rumanian Trophy Match, competed for by teams of six men each from the several branches of the Army, Navy, Marine Corps, and National Guard, and the Infantry Match, an infantry combat exercise in competition form. Finally,

TOPICS OF THE DAY

after these and other matches of the National Rifle Association of America, the National Matches become the center of interest, particularly the National Rifle Team Match, which was won last year by the Marine Corps and was last won by the U. S. Cavalry Team in 1913. In this match teams of 10 firers compete.

The President's Match is one of the individual competitions of the National Matches in which any one may enter. Among the several trophies awarded in this match is a Cavalry Cup, to be presented annually to the cavalryman making the highest score in this match.

The history of this cup should be of interest. During the firing of the skirmish run in the National Team Match at Camp Perry, in 1910, a Marine officer, standing in the rear of the Marine Corps team, made some remarks in regard to the first shots fired which were held to violate the rule prohibiting coaching, and the Marine Corps team was disqualified by the executive officer of the matches. The score made by the Marine Corps team put them in second place and just above the Cavalry team. The Cavalry team, as an expression of good-will, made a request that the score of the Marine Corps team be counted for record, and after consideration by the National Board for the Promotion of Rifle Practice this was approved. In appreciation of this action on the part of the Cavalry team, the Marine Corps presented a cup to be awarded annually to the cavalryman making the highest score in the President's Match.

This incident has had a considerable influence in promoting good feeling and co-operation between the two services.

The trophies for the President's Match include one for the high cavalryman, one for the high infantryman, one for the high man from the Navy, one for the high National Guardsman, and one for the high civilian. It has been felt by cavalrymen that our branch should provide a trophy to be given annually to the high man from the Marine Corps in the President's Match. This will complete the list of trophies for this match and will further promote good feeling among the services and branches of the services.

This year the amount contributed by cavalry officers to a Rifle Team fund has exceeded the current needs, and, with the sanction of the Chief of Cavalry, it has been decided to apply that fund to the purchase of a trophy, which has accordingly been announced in the program of the National Matches as a trophy presented by the Cavalry of the United States Army to the high Marine in the President's Match.

GOOD SHOOTING OF SECOND MACHINE-GUN SQUADRON

THIS SQUADRON, a unit of the 1st Cavalry Division, formed during September, 1921, of the machine-gun troops of the 7th, 8th, and 13th regiments of cavalry with the Headquarters Detachment (old Troop H, 8th Cavalry), Major Pearson Menoher commanding, completed record firing, exclusive of the expert test, with a percentage of 100 per cent. Only three men of the squadron

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

qualified as marksmen, the remainder qualifying as sharpshooters. Of those qualifying as sharpshooters all will fire the expert test. This is considered a good record, in view of the fact that about 60 per cent of the squadron have less than nine months' service and about 90 per cent have had no previous machine-gun experience.

Other excellent rifle records of cavalry organizations are reported in *Regimental Notes*.

AIR SERVICE AND OTHER AUXILIARIES FOR CAVALRY

IN THE JULY-AUGUST, 1922, French *Revue de Cavalerie* appears an extract of a conference held between general officers and heads of departments of the school at Versailles on the subject of cavalry. Some of the conclusions reached are worthy of comment and study. It was established at this conference that every tactical change in cavalry during the war is summed up in this: Cavalry fights normally by fire. The attack with the saber, from first place is relegated to second, always remaining a possibility. In 1914 the cavalryman had the carbine without bayonet and 90 cartridges. In 1915 he received the rifle with bayonet and 200 cartridges. The cuirass disappeared.

An Army General Staff study, completed October 7, 1919, concludes that the corps of cavalry ought to comprise, among other units, corps headquarters; 1 horse regiment of 75's; 1 regiment of heavy artillery (1 battalion of 75's, 2 battalions of 155's); 2 companies of engineers and 1 bridge company; 2 squadrons of airplanes and 1 balloon, and the support of at least a brigade of infantry. A cavalry division ought to have 2 battalions of 75's and 1 squadron of airplanes. The cavalry regiment ought to have 4 sections of machine-guns.

The cavalry, which was at the beginning of the war a mobile force of shock, has become an important mobile force of fire. As in the case of the infantry, it is fire that stops, advances, marches—i. e., defends, attacks, maneuvers; but cavalry multiplies its strength of fire by its mobility.

Cavalry is not easily improvised. Reserve squadrons take several weeks to mobilize. It is, therefore, necessary in peace to have almost all the cavalry needed in war. Mobility remains the characteristic essential quality of cavalry.

With respect to the organization of the corps and the division recommended above, it might be remarked that while some of the auxiliaries, and particularly the infantry, might properly be trained independently and attached in the event of hostilities, or for particular missions, the history of the employment of air service indicates a necessity for the closest co-operation and team-work between the air service unit and the ground troops. This co-operation cannot be acquired successfully after the initiation of hostilities, bearing in mind also that the cavalry will be active from the first, and must be insured by the inclusion of air service units as part of the cavalry divisions for their peace-time training.

TOPICS OF THE DAY

THOROUGHBRED WINS IN THE COLORADO 300-MILE ENDURANCE RACE

THE 300-MILE endurance race, held from Colorado Springs, August 1 to 5, was won by the thoroughbred *Norfolk Star*. It demonstrated to the ranchmen, who took a lively interest in the event, first, that thoroughbred blood tells, and, secondly, that preparatory training designates the winner.

The Colorado endurance race was conducted under rules identical with those governing the 300-mile endurance contests in the East, except for weight, which was set at 200 pounds, and breeding, which was left open so that horses of unknown breeding could compete. Spencer Penrose, of Colorado Springs, and H. M. Blackmer, of Denver, realized the economic import which such a contest would have for the State, and agreed to become donors of \$2,000 prize money and a silver cup for the winner. In addition to this, a permanent trophy will stand in the Broadmoor Hotel, in Colorado Springs, on which the names of the winning horse, owner, and rider will be engraved each year, for this is to become an annual event.

Early in the spring fully fifty horses were in training. Eighteen were considered as possible starters a week before the race began. On the opening day twelve actually passed the barrier. Three were from the U. S. Army, two were polo ponies, and one was a saddle horse used for pleasure riding, and the other six were seasoned cowponies, entered by various ranchmen and ridden by cowboys of varying ages. Some had had consistent training; others were taken from ordinary work without special conditioning. The 60 miles a day was to be covered in 9 hours minimum and 11 hours maximum. Speed counted 40 points, condition 60.

The first to fall out was a chunky cowpony of a sort that is liked by many because of easy keeping qualities. At noon of the second day he was exhausted after 90 miles travel. Another rather upstanding cowpony went out for lameness the second afternoon. A third, one of the best from the standpoint of conformation, went bad at 9 a. m. the third day, and a fourth, after 180 miles going, was too lame to start next morning. The other eight finished, although two of them showed slight lameness on the last two days. Only three horses out of the eight that finished went through without signs of lameness in the test at the finish, and these were the only straight-gaited horses in the contest. The behavior of all horses was closely studied from the start to finish, and in every instance the horses that were inclined to be "pigeon toed," with defects in action such as winging or interfering, developed difficulty as time went on and cut their pasterns or bruised their fetlock joints before the test ended.

Major Leonard, who has ridden in one and served as a judge in four endurance rides, says: "These contests have fixed indelibly in my mind the fact that straight action is a utility characteristic of the highest importance, which horse breeders generally have not appreciated as they should. Defective

action means self-injury when horses are tired, and earlier disability. The British Army officers, when here during the World War, refused to buy any horse with a materially defective action, on the ground that such a horse, when tired, became disabled quickly, and this is the one point which every endurance test has stressed in particular."

The first prize was won by a thoroughbred; the second by a blue roan of unknown breeding, alleged to carry some Morgan blood; the third was one-half thoroughbred; the fourth, a horse of standardbred blood and type; the fifth, a three-quarter thoroughbred polo pony, other one-quarter said to be mustang; the sixth, a rather rangy gray, said to be by a "quarter-horse" stallion. While these results do not justify any breed the exclusive claim to begetting good saddle horses of the required endurance, it does demonstrate that good blood and conditioning are necessary to win.

The detail of the awards is as follows: First, *Norfolk Star*, officer's charger, thoroughbred, owned and ridden by Captain H. E. Watkins, cavalry, Fort Russell, Wyo., height 16 hands, weight at beginning 990 pounds and 960 pounds at finish; second, *Rabbit*, cowpony, breed unknown, owned by C. Cusack, Denver, ridden by C. E. Netterfield, height 15 hands, weight at beginning 990 pounds and 960 pounds at finish; third, *Fox*, cowpony, half thoroughbred, owned by E. A. Pring, Colorado Springs, and ridden by Ed Snurr, height 15 hands 1½ inches, weight at beginning 975 pounds, and at end 930 pounds; fourth, *Jerry*, officer's charger, standardbred cross, owned and ridden by Captain W. C. Lattimore, F. A., Fort Sill, Okla., height 15 hands, weight 925 pounds at start and 867½ at end; fifth, *Maltese Cat*, Polo pony, three-quarter thoroughbred, owned by Mrs. Lafayette Hughes, Denver, ridden by Lafayette Hughes, height 15 hands, weight 930 pounds at start and 875 pounds at end; sixth, *Rumford*, approaching the hunter type, owned by Miss Rhoda Cameron, New York City, and ridden by Slim Sherwood, height 15 hands, weight 1,000 pounds at start and 935 pounds at end of race.—*The Thoroughbred Record*.

MEMORIAL CROSS TO BE ERECTED BY THE ARGONNE UNIT OF THE AMERICAN WOMEN'S LEGION

THE WAR DEPARTMENT has designated the site and the Commission of Fine Arts has approved the simple design of a white marble cross which is to stand in Arlington National Cemetery among the graves of those who fell in the Great War.

It is appropriate that subscriptions should be as wide-spread as possible in order that all who wish to make part of this memorial their own may do so, irrespective of the amount contributed.

The Argonne Unit of the American Women's Legion has undertaken the necessary management, with the approval of the Secretary of War, and invites subscriptions to the end that the requisite \$2,500 may be collected in time to erect the monument by Armistice Day of 1922.

Subscriptions will be acknowledged and should be sent by postal money order or check to Miss N. R. Macomb, treasurer, 1314 N Street northwest, Washington, D. C., or Argonne Unit Memorial, National Savings and Trust Co., 15th Street and New York Avenue, Washington, D. C. Committee: Miss Abbie B. McCammon, chairman; Mrs. Wm. M. Black, Mrs. Alex. Rodgers, and Miss N. R. Macomb.

APPRECIATION OF THE HORSE AS A VITAL FACTOR IN WAR

AS RACING may soon be reinstated in Illinois and California, there is no doubt that the breeding of thoroughbreds will receive an enormous impetus in the near future, provided, of course, the proper control is maintained to prevent the sport from getting into unscrupulous hands and commercial methods thereby installed, which should call forth public condemnation and result inevitably in legislative suppression.

Every effort is constantly made by the Jockey Club, the Kentucky Jockey Club, and all the associations within their respective authorities to prevent any such calamity, for calamity it would be, not only to the sport, but to the nation, as depriving the Government of one of its most important arms of defense, the army horse.

The infantryman can be made in a very short time, but horses and horse-men cannot be bred and trained in less than four to five years.

It would be going over old ground to recount how multifariously the horse served in the World's War, and also to point out the relationship between racing and the ultimate production of army horses.

Suffice it to say, in these connections, that if Germany had been able to muster sufficient horse transportation and cavalry to bring up supplies and pursue her retreating foe, at the First Battle of the Marne, the war would have been won by her then and there and civilization set back for ages; on the other hand, if the Allies had possessed cavalry to follow up their success in turning back the invaders, they would have won at that time, and incalculable loss of lives and property would have been prevented.

This statement is based on the cold deductions of military science since the war ended, and the fact stated is, therefore, to be regarded as the most outstanding tactical feature of the whole terrible conflict.

In a word, the horse could have ended the war, one way or another, in its incipency!—*Extract from The Thoroughbred Record*.

New Books Reviewed

The Book Department of the U. S. Cavalry Association can furnish any of the new books reviewed or referred to in this department, and will give prompt attention to any orders submitted by the readers of the Journal.

REMINISCENCES OF AN INDIAN CAVALRY OFFICER. By Colonel J. E. S. Western, C. B. E. George Allen & Unwin, Ltd., London. 266 pages. (Price, \$4.30.)

This book is just exactly what its name signifies. One episode after another follows along, with no particular order as to time or place. A very charming, entertaining, and instructive narrative is set forth of the life of an Indian army officer through a period of about thirty years. Stories of tiger hunts, bird shooting, polo games and tournaments, festivals so glorious in the East, horse-racing, the mess-room, and many voyages from India to England and back again abound. Numerous valuable lessons for any officer may be found in these pages. The style is almost conversational and the book reads easily. The author displays a nice sense of humor, examples of which occur in every chapter and which aid in making the work really delightful light reading.

ANTI-AIRCRAFT DEFENSE. Compiled by the officers of the 1st Anti-Aircraft Battalion, C. A. C. Published by *The Coast Artillery Journal*. (Price, \$1.00.)

The whole army is presumably interested in the progress of the new technical developments which are going to characterize warfare more and more. Among these, defense against aircraft is a technical problem which must have a vital interest for all, since no part of a field army is immune from air attack, and lines of communication, concentration camps, and depots far in the rear are all alike liable to discovery and reconnaissance and even devastating bombardment from the air.

The present state of anti-aircraft defense is very well and completely treated in this manual, and its perusal should not be limited to those few officers who are at present actively interested in this problem. All officers should be potentially interested.

For a cavalryman, likely to be engaged on reconnaissance, no feature of modern warfare should be unknown. It is apparent that it may on occasion be of quite as much importance to reconnoiter and report upon an anti-aircraft installation on the enemy flank or in his rear, or in the course of a raid to destroy such an installation, as to report upon the condition of roads or to capture prisoners. One cannot operate intelligently against or in support of that with which he is unfamiliar.

The bulk of this manual will only be of value to those who are directly interested in this particular problem and have to do with its *matériel*. But there are portions of this book that will be of interest and value to all officers, particularly as it is well illustrated.

A chapter is devoted to the types of airplanes, their uses, their habitual formations, speed, and their identification. Even a hasty perusal of the chap-

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

ters devoted to the several types of gun mounts and other *matériel* and embodying the gun drill will acquaint the officer of other arms with the general character of an anti-aircraft battery, while the chapter on machine-guns against aircraft should be valuable to machine-gun officers of all arms, despite the fact that they may not have a suitable mount to make a complete anti-aircraft defense practicable. At least they will be interested in the Peycru stadia, an instrument adapted to get a rough estimate of the range to the aircraft. Finally, the organization and equipment of the searchlight battery should be of general interest.

A HISTORY OF CAVALRY from the Earliest Times, with Lessons for the Future. By Lieutenant Colonel George T. Denison. Macmillan & Co. (2d edition.) (Price, \$4.20.)

Through the courtesy of Major Arthur D. Budd, infantry, who sent the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* a copy of this edition, we are able to call to the attention of the service that this exceptionally fine work, which was for long out of print and unobtainable, is again available. Evidently its republication, with the World War coming almost immediately after, passed unnoticed.

This history comprises an exhaustive treatise on the development of cavalry. As the cavalry was for long periods, in the ancient and medieval world, the principal and decisive arm, it is natural that a history of cavalry should be, to a greater extent than could be true of the chronicles of any other arm, a history of warfare as a whole. The comprehensive conception of the development of the military art, its changes and vicissitudes, which the reader of this carefully prepared history obtains makes it valuable not only to the cavalryman of today, but to every soldier and student of military art.

The rigid maneuvers of the ancients, the individual combats of the age of chivalry, the effects of the introduction and perfection of firearms on armament and tactics—these are all discussed in scholarly fashion. The author has been successful in presenting all the vital and principal facts in a thorough manner without oppressing the reader with a mass of uninteresting and relatively unprofitable detail. Every page is intensely interesting, probably because the author, through painstaking study and exhaustive preparation, has grasped a sense and encompassed a vision of each epoch, with all its essential and interacting material and human factors, and has then exercised a talent for vivid and sympathetic portrayal, with the result that each period of warfare lives in colorful activity for the reader.

The most significant battles, such as Cannæ, Blenheim, Marengo, and some of the cavalry operations of the American Civil War, which the author holds in high regard, are illustrated by maps. The numerous references cited afford a means whereby the close student of any particular phase may pursue his subject further, and the book is well indexed.

This history is not biographical, but in connection with each chapter of warfare the principal cavalry leaders are briefly depicted, so that Hannibal and Cæsar and Vercingetorix, Gustavus Adolphus, Marlborough, Seidlitz, Ziethen, Prince Rupert, Kellerman, and Murat pass in splendid review and impart the necessary personal interest to assist the student in fixing the salient facts of each successive period in his mind, while the exploits of Stuart and

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Forrest and Sheridan give us a proud consciousness that the young American nation contributed generously to the history of cavalry in the Civil War. The book carries the history of cavalry up to the close of the Franco-Prussian War.

MODERN CAVALRY. By Major Malcolm Wheeler-Nicholson, Cavalry. The Macmillan Company. (Price, \$2.00.)

This little hand-book has as its subtitle "Studies on its rôle in the warfare of today, with notes on training for war service," which amply expresses the contents of the book. The book in itself is a compilation of our modern doctrine on cavalry and of the experiences and training of our best officers. The book is, and may be called, a handy reference of those things which junior officers should know, for which now they have to read several books. "Modern Cavalry," however, cannot take the place of other well-known books written on this subject, for in reading the larger and more profound studies one gets a more thorough view of the subject. The chapter on foreign cavalry is a very easy reference to the general armament and tactics of the British, French, Belgian, and German organizations. The text is replete with examples of the employment of cavalry, particularly in the World War. An excellent index adds to the value of the book.

MILITARY PROTECTION. Instruction Course, 1922. 1st Division, Camp Dix, N. J. Employment of Army in aid of Federal civil authorities in the execution of Federal laws.

This paper, prepared by Lieutenant-Colonel D. P. Quinlan, J. A. G. D., is designed to aid the Army, including the National Guard and Reserves, in an understanding of the delicate nature of the function of military power to be exercised in a situation of civil disorder falling short of insurrection or rebellion and not warranting martial law. The Commanding General of the 1st Division says of it: "The Judge Advocate, in the preparation of this sterling and discriminating paper, has supplied an intelligent educational guide for the acquirement of information not only necessary to the general education of persons in the military service, but vitally essential to the correct execution by officers and enlisted men of what is admittedly the most delicate function of government the Army may be called upon to perform." The paper (58 pages) covers, in a broad and helpful manner, the legal and social aspects of civil disorders, and thus constitutes an admirable and much-needed supplement to the War Department Publication, "Military Protection—United States Guards" (Doc. No. 882), which deals with the practical details of the use of troops in riots, strikes, and civil disturbance.

CUBAN CAVALRY DRILL REGULATIONS OF 1921.

This book is a combination of a translation of our Cavalry Drill Regulation of 1916 and the former Manual of Cavalry Instruction of 1908 for the Rural Guard.

A study of this last Cavalry Manual of Cuba reveals what might be expected—the absence of the lessons of the World War with respect to cavalry. In brief, these lessons may be summed up in the statement that cavalry, more than ever, is primarily a means for transporting fire-power rapidly across all sorts of terrain and under all conditions. The principal rôle of the cavalry

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

horse is now to transport and maneuver this fire-power. This has long been an accepted doctrine in the American Cavalry, which the World War has only confirmed and strengthened.

Therefore the school for cavalry *dismounted* and infantry should today be practically identical and the cavalry soldier should be organized, equipped, armed, and instructed with the above idea clearly in view.

While it is true that cavalry will rarely be called on to make frontal attacks against infantry positions, yet it must be able to make these attacks and to defend a position like infantry. While the organization of cavalry does not admit the same arrangement of units as in the infantry, the tactical principles, both as to fire and movement, are the same for both arms.

The Cuban Manual makes no reference to that now essential weapon of the cavalry, the machine rifle, nor does it mention machine-guns, aircraft, armored cars, and tanks. Only one reference is made to artillery. No reference is made to the co-operation of cavalry with the other arms, nor is any general treatment found of the question of combat of the great units of cavalry—offensive, defensive, exploitation of success, delaying action, raids, etc.

The war has taught the same great lessons for all branches, namely, (1) to deliver a maximum fire; (2) to avoid the enemy's fire. Both of these lessons have caused the development and increase of fire-power and the decrease of the size of the units exposed to this fire. These lessons do not appear in the Cuban Cavalry Manual.

Practically everything pertaining to the School of the Soldier in the Cuban Manual is excellent, and the *mounted* schools, up to and including that of the squadron, are likewise excellent. The schools for *dismounted* work in all echelons need to be revised.

The American Cavalry is about to issue Drill Regulations which will embody the lessons of the war, in addition to our past doctrine not affected by the war. It is recommended that the Cuban cavalry consult this "Drill Regulations" as soon as it appears.

—Reviewed by Colonel Frank Parker, Infantry.

TACTICS—THE PRACTICAL ART OF LEADING TROOPS IN WAR. By Lieutenant-Colonel P. S. Bond, C. E., and First Lieutenant E. H. Crouch, Infantry. The American Army and Navy Journal, Inc., publishers. 1922. (Price, \$2.75.)

It is natural to regard this splendid contribution to our training literature as a grown-up edition of "Technique of Modern Tactics," by Bond and McDonough. Not only has one of the authors of the earlier volume collaborated in the preparation of the book under review, but there are noticeable similarities. Those similarities, however, do not extend beyond the methods of treatment in some details. The fundamental conception underlying the new book is new and takes stock of the need for a text-book of training for reserve officers, especially of infantry reserve officers. Moreover, while the framework of the earlier book was somewhat illogical, this new book drives into the heart of the business and devotes its first pages, and many of them, to the study of offensive combat, leaving marches, outposts, and some other items to later chapters. Then, after a careful treatment of tactical principles and the technique of the several phases of tactics, a carefully prepared series of illustrative demonstrations enable the student by the applicatory method to crystallize his comprehension of the principles and fix in his mind details of organization, equipment,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

arms, methods and—generally—technique. A few sample problems are also appended.

The work impresses one with its completeness and attention to detail, and by virtue of those qualities it is admirably adapted to the junior officer who is not so fortunate as to receive instruction at the special school of his arm. Regular officers who are entrusted with the training and instruction of reserve officers will also find much assistance here; and all officers who for any reason lack a fair knowledge of the main essentials of infantry tactics, since the operations of all other branches are subsidiary, will do well to possess this thoroughly up-to-date and authentic text-book. The amount of material that is new or freshly treated will more than make up for the amount of what may be to experienced officers "old stuff."

Stabilized warfare and the tactics of companies and platoons as part of large bodies are given a large, but yet not undue, share of attention, and if this emphasis should, nevertheless, be a matter of criticism, as well as the omission from this book of tactics of minor warfare and of the tactics of auxiliary arms, it should be remembered that the great task of this book is to afford a medium for the training of those who will only be called upon for active service in a major emergency, when presumably large units would be employed and the preponderant need in the way of trained officer personnel is in the grades of infantry battalion, company, and platoon commanders.

The book is well illustrated with diagrams and perspective drawings and the quality of the text is in no way inferior to that of the "Technique of Modern Tactics," which won such a deserved popularity a few years ago.

UPTON'S MILITARY POLICY OF THE UNITED STATES.

This book has become of such present importance, in view of the new national defense policy, which is very largely an outgrowth of Upton's teachings, that it should be in the hands of every officer, whether of regulars, National Guard, or Reserves. This book can be obtained by sending a post-office money-order for 50 cents to 'The Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.; also a useful 23-page "Epitome of Upton's Military Policy," containing extracts from the larger work, is obtainable from the same sources for 5 cents.

HEGEMONICS, OR THOUGHTS ON LEADERSHIP AND TRAINING, INCLUDING THE SOLDIER'S LIFE IN BATTLE. By Lieutenant-Colonel Jennings C. Wise, FA-ORC. W. F. Roberts Company, Washington, D. C., 1922. (Price, \$2.00.)

Hegemonics is a barbarous title for a pleasing little work that contains the meat of a big subject in little space, and is delightfully written. The author is marked as a competent teacher in the most important subject of leadership, not alone by virtue of General Cronkhite's introduction, but by the clear and definite fashion in which he treats one phase after another of the subject. The keynotes of his conception of leadership rest neither upon brilliance of personality nor talent, but upon long, careful training based on sound principles, of which the chief are that good non-commissioned officer material must be developed, and that every one must be made to appreciate that discipline means team-play, sacrifice of individual desires and whims to the common good of

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

the command, whereby organization esprit and sense of dependability of the individuals of the command and respect for and trust in their leaders are insured.

The book is written in an easy style and is replete with valuable suggestions of methods for acquiring the art of leadership. Its occasional perusal should be helpful to any officer and it will prove an invaluable help to the inexperienced. The last few chapters are devoted to fanciful accounts of an undisciplined, poorly trained battalion in its first fight, and of the first combat of a well-trained and thoroughly disciplined organization. These are quite fascinating in themselves and serve to illustrate and give point to many of the topics treated in the first part of the book.

NATIONAL GUARD HANDBOOK FOR COMPANY COMMANDERS. (Revised edition, May, 1922.) By Nat. Gard. (Price, \$2.50.)

This new edition of this manual is very complete. It is a compilation which is based on the latest tables of organization and the 1922 National Guard Regulations. It contains tables of organizations for the National Guard of all branches, as well as the peace strength tables of organization of the regular army, equipment tables for all National Guard organizations, property regulations, and all the regulations pertaining to company administration, illustrated by sample forms with typical entries. The latest regulations with regard to correspondence are included. The manual is well arranged and well indexed and should be a valuable tool for the company commander and his subordinates.

Foreign Military Journals

Review de Cavalerie, July-August, 1922.

The Cavalry During the War, an extract of a conference report made by General Féraud and Lieutenant-Colonel Audibert. This article is an exposition of the latest French cavalry doctrine, showing the development in tactics, organization, and armament during and resulting from the World War. The conclusions are that cavalry normally fights by fire; that mobility is its essential quality; that cavalry must strive to make its fire power equal to that of infantry; that cavalry has changed from a mobile force of shock to a mobile force of fire; that cavalry multiplies its fire power by its mobility. The various activities of cavalry in the World War are sketched. This article is valuable because it embraces the whole subject of present-day French cavalry doctrine.

Report on Tests of Security and Combat Patrols, by Lieutenant-Colonel Villemont. In this interesting article are given the results of competitions in patrol work between branches of the French army. A very careful record was kept through a system of observers, so that the conclusions reached must be quite accurate.

A Learned Treatise on the Cuirass, by Lieutenant-Colonel Pol Payart, with five plates. The first part of an anonymous description of a problem using skeletonized large bodies of cavalry held in 1921. The general situation is that

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

in which the group of armies commanded by the German crown prince found itself at the inception of the offensive of May 27, 1918. The three main questions studied were how the engagement of a cavalry corps in battle should be visualized, what successive missions would a cavalry corps be called upon to perform, and what are the results of strategical and tactical arrangement which the high command is rightfully to expect from its (cavalry corps') employment.

Colonel de Tarragon's narrative of the part played by the 2d and 14th Dragoons at Zonnebeke on November 2, 1914.

Faits de Cavalerie: Narratives of actions of the 2d Hussars at Stockem on the 7th of August, 1914, and of the 10th Hussars at Cantraine on the 26th of August, 1914.

Then follows a detailed discussion on certain forces pertaining to the seat, by the well-known authority on equitation, L. de Sévy. The forces, horizontal and vertical, are shown in relation to the displacement of the rider's seat, and the means of combating displacements, especially at the trot, are set forth as two, exterior force and suppleness. This article is an essay on some of the niceties of equitation.

German opinions on cavalry, by General Lavigne-Delville.

Comments on the English cavalry regulations (continued from May-June number) of 1920-1921, by de Maleissye-Melun.

Account of the international horse show at Nice, by Colonel de Langourian, with six good photographs of jumping.

The Cavalry Journal (British), July, 1922.

The most interesting article in this number is "A Cavalry Episode in the Advance to the Marne," by Brigadier General Burnett. This article is prefaced with some pertinent comments on the use of cavalry in the early days of the war; it then proceeds to a brief summary of the situation on the Ourcq and Grand Morin on September 6, 1914, when the Germans commenced their retreat. Thereupon follows the special situation of the 2d British Cavalry Brigade, consisting of the 9th Lancers, 18th Hussars, 5th Dragoon Guards, and a battery of horse artillery. Finally, the cavalry combats of this brigade about Moncel are narrated by eyewitnesses, and a German report of the same engagements is appended. There is naturally some discrepancy between the two reports, but there is sufficient agreement to make this study from several angles of a fast-moving cavalry engagement (involving two mounted charges) very instructive.

Other noteworthy articles are: "Some Historical Chargers" and "The Royal Horse Artillery with Cavalry." The latter is worthy of close attention of all American cavalry and horse artillery officers. It is a sane and helpful discussion of the very important subject of close co-operation between cavalry and its attached artillery.

In this number appears an interesting presentation of the cavalry precepts of Xenophon, the first writer on cavalry subjects. This article is entitled "There is no New Thing under the Sun." Captain Preston's installment of the continued account of the Machine-Gun Corps (Cavalry) in France contains some instructive reading about the cavalry work in the British drive from Amiens in early August, 1918, particularly with regard to the work of the attached machine-gun squadrons.

Polo

ARMY WINS JUNIOR POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

Fighting a desperate uphill battle, the four hard-riding officers who bore the Army colors into the arena where the Junior Polo Championship was decided emerged therefrom with the cup in their possession on August 16. The final contest was fought out with the famous Meadowbrook team, at Point Judith, R. I., and was marked by the hardest fighting that such an event ever developed. It was the fourth time that the Army had entered a team in the twenty-two-year-old event and the first time that the team has won the championship.

The assembly of the Army candidates at Mitchell Field, Long Island, was completed June 20. The West Point contingent consisted of Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown, Majors A. H. Wilson and C. W. Foster; War Department, First Lieutenant C. C. Judwin; Fort Myer, Major George Patton; Remount Service, Major L. A. Beard, from Front Royal, Va., and the Cavalry School, Major W. W. Erwin. The officers and men were well quartered at Mitchell Field and the ponies in excellent private stables near by. Major Patton was manager of the team, with First Lieutenant T. H. McCreery as assistant in charge of training mounts. Excellent private fields were placed at the disposal of the team for practice. All conditions were satisfactory and in general better than last year. The team was entered in two Meadowbrook handicap tournaments—the Hempstead cups and the Meadowbrook Club cups. Other games were also played against teams composed of the fastest international players. In this manner the Army players gained experience in fast team-work that showed continual improvement.

After a month of practice, the Central Polo Committee, after observing the play of the Army team at Meadowbrook, consulting the Army participants and leading civilian players who have interested themselves, announced the following as the Army entry in the Junior Championship: Major A. H. Wilson, Major L. A. Beard, Lieutenant-Colonel Lewis Brown (team captain), Major W. W. Erwin, Major G. S. Patton (substitute). The team remained at Meadowbrook until early in August, engaged in practice with the best civilian players and receiving the benefit of their coaching.

The Army team won the Hempstead cup tournament, and the comments of J. C. Cooley, writing for *Town and Country*, are worthy of repetition:

"Perhaps the most conspicuous success that the Army has won in polo was yesterday, when they won the Hempstead cups at Meadowbrook. The event was the low goal handicap event, and it was not so much the fact that they won the event as their manner of winning it that impressed polo men who watched the game. Between the Army teams of today and the Army teams of ten years ago, when I first started to write for *Town and Country*, there is a huge difference. No one could watch Army teams in 1912 without being impressed with the misdirected zeal that the individuals displayed. The dash was there and the enthusiasm for the game, the willingness to take chances and some latent ability, but there was so little co-ordination, such an absolute disregard of all sense of team play, that the Army teams of ten years ago were not reckoned with very seriously. Today it is an entirely different matter. First and foremost in the question of any team is the question of ponies, and the Army team which won at Meadowbrook yesterday was mounted on animals which would make the mounts of ten years ago look like cart horses. The animals that the Army are playing are in most cases very well bred and in some cases

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

clean bred. The vast improvement that has taken place in these animals is due to the work that has been done and that is being done by the Remount, and the fruit of their work is only beginning to show. In years to come it will be much more apparent. By the use of carefully selected thoroughbred sires which are placed at depots all over the country there will be in years to come not only a far larger supply of animals for the use of the Army, but for civilians also.

"Not only are the Army so much better mounted that no comparison can be made in this respect with the mounts of ten years ago, but the teams themselves have as they play today a very intelligent idea of the game and recognize that, lacking team play, no aggregation can accomplish anything at all. It would seem that this idea would have been the first to be recognized by a team from a department of the government in which organization was the first and foremost principle and where everything was done according to rule. This, however, was not the case. The Army teams of a decade ago were obsessed by one idea only, and that was to hit the ball. The four individuals comprising the team followed the ball with all the tenacity of a terrier following a rat, and they collided and rode off their own team mates almost as often as they interfered with their opponents. This may seem and probably is an exaggeration, but it was the way that the game impressed the onlooker. The Army team that won at Meadowbrook yesterday is a bird of a different feather. They played well together and put up a really good team game. The event yesterday was the final event for cups that did not permit a team with a higher rating than twelve goals to compete. Owing to this fact, Colonel Brown, one of the best of the Army men, did not compete, as his rating was too high to permit him to play with the other men and still keep the aggregate handicap within the limit prescribed. Naturally enough, he will strengthen the team and he will play with them in the high goal events and in the Junior Championship at Narragansett Pier.

"The Junior Championship always brings out some of the hottest contests of the year and this year will be no exception. There are something like eight teams entered, and when it is considered that the conditions allow four men, all handicapped at five goals to compete as a team, it is obvious that there are some pretty useful teams taking part in this tournament. If the Army win the event, they are entitled to the greatest credit, and it is very possible that they will win, for they have one great idea, an idea that they have always had and one which it would be well for civilian teams to copy. They everlastingly keep at it and never stop galloping. You cannot play first-class polo, or indeed any kind of polo, unless you work and keep moving, and far too many men have the idea of pulling up and waiting for misses. The moment you pull up you interfere with your own team mate behind you, and so do your side more injury than good. If you are playing number two, for example, and the opposing number three has a good lead on you and is going to have an unhampered back handed shot at the ball, keep going just the same. You have a number three behind you, and he can stop the ball precisely as well as and perhaps better than you; and if he does succeed in stopping it and sending it forward you are up in your position to receive his pass, which is far better than if you had stopped it yourself and hit it forward without rhyme or reason. This fact, that they always keep galloping, combined with the technique that they have picked up in these past years, is responsible for the improvement in the Army polo today. And I feel very confident that the improvement that has been shown in these past ten years is only the beginning, the ultimate result of which will be an Army team champion of the United States."

Mr. Cooley's prediction of a possibility of victory was more than justified by the event. The Junior Championship opened at Narragansett on the 9th of August with nine teams entered.

Captain Holmes writes in *The New York Herald* of August 17:

"The United States Army polo team won the Junior Polo Championship at Point

POLO

Judith after the most exciting game that has been seen on these fields. Holding the Meadowbrook team to a tie of seven goals each at the end of the eighth period, they went five minutes of an extra chukker, during which high excitement reigned on the side lines, to put through the winning goal.

"Then the crowd that filled both sides of the field showed their approval of the soldiers' play. Throughout it was very evident that the greater part of the audience wished to see the Army win, and from the fifth period, when Colonel Brown's team drew even at four goals all, until the eighth it was tally for tally.

"When the entries were announced for this twenty-two-year-old championship, it was generally conceded that Meadowbrook would win, but that the Army team would give them a little trouble.

"Meadowbrook for two periods were responsible for three goals without a return. Then Army started the scoring and from half time on kept the tally evenly balanced. There was no player that was not at the top of his form. The result was the greatest finish to a junior championship ever seen. The lineup:

U. S. ARMY

Major A. H. Wilson.
Major L. Beard.
Lieutenant-Colonel L. Brown.
Major W. W. Erwin.

MEADOWBROOK

W. Averill Harriman.
Elliot C. Bacon.
Morgan Belmont.
R. E. Strawbridge, Jr.

"Summary—U. S. Army: Goals scored, by Brown, 1; Beard, 2; Irwin, 3; Wilson, 2; total 8 goals. Meadowbrook: Goals scored, by Bacon, 1; Belmont, 2; Harriman, 2; Strawbridge, 2; total, 7 goals. Scorer: Harry Kane. Umpire: Captain H. H. Holmes."

Major Patton, team manager, writes of this final game:

"In the presence of General Pershing and the largest crowd of the season, the game started at 3.40 p. m., on a dry and bumpy field. Both sides were overanxious and pressed in their strokes, with the result that there was much missing, though it seemed to the agonized watchers that the Army missed more than the enemy.

"In the first half of the game the enemy got four goals before the Army scored. Our first score came from a free shot at goal, the result of a foul. Things looked bad, but the Army supporters never lost heart. One enthusiast from a team that we had eliminated showed his courage and sportsmanship by placing a bet of \$650.00 to \$1,000.00, at half time, that we would win.

"In the second half we began to score, but never drew even until the last fifteen seconds of the eighth period, when Beard's difficult shot at goal landed from a scrimmage. At this the crowd went mad.

"The ninth period opened by a rush of the enemy to the Army goal, where a score which would have ended all was saved by Brown. Then the game went up and down at a great rate, but finally in the last thirty seconds Wilson scored the winning goal from the fifty-yard mark under his pony's neck on a beautiful place from Brown.

"As a polo game both sides have done better, but as a war it was wonderful. One was constantly reminded of an Army and Navy foot-ball game.

"Early in the game Lolla Koola, with Beard up, went down and sustained a concussion of the brain. This was very harrowing, as Beard was pinned under her. Shortly after this Belmont collided with a goal post and mixed with it and his pony slid about ten yards. In the second half Wilson's pony collided with one of Strawbridge's back strokes and went down as if killed, though she came around and played the final period.

"The most spectacular play of the game was Wilson's work at one, where more than two-thirds of the time he succeeded in turning inside Strawbridge. Brown at three played

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

probably the best game for the Army. He was always where he belonged and his stick-work was deadly.

"At the close of the match the Commander-in-Chief presented the trophy and individual cups with a very fine speech, in which he most fittingly drew attention to the great and constant help which has been given to Army polo by the civilians. He ended by praising both teams for the fine game they had put up.

"Both teams played for all that was in them and the accidents were unavoidable."

Captain H. H. Holmes (*New York Herald*) makes some further comment, which will be of interest for Army polo enthusiasts:

"What will eventually prove to be the greatest thing that has happened to polo in America is the victory of the United States Army team for the Junior Championship.

"With no official encouragement, the soldiers commenced playing in 1903, principally at Forts Leavenworth and Riley, but it was not until 1919 that the Army authorities indicated any enthusiasm about the game. Since then military teams have made two unsuccessful attempts to capture the trophy they won at Point Judith last week.

"Their popular triumph on the Narragansett Pier polo field portends wonderful possibilities for Army polo, and eventually, as in England, may mean that Army polo will be the backbone of the game in America.

"Polo's obvious advantages in improving horsemanship and inculcating a desire for horse mastership, of course, are evident reasons for the War Department's encouragement of this branch of sport. It entails no extra expense except against the individual, and, as demonstrated by the crowds at Philadelphia, Meadowbrook, and Point Judith, creates an impression that indicates popular approval of the soldiers' appearance in polo tournaments.

"Concerning the game that gave the championship cup to the Army players, no match, with the exception of international events, has ever created so much enthusiasm. While it was realized that the soldiers had made immense strides in the game during the last few seasons, no one really believed that any team they could put in the field would be good enough to win such a triumph as they gained in capturing the Junior Championship cup. But this was done with General Pershing and a tremendous audience looking on—an audience that evidenced its approval and favoritism for the Army from start to finish.

"Opposed to a Meadowbrook team that is valued by the polo association as being a three-goal better side than the Army players, the latter, even when their opponents hit four goals without a return tally, persevered, finally equaling the score in the fifth period. From then on a ding-dong battle was waged, with first one side and then the other having the advantage, until the soldiers succeeded in winning in the extra period that had to be played.

"The Long Island poloists that opposed them were all recognized as fine players and well mounted. All of them are playing on teams that represent the best that this country can put in the field against the three British, Irish, and Argentine teams that are going to struggle for international honors on the Rumson, Philadelphia, and Meadowbrook fields this autumn.

"For the first time in American polo history the soldier team was not outmounted. Their ponies, though bought at Remount prices, which is nothing at all compared with the big sums that their opponents had to pay for their ponies, reflected great credit on the Remount service of the U. S. Army. Even more important is the fact that civilian polo players, hunting men, horse-show exhibitors, have to admit that the Army has representatives that are good horsemen; and this is proven wherever polo is played. That it should be necessary to show that the commissioned officers of the mounted forces of the Army are not lacking in horsemanship is deplorable, but their praiseworthy success in a game that requires the utmost of riding efficiency has wiped out any prejudice that formerly existed in the minds of skilled horsemen."

POLO

A. F. G.

The polo players of the American Forces in Germany began the season of 1922 in real excellent shape on account of the long and keen polo play of the season of 1921. The A. F. G. polo team visited Cologne on June 7-9, 1922, for a test of strength with the strongest of the British teams, the 14th Hussars, captained by Major F. B. Hurndall, who has been a candidate for the English international team and who carries an eight-goal national handicap. The total national handicap of the 14th Hussars is nineteen goals. The A. F. G. team won the first game 9-6 and the second 9-3. The games were played without handicaps.

The teams were as follows:

A. F. G. TEAM	14TH HUSSARS
1. Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson.	1. Captain De W. Fenton.
2. Colonel Jeffries.	2. Captain Foulkes.
3. Major John K. Herr.	3. Major Hurndall.
4. Lieutenant J. K. Baker.	4. Lieutenant McIntyre.

In the second game Captain Fenton and Captain Foulkes were replaced by Major Darley and Captain Goodheart and the British line-up was changed as follows:

1. Captain Goodheart.	3. Major Hurndall.
2. Lieutenant McIntyre.	4. Major Darley.

The first game was viewed by the former Chief of Staff of the Army, General Peyton C. March, and it was a source of great satisfaction to the American polo players that one who had done so much to advance polo in the American Army should be present as an enthusiastic spectator.

It was agreed upon the conclusion of these games by the English and American polo representatives that it would be a good scheme to stage a tournament in which the high goal teams would be split up in order to afford players of lesser ability the opportunity of playing with more experienced ones in a tournament, thus promoting the general merit of polo. With this object in view, it was agreed to stage a handicap tournament at Coblenz, June 26 to July 3, 1922, this tournament to be open only to teams carrying not less than twelve-goal nor more than seventeen-goal handicaps, the number of goals conceded the weaker team to be computed by taking three-fourths of the difference between the total handicaps. The following are the results, both of the handicap tournament and of the consolation tournament. It may be noted that, except for the French team, which was unexpectedly entered and which was obliged to carry twelve goals under the conditions, the handicaps worked out very well.

First Game—June 26

FRENCH TEAM vs. CRIMSON (A. F. G.)

Colonel Soule.	Captain H. T. Allen, Jr.
Lieutenant Grivet.	Colonel Jeffries.
Lieutenant Petignani.	Major Herr.
Lieutenant Brail.	Lieutenant Williamson.

Results.—French Team: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 2; total, 4.
Crimson: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 10; total, 10.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Second Game—June 26

14TH HUSSARS B vs. YELLOWS

Mr. C. C. Whadcoat.
 Captain J. A. T. Miller.
 Captain O. J. Foulkes.
 Captain G. G. Goodheart.

Major Ralph Talbot.
 Lieutenant Donaldson.
 Mr. Henderson.
 Major Downer.

Results.—14th Hussars B: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 4; total, 4.
 Yellows: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 5; total, 7.

First Game—June 27

14TH HUSSARS A vs. GREENS

Mr. J. P. Chapman.
 Mr. F. P. MacIntyre.
 Major Hurdall.
 Captain G. G. Moule.

Lieutenant Devine.
 Major Ellis.
 General Allen.
 Lieutenant Baker.

Results.—14th Hussars A: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 5; total, 5.
 Greens: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 2; total, 4.

Second Game—June 27

ROYAL FIELD ARTILLERY vs. PURPLES

Major Grover.
 Major Rashleigh.
 Captain Yound.
 Lieutenant Campbell.

Mrs. Andrews.
 Major Andrews.
 Major Weeks.
 Captain Sumner.

Results.—Royal F. A.: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 1; total, 1.
 Purples: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 4; total, 4.

June 28—Semi-finals

YELLOWS vs. CRIMSON

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—Yellows: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 5; total, 7.
 Crimson: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 6; total, 6.
 Tie at end of game. Yellows winning in extra period.

June 30—Semi-finals

14TH HUSSARS A vs. PURPLES

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—14th Hussars A: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 4; total, 4.
 Purples: Goals by handicap, 4; by play, 2; total, 6.

July 3—Finals

YELLOWS vs. PURPLES

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—Yellows: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 8; total, 8.
 Purples: Goals by handicap, 1; by play, 3; total, 4.

POLO

Consolation Cups—June 28

FRENCH TEAM vs. 14TH HUSSARS B

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—French team: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 1; total, 3.
 14th Hussars B: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 5; total, 5.

June 30

GREENS vs. ROYAL FIELD ARTILLERY

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—Greens: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 9; total, 9.
 Royal F. A.: Goals by handicap, 2; by play, 2; total, 4.

July 3—Finals

14TH HUSSARS B vs. GREENS

Line-up unchanged.

Line-up unchanged.

Results.—14th Hussars B: Goals by handicap, 0; by play, 5; total, 5.
 Greens: Goals by handicap, 1; by play, 7; total, 8.

SIXTH CAVALRY

Since the arrival of Headquarters and the 1st Squadron at Camp McClellan, polo has advanced more rapidly in the 6th Cavalry than ever before in its history; this has made it possible to keep the Corps Area Championship in the regiment. Of the fifteen games played here against some of the strongest teams in the South, only two have been lost, and these only by very close margins. The 6th Cavalry boasts that it is the only regiment in the Army in which every officer is an active player.

Immediately upon the arrival of the National Guard cavalry units in Camp McClellan, Colonel Tompkins organized a class for prospective poloists, with Major C. K. Rhinehardt as instructor. Every one who attended was given personal instruction, and as a result almost every National Guard unit organized a polo squad before leaving camp. August 15 we received a wire from the Georgia Cavalry at Atlanta, challenging us to play them there.

The following schedule was carried out for those taking the course of instruction:

- 1st lesson—Fundamentals, rules.
- 2d lesson—Horsemanship, use of stick.
- 3d lesson—6th Cavalry vs. Camp McClellan.
- 4th lesson—Forward and back strokes, off side; hitting the ball.
- 5th lesson—Off side strokes, nigh side forward; hitting the ball; practice game, qualified players.
- 6th lesson—Off and nigh sides strokes, forward and backward.
- 7th lesson—6th Cavalry vs. Camp McClellan.
- 8th lesson—Cut and cross strokes, riding off.
- 9th lesson—Practice game, qualified players.
- 10th lesson—Duties of numbers 1, 2, 3, 4.

Without doubt polo has done more to cement the amicable relations that exist between the people of northeastern Alabama and the Army than any other activity at Camp McClellan. At every game no less than four hundred automobiles, with upwards of three thousand people, throng the side boards.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

Early in June the Regimental team, composed of Captains George A. King, Herbert E. Watkins, Stephen Boon, Jr., Harry E. Dodge, Bruce M. McDill, and Theodore E. Voigt, made a trip to Boise, Idaho, to take part in the polo tournament held at that place. Two closely contested games were played with the excellent Boise Team, which won the tournament, and the subsequent defeat of ours by the 11th Cavalry came as a great surprise, since the latter lost to a four which we defeated by a very one-sided score. As a result we secured the "runners-up" prize donated by the American Remount Association.

The Regimental Polo and Hunt Association conducted a very successful tournament at this station July 16 to 24. Three teams from the regiment were entered, one from Denver, one from the Diamond Ranch, and a Freebooters' team.

The citizens of Cheyenne made the tournament possible by the very liberal manner in which they contributed to help defray the heavy expense. They further evidenced their interest by lining the side boards each afternoon. The games were closely contested. At times the close scores and brilliant playing brought partisans from their cars to follow up and down the sides of the field "rooting" for their favorites. The first game—Diamond Ranch vs. 13th Cavalry second team ("Onions")—went an extra period. Handsome trophies were awarded to the winner—13th Cavalry, first team—and to the runners-up—Denver Country Club—and individual cups to the members of each team.

Other successful features of the week were the horse show and gymkhana, in which the ladies competed; a cross-country hunt with the hounds; a dinner dance at the Herford Inn, and a polo ball at the post administration building.

As these notes are written, the Regimental polo team is at Denver to compete in the tournament about to commence there.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY

The 14th Cavalry and the Wakonda Country Club Polo teams returned recently from Fort Snelling, Minn., where the teams participated in the First Annual Northwest Polo Tournament. The players motored to Fort Snelling, and during the week of the tournament were royally entertained by the 3d Infantry and the civilian team from Minneapolis. The Des Moines teams returned with highest honors, the 14th Cavalry winning the tournament, with the Wakonda Team runners up. The 14th Cavalry also won the horse-show cup, Wakonda taking second place.

THE CHEYENNE MOUNTAIN COUNTRY CLUB

Polo Tournament of July, 1922

In this tournament, held at Colorado Springs, army teams from Fort Riley, Fort Sill, and Camp Travis competed, and the Remount Association and Oklahoma University were also represented.

The Fort Riley First Team was composed of Majors Sloan Doak, A. W. Holderness, I. P. Swift, and J. M. Thompson. The Fort Riley Second Team included Major H. W. Baird, Captain C. A. Horger, Majors V. V. Taylor and G. L. Holmes. The Camp Travis Team was composed of Lieutenant G. C. Benson, Major R. E. Anderson, Captain J. S. Tate, and Major H. L. McBride. Oklahoma University was represented by Graham Johnson (Thomas Leahy), Mountford Johnson (Graham Johnson) (Dr. Mundy), Roger Leahy, and Major Carl Baehr; Fort Sill by Lieutenant H. Cort, Lieutenant W. M. Corpening, Majors A. V. Arnold and F. B. Prickett, and the American Remount Association by Majors E. G. Cullum, A. H. Jones, W. H. Neill, and Mr. R. S. Waring.

POLO

The first game was played June 25 between the Fort Riley Number 2 Team and Oklahoma University. The score was 7 to 1 in favor of Fort Riley. June 26, Fort Riley Number 1 Team won against Camp Travis by a score of 10 to 7. This was a very fast and good game, with moments of brilliant polo. Riley had a considerable advantage in ponies. The next day Fort Sill won against the Remount Team, with a score of 12 to 5, and on the 28th the Fort Riley First Team won an easy victory over the Second Team; score, 20 to 7. Major Holderness played a great game, feeding his Number 1 to perfection.

The final of the open tournament was played July 29 between Fort Riley Number 1 Team and Fort Sill. Riley won, 15 to 7. This was a good game to watch, although rain fell heavily in the 5th, 6th, and 7th periods. Major Holderness and Lieutenant Cort were both brilliant.

The open tournament was followed by a low goal handicap round robin between Fort Sill, Remount Association, and Oklahoma University, and a high goal handicap round robin between the two Fort Riley teams and Camp Travis.

The first game was between the Remount Team and Oklahoma, Remounts winning 11 to 8. The field was wet and the game rather slow. On July 1 Camp Travis won from Fort Riley Number 2 by a score of 21 to 6. On the afternoon of July 2 a horse show was held, in which the polo players competed. The next day Fort Sill won from Oklahoma, with a score of 15 to 3, Oklahoma showing marked improvement over their first game.

On the Fourth of July, Camp Travis played Fort Riley First Team, and won, with a score of 6 to 4. Each team made four goals. This was a very good game, played before a large and enthusiastic attendance of spectators. The following day witnessed the victory of Fort Sill over the Remount Team, score 16 to 3. The two teams were each handicapped at two goals. The game was a good one, but, although the Remount Team were well mounted and all old hands at the game, the Fort Sill combination outclassed them. On the 6th the Fort Riley First and Second teams played a close game of seven periods. Camp Travis had already won the high goal handicap tournament, so the game had no bearing on the result and was planned for six periods. They tied eight all in the sixth period, and on the throw-in of the seventh period Riley Number 1 made the winning goal almost at once. Unfortunately in the fifth period a pony owned by Captain Horger broke her pastern and had to be discharged.

On July 8 a special match without handicap was played between Fort Riley Number 1 Team and Camp Travis. Fort Riley got a lead of 5 to 1 by half time, when Travis began slowly to draw out, but were always a goal behind. The game was won by Riley, with score 10 to 9. The game was watched by a large and enthusiastic crowd. Individual cups were presented to the winners of this game by Mrs. R. K. Dougherty.

The open tournament was won by Fort Riley Number 1 Team, the low goal handicap by Fort Sill, and the high goal handicap by Camp Travis. In most of the games Captain C. M. Dammers umpired, sometimes assisted by one of the players not in the particular tournament. Mr. J. A. Vickers acted as referee. Individual cups were presented by the C. M. C. C. Polo Club to the winners of the three events. No less than 147 ponies were used during the matches.

Polo Tournament of August, 1922

Broadmoor Cup, Foxhall P. Keene Trophy, Booger Red Cup

In this tournament four teams participated, as follows: Fort Leavenworth—Lieutenant M. L. Stockton, Major Cort Parker, Major I. P. Swift, and Major T. J. Johnson; Denver Whites—L. C. Phipps, Jr., V. F. Wilson (Barrien Hughes), C. Cusack, Lafayette Hughes; Colorado Springs—Major A. Jones, Mountford Johnson, Captain C. Dammers (Roger Leahy), Major Carl Baehr; Denver Prairie Dogs—John Campion, R. D. Brooks, W. B. Huston, I. B. Humphries.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Results of the games were:

August 11, Fort Leavenworth, 17 goals; Denver Whites, 11 goals (of which 7 by handicap).

August 12, Colorado Springs, 7 goals; Denver Prairie Dogs, 8 goals (of which 3 by handicap).

August 13, Final for Broadmoor cup: Fort Leavenworth, 11 goals; Denver Prairie Dogs, 10 goals (of which 6 by handicap). Denver had the advantage in ponies; the Fort Leavenworth four excelled in team play.

August 14, Denver Whites, 10; Colorado Springs, 6.

August 15, Fort Leavenworth, 11; Denver Prairie Dogs, 2.

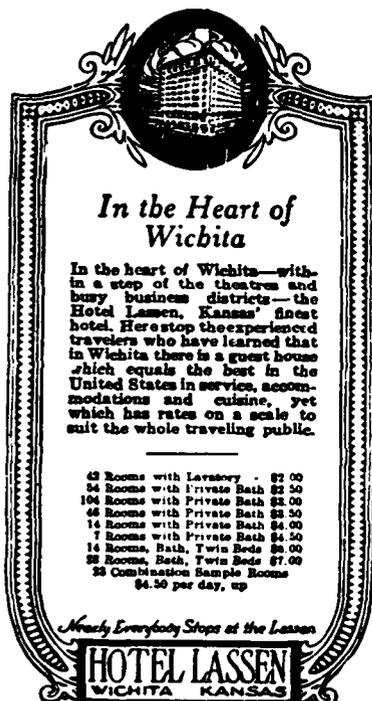
August 18, Final for Foxhall P. Keene trophy: Fort Leavenworth, 14; Denver Whites, 7. Played without handicap throughout.

August 19, Denver Whites, 12 (of which 1 by handicap); Denver Prairie Dogs, 4.

August 20, Fort Leavenworth, 21; Colorado Springs, 11 (of which 8 by handicap).

August 22, Final for Booger Red cup: Fort Leavenworth, 16; Denver Whites, 14 (of which 8 by handicap).

Major N. Margetts played back and captained the Fort Leavenworth team in the last two competitions. This team won all three events.



In the Heart of Wichita

In the heart of Wichita—with-
in a step of the theatres and
busy business districts—the
Hotel Lassen, Kansas' finest
hotel. Here stop the experienced
travelers who have learned that
in Wichita there is a guest house
which equals the best in the
United States in service, accom-
modations and cuisine, yet
which has rates on a scale to
suit the whole traveling public.

48 Rooms with Lavatory	\$7.00
54 Rooms with Private Bath	\$2.50
104 Rooms with Private Bath	\$3.00
46 Rooms with Private Bath	\$3.50
14 Rooms with Private Bath	\$4.00
7 Rooms with Private Bath	\$4.50
14 Rooms, Bath, Twin Beds	\$6.00
22 Rooms, Bath, Twin Beds	\$7.00
23 Combination Sample Rooms	\$4.50 per day, up

Nearly Everybody Stops at the Lassen

HOTEL LASSEN
WICHITA, KANSAS

Cavalry School Notes

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier General Malin Craig, Commandant

The following extracts from the report of the Assistant Commandant gives the results of the graduation exercises held last June:

Pistol and Saber Contests and Demonstration

1. *Troop Officers' Class.*—Each of the three platoons represented by a permanently organized squad. The platoon commanders selected the squads to represent their platoon—a squad for pistol and for saber. In the pistol contest the squads made two runs at the overhead targets and two at the line of skirmishers. The squad having the highest score was declared the winner. In the saber contest individuals of each squad ran the course. The squad having the highest total was declared the winner.

2. *A Demonstration* by a composite platoon of the Basic Class in the combined use of pistol and saber, mounted. The platoon was formed along the Republican River under cover, and at a signal made a close-order pistol charge on overhead targets, and then immediately deployed and charged as foragers against a dismounted, deployed line of infantry; then returned pistols, drew sabers, attacked heads, stopped, reformed, and charged back, taking both heads and pistol targets with the saber. The whole maneuver was executed at top speed and pistols were loaded with seven ball cartridges. After charging back, the platoon was immediately put in order. The lines, the deployment, the reformations, and the accuracy with pistol and saber were of highest order and elicited much praise.

3. *Basic Class Contest, Pistol and Saber.*—This contest was among the four platoons of the Basic Class and along the same lines and by the same rules as obtained in the similar contest for the Troop Officers' Class.

4. *A Point-to-Point Race* (among officers of the Field Officers' Class).—There were 21 entries. The contestants, without timepieces, rode a designated flagged course over obstacles, at a required rate of speed which was announced at the start. The course, about 5½ miles, was from the magazine in Magazine Cañon, up the cañon, taking all jumps; then via Morris Hill and the Hay Camp; thence over the Russian Ride (in reverse), finishing at Macomb Hill. The contestant with the best score to be declared the winner. Ties to be decided by a dash race.

The required rate was 10 miles an hour and penalties were as follows:

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| (a) 1st refusal or run out..... | nothing. |
| 2d refusal or run out..... | ¼ point. |
| 3d refusal or run out..... | ½ point. |
| (b) Too fast—for each full minute up to and including
5 minutes..... | ½ point. |
| For each full minute over 5 minutes..... | 1 point. |
| (c) Too slow—for each full minute up to and including
5 minutes..... | 1 point. |
| For each full minute over 5 minutes..... | 2 points. |

The day for this ride was ideal. The course was over beautiful country, and the ride was much enjoyed both by contestants and spectators. The winner, Major Thomas,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

made a perfect score, having no faults at the jumps and arriving only 4 seconds ahead of time.

5. *Best Trained Remount (Troop Officers' Class)*.—This event, with some 25 entries, was closely contested, and the winner finally turned up in Lieutenant I. R. Pollard's (V. C.) *Black Oak*, a beautifully trained horse.

Jumping Classes

6. *Troop Officers' Class*.—Ten officers from each of the three platoons on platoon horses, jumps not exceeding 4 feet 4 inches. Captain Percy S. Haydon, Cavalry, on *Alamo*, won this contest.

7. *Jumping Class*.—Open to Troop Officers and Basics; officers mounted on regularly assigned remounts; jumps not exceeding 3 feet 8 inches. This class was very large, and again Captain Haydon was the victor on his remount *Gooney*.

8. *A Saber Competition (the Patton Cup)*.—Open to members of the Troop Officers' and Basic Classes. This contest for the annual cup presented by Major George S. Patton, Cavalry, always hotly contested, was this year particularly spirited and eventually was won by Lieutenant Harry C. Mewshaw. The excellence of competitors' form at the dummies, the accuracy of their thrusts, and the speed of their horses all go to make this contest one of the prettiest to watch of all the classes.

9. *Pistol Competition, Mounted (Basic Class for Instructors' Whip)*.—This class was won by Lieutenant Walter F. Jennings, who made an excellent score over a difficult course.

10. *Pistol and Saber Competition, Mounted (unknown course)*.—Open to all members of the Troop Officers' and Basic Classes. This class, over a most practical and difficult course, was won by Lieutenant Frederic de L. Comfort, after an excellent performance.

11. *Jumping*.—Open to members of the Field Officers' Class; jumps not to exceed 4 feet; performance only to count. Some 20-odd officers entered, mounted on the best jumpers obtainable. The jumping ability of the horses and the general excellence of the performance of the riders was universally commented upon. The class was won by Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, with a clean performance, on his own horse, *Dawn of Peace*. For the other places many ties had to be jumped off, which added to the great interest that both the Field Officers' Class and the entire garrison took in the event.

12. *A Remount Competition*.—Open to members of the Basic Class on their regularly assigned remounts. This contest, a most instructive one, was modeled after the 3-day event, "The Prize of Nations," at the Olympic Games. The first day was devoted to judging the entries (59) in pistol and saber work, both individually and collectively.

The second day was a scaled 21-mile ride over many obstacles, the time to be fixed by the Director of the Department of Horsemanship, who, owing to the extreme heat, decided to allow the first man 2 hours and 15 minutes, each succeeding competitor to be allowed 15 seconds longer than his predecessor. No credits were given for undertime. Penalties were awarded for jumping faults and overtime.

On the third day contestants who had not been eliminated jumped in the stadium on Republican Flats, over a course of jumps (17) put up the night before and over which no competitor had practiced. In this phase a minimum time was announced. Credits for undertime and penalties for overtime were given. The stadium was gaily decorated and a large crowd was in attendance. The winner of this 3-day grueling contest was Captain Malcolm Bryne, on remount *Chester*. It was the opinion of both contestants and observers that such a contest taught contestants more about riding and handling horses than three months of the regular course would have taught them. From the first day until the last, each contestant was required to feed, water, and groom his horse, and no assistance of any kind, other than professional advice and treatment by the Veterinary Corps, was allowed.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

It is certain that horses qualifying for the last day of this test, and there were some 40 odd, are in every way suited for ranks and well-trained troopers' mounts, the goal of the Basic Officers' remount.

13. *A Night Ride of 50-60 Miles Over Unknown Country*.—(This is described elsewhere in this number.)

14. *Exhibition Ride by Instructors*.

Diplomas were presented by Major-General John L. Hines.

During the summer months a large number of the instructors have been absent on training-camp duty and a few fortunate ones on leave.

Summer polo has been in progress, bringing out a large number of new players, especially among the younger officers. Practice games between several school teams, two teams from the 2d Cavalry, and the Junction City team have been frequent. A number of exhibition games were played between these teams and a team from Fort Sill, Oklahoma, mounted on school ponies. Later a school team went to Fort Sill for a series of games. The school team has suffered greatly in playing strength by the loss of Majors Swift, Irvin, Chamberlain, and West, relieved, but is being rapidly built up again under the leadership of Lieutenant-Colonel Lininger and Major Doak.

The Cavalry Board has put in many long, hard hours in the preparation of the new training regulations.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona

Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, Commanding

The regiment is operating with depleted enlisted strength. Recruits have been arriving, but not in sufficient numbers to replace current losses. Excellent progress on the part of the new men is, nevertheless, apparent.

On June 5th and 11th the regiment participated in the Junior Division Championship, held at Fort Bliss, Texas, winning the tournament. The first game, played on June 5 against the 7th Cavalry, was won by a score of 3 to 2. The second game, played on June 11, was won by the regiment against the Division Headquarters team by a score of 4 to 3.

The post was treated to a very exciting handicap polo tournament, arranged between first and second teams, 1st Cavalry; Four Horsemen, 1st M. G. Squadron, and the Douglas Country Club. The civilian team carried away the honor by defeating the second team, 1st Cavalry, in the finals, after playing two extra chukkers to break a tie score. The Country Club deserves great credit, since they have been organized only about a year, the majority of the team learning both to ride and play during that time, and were mounted on horses loaned by the 1st Cavalry.

The communication platoon of Headquarters Troop and communication sections of squadron headquarters detachments returned from Fort Bliss, by marching, toward the end of June, and on June 29 a tactical inspection of the command was made by Lieutenant-Colonel C. A. Bach, Chief of Staff, 1st Cavalry Division.

July 4 the regiment paraded in the city of Douglas, Arizona.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

Colonel John S. Winn was retired July 18, at his own request, after more than thirty-eight years' service. The 2d Cavalry was the only regiment with which Colonel Winn had served; he had served in every grade with the regiment except that of lieutenant-colonel. He was succeeded in command on June 12 by Colonel C. A. Romeyn.

The regiment spent the month of July in preliminary firing on the national range. The record course was completed August 11. Since that time the regiment has been patrolling the reservation (about 23,000 acres), to familiarize officers and men with the terrain before starting demonstrations for the Cavalry School.

Parades or reviews are held every Tuesday, mounted guard mounting Tuesdays and Thursdays. On August 15 the cups and prizes for Regimental Day events and for shooting were given out.

Twenty officers from the regiment will be relieved on September 10 to attend the Troop Officers' Class at the Cavalry School, their places being filled by recent graduates of the Cavalry School.

Troop G, which had been at Camp Funston on duty, was relieved on September 1 by Troop E.

THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Myer, Virginia

Headquarters and Second Squadron, Colonel William C. Rivers, Commanding

The artillery battalion being away all summer at Edgewood Arsenal and Camp Meade, the cavalry were the sole occupants of the post.

On August 1, the command was inspected full pack, equipped for the field, by the Commanding General, District of Washington.

Polo has progressed favorably, practically every cavalry officer playing. Practice games have been played at the post two or three afternoons each week and an occasional game with the War Department team at Potomac Park, Washington. The poules have stood up well and improved in condition and playing ability in spite of the hot weather.

Major G. S. Patton, Jr., commanding the squadron, was the extra man on the Army polo team that won the Junior Championship of the United States at Narraganset Pier.

Exhibition drill squads from the troops of the squadron have attended the various horse shows throughout Virginia and have been most enthusiastically received. During August one platoon of F Troop and a group of jumpers from the squadron, in charge of First Lieutenant M. E. Jones, showed at Berryville, Orange, Warrenton, and Harrisonburg, Va., and at Charlestown, W. Va. The rough riding exhibition was received very enthusiastically at all these places. The jumpers made a creditable showing in the hunter and military classes.

During September a detachment goes to the horse shows at Rochester and Syracuse, N. Y., and Bryn Mawr, Pa., and to a number of county fairs in Virginia and Maryland.

The demand for the attendance of the troops at the horse shows and fairs has very much increased this year, and one or two more squads could well be kept busy during the summer, to avoid considerable disappointment to some towns.

THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

First Squadron, Major James S. Greene, Commanding

The First Squadron, with Troop L, Training Center Squadron No. 1, attached, was on duty at Camp Devens, Mass., from May 24 until September 5. The command marched

REGIMENTAL NOTES

overland from Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., covering the 210 miles in nine marching days. The condition of the animals and the morale of the command upon arriving was excellent.

During the summer the command was utilized as a demonstration and instruction unit, the majority of the officers being detailed as instructors with the National Guard, the R. O. T. C., and Citizens' Military Training Camp. For all of these, exhibition drills and demonstrations of the tactical use of cavalry were given at various times.

The command participated in Memorial Day exercises conducted by the Ayer, Mass., post of the American Legion. During the first week in June Troop A marched to Boston, Mass., to participate in the Regimental Field Day of the 101st Engineers, Massachusetts National Guard. Troops B and C marched to Brookline, New Hampshire, to take part in the Fourth of July demonstration which was held there. Troop C marched to Wakefield, Mass., and took part in the encampment of the Massachusetts National Guard Cavalry from July 7 until July 22. The officers and men of this troop were used in connection with the instruction of the National Guard.

On August 11 Training Center Squadron No. 1 (Troop L) was dissolved and the personnel attached to the First Squadron. At the horse show held on August 12 for all organizations at Camp Devens, the squadron took two firsts, three seconds, and four third places.

The command was inspected during the summer by Colonel George Vidmer, of the office of the chief of Cavalry, who gave a brief talk to the officers and non-commissioned officers. Shortly after Colonel Vidmer's visit the command was inspected by Major General Eli Helmick, the Inspector General. He remarked on the excellent condition of the animals and animal-drawn transportation.

Through the courtesy of the Dedham Polo and Country Club the squadron was enabled to send its polo ponies to Dedham, Mass., with the encouragement of the Commanding General, First Corps Area. The officers were afforded the privilege of playing there three times a week during the summer. The ponies had been trained all winter at Fort Ethan Allen, under the supervision of Colonel George Williams, and they made a very creditable appearance at Dedham. Arrangements have been made to the end that an Army team will compete in the tournament to be held at Dedham about September 11. Cordial relations have been maintained during the summer with the members of the Dedham Club.

FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

In July the Fort McIntosh garrison participated in a five-day practice march. During this march various kinds of maneuvers were held and a thorough test of radio, wire, and visual signaling was made, which included constant communication by radio between the troops and the post.

In August the regimental commander's field inspection of the second squadron was made by a four-day march, when all forms of field instruction were tested.

The Corps Area Commander, Major-General J. L. Hines, accompanied by his staff, made his annual inspection from September 9 to 12, inclusive. The officers of the post entertained General Hines and staff at a dinner dance on the night of his arrival, and Mrs. Hickok entertained the party at a dinner of twenty the following night. Inspection lasted two days, including review, work on the drill ground, use of radio, a march, camp, field maneuvers, barracks and quarters, and all garrison activities. On the evening of their departure the visitors were the guests of the garrison at the Officers' Club and afterward at a dance in the open-air pavilion.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. D. Forsythe, Commanding

The regiment on July 15 completed its rifle practice for the season of 1922. Every officer and enlisted man fired the course as laid down in "Rifle Marksmanship."

The percentage obtained and the individual scores made are considered excellent, when the adverse conditions under which the regiment fired are reviewed.

The target range is quite bare of vegetation, covered with white limestone rocks which throw off a glare that is uncomfortable to the eyes and causes a heavy mirage. The heat on the range was intense. A "fish-tail" wind, varying from 12, through 9, to 6 o'clock, was on hand at all times. The regiment maintained a troop at Eagle Pass and one at Del Rio, Rio Grande outposts, at distances of 56 and 32 miles from Fort Clark. These posts were relieved during the firing by marching. Fort Clark is situated eight miles from the railroad, which caused the service troop to be constantly on the road hauling supplies for Fort Clark and the two outposts. It was difficult for the service troop to manipulate the roster so that every man could get the proper instruction. This obstacle was surmounted and the percentage obtained leaves an enviable record for other organizations to look at.

The 5th Cavalry is burdened with double the number of horses than men, which must be fed, exercised, and groomed daily.

The Record

Major P. R. Davison, 5th Cavalry, in charge of firing.

Captain G. H. Harrison, Cavalry, assistant to officer in charge of firing.

The regiment qualified 91.42 per cent of its personnel.

The percentages of the two squadrons and the several organizations, in order of merit, are:

First Squadron (Major Davison), 92.03 per cent qualified.

Second Squadron (Captain Dunn), 91.24 per cent qualified.

Troop "E" (Captain Hood), 97.06 per cent qualified.

Hdqrs. Troop (Captain Unger), 95.23 per cent qualified.

Hdqrs. 1st Sqdn. (Captain Bruck), 95.00 per cent qualified.

Hdqrs. 2d Sqdn. (Captain Harrison), 95.00 per cent qualified.

Troop "B" (Captain Ligon), 94.87 per cent qualified.

Troop "G" (Captain Daniels), 91.66 per cent qualified.

Troop "A" (Captain Beylard), 89.90 per cent qualified.

Troop "C" (Captain Wynne), 88.46 per cent qualified.

Service Troop (Captain Adamson), 85.90 per cent qualified.

Troop "F" (Captain Meador), 81.25 per cent qualified.

Every officer required to fire qualified. The regiment obtained 83 expert riflemen, 111 sharpshooters and 200 marksmen.

Captain Harrison led the regiment, making 177 slow fire and 147 rapid fire, total 324.

The highest score among the enlisted men was made by Private Rason, Headquarters Troop, 173 slow fire and 146 rapid fire, total of 319.

The six lettered troops fired a proficiency test and combat problem along lines laid down in A. E. F. Musketry Bulletin, 1919, and were proficient in both. Automatic rifles were used in both proficiency test and combat problems.

Troop "A" is now at Camp Eagle Pass and Troop "G" is at Camp Robert E. L. Michie, Del Rio; the remainder of the regiment is at Fort Clark.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

SIXTH CAVALRY—Headquarters and First Squadron, Camp McClellan, Alabama; Second Squadron, Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel R. J. Fleming, Commanding

On September 4 Headquarters and 1st Squadron expect to begin the march from Camp McClellan to Fort Oglethorpe so as to arrive there on the 8th, to spend the winter.

The Troop A polo team met the team from the 4th Training Center Squadron and galloped away from them for a 3—0 victory on August 3. The winning team is composed of, No. 1, Sergeant Brown; No. 2, Private Mikesell; No. 3, Sergeant Ericson; No. 4, Sergeant Hartman. Goals: Brown, 2; Mikesell.

Due to the untiring efforts of Mr. Bowen, the regimental band has undergone wonderful improvement since its arrival in camp. Its ranks are about filled up now, only three vacancies remaining; these for cornetists and trombonists.

Colonel Tompkins was host to about fifty ladies and gentlemen from Anniston on Sunday, August 13, on a cross-country ride, which started from the headquarters of the temporary garrison at 7.00 a. m. and returned about 10.00 a. m., when a delightful breakfast was served in the 6th Cavalry officers' dining-room, which was beautifully decorated for the occasion in cavalry colors.

Immediately upon arrival at Oglethorpe, the 1st Squadron goes on the range for the target season.

The horse and motor show held at Camp McClellan under the auspices of the 6th Cavalry, August 17, for the benefit of the Army Relief Society, was a grand success financially, but was interrupted, when about half completed, by a heavy rain and wind storm. The new polo field was the scene of the gala events, and so much of the program as it was possible to complete was immensely enjoyed by the civilians and soldiers alike.

Troops of the 2d Squadron have completed rifle practice, averaging 82.7 per cent. The troops finished in order E, G, F.

The post ball team has had a fairly successful season under Captain W. C. Gatchell, 6th Cavalry, manager and coach.

NINTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Pampanga, P. I.

Colonel Edward Anderson, Commanding

Troop C, with sufficient attached men to make a troop one hundred strong, marched to Manila early in May, and on May 13 acted as escort for the Prince of Wales.

The 9th Cavalry base-ball team came out second in the Philippine Island Base-ball League. The strong Fort Mills team was first, having a lead of two games. All games were closely contested, and the final results were in doubt until the last two weeks.

June 4 a mounted competitive inspection was held in the regiment to determine the best-appearing and best-looking troop, the best-appearing non-commissioned officer, and the best-appearing private. The spirit of rivalry was very keen, and the regiment made an excellent appearance. Troop A, Captain Frizzell commanding, was the winning troop. Corporal Powell and Private Tapsico, both of Troop F, were the individual winners.

June 18 a competitive inspection was held to determine the best squad-room, kitchen and dining-room, orderly-room, store-room, and stables in the regiment. The first places were awarded as follows:

Best squad-room, Troop G; best kitchen and dining-room, Headquarters troop; best orderly-room, Troop A; best store-room, Troop A; best stables, M. G. T. No. 2. On points, Machine-Gun Troop No. 2 won first place.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

After four months of construction work, training was resumed on July 5. During July the regiment specialized on the new Cavalry Drill Regulations, special attention being paid to drills of precision.

During the first half of May the 9th Cavalry polo team participated in a polo tournament at Manila. Six teams participated: Fort McKinley, 31st Infantry, Manila Polo Club, 9th Cavalry A, 9th Cavalry B, and Hong Kong. Honors were very close between the 9th Cavalry A and Hong Kong. In the final game the cavalry shot the winning goal in the last thirty seconds of play, thereby winning the championship of the Orient.

At the close of this tournament the cavalry had the honor of meeting on the polo field H. B. H. the Prince of Wales. The team did not play as a unit against our distinguished visitor, but was split, each member playing part of the game with the team of the Prince and part against it.

During the fifth period of this game the Prince was painfully injured by a ball driven by a cavalry player. Fortunately, the injury was not serious, and the Prince was able to attend the game the next day as a spectator.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel Edwin B. Winans, Commanding

On July 31 the 10th Cavalry completed firing record rifle practice; 505 enlisted men fired and 19 failed to qualify, giving the regiment a percentage of 96.23.

At the commencement of the target season the regimental commander, Colonel Edwin B. Winans, invited Colonel A. J. MacNab, of the 25th Infantry, to address the officers and non-commissioned officers of the 10th Cavalry, at Fort Huachuca, on the subject of "Rifle Marksmanship." Colonel MacNab made an excellent and instructive address, and as a result a great deal of enthusiasm was aroused. For the target practice of the first squadron the 25th Infantry lent the 10th Cavalry a half dozen of their best coaches, and also took under instruction at Nogales a half dozen selected men of the second squadron who were later used as coaches by that squadron. Every effort was made by Colonel Winans to follow to the letter all the instructions of the "Rifle Marksmanship" pamphlet.

The percentage of qualifications in the various organizations of the regiment are as follows:

Headquarters troop	100	E Troop	98.36
Headquarters, first squadron.....	95	F Troop	98.04
A Troop	94.90	G Troop	93.75
B Troop	100	Service Troop	80.00
C Troop	98.29	Unassigned	91.66
Headquarters, second squadron...	100		

Classification of the men qualifying was as follows:

Experts	95	Sharpshooters	189
Marksmen	202		

In the mounted pistol course the regiment qualified a percentage of 98.09, 9 men failing to qualify out of 473 firing; 54 wagoners of the service troop were not required to fire the mounted course.

Classification of the men qualifying was as follows:

Experts	378	Sharpshooters	57
Marksmen	29		

REGIMENTAL NOTES

Since the target season closed, the work of the regiment has been mainly devoted to preparations for the impending inspections of the brigade, division, and corps area commanders.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel John M. Jenkins, Commanding

During the past quarter the regiment has been assisting in the summer camps, in addition to the usual garrison duties. The R. O. T. C. for cavalry in the Ninth Corps area and the University of Arizona was held on the post from June 14 to July 26. The National Guard of California were in training camp at Del Monte from July 11 to 29 and the Reserve Officers of this State were in camp at Del Monte from August 13 to 27. As this was the first year these encampments have been held here and as appropriations were very limited, the camps could not be made as satisfactory as they will be in the future; but everything that was possible to do for the health and comfort of the men was done, and it is believed that all appreciated that fact. The National Guard and Reserve Officers were highly pleased with the result of these camps and the efficient way they were organized and handled in spite of the lack of appropriations.

The regiment finished firing the automatic rifle in July, closing the target season. Better records were made this year with the rifle than with the pistol or automatic, due in large part, it is believed, to the many things that interrupted during the firing of the pistol and automatic rifle. The percentage of qualified men, with the rifle, in the regiment was 84.42 per cent. Major Clark P. Chandler was in charge of the firing, and no small part of the credit for the good showing made is due to him.

On August 5 Troops B and C, under the command of Major Clark P. Chandler, left the post by marching for Los Angeles to participate in the Pageant of Progress, which was held in that city from August 26 till September 6. They arrived in Los Angeles on the 20th of August with men and animals in excellent condition. They were joined by F Troop from San Diego. They are to return to this station by marching, leaving Los Angeles about September 7.

On September 1 Troop A left the post by marching to participate in the American Legion Convention in San Jose, September 5 to 8, and return after that to the post.

Troop L, Training Center Squadron No. 9, and Training Battery No. 9 arrived at the post August 26, awaiting orders for demobilization. These organizations marched down from the Presidio of San Francisco to participate in the Organized Reserve Camp at Del Monte. They are to be absorbed by the 11th Cavalry and the second battalion of the 76th Field Artillery respectively. The transport *Buford* arrived in Monterey Bay at daylight August 31, bringing the 2d battalion of the 76th Field Artillery which is to be stationed permanently on the post. Quarters, barracks, stables, and gun sheds for this organization are now under construction.

On August 18 a very successful benefit was staged for the Army Relief Association, which netted over \$2,500 for this worthy cause from this small station.

The regular biweekly dances and card parties have been held regularly this past quarter and have been well attended and thoroughly enjoyed by all the members of the garrison. A very enjoyable dance was given September 1 in honor of the officers of the second battalion, 76th Field Artillery, Troop L, 9th Training Center Squadron, and Training Battery No. 9. Commander Bagby, U. S. N., and the officers of the destroyer squadron now in Monterey Bay were also present.

Our polo team returned from Boise, Idaho, having won only one game there, that with the 13th Cavalry. Since that trip so many officers of this regiment have been away,

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

both on duty and on leave, that it has been impossible to have regular polo practice. Then, also, all the animals of the post were in quarantine for about a month with influenza. But training of horses has gone on faithfully by the officers left at this station, so that when winter comes—our polo season—we will be in first-class shape to go ahead. With the addition of the artillery officers here, we look for keen competition and the best team we have ever had.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Camp McAllen, Sam Fordyce, and Fort Ringgold, Texas

Colonel Sedgwick Rice, Commanding

Formal tactical inspections of the 12th Cavalry for the year were completed on September 9, when Major-General John L. Hines, the Corps Area Commander, left Fort Ringgold for other points along the border, after spending five days with the regiment. The regiment has completed firing with the magazine rifle with satisfactory results, more than 80 per cent of the command having qualified.

On September 14 the Fort Brown Command was entertained by the band of the Mexican 20th Infantry. An excellent concert was rendered on the open-air dancing floor at the Officers' Club. In addition to the attendance of the post personnel, more than one thousand citizens of Brownsville enjoyed the musical program.

The officers of Fort Brown joined local Mexicans in the parade, which formed at Washington Plaza, Brownsville, and marched to Hidalgo Plaza, Matamoras, on September 16, where the Mexican independence was celebrated. The first car was occupied by Consul Villalpando, Mexican consul at Brownsville, and Colonel Sedgwick Rice. Public officials, prominent citizens, officers of Fort Brown, and patriotic societies were included in the formation. The contingent was met at the center of the International Bridge by prominent citizens and military and civil officials of Mexico. The patriotic program included addresses and musical numbers.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Roy B. Harper, Commanding

Among the various activities of the regiment which have been successfully concluded during the past few months, the "13th Cavalry Band and Minstrels" deserve the first mention.

After several weeks of preparation in training chorus and rehearsing principals, a minstrel show, consisting of the band, the orchestra, and a "circle" of twenty-four men, several of whom possessed exceptional voices, and four "end men," who were practiced entertainers, gave its first performance in the Princess Theater, in Cheyenne. The theater was filled to capacity, and the huge audience expressed their approval by repeatedly encoring the various numbers.

The enthusiastic reception in Cheyenne led to staging another performance at Laramie. It was said that this was the occasion of the largest audience ever assembled in the Empress Theater at that place. Again the show was pronounced a great success. The very complimentary press notices attracted attention in other cities. A nine-performance tour was accordingly arranged, which included Ft. Collins, Boulder, Denver, and Greeley, and a benefit performance for the patients at the Fitzsimons General Hospital. The trip was a financial success from the start. Three shows were given in the Empress Theater, in Denver, owned by the *Denver Post*. The exceptional publicity given to the enterprise by that influential paper and the personal interest in the project displayed by Mr. F. G. Bonfils and his staff filled the theater for each performance. Through the courtesy of Mr. Bonfils the theater was secured without charge.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

The troupe thoroughly enjoyed the novel experience. The shows given in the various cities occasioned a great deal of complimentary comment in the newspapers and otherwise. The benefit accruing from this bringing the regiment into touch with civilian population over such a wide area has been very marked.

Aside from all other considerations, a very substantial sum was realized and converted into the Regimental Athletic Fund.

Anticipating that necessarily a great number of the special trains carrying Nobles of the Mystic Shrine to San Francisco would pass over the Union Pacific, the various civic organizations of Cheyenne prepared a miniature Frontier Days' program, in which the regiment was invited to participate. A number of events were staged by the regiment, including a steeplechase by officers and an exhibition by the musical drill squad. Several train-loads of Shriners and their ladies spent most of the 10th of June viewing the show, which was put on at Frontier Park.

During the annual Frontier Days' contests the regiment was accorded a prominent part in the program, as well as having many entries in open events. Officers and enlisted men who competed won an extremely gratifying number of first places. The Musical Drill Squad, which made such a pronounced hit at the Western National Horse Show at Denver during last winter, and again during the commencement exercises of the University of Wyoming at Laramie in the spring, met with an even more enthusiastic reception from the thousands that visited the Frontier Days' exhibitions.

One of our most popular successes was the winning of the Post Championship in the Base-ball League. Being tied with the 53d Infantry for first place, it was decided to play a deciding series of two out of three games. The interest was very keen throughout the post, and the enthusiasm ran high when the second straight game was won, thus bringing the cup to this regiment.

Interest in the semi-weekly cross-country hunts with the regimental pack continues unabated. Officers, ladies, and enlisted men turn out regularly for these rides. It is seldom that several "kills" are not reported. The dogs, under the experienced handling of the Master of Hounds, are constantly improving. There are now thirty or more old dogs and nearly as many puppies. When the latter are old enough to run, during the early winter, some excellent sport is expected by dividing the pack.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel Harry La T. Cavanaugh, Commanding

The 14th Cavalry baseball team continued its winning streak by outclassing the strong Ankeny, Iowa, club on Labor Day, with a score of 5 to 3. Ankeny is one of the strongest clubs in central Iowa and is this season's champion in the Polk County League. The regimental team has won 14 out of 17 games played and has a clear claim to the city championship of Des Moines, having defeated all the strongest of the numerous semi-professional clubs about the city. At first handicapped by the loss of its regular players, the team rounded into shape in mid-season and has been undefeated in the last eleven games.

The prospects for a strong football team are excellent. Several of last season's men will report when the call for candidates is made. Securing an experienced civilian coach is being considered.

Boxing bouts are being held in the riding hall each month. Local boxers have appeared on the program. Bouts are largely attended by civilians from the city of Des Moines and members of the garrison.

The Reserve Officers Department

SUMMER TRAINING SUCCESS

Reports from camps for Reserve Officers and the Citizen Military Training Camps held this past summer in all the corps areas indicate that these have been successful to a gratifying degree. They have made plain and proved beyond any chance of dispute:

1. That the demand for military training is far greater than the appropriations have so far made it possible to meet.

2. That all the young men in the C. M. T. camps this summer and all the Reserve Officers who attended these and the special Reserve Officers' courses and their division camps have nothing but hearty praise for the conduct of the camps and the character of the instruction, and are earnest in their appreciation of the benefits they have derived from their summer training.

3. That the use of Reserve Officers in connection with the C. M. T. camps is a happy combination.

4. That the Regular Army has appreciated its mission and its function in the National Defense Plan and has established the most harmonious relations with the Reserves and the civilian communities that represent the background of the Reserve organization.

5. That the summer camps have made thousands of friends and supporters of the National Defense Policy, who will in turn make hundred of thousands of advocates, who will help to carry it through to a successful development.

NEW ENGLAND RESERVE CAVALRY

Lieutenant Colonel Herbert R. Dean, commanding the 315th Cavalry, reports:

"The 158th Cavalry Brigade is distributed throughout the New England States as follows: The 315th Regiment to Rhode Island and Connecticut; the 318 Regiment to Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont; and the Machine-Gun Squadron to Massachusetts. This distribution will enable us to obtain a large percentage of our commissioned personnel from officers of previous cavalry experience. Before the war, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut each had an excellent squadron of cavalry. These organizations served during the war as machine-gun battalions, and now practically all of the former officers have been commissioned in the brigade. We also have in Vermont the Norwich University, which is a distinguished military college and one of the best cavalry schools in the country. This will give us each year a considerable number of lieutenants from its graduating class.

"The organization of the brigade has progressed in a very satisfactory manner. It could have been filled up long ago, but we have taken great care to commission and assign only the best officers available. A large percentage of our second lieutenants are young men, a great many of them college graduates, who have seen service as non-commissioned officers of cavalry and machine-gun organizations during the war and who would have been commissioned had the armistice been delayed a little longer. A number of these gentlemen have been examined and all found to be exceptionally well informed.

"The 315th Regiment, which I have the honor to command, has its Headquarters, Headquarters Troop, and Service Troop located in Providence, Rhode Island, and these

THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT

units have about 90 per cent of their strength. The first squadron of the regiment is located in Hartford, Connecticut, and the organization is now well under way. The second squadron is located in New Haven, Connecticut, and its organization is practically completed."

CAVALRY DIVISION HEADQUARTERS SOLVES THE PROBLEM OF MOUNTS

The much-talked-of headquarters stables for the 61st Cavalry Division is at last a reality. The headquarters officers have invaded the Coast Artillery post of Fort Hamilton, Brooklyn, New York, and have been assigned two buildings there. These will contain, when completed, stalls for horses, showers, dressing-rooms, offices, and a club-room for the 61st officers. So far fifteen stalls have been finished and the showers have been connected. A wooden horse in a wire cage has been built for polo practice. A tract of ground adjacent to the stables has been plowed and will be put in shape for a polo field. It is the intention to use this field for practice, and play tournament games on the main parade ground of Fort Hamilton, which is being converted into a first-class polo field. The Chief of Staff is trying to hasten the procurement of government mounts, but in the meantime an arrangement has been made with the Bay Ridge Riding Club whereby the officers of the 61st Cavalry Division may use the club horses at the nominal rate of \$2 an hour. As an accommodation, these horses are kept in the 61st stables and are available for use at any time. Captain S. V. Constant, Cavalry, of the Headquarters Staff, has been placed in charge of the stables.

It is evident that this arrangement, while it may be practicable and quite satisfactory to the New York City officers, will not be applicable everywhere; but it would seem that in many places similar arrangements could be made with civilian riding clubs.

THREE HUNDRED AND FIRST CAVALRY

The 301st Cavalry has been making great progress in its interior organization. Colonel Donovan, despite the engrossing duties of office (U. S. District Attorney), has been "hitting the ball" for his regiment by issuing his first assignment orders. He has more field officers than places for them, so he is making use of them on his regimental staff—an excellent idea. There are many good horsemen of cavalry experience in his regimental area and he is getting the best of them in his outfit.

SIXTY-SECOND CAVALRY DIVISION BULLETIN

And now comes the 62d Cavalry Division with a mimeographed bulletin of information which cannot fail to be of interest to its readers. This bulletin is really a diary of the progress of the division and its activities. The cover design—a copy of the shoulder patch—is the very excellent work of Lieutenant Walter M. Fuller, 308th Cavalry.

A SUBSTITUTE FOR SUMMER CAMPS SUGGESTED

The staff and regimental commanders of the 61st Cavalry Division gave a dinner on June 28 at the Brook. The occasion was to welcome General Disque, recently assigned to command the 151st Cavalry Brigade. The few absentees were officers living in the northern section of the State. The dinner was in every way a success.

The general discussion following the dinner was illuminating. The Chief of Staff, outlining the progress of the division and plans for the summer training, described the course of training, followed by seven members of the division who were placed on active duty with the troop at Camp Dix for two weeks in June. This course was held without

“THE
C
A
P
E
W
E
L
L
”



Army Horseshoers

get the very best value out of their work when they shoe a horse with Capewell nails.

These nails are to be depended on. The roughest kind of work is not too much for

“The Capewell” Horse Nail

the nail which holds best and drives easiest.

Used—for this reason—in the best shops of the country.

The vast majority of horseshoers are unwilling to accept a substitute.

On the market for more than 40 years—look for the checked-head Trade-mark.

**The Capewell
Horse Nail Company**
Hartford, Conn.
U. S. of A.

*Largest Manufacturers of Horse Nails
in the World*

George W. Chadwick, Director
Year Opens
September 21, 1922

New England CONSERVATORY OF MUSIC BOSTON, MASS.

Located in the Music Center of America
It affords pupils the environment and atmosphere so necessary to a musical education. Its complete organization and splendid equipment offer exceptional facilities for students.

Complete Curriculum
Courses in every branch of Music, applied and theoretical.

Owing to the Practical Training
In our Normal Department graduates are much in demand as teachers.

The Free Privileges
Of lectures, concerts and recitals, the opportunities of ensemble practice and appearing before audiences and the daily associations are invaluable advantages to the music student.

A Complete Orchestra
Offers advanced pupils in pianoforte, voice, organ and violin experience in rehearsal and public appearance with orchestral accompaniment.

Dramatic Department
Practical training in acting.

Address RALPH L. FLANDERS, Gen. Mgr.

INSIGNIA EMBLEMS MEDALS COATS-OF-ARMS IN BRONZE, SILVER, GOLD

HIGHEST GRADE OF ENAMEL
WORK

SHOULDER PATCHES
PENNANTS BANNERS
RIBBON BADGES

Special Attention to Regimental needs.

A. H. DONDERO, Inc.
310 Machinists' Building
Washington, D. C.

THE RESERVE OFFICERS DEPARTMENT

expense to the government other than mileage and pay to the Reserve Officers and appeared to have been so beneficial that Colonel Godson proposed that the annual appropriation for summer camps be expended in a similar fashion, with the exception of every third year, when a camp for unit training should be held. He pointed out the enormous overhead expense of the summer camps; contrasted the convenience to officers detailed to troop duty at seasons when their particular business could best admit of their absence with the fixed summer camp, when many men would be barred by the activity of business in the summer. The benefit to the Training Army in the pleasant contact with the Reserve is not to be underestimated in the purpose to weld the one Army spirit. This plan was considered admirable by the Reserve Officers present.

By a succession of six courses at all Army posts for groups of about twenty-five, one hundred and fifty officers at each post could undergo training in a closer, more intensive and intimate manner than is possible under the big-camp plan, and a certificate of attendance and work done could be given, which would have value in determining fitness for promotion when due. Utilizing all posts in the corps area, the full number of officers could be trained. By a yearly series of ten individual training courses, conducted by three cavalry troops of the Training Army, attaching eight or nine reserve cavalry officers to duty with each troop, 250 officers could be instructed. Such a schedule would take care of all the cavalry officers assigned to a cavalry division up to the limit of the tables of organization. This scheme would take care of the individual training of cavalry officers in a much more thorough manner than the one-camp plan.

While the camps for Reserve Officers this summer have been everywhere a splendid success, the suggestion made by Colonel Godson possesses undoubted merit and should be given careful consideration.

OFFICERS' RESERVE CORPS NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

Reserve Corps officers from many States or their representatives met in Washington in August and effected a temporary organization of the Officers' Reserve Corps National Association of the Army of the United States. The organization committee includes a major-general, 18 brigadier-generals, 10 colonels, and a number of other officers, including members of Congress who are officers of the Reserve Corps. Colonel Winfield Jones, of the District of Columbia, was chosen chairman, and Lieutenant-Colonel T. Harry Shanton, of New York, secretary.

Brigadier-Generals Milton Fennimore Davis, Brice Pursell Disque, of New York, and George Washington Crile, of Ohio, with Majors William J. Manning, Waldo E. Chapman, and Lieutenant Robert W. Savage, of the District of Columbia, were among those who spoke. It was decided to co-operate with the committee of Reserve Corps officers, which has called a convention to be held in Washington October 2-4. Colonel Jones was authorized to arrange for participation in the convention.

Temporary headquarters of the new association have been opened at 801 Southern Building. It was announced that Colonel D. L. Rice, publisher of the *Stars and Stripes*, had offered the use of that publication for publicity of the Officers' Reserve Corps. Announcement also was made that an anonymous donor has offered to give the treasury of the association \$10,000 to be used to start the organization.

At a meeting of the organization committee on August 21 preliminary arrangements were made for the convention which is to be held in Washington in October. Five new members were added to the organization committee. They are Colonel David P. Barrow, president of the University of California; Colonel Albert L. Cox, of Raleigh, N. C.; Lieutenant-Colonel Arthur F. Cosby, executive secretary of the Military Training Camps Association; Lieutenant-Colonel L. A. McCalla, president of the Michigan Chapter, Reserve Army Association, and Major W. S. Pritchard, First National Bank, Birmingham, Ala.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

TELL IT TO YOUR CONGRESSMAN

Lieutenant George W. Cutting, 313th Cavalry, writes in the Bulletin of the 64th Cavalry Division:

"All those Reserve Officers who were fortunate enough to take the course of training for the Organized Reserves . . . and also those on duty with the C. M. T. C. realize the absolute necessity of concerted effort to get Congress to make sufficient appropriations for the proper maintenance of the Army of the United States. Therefore my message is primarily directed to those Reserve Officers who were not so fortunate as to be in camp this year.

"You are all, perhaps, more or less familiar with the National Defense Act of 1920, which in itself is a wonderfully thought-out plan for the protection of our country in both peace and war. Congress, however, has handicapped our War Department in the carrying out of this policy of national defense by its zeal for economy. We have reasons to believe that the actions of Congress have been the direct result of a concerted plan of action by the pacifists, economists, and others of similar cult. Frankly, the results are appalling. The Regular Army will lose many excellently trained officers and men, a curtailment in training facilities, and other things too numerous to mention. The National Guard suffers in a like manner, and the Organized Reserves have already felt a very heavy blow—the cut in the number of officers allowed to take this summer's course of training.

"It, therefore, is the duty of every member of the Organized Reserves to lend his earnest efforts to the cause; talk to your friends, relatives, and people in your community; write your Congressman; get your community behind you with petitions, etc. Talk national defense and make them see that we must have their co-operation in order to keep the Army alive and working."

The National Guard

NEW JERSEY NATIONAL GUARD REGIMENTAL CRESTS

In submitting a design for the crest of the 102d Cavalry, the Adjutant General of the Army stated that the crest for the 102d Cavalry would be the crest which all the New Jersey National Guard regiments will bear; hence the design of the Cavalry's crest and shield is reproduced on this page, as it is believed that it will prove of special interest.

This crest will bear the gold lion with the four red diamonds for a collar. The derivation of this is that New Jersey was settled by the Dutch and the English, each of whose arms bore a lion, and the Governor-proprietor was Sir George Carteret, whose arms bore the red fusils. This is indeed a very effective and significant crest.

The shield would be yellow for the Cavalry. For many years the Essex Troop bore a crest the blue horse's head, so that the main feature of the 102d shield should be this device. In showing the 102d Cavalry's work overseas, which was of two distinct periods, that in Haute Alsace in August and September and the heavy work in the Meuse-Argonne in October and November, these will be represented by the red fleur-de-lys.

The regimental motto will, of course, be the old "Fide et fortitudine." This will go on the ribbon in the eagle's beak when the arms are embroidered on the regimental standard.



THE NATIONAL GUARD

Beneath the eagle in the regimental standard is the regimental name scroll; this has three loops. In the Regular Army the three loops are filled thus: "Third—Regiment—Cavalry." In the National Guard the word regiment is replaced by the old name of the unit, thus: "102d, Essex Troop, Cavalry."

NEW NATIONAL GUARD REGULATIONS

The Revised National Guard Regulations, 1922, which have just been received by the various adjutant generals of the States, will be welcomed by all those who have occasion to refer to National Guard Regulations at any time. While the former volume was very useful, there had been so many changes in the past year that, to be really up to date, an entirely revised manual was necessary.

YEAR BOOK OF THE IDAHO NATIONAL GUARD, 1922

This year book contains the complete orders for summer field training, including instruction schedules. The interesting feature of this year book, however, is "Part II: The Officer's Role in Military Training," by Major John F. Wall, Cavalry. It is understood that this portion of the book, which embraces an excellent survey of the new military policy, a résumé of the new army organization, and chapters on training, may be published privately and thus made available for general distribution, which it strongly merits.

PENNSYLVANIA CAVALRY ON STRIKE DUTY

When it became necessary in the State of Pennsylvania to afford protection to certain of its citizens engaged in mining coal, the first organization selected for this duty was the 304th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard. Although this organization had only thirty-two horses per troop, it was in the field, fully mounted, within three days after orders was issued. It is now split up in detachments extending from Ebensburg, Pennsylvania, about two hundred miles to the southwestern corner of the State. This cavalry is performing its duty in a most satisfactory manner. The troops are being supplied by light-motor-trucks and animal-drawn transportation.

MARCH OF THE 102d CAVALRY, N. J. N. G.

At 8:15 a. m. on Friday, August 18, 1922, one squadron of the 102d Cavalry, N. J. N. G. (formerly the Essex troop), left its home station, at Roseville Avenue, Newark, New Jersey, and proceeded by overland march for the summer encampment at Camp Edwards, Seagirt, New Jersey.

The column, consisting of 20 officers, 219 enlisted men, 247 horses, 7 escort wagons (horse-drawn), 1 motor truck, and 1 rolling kitchen, was under the command of Major Hardy J. Bush. Accompanying the column were the regimental commander, Colonel Lewis B. Ballantyne; the former U. S. A. Inspector-Instructor, Lieutenant-Colonel Archibald Commiskey, Cavalry, U. S. A.; the regimental adjutant, Captain H. Henry Bertram, and the regimental supply officer, Captain Louis D. Kilgus. Troop A was commanded by Captain Rupert F. Mills, Troop B by 1st Lieutenant Frederick C. Loeber, and Troop C by Captain Harold C. Kirchner. The trains were under the command of Captain Elmer F. Powell.

The noon halt on Friday was made at Linden, New Jersey, 13 miles from Newark. At Rahway a detachment from Troop D (home station, Westfield, New Jersey) joined

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

the column, commanded by 1st Lieutenant Leo R. Logan. The night camp was established at Raritan Arsenal, Bonhamtown, New Jersey, 26 miles from home station. Major MacDonald, commandant at Raritan Arsenal, had made perfect arrangements for the comfort of the command, and the chaplain, Captain Martin, had an elaborate motion-picture program arranged for the entertainment of the enlisted men.

The second day, Saturday, August 19, camp was broken at 8.00 a. m., and the column proceeded through Spottswood, New Jersey, to Adelphia, New Jersey, where the second night's camp was established. On this day 30 miles were covered. On Sunday, August 20, camp was broken and the march resumed at 7.10 a. m. One mile west of Seagirt the column was met by the mounted regimental band and Lieutenant-Colonel Henry L. Moeller, of the 102d Cavalry, and proceeded to Camp Edwards, arriving at 11.00 a. m., after having covered 14 miles.

Of the 70 miles covered on the march more than 50 per cent were on hard-surfaced roads, necessitating a walking pace. At each noon halt the animals were unsaddled, fed, and watered. One rolling kitchen (Stein-Burn type) was found to be entirely inadequate for quickly or properly messing the men. On the return march, which will be taken by the 2d Squadron under the command of Major William A. Ross, after the tour of duty at Seagirt has been completed, a cold lunch will be served at the noon halt, and the rolling kitchen attached to the motor truck will be sent ahead to the night camp, so that the night mess will be ready on the arrival of the column.

Both men and animals stood the trip exceedingly well. There was no sickness or indisposition on the part of the men and no cases of sore backs on the part of the animals.

FIFTY-SIXTH CAVALRY BRIGADE

The Annual Camp of Instruction for the Texas units of the 56th Cavalry Brigade was held at Camp Mabry, near Austin, Texas, August 16-30, inclusive. The schedules were extra heavy, but were carried out in detail. The instructors and members of the brigade are in accord that the camp of instruction was very profitable.

An outstanding feature incident to the encampment was the fact that Brigadier-General Jacob F. Wolters, who commands the brigade, accompanied by Lieutenant C. P. Smith, adjutant for the 56th Machine-Gun Squadron, rode horseback from Houston to Camp Mabry, a distance of 187 miles; the time being 4½ days; actual riding time, 46 hours and 15 minutes. Considering the unusual heat wave during which the ride was made, the time was regarded as very satisfactory. General Wolters rode his twenty-one-year-old thoroughbred *Bassett*, and Lieutenant Smith a troop horse. Riders and mounts reached Camp Mabry in excellent condition.



The Cavalry Journal

PUBLISHED BY THE UNITED STATES
CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

*Index to Volume XXXII, Numbers 130-133
January-April-July-October, 1923*

Index of Authors

	No.	Page
Amory, Major Charles B. The Bridleless Squad	131	160
Barry, Major J. A. Gasoline, Waist Lines, and What Not	132	276
Bradford, Major K. S. The Cavalry Board	132	299
Cavalry Combat	138	385
Brown, Lt. Col. Lewis, Jr. Army Polo	131	233
Brown, Col. W. C. Horseshoes and Military Equipments of Duralumin	132	326
Byrd, Captain Carl B. The Sixty-Fourth Cavalry Division (The Organized Reserves)	130	127
Carle, Edward H., ex-Lieutenant, 303d Ammunition Train, 78th Division An Ideal Type of Cavalry Horse	131	171
Carter, Major General William H. A British Dragoon in the American Revolution	133	400
Churchill, Frank G. The Polo Pony—Care of the Feet and Shoeing (Polo)	132	355
Cruikshank, Captain J. R. H., B. A. (Camb.), F. R. G. S., late 16th Lancers How Cavalry Exploits a Victory	131	168
Davis, Lt. Col. Edward The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria	130 132 133	56 286 425
Edwards, Major William W. Cavalry Training in the C.M.T.C. at Camp Knox, Kentucky	133	395
Evans, Ralph B. The Road to Soissons, July, 1919 (Poem)	132	277
Pickett, Captain Edward M. A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in Reconnaissance	133	412
Fleming, Lieut. Colonel L. J. Side Lines for Cavalry	133	428
Fyffe, Colonel J. P., 109th Cavalry The Ethics of Preparedness	133	422
Gaw, Lt. Richard M. A School for Army Wagoners	130	83

	No.	Page
Gordon-Smith, Captain Gordon, Royal Serbian Army A Racer, Some Horses and Wolves	131	146
Granick, Lt. Gen., Royal Italian Army Modern Cavalry and Fast Moving Composite Units	131	137
Quincy, General Edward S. Commentary on "Come on! Be Quick! Bring Packs!" article by Lt. Col. W. A. Graham J. A.	132	308
Galevina, General N. N. Cavalry Fight at the Village of Volchkovtsy August 21, 1914	130	11
<small>(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nihilistoff)</small>		
The Fourth Austrian Cavalry Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy Au- gust 21, 1914	131	183
<small>(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nihilistoff)</small>		
The Cavalry Fight	132	278
<small>(Translated by Colonel A. M. Nihilistoff)</small>		
Graham, Lt. Col. W. A., J. A. "Come On! Be Quick! Bring Packs!" (Custer's Battle Plan)	132	303
Gray, Agnes Kendrick Sonnets of a Manhattan Horse	133	427
Hampton, Colonel George F. Endurance Ride of Officers of the First Squadron of Cavalry, Rhode Island National Guard, etc. (The National Guard)	130	123
Hickok, Colonel H. E. Essentials of Military Conduct	132	269
Hoge, Captain Benjamin F. Cavalry Marches (Prize Essay)	132	261
Johnston, Major Joseph J., 107th Cavalry Standard Construction for National Guard Armories	131	149
King, Captain W. P., 308th Cavalry The Fifteen Days' Training Period of the 62d Cavalry Division, Camp Moore, 1922	130	69
McClure, Colonel N. F. With the German Cavalry in the Advance of 1914 (Extracts from 3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry by Dr. Vogel), translation	131	173
McCreery, Lt. T. H., Q. M. C. Notes on the Training and Conditioning of the Army Polo Ponies that Participated in the Junior Championship, 1922	131	284
Merlidge, Captain E. V. Screw-Worms and Fistulous Withers (Topics of the Day)	132	341
Perry, Captain Donald S. Loss of "Commodore" in the Colorado Endurance Ride	133	447
Robnett, Lt. Paul M. Training Machine-Gun Organizations at Obstacles	132	325
Nihilistoff, Colonel A. M. Cavalry Fight at the Village of Volchkovtsy August 21, 1914	130	11
<small>(Translation of article by General N. N. Galevina)</small>		
The Fourth Austrian Cavalry Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy Au- gust 21, 1914	131	183
<small>(Translation of article by General N. N. Galevina)</small>		
The Cavalry Fight	132	278
<small>(Translation of article by General N. N. Galevina)</small>		
Patten, Major George S., Jr. The Army and the National Horse Show	130	66
Report of the Operations of the Army Polo Team of 1922	131	230
Pierson, Major E. P. War Claims	130	82
A Rut in the Road	132	297
S., J. H. Fiddlers' Green and Other Cavalry Songs	131	196

	No.	Page
Shea, Captain George H. Suggestions to Executive Officers on Duty with Organized Reserves	132	296
Sherrill, Captain Stephen H. The Experiences of the First American Troop of Cavalry to Get into Action in the World War	131	153
Smith, Lt. Col. Selwyn D. The New Cavalry Regiment—The Organization of the 26th Cavalry (P.S.) (Topics of the Day)	131	217
Thayer, Colonel G. C., 103d Cavalry Training of National Guard Cavalry	131	193
Vogel, Dr. With the German Cavalry Advance in 1914 (Extracts from 3,000 Kilo- meters with the Guard Cavalry)	131	173
<small>(Translated by Col. N. F. McClure)</small>		
Wainwright, Major J. M. Notes on the 1922 Endurance Ride	130	76
Weeks, Captain John W. The Employment of Chemical Agents and the Cavalry Service	131	202
Watkins, Captain Herbert E. The Broadmoor Remount Endurance Ride	130	27
The Colorado Endurance Ride	133	444
Whitehead, Colonel Henry C., Q. M. C. A Cavalry Commander in the Saddle—A Reminiscence of General von Poseck	132	318

Index of Subjects

	No.	Page
Abstractions, Theories, and Facts		
Editorial	133	456
Action in the World War, The Experiences of the First American Troop of Cavalry to Get into		
Captain Stephen H. Sherrill	131	153
Advance in 1914, With the German Cavalry		
Colonel N. F. McClure	131	173
Air Service in Reconnaissance, A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the		
Captain Edward M. Fickett	133	412
American Troop of Cavalry to get into Action in the World War, The Experiences of the First		
Captain Stephen H. Sherrill	131	153
Appreciation of the Journal		
Editorial	133	335
Armored Cars for Cavalry Units		
Topics of the Day	130	92
Armories, Standard Construction for National Guard		
Major Joseph J. Johnston, 107th Cavalry	131	149
Army and Boy Scouts, The		
Topics of the Day	132	340
Army in Gallery Practice Matches, The		
Topics of the Day	131	216
Army at the National Horse Show, The		
Major George S. Patton, Jr.	130	66
Army Olympic Team Preparations		
Topics of the Day	132	337
Army Polo (Polo)		
Lt. Col. Lewis Brown, Jr.	131	253
Army Team to Compete at Foreign Horse Shows		
Topics of the Day	131	215
Art of Command, The		
Editorial	131	208
Artillery Horse, The		
Editorial	133	452
Austrian Cavalry Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy, Aug. 21, 1914, The Fourth		
General N. N. Golovine	131	183
Belgian Cavalry Charged with Instructions in Horsemanship of Other Arms and of Reserve Officers		
Topics of the Day	130	97
Binding and Index, Cavalry Journal		
Editorial	130	87
Beat Tail Bullet, The New		
Topics of the Day	131	216
Beard, The Cavalry		
Major K. S. Bradford	132	299
Boy Scouts, The Army and the		
Topics of the Day	132	340
Bridleless Squad, The		
Major Charles B. Amory	131	160

	No.	Page
British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria, The		
Lt. Col. Edward Davis	130	56
	132	286
	133	435
British Dragoon in the American Revolution, A		
Major General William H. Carter	133	400
Broadmoor Remount Endurance Ride, The		
Captain Herbert E. Watkins	130	27
Bullet, The New Beat Tail		
Topics of the Day	131	216
Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires		
Periodicals (Review) Nov. 1922	131	229
	133	472
	Jan. 1923	
Cavalry Advance in 1914, With the German		
Colonel N. F. McClure	131	173
Cavalry and the Air Service in Reconnaissance, A Study of the Relationship between the		
Captain Edward M. Fickett	133	412
Cavalry and the Endurance Rides		
Editorial	130	90
Cavalry Board, The		
Major K. S. Bradford	132	299
Cavalry Charge, A South American		
	132	324
Cavalry Combat		
Major K. S. Bradford	133	385
Cavalry Commander in the Saddle, A		
Col. Henry C. Whitehead, Q. M. C.	132	318
Cavalry Community Chest, A		
Editorial	131	205
Cavalry Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy, Aug. 21, 1914, The Fourth Austrian		
General N. N. Golovine	131	183
Cavalry Exploits a Victory, How		
Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	131	163
Cavalry Fight, The		
General N. N. Golovine	132	278
Cavalry Fight at the Village of Volchkovtsy, Aug. 21, 1914		
General N. N. Golovine	130	11
Cavalry Fund, The		
Editorial	132	333
Cavalry Horse, An Ideal Type of		
Edward H. Carle	131	171
Cavalry in Palestine and Syria, The British		
Lt. Col. Edward Davis	130	56
	132	286
	133	435
	130	106
Cavalry Journal (British)		
Periodicals (Review) Oct., 1922	132	353
	133	468
	Jan.-Apr., 1923	
	July, 1923	
Cavalry Journal Binding and Index		
Editorial	130	87
Cavalry Journal Mailing Service		
Editorial	131	210
Cavalry Marches		
Captain Benjamin F. Hoge	132	261
Cavalry Road Space		
Editorial	132	330

	No.	Page
Cavalry R. O. T. C. Activities		
Topics of the Day	132	843
Cavalry School Notes	137	110
	131	240
	132	358
Cavalry Team Try-out Matches at Fort Des Moines, The		
Topics of the Day	133	460
Cavalry to Get into Action in the World War, The Experiences of the		
First American Troop of		
Captain Stephen H. Sherril	131	153
Cavalry Training in the C. M. T. C. at Camp Knox, Ky.		
Major William W. Edwards	133	395
Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France, German	132	319
Charge, A South American Cavalry	132	324
Charger Class Championship, The French		
Topics of the Day	130	93
Chemical Agents and the Cavalry, The Employment of		
Captain John W. Weeks	131	202
Chest, A Cavalry Community		
Editorial	131	205
Chief of Cavalry, Embellishing the Office of		
Editorial	130	91
Chief of Cavalry Honor Rifle Team		
Topics of the Day	132	337
Chief of Cavalry Rifle Team, The		
Topics of the Day	133	463
Claims, War		
Major E. P. Pierson	130	32
Citizen Army, Our Principle Mission, Creating a		
Editorial	133	454
C. M. T. C. at Camp Knox, Ky., Cavalry Training in the Coats of Arms,		
Regimental		
Editorial	131	208
Coats of Arms, Regimental		
Editorial	131	208
Colorado Endurance Ride		
Topics of the Day	132	339
Colorado Endurance Ride, The		
Captain Herbert E. Watkins	133	444
Combat, Cavalry		
Major K. S. Bradford	133	385
"Come on! Be Quick! Bring Packs! (Custer's Battle Plan)		
Lt. Col. W. A. Graham, J. A.	132	303
Command, The Art of		
Editorial	131	208
Commander in the Saddle, A Cavalry		
Col. Henry C. Whitehead	132	318
"Commodore" in the Colorado Endurance Ride, Loss of		
Captain Donald S. Perry	133	447
Community Chest, A Cavalry		
Editorial	131	205
Compensation to Contributors		
Editorial	130	91
Composite Units, Modern Cavalry and Fast Moving		
Lt. Gen. Grazioli	131	137
Conduct, Essentials of Military		
Colonel H. R. Hickok	132	269

	No.	Page
Construction for National Guard Armories, Standard		
Major Joseph J. Johnston, 107th Cavalry	131	149
Contact Camps, A New Idea, The Army		
Topics of the Day	138	461
Coordination in National Guard Training, Need for		
Editorial	131	209
Creating a Citizen Army: Our Principle Mission		
Editorial	133	454
Cup, The Marine	130	78
Defense Policies Increase Importance of Cavalry, Modern		
Editorial	133	450
Distinguished Marksmen and Pistol Shots, New Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	132	340
Division in the Fight at Volchkovtsy, Aug. 21, 1924, The Fourth Austrian		
Cavalry		
General N. N. Golovine	131	183
Duralumin, Horseshoes and Military Equipments of		
Col. W. C. Brown	132	326
Editorial		
Abstractions, Theories, and Facts	133	456
Appreciation of the Journal	132	335
Art of Command, The	131	208
Cavalry and the Endurance Rides	130	90
Cavalry Community Chest, A	131	205
Cavalry Division Maneuvers	133	453
Cavalry Fund, The	132	333
Cavalry Journal Binding and Index	130	87
Cavalry Journal Mailing Service	131	210
Cavalry Journal Reaches the R. O. T. C., The	132	336
Cavalry Road Space	132	330
Compensation to Contributors	130	91
Creating a Citizen Army: Our Principle Mission	133	454
Embellishing the Office of the Chief of Cavalry	130	91
Fifth Cavalry at Gaines' Mills, The	132	331
Foreign Military Journals Available	131	208
Hopes for an Army Horse Show Team at the Olympic Games	130	88
Horse Artillery	133	452
Hunt Clubs and Reserve Cavalry	131	209
"Journal" Subscriptions	130	90
Modern Defense Policies Increase Importance of Cavalry	133	450
Need for Coordination in National Guard Training	131	209
Outlawing War	132	329
Polo	133	453
Prize Contest Won by Captain B. F. Hoge, Cavalry	132	331
Progress in the Organized Reserves	130	90
Regimental Coats of Arms	131	208
Service the Cavalry Journal Can Render, A	132	334
Stronger Cavalry	133	452
Subscriptions	132	335
Subscription Renewals through Headquarters Service	131	211
Subscriptions to the Cavalry Journal	131	210
Reserve Cavalry To Horse	130	86
U. S. M. A. 1884 Class Bulletin	132	335
1884 Class Bulletin, U. S. M. A.		
Editorial	132	335
Embellishing the Office of the Chief of Cavalry		
Editorial	130	91
Employment of Chemical Agents and the Cavalry Service, The		
Captain John W. Weeks	131	202
Endurance Ride, Colorado		
Topics of the Day	132	339

	No.	Page
Loss of "Commodore" in the Colorado Endurance Ride		
Captain Donald S. Perry	133	447
Machine-Gun Organizations at Obstacles, Training		
Lt. Paul M. Robinett	132	325
Mailing Service, Cavalry Journal		
Editorial	131	210
Manhattan Horse, Sonnets of a		
Agnes Kendrick Gray	133	427
Marches, Cavalry		
Captain Benjamin F. Hoge	132	261
Marching from Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, to Fort Douglas, Utah, with Cavalry and Artillery		
Topics of the Day	133	458
Marine Cup, The	130	73
Matches, National		
Editorial	132	337
Militar Wochenblatt		
Periodicals (Review) No. 27, March, 1923	132	348
Modern Cavalry and Fast Moving Composite Units		
Lt. Gen. Grazioli	131	137
Modern Defense Policies Increase Importance of Cavalry		
Editorial	133	450
New Books Reviewed		
Combat Orders—G. S. S.	130	109
Decisive Battles of Modern Times, The—F. E. Whitton	133	464
Elementary Equitation—B. de Souza	130	102
Famous Horses of American History—Evelyn Brogan	133	467
First Division History	130	101
German Offensive of July 15, 1918, The—G. S. S.	133	467
Historique du Corps de Cavalerie Sordet—Boucherie	132	346
History of the Great War—J. E. Edmonds	131	220
Infantry Drill Regulations—Bond, et al.	130	103
Instructions in Learning Accurate Pistol Shooting—J. M. Thomas	131	222
Life and Letters of Walter H. Page—B. J. Hendrick	131	224
Mailing List, The—G. S. S.	131	221
Marne, Historic and Picturesque, The—J. M. Hanson	130	102
Modern Artillery in the Field—H. A. Bethell	130	103
Modern Polo—E. D. Miller	131	226
Operations of the 29th Division—W. S. Brown	132	345
Pistol and Revolver Shooting—A. L. A. Himmelwright	133	467
Principles of Combat—R. E. Jones	132	345
Russian Turmoil—A. I. Denikin	130	100
Saddle Songs and Other Verse—H. H. Knibbs	131	222
Sir Douglas Haig's Command, 1915-1918—G. A. B. Dewar	131	223
Tactical Principles and Decisions—G. S. S., 1923	131	221
Textbook on Field Fortification; Course in Field Engineering—G. S. S.	130	100
The Frontier Trail—H. W. Wheeler	132	345
With the Cavalry in the West—Aquila	131	223
Winning and Wearing Shoulder Straps—C. F. Martin	132	346
National Guard (Notes)	130	123
	131	251
	132	371
	133	498
National Guard Armories, Standard Construction for		
Major Joseph J. Johnston, 107th Cavalry	131	149
National Guard Cavalry, Training of		
Colonel G. C. Thayer, 103d Cavalry	131	198
National Guard Jumping	131	204
National Match, Cavalry Team Second in		
Topics of the Day	133	463

	No.	Page
National Matches	132	338
Topics of the Day		
National Matches, The Cavalry Team at	133	461
Topics of the Day		
National Horse Show, The Army at the	130	66
Major George S. Patton, Jr.		
Need for Coordination in National Guard Training	131	209
Editorial		
New Boat Tail Bullet, The	131	216
Topics of the Day		
New Cavalry Distinguished Marksmen and Pistol Shots	132	340
Topics of the Day		
New Cavalry Regiment (26th Cavalry P. S.), The	131	217
Topics of the Day		
New Idea: The Army Contact Camps, A	133	461
Topics of the Day		
Ninth Cavalry Makes Brilliant Showing	130	92
Topics of the Day		
Notes on the 1922 Endurance Ride	130	76
Major J. M. Wainwright		
Notes on the Training and Conditioning of the Army Polo Ponies that Participated in the Junior Championship, 1922. (Polo)	131	234
Lt. T. H. McCreery, Q. M. C.		
Obstacles, Training Machine-Gun Organizations at	132	325
Lt. Paul M. Robinett		
Office of the Chief of Cavalry, Embellishing the	130	91
Editorial		
Olympic Games, Hopes for an Army Horse Show Team at the	130	88
Editorial		
Olympic Team Preparations, Army	132	337
Topics of the Day		
Outlawing War	132	329
Editorial		
Palestine and Syria, The British Cavalry in	130	56
Lt. Col. Edward Davis	132	296
	133	426
Polo (Poem)	132	354
F. B. E. in "Saber Cuts"	130	107
Polo	131	230
	132	355
	133	475
Preparedness: The Ethics of	133	422
Colonel J. P. Fyffe, 109th Cavalry		
Present Day Tendencies of German Cavalry	130	98
Topics of the Day	132	319
Prisoners of War in France, German Cavalrymen as	130	85
Prize Essay Contest Announcement		
Prize Essay Contest Won by Captain B. F. Hoge, Cavalry	132	331
Editorial		
Progress in the Organized Reserves	130	90
Editorial		
Razer, Some Horses and Wolves, A	131	146
Captain Gordon Gordon-Smith, Royal Serbian Army		
Reconnaissance, A Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in	133	412
Captain Edward M. Fickett		

	No.	Page
Reducing the Army a Century Ago	180	53
Regimental Coats of Arms		
Editorial	181	208
Regulations, Training		
Topics of the Day	180	95
Regimental Notes	180	112
	181	241
	182	360
	183	485
Remount Endurance Ride, The Broadmoor		
Captain Herbert E. Watkins	180	27
Report of the Operation of the Army Polo Team of 1922		
Major George S. Patton, Jr.	181	230
Reserve Cavalry to Horse		
Editorial	180	86
Reserves, Progress in the Organized		
Editorial	180	90
Reserves, The Organized (Notes)	180	125
	181	253
	182	376
	183	503
Revue de Cavalerie		
Periodicals (Review)		
Sept.-Oct., 1922	181	227
Nov.-Dec., 1922	181	228
May-June, 1922	180	104
Jan.-Feb. and Mar.-Apr., 1923	183	470
Revue Militaire Francaise		
Periodicals (Review) June, 1922	180	104
Revue Militaire Generale		
Periodicals (Review)		
Jan. to Aug., 1922	180	105
Oct., 1922	182	350
Dec., 1922	182	351
Feb., 1923	182	352
Reserves, Suggestions to Executive Officers on Duty with Organized		
Captain George H. Shea	182	296
Ride, The Broadmoor Remount Endurance		
Captain Herbert E. Watkins	180	27
Ride, The Endurance Test		
Topics of the Day	181	212
Rifle Team, Chief of Cavalry Honor		
Topics of the Day	182	337
Rifle Team, The Chief of Cavalry's		
Topics of the Day	183	463
Road, A Rut in the		
Major E. P. Pierson	182	297
Road to Soissons, July, 1919, The (Poem)		
Ralph B. Evans	182	277
Road Space, Cavalry		
Editorial	182	330
R. O. T. C. Activities, Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	182	343
R. O. T. C., The Cavalry Journal Reaches the		
Editorial	182	336
Royal Engineers Journal		
Periodicals (Review) Aug., Sept., Oct., 1922	180	106
Rut in the Road, A		
Major E. P. Pierson	182	297

	No.	Page
School for Army Wagoners, A		
Lt. Richard M. Gaw	180	83
Scouts, the Army and the Boy		
Topics of the Day	182	340
Screw Worms in Fistulous Withers		
Captain E. V. Morledge. Topics of the Day	182	341
Service the Cavalry Journal Can Render, A		
Editorial	182	384
Shoeing Horses for Use on Paved Streets		
Topics of the Day	183	463
Show, The Army at the National Horse		
Major George S. Patton, Jr.	180	66
Side Lines for Cavalry		
Lieut. Col. L. J. Fleming	183	428
62d Cavalry Division, Camp Meade, 1922, The Fifteen Days' Training Period		
of the		
Captain W. P. King, 308th Cavalry	108	69
Soissons, July, 1919, The Road to (Poem)		
Ralph B. Evans	182	277
Songs, Fiddlers' Green and Other Cavalry		
J. H. S.	181	196
Sonnets of a Manhattan Horse		
Agnes Kendrick Gray	183	427
South American Cavalry Charge, A		
Editorial	182	324
Space, Cavalry Road		
Editorial	182	330
Squad, The Bridleless		
Major Charles B. Amory	181	160
Standard Construction for National Guard Armories		
Major Joseph J. Johnston, 107th Cavalry	181	149
Stronger Cavalry		
Editorial	183	452
Study of the Relationship between the Cavalry and the Air Service in Recon-		
naissance, A		
Captain Edward M. Fickett	183	412
Subscriptions		
Editorial	183	335
Subscriptions, "Journal"		
Editorial	180	90
Subscription Renewals through Headquarters Service		
Editorial	181	211
Subscriptions to the Cavalry Journal		
Editorial	181	210
Suggestions to Executive Officers on Duty with Organized Reserves		
Captain George H. Shea	182	296
Syria, The British Cavalry in Palestine and		
Lt. Col. Edward Davis	180	58
	182	286
	183	435
Topics of the Day		
Armored Cars for Cavalry Units	180	92
Army and the Boy Scouts, The	182	340
Army in Gallery Practice Matches, The	181	216
Army Olympic Team Preparations	182	337
Army Team to Compete at Foreign Horse Shows	181	215
Belgian Cavalry Charged with Instructions in Horsemanship of Officers		
of Other Arms and of Reserve Officers	180	97

	No.	Page
Cavalry R. O. T. C. Activities	132	343
Cavalry Team at National Matches, The	133	461
Cavalry Team Second in National Match	133	463
Cavalry Team Tryout Matches at Ft. Des Moines, The	133	460
Chief of Cavalry Honor Rifle Team	132	337
Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team, The	133	463
Colorado Endurance Ride	132	339
Endurance Test Ride, The	131	212
French Charger Class Championship, The	130	98
Harry Worcester Smith on Army Horsemanship	130	99
High Jump Record Broken	133	463
Horseshoeing in Organizations	132	339
Jumps without Wings	133	460
Marching from Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, to Fort Douglas, Utah, with Cavalry and Artillery	133	458
National Matches	132	338
New Boat Tail Bullet, The	131	216
New Cavalry Distinguished Marksmen and Pistol Shots	132	340
New Cavalry Regiment (26th Cavalry, P. S.), The	131	217
New Idea: The Army Contact Camps, A	133	461
Ninth Cavalry Makes Brilliant Showing	130	92
Present Day Tendencies of German Cavalry	130	98
Progress in Work for the Olympic Games	133	458
Screw Worms in Fistulous Withers	132	341
Shoeing Horses for Use on Paved Streets	133	463
Texas Endurance Ride Proposed, A	132	342
Training Regulations	130	95
Team to Compete at Foreign Horse Shows, Army Topics of the Day	131	215
Test Ride, The Endurance Topics of the Day	131	212
Texas Endurance Ride Proposed, A Topics of the Day	132	342
Training Machine-Gun Organizations at Obstacles Lt. Paul M. Robinett	132	335
Training of National Guard Cavalry Colonel G. C. Thayer, 103d Cavalry	131	196
Training Regulations Topics of the Day	130	95
Troop of Cavalry to Get into Action in the World War, The Experiences of the First American Captain Stephen H. Sherrill	131	153
Type of Cavalry Horse, An Ideal Edward H. Carlo	131	171
U. S. M. A. 1864 Class Bulletin Editorial	132	335
Victory, How Cavalry Exploits a Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank, late 18th Lancers	131	163
Vittorio Veneto, The Cavalry in the Battle of	130	36
Volchkovsky, Aug. 21, 1914, The Fourth Austrian Cavalry Division in the Fight at General N. N. Golovine	131	183
Volchkovsky, Aug. 21, 1914 Fight at the Village of	130	11

	No.	Page
Wagons, A School for Army Lt. Richard M. Gaw	130	83
Waist Lines, and What Not, Gasoline Major J. A. Barry	132	276
War Claims Major E. P. Pierson	130	82
With the German Cavalry Advance in 1914 Colonel N. F. McClure	131	173
Withers, Screw Worms in Fistulous Captain R. V. Morledge. Topics of the Day	132	341
World War, The Experiences of the First American Troop of Cavalry to Get into Action in the Captain Stephen H. Sherrill	131	153
Worms in Fistulous Withers, Screw Captain R. V. Morledge. Topics of the Day	132	341

KNOWLEDGE ✓

POWER



THE NEW
MILITARY LIBRARY

Can You Afford to Get
Out of Date?

GENERAL BUAT,
CHIEF OF STAFF TO MARSHAL
FOCH:

"I am pleased to find in these books a sense of reality, which is so characteristic of the American methods of instruction. Your works are equally interesting to persons already with knowledge of military affairs and to civilians completely ignorant of technical questions commencing the study for the first time."

Profusely Illustrated with New
and Clever Drawings

A Nation capable of raising, training, and successfully directing 4,000,000 soldiers in a world conflict should have its own "Military Library," recording for study and reference those principles used in the training of its soldiers and their leadership.

In *The New Military Library*, by Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army, we have, for the first time in our history, a truly American Military Library, in keeping with our achievements.

Each book is a new treatment of one or more subjects of the art of War, based on our experience in the World War and the courses taught at our Service Schools, and the treatment of each subject is co-ordinated with every other subject, making the entire library indispensable to the military student, to all charged with the training or instruction of officers or enlisted men, and to the officer who desires to succeed at the Service Schools.

TACTICS—NOT EUROPEAN BUT AMERICAN

By Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army

Based on American doctrines, as taught at the Service Schools, containing 500 pages with 126 original illustrations, it is a military classic.

Price, \$2.75, postpaid. Order a copy today.

Scouting, Patrolling, and Musketry

By Colonel P. S. Bond, U. S. Army.

This book, embracing within its scope three kindred subjects and co-ordinating them with the treatment of Tactics, fills a long-felt need. Its 127 highly instructive and original illustrations are alone worth the price of this book of 300 pages.

Price, \$1.50, postpaid.

Field Engineering, by Colonel P. S. Bond. 170 pages, 68 illustrations. Price, \$1.50, postpaid.

Map Reading and Military Sketching, by Colonel P. S. Bond. 108 pages, 50 illustrations. Price, \$1.25, postpaid.

Infantry Drill Regulations. Illustrated and simplified, with Hints to Drill Instructors. Up-to-date, modern methods. Full explanations. Helpful diagrams. (Reviewed in this number of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*.) 203 pages, 273 illustrations. Price, \$1.25, postpaid.

Book Department, U. S. Cavalry Association

1624 H Street N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.